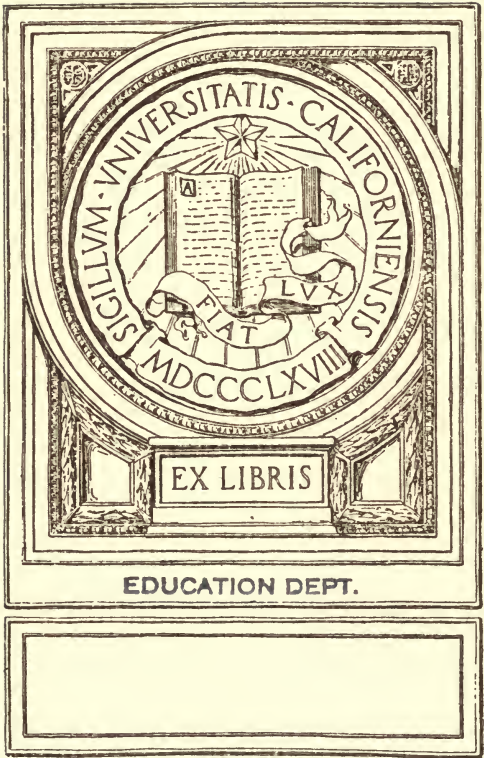


GUIDE  
TO  
AMERICAN  
HISTORY





EDUCATION DEPT.



Louis Halford Earle.

2223 Channing Way.

Berkeley.

Jan. 11, 1897.





GUIDE  
TO THE STUDY OF  
AMERICAN HISTORY

BY

EDWARD CHANNING, PH.D.  
" AND  
ALBERT BUSHNELL HART, PH.D.

ASSISTANT PROFESSORS OF HISTORY IN  
HARVARD UNIVERSITY

---

BOSTON, U.S.A., AND LONDON  
GINN & COMPANY, PUBLISHERS  
*The Athenæum Press*  
1896

E 178

.2

C4

EDUC.  
DEPT.

EDUC.  
DEPT.

COPYRIGHT, 1896

By E. CHANNING AND A. B. HART

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

TO THE  
LIBRARY OF THE  
EDUCATIONAL DEPARTMENT

# GUIDE TO AMERICAN HISTORY

EDUCATION DEPT

## P R E F A C E .



THIRTEEN years' experience in the teaching of American history to college and graduate students has led to the preparation of this book. Some of the material has been printed in tentative form for the use of our own classes ; for instance, the General Readings (Part I, § 56) and the Topical References (Parts II and III) are revised and enlarged from lists which have been tested in everyday use. Since American history is so widely taught, we have hoped that other teachers and other students might find available these lists of references, and also some suggestions on methods of teaching, derived from actual experience in Harvard University, or known to work successfully in other colleges or secondary schools.

In Part I we have therefore placed in type a body of information for teachers, students, readers, and librarians. This includes a set of lists of related books, which may serve investigators, purchasers of libraries, instructors, and workers ; among them are selected lists of state, town, county, and city histories ; national, colonial, state, and local records and statutes ; biographies, writings of statesmen, reminiscences, newspapers, and periodicals ; books of travel, novels, poems, and other illustrative matter. References to most of these books, and to many others of equal value, will be found under the appropriate topics in Parts II and III. The rest of Part I is devoted to descriptions of proved methods of class exercises, of reading history, of written work, and of oral and written tests.

No one can be better aware than the authors of the inadequacy of this work ; the immense mass of rich material on American history cannot be condensed into a single volume ; and doubtless much has been omitted that ought to go in, or inserted that might



well be left out. It is to be remembered, however, that the plan of the work does not admit of complete bibliographical information on any topic. It has been our endeavor to select out of the available material that likely to be most immediately useful to the searcher into political, social, constitutional, and economic history. For the antiquarian and the genealogist we have not been able to provide. We have, however, noted as many as possible of the more elaborate bibliographies, to serve as guides to more complete information; and we have ventured to save space in some cases by referring to bibliographies or other material previously prepared by the same hands.

Included in the Index is an alphabetical list by authors of all the works to which reference is made; but only that page is entered on which the book is first mentioned. An asterisk indicates that the title is printed in full, with place and date of publication.

All the titles and references and index entries have been carefully verified; but errors have doubtless crept in, and the authors will be grateful for any indication of mistakes, and for any suggestions how the *Guide* may be made more useful to those interested in our country's history.

Acknowledgments to authors of serviceable books stand on every page; but we cannot send this volume to press without stating our peculiar obligations to our friend and master, Dr. Justin Winsor, the profound scholar whose researches have opened up the rich mines of literature in American history, and whose greatest work, the *Narrative and Critical History of America*, has been freely drawn upon throughout our labors.

EDWARD CHANNING,  
ALBERT BUSHNELL HART.

CAMBRIDGE, JULY 1, 1896.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

### PART I.

### METHODS AND MATERIALS.

---

#### I. THE SUBJECT MATTER.

|   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| § 1. The Standing of American History . . . . .               | 1    |
| § 2. The Extent of American History . . . . .                 | 3    |
| § 3. Connection with the History of other Countries . . . . . | 4    |
| § 4. Proper Position in a Curriculum . . . . .                | 6    |
| § 5. Educative Value . . . . .                                | 7    |
| § 6. Historical Basis . . . . .                               | 9    |
| § 7. Convenient Subdivisions . . . . .                        | 11   |
| § 7 a. Ten Topics . . . . .                                   | 11   |
| § 7 b. Twenty Topics . . . . .                                | 12   |
| § 7 c. Fifty Topics . . . . .                                 | 12   |
| § 7 d. One Hundred Topics . . . . .                           | 15   |

#### II. METHODS IN GENERAL.

|   |    |
|---|----|
| § 8. The Place of "Method" . . . . .    | 19 |
| § 9. Preparation of Teachers . . . . .  | 21 |
| § 10. School Work . . . . .             | 23 |
| § 11. College Work . . . . .            | 24 |
| § 12. Investigation . . . . .           | 25 |
| § 13. Study without a Teacher . . . . . | 27 |
| § 14. Collateral Subjects . . . . .     | 29 |

## III. BIBLIOGRAPHY OF AMERICAN HISTORY.

|  | PAGE |
|--|------|
| § 15. Bibliography of Methods in History . . . . .                   | 30   |
| § 15 a. Books and Essays on Methods . . . . .                        | 30   |
| § 15 b. Selected Periodical Articles on Methods . . . . .            | 32   |
| § 15 c. Collateral Authorities on Methods . . . . .                  | 33   |
| § 16. Special Bibliographical Aids . . . . .                         | 33   |
| § 16 a. Brief Bibliographies . . . . .                               | 35   |
| § 16 b. Topical Outlines . . . . .                                   | 36   |
| § 16 c. Useful Indexes . . . . .                                     | 37   |
| § 16 d. Useful Catalogues . . . . .                                  | 38   |
| § 16 e. Indexes to Public Documents, 1776-1895 . . . . .             | 38   |
| § 17. General Reference Books on American History . . . . .          | 40   |
| § 18. School Text-Books . . . . .                                    | 41   |
| § 18 a. Brief List of School Text-Books . . . . .                    | 43   |
| § 19. College Text-Books . . . . .                                   | 43   |
| § 19 a. List of College Text-Books . . . . .                         | 44   |
| § 20. General Histories . . . . .                                    | 45   |
| § 20 a. Larger Comprehensive Works . . . . .                         | 46   |
| § 21. Historical Geography . . . . .                                 | 48   |
| § 21 a. Physical Geography of America . . . . .                      | 50   |
| § 21 b. Physical Maps of North America . . . . .                     | 51   |
| § 21 c. Historical Maps . . . . .                                    | 53   |
| § 21 d. Sources of Historical Geography . . . . .                    | 53   |
| § 22. Works on Special Topics . . . . .                              | 55   |
| § 22 a. Brief List of Works on Special Topics . . . . .              | 55   |
| § 23. State and Local Histories . . . . .                            | 57   |
| § 24. Books of Travel . . . . .                                      | 78   |
| § 25. Biographies . . . . .  | 86   |
| § 26. Periodicals . . . . .  | 101  |
| § 26 a. List of Periodicals containing Historical Material . . . . . | 102  |
| § 27. Newspapers . . . . .   | 104  |
| § 28. Printed Sources . . . . .                                      | 106  |
| § 29. Colonial Records . . . . .                                     | 107  |
| § 30. United States Records . . . . .                                | 118  |
| § 30 a. Journals of Congress . . . . .                               | 119  |
| § 30 b. Records of Debates . . . . .                                 | 119  |
| § 30 c. Laws . . . . .   | 120  |
| § 30 d. Documents . . . . .  | 120  |
| § 30 e. Reports of Judicial Decisions . . . . .                      | 121  |

|   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| § 31. Proceedings of Learned Societies . . . . .      | 122  |
| § 32. Works of American Statesmen . . . . .           | 124  |
| § 33. Autobiographies and Reminiscences . . . . .     | 127  |
| § 34. Collections of Documents and Speeches . . . . . | 132  |
| § 35. Manuscript Sources . . . . .                    | 134  |
| § 36. Illustrative Material . . . . .                 | 135  |
| § 36 a. Historical Novels . . . . .                   | 137  |
| § 36 b. Poems and Ballads . . . . .                   | 141  |

## IV. WORKING LIBRARIES.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| § 37. Necessity of Working Libraries . . . . .       | 143 |
| § 38. Cheap Libraries . . . . .                      | 144 |
| § 38 a. Smallest Possible Collection . . . . .       | 144 |
| § 38 b. A Five-Dollar Collection . . . . .           | 144 |
| § 38 c. A Ten-Dollar Collection . . . . .            | 145 |
| § 38 d. A Twenty-Dollar Collection . . . . .         | 145 |
| § 38 e. A Fifty-Dollar Collection . . . . .          | 146 |
| § 38 f. A Hundred-Dollar Collection . . . . .        | 146 |
| § 39. A Good Working Library . . . . .               | 147 |
| § 40. Collateral Use of Public Libraries . . . . .   | 148 |
| § 41. Use of Great Libraries . . . . .               | 149 |
| § 42. The Reserved and "Over-Night" System . . . . . | 150 |

## V. CLASS EXERCISES.

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| § 43. Recitations . . . . .   | 152 |
| § 44. Proper Use of Text-Books . . . . .                                  | 153 |
| § 45. Reviews . . . . .   | 154 |
| § 46. The "Quiz" . . . . .  | 155 |
| § 47. Memorizing . . . . .  | 156 |
| § 47 a. Discovery and Exploration . . . . .                               | 157 |
| § 47 b. Colonial History, 1604-1760 . . . . .                             | 158 |
| § 47 c. The American Revolution . . . . .                                 | 159 |
| § 47 d. Development of the Constitution of the United<br>States . . . . . | 159 |
| § 47 e. Presidents of the United States . . . . .                         | 160 |
| § 47 f. Admission of States . . . . .                                     | 161 |
| § 47 g. Population of the United States . . . . .                         | 162 |

|   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| § 47 h. Significant Extracts from the Declaration of Independence . . . . .       | 162  |
| § 47 i. Significant Extracts from the Articles of Confederation . . . . .         | 163  |
| § 47 j. Significant Extracts from the Constitution of the United States . . . . . | 165  |
| § 48. Historical Geography . . . . .  | 169  |
| § 49. Illustrative Methods . . . . .  | 171  |
| § 50. Debates . . . . .   | 173  |
| § 51. Reports of Pupils . . . . .   | 174  |
| § 52. Student Lectures . . . . .  | 174  |
| § 53. Seminars . . . . .  | 176  |

VI. READING.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| § 54. Necessity of Reading . . . . .             | 179 |
| § 55. Consecutive Reading . . . . .              | 180 |
| § 56. General Reading . . . . .                  | 180 |
| § 56 a. Brief List of General Readings . . . . . | 181 |
| § 56 b. General Readings . . . . .               | 185 |
| § 57. Topical Reading . . . . .                  | 195 |
| § 58. The Conference System . . . . .            | 195 |
| § 59. How to Use Books . . . . .                 | 197 |
| § 60. Talks by Teachers . . . . .                | 198 |
| § 61. Formal Lectures . . . . .                  | 199 |
| § 62. Note-Taking . . . . .                      | 200 |
| § 63. Use of Notes . . . . .                     | 203 |
| § 64. Giving out References . . . . .            | 203 |

VII. WRITTEN WORK.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| § 65. Written Reviews . . . . .                    | 205 |
| § 66. Brief Written Recitations . . . . .          | 205 |
| § 67. The Topical System . . . . .                 | 207 |
| § 68. Subjects for Topics . . . . .                | 208 |
| § 69. Composition in Historical Subjects . . . . . | 210 |
| § 70. The "Special Report" System . . . . .        | 211 |
| § 71. The Essay or Thesis System . . . . .         | 215 |
| § 72. Monographs . . . . .                         | 220 |
| § 73. Subjects for Monographs . . . . .            | 222 |



## VIII. TESTS.

|                                      | PAGE |
|--------------------------------------|------|
| § 74. Class-Room Tests . . . . .     | 223  |
| § 75. Formal Written Tests . . . . . | 223  |
| § 76. Oral Examinations . . . . .    | 225  |

## PART II.

TOPICS AND REFERENCES IN COLONIAL  
HISTORY.

## IX. DISCOVERY AND LATIN COLONIZATION.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| § 77. Physiography of North America . . . . .                  | 227 |
| § 78. Geography of North America, 1492-1775 . . . . .          | 227 |
| § 79. Archæology . . . . .                                     | 231 |
| § 80. The Aborigines . . . . .                                 | 232 |
| § 81. Pre-Columbian Discoveries . . . . .                      | 234 |
| § 82. The Columbian Discoveries . . . . .                      | 235 |
| § 83. The Companions and Successors of Columbus . . . . .      | 236 |
| § 84. The Naming of America . . . . .                          | 237 |
| § 85. The Spanish Conquerors . . . . .                         | 238 |
| § 86. The Spaniards in the United States . . . . .             | 239 |
| § 87. Early French Explorers . . . . .                         | 240 |
| § 88. The Huguenot Settlements . . . . .                       | 241 |
| § 89. Champlain and French Colonization in the North . . . . . | 242 |
| § 90. French Explorers in the Interior . . . . .               | 243 |
| § 91. The Settlement of Louisiana . . . . .                    | 244 |

X. ENGLISH EXPLORERS AND THE SOUTHERN  
ENGLISH COLONIES.

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| § 92. The Cabots . . . . .                    | 246 |
| § 93. The English Seamen . . . . .            | 247 |
| § 94. Other Early English Explorers . . . . . | 248 |
| § 95. The Raleigh Colonies . . . . .          | 248 |

|  | PAGE |
|--|------|
| § 96. Gosnold, Pring, and Weymouth . . . . .   | 249  |
| § 97. Virginia to 1624 . . . . .               | 250  |
| § 98. Virginia, 1624-1688 . . . . .            | 252  |
| § 99. Provincial Virginia, 1688-1760 . . . . . | 253  |
| § 100. Settlement of Maryland . . . . .        | 253  |
| § 101. The Puritans in Maryland . . . . .      | 254  |
| § 102. The Carolinas . . . . .                 | 255  |
| § 103. Georgia . . . . .                       | 257  |

#### XI. MIDDLE COLONIES.

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| § 104. New Netherland . . . . .                       | 258 |
| § 105. The English in New York . . . . .              | 259 |
| § 106. New Jersey . . . . .                           | 260 |
| § 107. Settlement of Pennsylvania . . . . .           | 261 |
| § 108. Pennsylvania and Delaware, 1685-1760 . . . . . | 263 |

#### XII. NEW ENGLAND.

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| § 109. New England before 1620 . . . . .                            | 264 |
| § 110. The English Puritans . . . . .                               | 264 |
| § 111. The Pilgrims . . . . .                                       | 265 |
| § 112. Plymouth, 1620-1629 . . . . .                                | 266 |
| § 113. New Plymouth Colony, 1629-1691 . . . . .                     | 267 |
| § 114. The Council for New England . . . . .                        | 268 |
| § 115. Early Settlements in Massachusetts, 1620-1628 . . . . .      | 268 |
| § 116. Origin of the Massachusetts Bay Company . . . . .            | 269 |
| § 117. The Massachusetts Bay Company . . . . .                      | 269 |
| § 118. Early Massachusetts, 1630-1650 . . . . .                     | 270 |
| § 119. Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, 1630-1640 . . . . . | 272 |
| § 120. Rhode Island to 1665 . . . . .                               | 273 |
| § 121. Connecticut, 1638-1662 . . . . .                             | 274 |
| § 122. New Haven Colony, 1638-1662 . . . . .                        | 275 |
| § 123. Northern Settlements, 1620-1660 . . . . .                    | 275 |
| § 124. The New England Confederation . . . . .                      | 276 |
| § 125. The Quakers . . . . .  | 277 |
| § 126. King Philip's War . . . . .                                  | 277 |
| § 127. The Overthrow of the Massachusetts Charter . . . . .         | 278 |
| § 128. The Tyranny of Andros . . . . .                              | 278 |
| § 129. The Witchcraft Delusion . . . . .                            | 279 |
| § 130. Provincial New England . . . . .                             | 280 |

## XIII. EXPULSION OF THE FRENCH.

|   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| § 131. Conflict with France on the Seaboard . . . . .             | 281  |
| § 132. Struggle for the Possession of the Great Valleys . . . . . | 282  |

## XIV. THE REVOLUTION.

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| § 133. The Colonies in 1760 . . . . .                       | 284 |
| § 134. Passive Resistance, 1761-1766 . . . . .              | 288 |
| § 135. Active Resistance, 1767-1774 . . . . .               | 291 |
| § 136. Revolution Precipitated, 1772-1776 . . . . .         | 294 |
| § 137. The Declaration of Independence, 1774-1776 . . . . . | 296 |
| § 138. The War in the Middle States . . . . .               | 298 |
| § 139. The French Alliance . . . . .                        | 300 |
| § 140. The War in the Southern Department . . . . .         | 301 |
| § 141. The Treaty of Peace . . . . .                        | 303 |
| § 142. Formation of the Confederation, 1775-1783 . . . . .  | 304 |
| § 143. The State Constitution, 1775-1781 . . . . .          | 306 |

---

 PART III.

 TOPICS AND REFERENCES IN UNITED STATES  
 HISTORY.
 

---

## XV. GENESIS OF THE UNION.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| § 144. Political Geography of the United States, 1775-1895 . . . . . | 309 |
| § 145. People of the United States, 1606-1895 . . . . .              | 310 |
| § 146. English Political Institutions to 1775 . . . . .              | 311 |
| § 147. Colonial Political Institutions . . . . .                     | 312 |
| § 148. Colonial Social Institutions and Slavery . . . . .            | 314 |

## XVI. CONFEDERATION AND CONSTITUTION.

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| § 149. Government of the Confederation, 1781-1788 . . . . .               | 316 |
| § 150. Territorial Questions under the Confederation, 1781-1787 . . . . . | 317 |
| § 151. Finances of the Confederation, 1781-1788 . . . . .                 | 319 |

|  | PAGE |
|--|------|
| § 152. Slavery Questions under the Confederation, 1774-1787                          | 320  |
| § 153. Foreign and Commercial Relations of the Confederation,<br>1783-1789 . . . . . | 321  |
| § 154. The Federal Convention of 1787 . . . . .                                      | 322  |
| § 155. Ratification of the Constitution, 1787-1790 . . . . .                         | 325  |
| § 156. Theories of the Constitution . . . . .  | 326  |

#### XVII. ORGANIZATION OF THE GOVERNMENT.

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| § 157. Organization of the three Departments of Government,<br>1789-1793 . . . . .            | 329 |
| § 158. Organization of a Financial System, 1789-1793 . . . . .                                | 331 |
| § 159. Doctrine of Implied Powers . . . . .   | 333 |
| § 160. Political Parties, 1789-1793 . . . . .   | 334 |
| § 161. Territorial and Slavery Questions, 1789-1802 . . . . .                                 | 336 |
| § 162. Foreign Relations, 1793-1797 . . . . .   | 337 |
| § 163. Internal Disturbances, 1790-1794 . . . . .   | 339 |
| § 164. Breach with France, 1797-1800 . . . . .  | 340 |
| § 165. Alien and Sedition Acts, and Virginia and Kentucky<br>Resolutions, 1798-1800 . . . . . | 342 |
| § 166. Fall of the Federalists, 1799-1801 . . . . .   | 343 |

#### XVIII. FOREIGN COMPLICATIONS.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| § 167. Thomas Jefferson and His Party . . . . .                                  | 345 |
| § 168. Annexation of Louisiana, West Florida, and Oregon,<br>1800-1812 . . . . . | 347 |
| § 169. The Burr Conspiracy, 1803-1807 . . . . .                                  | 348 |
| § 170. Neutral Trade, 1789-1807 . . . . .  | 350 |
| § 171. The Embargo and Non-Intercourse, 1807-1811 . . . . .                      | 351 |
| § 172. The War of 1812 . . . . .   | 352 |
| § 173. Opposition to the War, 1811-1815 . . . . .                                | 354 |

#### XIX. REORGANIZATION.

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| § 174. Financial and Commercial Organization, 1816-1820 . . . . . | 356 |
| § 175. The Great Constitutional Decisions . . . . .               | 358 |
| § 176. Era of Good Feeling, 1817-1825 . . . . .                   | 359 |

|  | PAGE |
|--|------|
| § 177. The Missouri Compromise . . . . .             | 361  |
| § 178. The Monroe Doctrine . . . . .                 | 362  |
| § 179. Administration of John Quincy Adams . . . . . | 364  |

## XX. JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| § 180. The United States in 1830 . . . . .                            | 366 |
| § 181. Andrew Jackson and His Policy . . . . .                        | 367 |
| § 182. Jackson's War on the Bank, 1829-1833 . . . . .                 | 369 |
| § 183. Tariff and Nullification, 1828-1832 . . . . .                  | 370 |
| § 184. Removal of the Deposits, 1833-1834 . . . . .                   | 372 |
| § 185. Territorial Questions and Surplus Revenue, 1829-1841 . . . . . | 373 |

## XXI. SLAVERY AND TEXAS.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| § 186. Negro Slavery from 1830 to 1860 . . . . .                           | 375 |
| § 187. The Abolition Movement, 1830-1840 . . . . .                         | 376 |
| § 188. Public Controversy as to Slavery, 1835-1844 . . . . .               | 378 |
| § 189. International and Interstate Status of Slavery, 1830-1860 . . . . . | 379 |
| § 190. Van Buren's Administration . . . . .                                | 381 |
| § 191. The Whigs and Tyler, 1840-1844 . . . . .                            | 382 |
| § 192. Northeastern and Northwestern Boundaries, 1783-1846 . . . . .       | 383 |
| § 193. Annexation of Texas, 1836-1846 . . . . .                            | 385 |
| § 194. The Mexican War, 1846-1848 . . . . .                                | 387 |
| § 195. Financial and Commercial Questions, 1845-1849 . . . . .             | 388 |

## XXII. THE SLAVERY CRISIS.

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| § 196. The Territorial Crisis, 1846-1849 . . . . .          | 390 |
| § 197. Compromise of 1850 . . . . .                         | 391 |
| § 198. Fugitive Slaves, 1850-1860 . . . . .                 | 393 |
| § 199. Cuba and the Kansas-Nebraska Act, 1854 . . . . .     | 394 |
| § 200. The Kansas Struggle, 1854-1861 . . . . .             | 396 |
| § 201. Rise of the Republican Party . . . . .               | 397 |
| § 202. Dred Scott Decision, and John Brown's Raid . . . . . | 399 |
| § 203. Election of 1860 . . . . .                           | 400 |



## XXIII. THE CIVIL WAR PERIOD.

|  | PAGE |
|--|------|
| § 204. The Sections Compared . . . . .                             | 402  |
| § 205. Theory of Secession . . . . .                               | 404  |
| § 206. Process of Secession, 1860-1861 . . . . .                   | 405  |
| § 207. Coercion and Compromise, 1860-1861 . . . . .                | 407  |
| § 208. Abraham Lincoln and His Policy . . . . .                    | 410  |
| § 209. The Southern Confederacy, 1861-1865 . . . . .               | 412  |
| § 210. Military Events of the Civil War, 1861-1865 . . . . .       | 415  |
| § 211. Financial Measures of the Civil War, 1861-1865 . . . . .    | 419  |
| § 212. International Complications of the War, 1861-1865 . . . . . | 420  |
| § 213. Administration and People during the War . . . . .          | 423  |
| § 214. Abolition of Slavery, 1861-1865 . . . . .                   | 425  |
| INDEX . . . . .  | 429  |

# GUIDE TO AMERICAN HISTORY.



## PART I.

### METHODS AND MATERIALS.

---

#### I. THE SUBJECT MATTER.

##### § 1. The Standing of American History.

It is only within the last few years that American history has been regarded by educators either as a liberal study or as a serious subject deserving scientific treatment. This is due to the fact that the earlier books on this theme were designed to commemorate the supposed deeds of some ancestor, or to arouse the patriotism of American youth by the relation of stories of doubtful historical foundation, and of very questionable value from an ethical point of view. Probably the works of the notorious Mason L. Weems did much to degrade the taste for real historical information, and to place an undue value on the anecdotal side of history. At all events, it was not until Jared Sparks began his important labors in 1818 that scholars undertook the study of the history of the English race in America with a serious spirit; the earlier work of Abiel Holmes seems to have had slight influence on the study of history, although in itself it is a most important and accurate book.

Following Sparks there came into existence a race of historical writers whose names must always be held in grateful remembrance, even though their works have been largely superseded. Of them may be mentioned Pitkin, George Bancroft, Irving, Prescott, and

Tucker. All these authors, with the exception of Irving and Prescott, essayed to write a more or less complete history of the country in narrative form. Later another cycle of historical writers began their labors, of whom the best known, perhaps, are John Fiske, Schouler, McMaster, Henry Adams, and Von Holst, all of whom have rewritten portions of the history of the United States with the aid of new material.

Side by side with these writers on the general subject, the investigators in more limited fields have been pursuing their researches. Among the foremost of these men may be mentioned Parkman, Winsor, Deane, and Charles Francis Adams. The monographic form has proved attractive, also, to the minor writers; and the publications of the historical societies, and of many universities, contain a vast mass of historical papers, some of them of great importance to the student. During the same time historical material has been accumulated in public repositories and in private collections, while states, municipalities, universities, and societies have vied with one another in their efforts to place this material in the safer and more accessible form of printed books. The materials for the student of American history may be said, therefore, to have been thus established on a permanent and scientific basis.

The teaching of American history has advanced more slowly. Long confined even in the higher institutions to juiceless textbooks, it has slowly come to include the reading of standard authors, at least as far down as the secondary schools; and in the college this reading has sometimes been supplemented by practical exercises of various kinds. The universities now have a body of advanced students in history who are receiving systematic training in the study, teaching, and investigation of their subject, and are making contributions to historical literature. Thus the seed of scientific treatment of history has begun to germinate throughout the system of American education; and the universities are supplying trained teachers for schools and colleges as well as for their own needs.

At the same time efforts are making to enlarge the means of information, both by preparing better secondary books, and by

opening up the sources to make them available not only to college students, but to the reader and solitary student. In new libraries, small and great, American history is always well represented. The habit of historical reading is everywhere encouraged; and the liberality of those in control of the larger public and private collections places the sources of our history at the disposal of the earnest student.

The subject of American history is, therefore, widely accepted by school committees and college trustees, by teachers and by thinking people outside of schools and colleges, as a proper discipline and source of pleasure. The material is, however, still much disorganized, and methods of dealing with it are in many places crude and unformed. To open up highways and footpaths into this literature, and thus to contribute to sound learning and accurate judgment of cause and effect, is the purpose of this work.

## § 2. The Extent of American History.

The term "American history" demands a word of explanation. Using the phrase in its broadest sense it would mean an account of everything that has ever happened within the Western Hemisphere. But such a definition is impossible, both on account of the bulk of materials, and because of different degrees of intrinsic importance of the various elements which necessarily go to make up such a history. In American history, as in other fields, the historical writer attempts to set forth the vital elements of the life of the people, so far as he has material for judging. Applying this criterion, we can hardly speak of American history earlier than the discovery by Columbus, because the material is too scanty for anything more than an imperfect notion of feeble native communities and a few far-away suggestions of earlier discoverers. Of human characters, of political devices, of economic development, of literature, and of religion, in America before Columbus, we can know almost nothing; and what we do know has scanty instruction for us.

We must also throw out of the effective field of American history almost the whole continent of South America, because the

life of the natives there, except in Peru, possesses little interest ; and because the Latin-Americans have made no significant contribution to the world's stock of social and political experience.

In the northern continent, where five European nations strove against each other to establish colonies, only three of them kept their hold for any considerable length of time ; of these Spain and France were the feebler colonizers and were gradually driven out by men of English race. The English acquired the dominant power in that part of the Americas where the physiographical conditions were best suited to a nation's growth. To that dominance succeeded the United States. In the English colonies and in the United States, which included most of them, have been developed and tested, and sent out to the rest of the world, principles of popular government which have altered the government of all nations having a western civilization. The Spanish-American States have during the last century made few advances. It is not boastful, therefore, to say that American history is principally the story of the development of the United States of America, from the earliest English settlements ; for the chief service America has rendered to the human race is the development of the great federal republic.

### § 3. Connection with the History of Other Countries.

American history, however, cannot be treated as a separate incident or as an independent movement ; in its roots and in its growth, the New World is a part of the Old World. It is a fundamental mistake to look upon modern Europeans as more directly than Americans the descendants of mediæval Europeans ; the most superficial sketch of American history must take into account the nations out of which our civilization has sprung, and especially England and the English political system. The institutions of the ancestors of the colonists had their roots in the feudal system, the mediæval church, and even in traditions of the Roman law and administration. But the English nation had flourished in an air of freedom and had developed those ideas of free government



which the English colonists brought with them, and which are the common inheritance of all the members of the Anglo-Saxon race.

Still, there must be drawn the line between the origin and predisposing causes of colonization and its results. In reading the history of the United States, we cannot go back in detail to Tacitus and the ancient Germans. Perhaps the most reasonable starting point of American history is a brief account of the social, political, and religious conditions of the colonizing countries, and particularly of England at the beginning of the colonization period. From that point American history proceeds, but never detached from the experiences of the rest of the world. The development of England during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries reacted powerfully on the colonies; all the European wars in which England had a part spread to the New World; the explorations of the American coast and interior, and the division of territory between nations were subjects for elaborate negotiations and international treaties between European powers. The history of the English colonies can, therefore, be understood only in the light of material drawn from foreign archives, especially those of England, France, Spain, and the Netherlands.

The two wars immediately preceding the foundation of the present republic — the French and Indian war, and the Revolutionary war — were especially European both in military and diplomatic events; and the study of the histories of the foreign countries interested in the New World, written from the foreign standpoint, is essential for a complete understanding of the colonial period by advanced students and teachers.

During the first forty years of the existence of the United States of America, the intimate connection with European history continued. Internal politics had a close connection with foreign treaties, wars, and territorial changes. Since the Florida cession, in 1819, the history of this country has had a closer relation with that of other American nations than with Europe; but there have always been outstanding international questions, such as the spoliation claims with France, the boundary disputes with England, and the relations with Hawaii. For many years thereafter the current of political influence was rather eastward than west-

ward; American constitutions and political experiments were adopted and imitated abroad. More recently immigration and the development of ocean transportation have again brought us into closer contact with the economic, political, and social problems of Europe.

Every student, teacher, and writer of American history must from the beginning keep in mind the fact that the development of this country is only a part of a general movement, and that in the relations of foreign powers with the nations of the New World is often to be found the key to the actual direction of American history.

#### § 4. Proper Position in a Curriculum.

In the opinion of the Conference on History which reported to the Committee of Ten in 1893, children may at eleven years of age profitably begin the formal study of history, and should carry it to the end of the high school. The programme suggested by the Conference introduces American history in two places: in the last year but one before reaching the high school, and in the third year of the high school. The advantage of such a division is that all pupils who reach well toward the end of the grammar school will have had some study of the subject; and that it can be repeated in a more systematic form when they are more mature. To set American history first in order is to exaggerate what is already strongest in a child's mind, his own surroundings. The history of any country taken by itself suggests too limited a set of human motives and habits of thought: we need cross lights, and Americans especially need contact with the story of other races and experiences. At the same time it is undoubtedly true that the best way to give a child a true conception of history, as of geography, is to begin with his surroundings and to let him observe for himself, as much as possible, how his own town, state, and government came into being. Such a process demands a thorough teacher, and can probably be applied only where the whole system of teaching is based on this centripetal and correlated plan.

In colleges American and English history are often the only branches of the subject taught. They should properly be preceded by a good college course in general history, with an adequate amount of collateral reading, and with some written work; a thorough course in English history, especially in the Tudor and Stuart periods, is perhaps the best preparation for American history; but mediæval and modern European history better precede than follow American history. Hence the careful study of American history is not likely to begin earlier than the Sophomore or Junior year; and should always be preceded by some subject more remote.

For graduate work American history is very convenient because the materials are everywhere about us and the field is little explored. It has also a close connection with the study of American government and economics, and therefore with current events. But no one can be fitted to be a specialist in American history who has not also a good all-round training in the general subject, and thus is able to compare intelligently the history of other countries with that of his own.

### § 5. **Educative Value.**

The same warning might be given to the student of other fields than American: no country furnishes in itself a sufficient lesson, — and the systematic study of the history of any nation which has really contributed to the world's political thought is educative in itself, and prepares the student to appreciate the history of other lands. In its effect on the mind American history is distinctly to be commended. The principal reasons for the study of history are that it trains the memory, is a steady practice in the use of materials, exercises the judgment, and sets before the student's mind a high standard of character. In all these respects American history is inferior to that of no other country. The events which are studied and should be kept in the memory are interesting in themselves and important for the world's development. The native races of America have for four centuries been a favorite subject for the imagination of Western Europe, and their

customs are a commentary on the customs of Europe at the dawn of history and during the Germanic invasions. The three centuries of strife between these native races and the white invaders — what Parkman calls “the history of the forest” — is one of the world’s treasure-houses of romantic episodes, comparable with the history of chivalry. To the men and the principles of the Revolution the world has agreed to give its admiration. The later settlement of the West has been as yet too little studied, but we can see already that it is a movement not less important than the migrations of the nations at the close of the period of the greatness of the Roman Empire. The slavery struggle, culminating in the Civil War, is one of the two most important and interesting episodes since the French Revolution. Though it be said that “facts of themselves are hard to learn, even when supported by artificial systems of memorizing . . . they are like digits in arithmetic; they are learned only as a means to an end”; nevertheless the facts of American history are absorbingly interesting.

As a training in the use of materials American history has the great advantage of possessing a large body of sources in English, the only language known to most school children, and scattered abroad in many available volumes. The stimulating study of local history by American young people is of course confined to American history. There is an historical school which holds no history to have much training value unless it require the use of several languages, and unless the material be so scanty and incomplete that the scholar is obliged to leap from one stepping stone of fact to another, or to build a bridge of presumptions. Is not that history most valuable in which the bases for a judgment are broadest and surest? Where the country described, and often the very scenes of historic interest, lie all about the student, it is like studying geology in a broken and irregular region. Logical reasoning is as well applied to the growth of the United States as to the growth of Rome: and accurate knowledge, the foundation of good judgment, is much easier to attain.

As a means also of training the judgment, American history has great advantages. The mind is chiefly developed in three ways: by cultivating the power of discriminating observation; by

strengthening the logical faculty of following an argument from point to point ; and by improving the process of comparison, that is, the judgment. It seems reasonable to claim that judgment about a country into the spirit of which a child is born, ought to have as sound a basis, and to be as quickly applicable to new problems, as judgment about a foreign nation with which its associations are purely artificial. The principal purpose of the study of history is to put the student into such a frame of mind that he may apply known principles to things with which he is for the first time confronted. It is the best training for administrative duties, for citizenship, for public life, and especially for the decision of any question which needs a knowledge of the past for its settlement.

So far as the study of character goes, American history furnishes a host of strong, individual, idea-producing men. Columbus, Franklin, Washington, Jefferson, Lincoln, Robert E. Lee, are some of the world's greatest forces. William Bradford, John Winthrop, Roger Williams, William Penn, the galaxy of Revolutionary statesmen, the great triumvirate, — Webster, Clay, and Calhoun, — are also men whose lives are a lesson in the art of statesmanship.

### § 6. Historical Basis.

Few countries have a history more complex and more difficult to reduce to a system. Many native races of various degrees of barbarism, and most races of Western Europe, have helped to people the United States. Settlements began at a number of widely separated points along the coast, which expanded into little commonwealths, each with its own institutions, interests and public men. Many of the early commonwealths became merged into others, as New Plymouth and New Haven ; most of these commonwealths continued, and the nation has thrown off additional states till there are now forty-five, each having a history of its own. The central government is complicated, and each part of it has had its peculiar growth. It is difficult to find a clue through the maze ; but it is not impossible, if regard be had for certain well-defined principles.

In the first place, the settlers whose children were to control North America were all of one stock, and had one general set of institutions which they brought with them from Britain. Some expanded one side of these institutions, and some another : but they were substantially the same people, having always much more in common than any of them had with any other people. As the English race grew and developed, Britain and the Colonies both diverged from one another and from the original type, the colonies perhaps less than the mother country : but to this day the two nations have substantially the same system of law and the same political traditions.

In the second place the significant part of America has never ceased growing since the beginning. The colonies stretched inland ; the United States spread its boundaries wider and wider ; new communities have continually been forming, widening and throwing off swarms to found other communities. The formation of the states west of the Alleghanies was in reality colonization of a new type, settlement of adjacent regions ; and the result has been the most successful relation between mother country and dependent communities : for the outlyers were from the first promised statehood. The basis of the nation has continually been widening, and hence unexpected changes have succeeded each other in the make-up of the general government. In this respect this nation has had a different set of social and economic problems from those of the older world.

In the third place a sectional divergence between North and South began to appear, and was much accentuated by the early throwing off of slavery by the Northern states. Slavery, therefore, harmful in itself to the section in which it persisted, became a rock of division within the Union, and no permanent peace was possible while it existed.

In the fourth place the people of the United States have shown a decided desire to come closer together, a tendency which triumphed over the disjointed condition of the country in the years immediately following the Revolution, and over the separatist tendencies of the slavery conflict. In one sentence,—the history of America is substantially a history of the development

of English traditions in a new and rich country, and among a people who in the last few decades have gradually developed a strong sense of their own common interests.

### § 7. Convenient Subdivisions.

Keeping in mind that the growth of America has been steady and advancing from beginning to end on natural lines, no great crises appear dividing American history into separate periods: colonization grew out of the conditions of Europe; colonial institutions expanded out of English institutions; the Revolution was probably an inevitable result of divergence in the institutions of the two branches of the English stock; the Constitution was an adaptation of what the people had learned in the experience of their own colonial and state governments, in the Revolution and the trying time which followed it; the peaceful revolutions of Jefferson's and Jackson's elections were what might have been expected from the growth of the democratic spirit, the opening up of the West, and the extension of the suffrage; the Civil War was the final array of forces long opposed to each other.

The memory is, however, aided and the succession of the history made more clear by suggesting the principal groups into which the events of American history arrange themselves. Suggestions as to the subdivisions of topics in American history may be found in W. F. Allen's *History Topics*; in the tables of contents of standard histories, especially those of Hildreth and McMaster; in the analyses of such school histories as Scudder's *United States*, and Fiske's *School History*; and in the various topical outlines noted futher on. The following series of such suggestions are meant to serve as a basis for courses of lectures or lessons, and can be used in connection with the general readings (§ 56) or topical readings (Parts II and III).

#### § 7 a. Ten Topics.

1. Discovery of America.
2. English Colonization.
3. Colonial Institutions.



4. The Revolution.
5. The Constitution.
6. Organization of the Government.
7. Political Organizations and Parties.
8. The Slavery Struggle.
9. The Civil War.
10. Reconstruction of the Union.

#### § 7 b. Twenty Topics.

1. The Physiography of the United States.
2. Discovery and Exploration.
3. Southern Colonization.
4. Northern Colonization.
5. Southern Institutions.
6. Northern Institutions.
7. The Expulsion of the French.
8. The Causes of the Revolution.
9. The Revolution.
10. Formation of the Constitution.
11. Organization under the New Constitution.
12. The Federalist System of Government.
13. The Democratic-Republican System of Government.
14. The Development of National Consciousness.
15. Political Development.
16. Slavery Questions.
17. Territorial Slavery.
18. The Irrepressible Conflict.
19. The Civil War.
20. Reconstruction.

#### § 7 c. Fifty Topics.

##### 1492-1760. Exploration and Settlement.

1. Physiography of North America.
2. 1492-1540. The Epoch of Discovery.
3. 1492-1700. Spanish, French, and English Claims to the soil of North America.



4. 1513-1700. Spanish and French Colonization.
5. 1606-1760. Settlement of the Southern English Colonies.
6. 1614-1760. Settlement of the Middle Colonies.
7. 1606-1760. Settlement of New England.

1760. **Government and Social Conditions.**

8. 1760. Forms of Government.
9. 1760. Virginia and Maryland.
10. 1760. The Carolinas and Georgia.
11. 1760. The Middle Colonies.
12. 1620-1760. Local Government in New England.
13. 1760. New England.

1606-1776. **The Causes of the Revolution.**

14. 1689-1763. Decline of the French and Spanish Colonies.
15. 1760-1767. The English Colonies and the British Government.
16. 1765-1775. Growth toward Union and Independence.

1775-1783. **The American Revolution.**

17. 1776. The Great Declaration and American Political Theories.
18. 1774-1781. The Continental Congress and its Relations with the States.
19. 1775-1777. The War in the North.
20. 1776-1781. The War in the South.
21. 1776-1783. The Diplomacy of the Revolution.
22. 1775-1783. The Finances of the Revolution.

1776-1789. **Formation of the Constitution.**

23. 1776-1781. The States and the Public Lands.
24. 1776-1781. The Articles of Confederation.
25. 1781-1787. The Critical Period.
26. 1787-1789. Formation of the Constitution.

## 1789-1829. Development of Nationality.

27. 1789-1793. Organization of the Government.
28. 1793-1801. Supremacy of the Federalist Party.
29. 1801-1807. Supremacy of the Democratic-Republican Party.
30. 1807-1815. Elements of the War of 1812.
31. 1818-1821. The Missouri Compromise.
32. 1809-1826. The Monroe Doctrine and the Panama Congress.
33. 1824-1829. The Triumph of Jacksonian Democracy.

## 1829-1850. The Slavery Contest.

34. 1829-1837. Personal Elements of Jackson's Administration.
35. 1789-1893. Principles of Appointment and Removal.
36. 1829-1839. Jackson's War on the Bank.
37. 1816-1840. Tariff Legislation and Nullification.
38. 1829-1842. The Indians and the Public Lands.
39. 1831-1841. The Abolition Movement.
40. 1836-1848. Annexation of Texas and the Mexican War.
41. 1846-1850. The Compromise of 1850.

## 1850-1862. Preliminaries of the Civil War.

42. 1850-1860. The Question of Fugitive Slaves.
43. 1854-1858. The Kansas Struggle.
44. 1854-1860. Development of an Anti-Slavery Party.
45. 1854-1861. Secession Accomplished.

## 1862-1895. Reconstruction and Reunion.

46. 1862-1865. The Abolition of Slavery.
47. 1862-1876. Process of Reconstruction.
48. 1865-1879. Financial Questions.
49. 1867-1883. Civil Service.
50. 1879-1895. The Tariff.

§ 7 d. **One Hundred Topics.**1492-1540. **Discovery and Exploration.**

1. Physiography of North America.
2. The Aborigines and their Institutions.
3. 1492-1506. Columbus, Vesputius, and the Cabots.
4. 1506-1540. Spanish Explorations North of Darien.
5. 1524-1608. French Explorations on the Atlantic Seaboard.
6. 1608-1750. The French in the Interior and on the Gulf of Mexico.
7. 1497-1606. English Explorations.

1606-1760. **English Colonization in the South.**

8. 1606-1624. The Founding of Virginia.
9. 1624-1660. Virginia under the King and Commonwealth.
10. 1660-1700. Bacon's Rebellion, its Causes and Results.
11. 1700-1760. The Expansion of Virginia.
12. 1760. Form of Government of a Royal Province.
13. 1632-1760. The Founding of Maryland.
14. 1645-1760. Religion and Toleration in Maryland.
15. 1760. Virginia and Maryland in 1760.
16. 1663-1760. Settlement of the Carolinas and Georgia.
17. 1760. Government and Society in the Carolinas and Georgia in 1760.

1609-1760. **Settlement of the Middle Colonies.**

18. 1609-1664. The Dutch Colony of New Netherland.
19. 1664-1760. The English Colony of New York.
20. 1664-1760. The English Colony of New Jersey.
21. 1660-1690. The Founding of Pennsylvania.
22. 1690-1760. The Expansion of Pennsylvania.
23. 1760. The Middle Colonies in 1760.

**1606-1760. Colonization of New England.**

- 24. 1600-1630. The English Puritans and their Principles.
- 25. 1620-1680. New Plymouth Colony.
- 26. 1629-1643. The Founding of Massachusetts.
- 27. 1635-1643. The Founding of Connecticut and New Haven.
- 28. 1636-1663. The Founding of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations.
- 29. 1643-1684. The United Colonies of New England.
- 30. 1620-1760. Local Government in New England.
- 31. 1760. Government in New England.
- 32. 1760. Social and Economic Conditions.

**1606-1776. The Causes of the Revolution.**

- 33. 1608-1750. French and Spanish Colonies in North America.
- 34. 1750-1763. Expulsion of the French and Spaniards from Eastern North America.
- 35. 1760-1766. Great Britain asserts its Supremacy.
- 36. 1606-1766. Relations of the Colonies to Great Britain.
- 37. 1767-1775. The Townshend Acts and Colonial Union.
- 38. 1765-1775. Organization of the Opposition to Great Britain.

**1775-1783. The American Revolution.**

- 39. 1774-1781. The Continental Congress, its Authority and Rules.
- 40. 1776-1780. The State Governments.
- 41. 1776-1781. Congress and the States.
- 42. 1775-1776. The First Campaigns.
- 43. 1776. The Declaration of Independence.
- 44. 1777-1780. The Later Campaigns in the North.
- 45. 1778. The French Alliance.
- 46. 1776-1781. The War in the Southern Department.

47. 1776-1783. The Finances of the Revolution.  
 48. 1782-1783. The Negotiations at Paris and the Treaty of Peace.

1776-1790. Formation of the Constitution.

49. 1776-1781. Land Claims and Cessions.  
 50. 1776-1781. The Formation of the Articles of Confederation.  
 51. 1781-1788. The Articles of Confederation from a constitutional point of view.  
 52. 1781-1802. Territorial Questions.  
 53. 1781-1788. Financial Questions.  
 54. 1777-1788. Slavery Questions.  
 55. 1781-1788. Decline of the Confederation.  
 56. 1787. The Federal Convention.  
 57. 1787. Purport and Nature of the Constitution.  
 58. 1787-1790. Ratification of the Constitution.

1789-1829. Growth of Nationality.

59. 1789-1793. Political Organization of the Government.  
 60. 1789-1793. Financial and Commercial Organization.  
 61. 1789-1807. Beginning of the Slavery Contest.  
 62. 1793-1801. Foreign Policy of the Federalists.  
 63. 1801-1805. Political Policy of the Republicans.  
 64. 1805-1811. Causes of the War of 1812.  
 65. 1812-1815. War of 1812 and its effects.  
 66. 1818-1821. The Missouri Compromise.  
 67. 1809-1823. The Monroe Doctrine.  
 68. 1815-1829. Political Development.

1829-1861. Economic Questions and the Slavery Contest.

69. 1829-1841. Personal Elements of Jackson's Administration.  
 70. 1789-1895. Appointments and Removals.  
 71. 1789-1895. Indian Policy of the United States.

72. 1829-1837. Jackson's War with the Bank, and the Surplus.
73. 1789-1895. Tariff Legislation and Nullification.
74. 1789-1895. Public Lands and Internal Improvements.
75. 1829-1861. Negro Slavery.
76. 1831-1841. The Abolition Movement.
77. 1829-1861. The Controversy over Slavery.
78. 1829-1854. International and Interstate Slavery.
79. 1841-1848. Annexation of Texas and the Mexican War.
80. 1846-1853. Territorial Slavery and the Compromise of 1850.
81. 1850-1859. Fugitive Slaves and the John Brown Insurrection.
82. 1853-1858. The Kansas Struggle.
83. 1830-1860. Causes of Secession.
84. 1860-1861. Progress of Secession.
85. 1860-1861. The Outbreak of the Civil War.
- 1861-1894. The Civil War and Readjustment.**
86. 1861-1865. Internal Government.
87. 1861-1865. The Southern Confederacy.
88. 1861-1865. Financial Measures.
89. 1861-1865. Military and Foreign Affairs.
90. 1861-1865. Abolition of Slavery.
91. 1864-1869. Process of Reconstruction.
92. 1865-1869. Fourteenth and Fifteenth Amendments.
93. 1869-1876. Recovery of Southern White Supremacy.
94. 1865-1879. The Currency.
95. 1867-1895. Civil Service.
96. 1865-1895. Pensions.
97. 1879-1895. Monetary Standard.
98. 1861-1895. The Tariff.
99. 1861-1895. Creation of New States.
100. 1865-1895. Foreign Complications.

*[For a more extended list of topics with references to Parts II and III of this GUIDE, see Table of Contents.]*

## II. METHODS IN GENERAL.

### § 8. The Place of "Method."

It is easy to plunge into the study of American history ; books are abundant, and the subject is vast and attractive. To reach a satisfactory result is more difficult ; the material requires sifting, the secondary books need critical use, and the text-books are often bald and inadequate. Above all, no historical subject has more need of intelligent selection of topics and references, or of systematic and thorough investigation.

"Method" is simply the use of devices which experience has suggested, for gaining and holding the student's interest, and for applying his time and thought in such a way as to make mental effort go farthest toward securing a permanent impression. There is no general method suited to all ages, or circumstances, or minds, or even to all parts of the subject. Method is simply a means to an end ; and uniformity in methods denotes that the means has become perverted. The objects to be attained are simple, and a few principles may be laid down as to the best way of attaining them.

The primary necessity in history is to know the truth, and that implies that every student should see for himself how history is written. This is best done by a study of the sources upon which every historical writer must base his knowledge. Hence all good methods include training in the use of the original records on which a statement is based. In schools this part of the work can usually be done by using extracts from the sources ; in colleges there may be the use of a considerable body of sources on limited subjects ; in graduate work the student must learn to exhaust all the sources of information on the subject which he has chosen to investigate.

The next essential is to train the student to handle secondary works with discrimination. In schools this may be taught by using several parallel text-books, and comparing them with standard authors ; in colleges by wide collateral reading ; in

advanced work by a study of authors, and by tracking them back to their sources. One of the first things to break up in a child's mind is the confidence that "it must be so because the book says so"; he must learn to discriminate between accurate and inaccurate books, as well as between accounts written at second or third hand and records of contemporaries of the events which they describe.

The task of finding material which bears on a particular subject grows harder as books multiply; hence every pupil, reader, teacher, and investigator must know how to use bibliographical aids; how to get at that which bears directly on his subject, with the least possible expenditure of energy upon the mechanical part of study. In schools such work must be very simple, and may be confined to the lists of books in text-books and standard authors; in colleges every student should learn how to use library and periodical indexes; in investigation a knowledge of bibliography opens the gate to many important fields of materials.

The study of history also includes experience in recording what one hears or reads. This training is necessary to enable one to recall what has once gone through the mind, to use the facts thus recorded in other combinations, and to make plain the results of such investigation to other people. Hence, a good method includes training in note-taking and in the statement of results in a clear and comprehensible fashion. The youngest child, who can write and set down what he sees in the world about him, can also note historical facts in their simplest and broadest form. In the college, where lectures are common, the note-books are indispensable, and should be a plain, well-arranged record. To the investigator training in workmanlike note-taking is especially desirable; for on the accuracy and clearness of his notes the value of his conclusions often depends. It should always be borne distinctly in mind, however, that the taking and keeping of notes is not scholarship; but only a convenient means by which scholarship may be attained.

To reach conclusions for one's self, to arrange material cogently and make it speak to other people is the highest and most difficult historical task. Yet in principle it is not unlike the process by which a child tells whether or no a flower is growing, or whether



a weight falls more slowly on a slope than directly downward. Historical compositions should be very simple pieces of historical deduction. In college, theses and "special reports" test and train the power of statement. The graduate student and historical writer must show this power or fail.

History includes a knowledge of the people whose annals are being studied — their antecedents, habits, traditions, and character; and also a knowledge of the natural conditions which surround them — the physical conformation of their country, the climate, productions, and means of communication. Geography, sociology, and economics — in their truest senses — are necessary aids to history, in all grades of study up to the work of the most accomplished historian.

### § 9. Preparation of Teachers.

In 1893 the Conference on History, Civil Government, and Political Economy, in its Report to the Committee of Ten, thought it necessary to give this warning: "Finally, we urge that only teachers who have had adequate special training shall be employed to teach these important subjects." Such preparation is no longer difficult to get by those who are fitting themselves for the profession of teaching, and it is not out of the reach of those already in service. Self-training is hard to apply to history because so much depends on the suggestion of the teacher, the comparison of views, and the practice in working on historical material. For those who have no other opportunity, and yet are determined to study American history, the methods suggested in § 13 are recommended, although it is hard to learn how to do things well without some criticism and assistance. Those who cannot go beyond a high-school education have no opportunity properly to prepare for teaching; they can only make the most possible out of the practical exercises which have been required of them. In normal schools history is apt to be taught in a very superficial way, without the life-giving contact with a variety of material, including sources. College courses in history may furnish good training if they call for plenty of written work and reflection, and they might

be coupled with suitable courses in pedagogics. The graduate schools are intended to provide instruction for those who are to be teachers of specialities, and they should be the best schools of historical training. In all places, intending teachers should take pains to get as broad a foundation as possible, to study in as many branches of the subject, and under as many different instructors as circumstances permit.

For teachers already at work, and who cannot take the time for a year or more of regular study, there are several systems at command — teachers' institutes, Chautauqua gatherings, and summer schools. The summer schools, now offered by many universities, give contact with trained minds, the use of large libraries, and practice in approved methods. University extension, whenever it is really a system of work and not of mere listening to lectures, opens up new fields and modes of thought. A few universities are now establishing courses open to teachers during the school year, and carried on in exact and educative methods. In a few places university instruction in pedagogy is also open to actual teachers. Whatever the opportunity, no teacher of history ought to be satisfied without making every effort to improve himself in knowledge and in practical historical methods. Wherever there are suitable opportunities to prepare for the teaching of history in general, American history is likely to receive due attention. The essentials of proper preparation are a knowledge of the details, which may be gained from judicious reading; a knowledge of American literature, as a collateral and source of illustration; and experience in using material. Travel, the visiting of historical sites and monuments, is also a great aid.

Assuming good general training, how is the teacher to prepare for the day's exercises? He should in his own reading have accumulated extracts and illustrations with which to enrich the lesson; he should know the text-book so well that he need not open it. The teacher's function is not to enforce study, but to arrange and organize the material outside the text-book, to apply it where it will enlarge the text-book, and to stimulate the pupils. That is, the teacher's preparation is of the same sort as the pupil's preparation, only broader and fuller, and coördinated beforehand.

### § 10. School Work.

What part of the work in American history may be undertaken in primary and secondary schools? The most advanced suggestion is for teaching during eight—or even six—years, of which about a third would be given to American history and allied subjects, such as civil government. The amount of time devoted to history is enough to teach children something about great men and the legends which gather around them, the elements of Ancient history, and of French and English history, American history during two years, and one year of “intensive study,” which in many cases would be given to an American subject. Children up to sixteen or seventeen years old are perfectly capable of doing all that is included in this programme. They should usually first cover the whole field in a simple text-book, with collateral reading of extracts from standard authors; later they should go over the same ground again with a more advanced text-book, wider reading, topical work, and compositions on subjects chosen from American history, taking up as a parallel study civil government and the principles of economics. In the year of intensive study they should use secondary authorities widely, and make some use of the sources. Throughout the course historical geography ought to be taught, reiterated, and enforced, till it comes home to the child’s mind as an inseparable part of historical study. Illustrative methods should also be used, such as the display of maps, charts, and lantern-slides; and interest may be stimulated by visits to historic places, by debates, and by mock legislatures. Children may also be aroused by the study of their own local history and institutions.

The first thing that is needed for American history in schools is the conviction that it is a serious subject, not studied for mere information, or simply “to make good citizens,” but as a valuable means of training the mind to collect material, to distinguish between truth, probability, and falsehood, and to assemble and analyze the materials for forming an opinion. History is almost the only philosophical subject in the grammar-school curriculum, almost the only one dealing with human character and motives as

a basis for study. To a child who does not go beyond the grammar school, history ought to give an interest in knowing what really happens, as distinguished from what is merely rumored. To the pupils going on to colleges and professional schools it should be a foundation for later work. Toward the end of the grammar-school course, then, there should be a year devoted to American history. It should be taught as a practical, and not simply as a text-book, subject, dealing with the "elements" of the subject in the large sense of the word,—that is, it should include some notion of the historical geography of North America, of the people who came into the New World, and of the principal events in their development into a great nation. In the high schools the instruction should include more use of materials and more written work.

### § 11. College Work.

Such a thing as an "information course" should not exist in a college; it is less excusable in American history than in most other subjects, because there is so much material at hand which can be used for training. With older minds, already accustomed to read, to study, and to digest history, the text-book should be some brief and comprehensive sketch, intended only to show the relation of the parts of the subject, and the development of one period out of another. Details should be gained by extensive reading, so arranged as to take in a variety of authors. The advice of the German professor as to the three requisites of historical study is pertinent: "(1) Read; (2) read widely; (3) read very widely." Historical reading is like the making of Japanese lacquer work: one imperceptible coating is added to another; by and by it is found that where the layers are most numerous a pattern stands out in relief. The effect left in the mind from reading many books on the same subject is a picture in which the shades are the spots on which all or most of the authors have touched. The works in American history are now numerous, well written, and valuable. The literature is extraordinarily rich in biographies and books of reminiscence, as well as in the works of public men, so that there is not merely an opportunity to fill the mind with well-

chosen thoughts, but an equal opportunity to weigh opinions and set them over against each other. (See § 58 for a description of a method of collateral reading known as the "conference system.")

The college is also a place where written work of all kinds is most easily carried out. In later pages (§§ 65-73) the effort will be made to describe several appropriate systems in detail. Without some such work, — topics, papers, special reports, written recitations, essays or theses, — the training element of the subject is lost. In American history such work is especially advisable; in few subjects is there such a variety of topics of every degree of difficulty, many of them as yet quite unwrought. The college has also an atmosphere of interest in political and historical matters, which makes possible many side devices for lighting up the subject, such as lectures, public debates, discussions, and the like.

It is possible also in college to specialize in American history, to take courses in the theory of government, in constitutional law, in American diplomacy, in financial and economic history, in American government, and in federal government, as well as in American literature; and to make a special study of some one period or topic. The college is the place for laying a deep foundation on a broad sub-structure. Here also is the great opportunity to connect American history with that of other countries.

### § 12. Investigation.

The present accumulated knowledge of history is due to the investigators who have examined and correlated the sources of history, and then have generalized upon them. Investigation is the most difficult kind of historical study, but it is perhaps the most valuable sort of training, because it requires patience and thoroughness in searching for material, judgment in selecting out of it the cogent facts, a peculiar training of the analytical powers in arranging and classifying material, a high degree of mental force in making generalizations, and quick imagination in so stating the results as to appeal to other minds.

These advantages may be gained throughout all the parts of the educational field. The youngest pupil who begins to study

history for himself, may be taught to find and to bring forward a contribution of facts got somewhere outside of the text-book. As he progresses, more emphasis may be laid on the necessity of getting back of secondary books in order to settle particular points. A pupil very early may be taught to distinguish between contemporary accounts and records, and later works based on such material. The topical method (§ 67) may be so used as to instil this principle.

In college, where the object is to get a general view of history, and where students are expected to read and digest much from standard works, the benefits of investigation can best be gained by practice in going to the bottom of very limited subjects, so as to be prepared in later life to look up historical points, or intelligently to review the work of others.

In the graduate school, and often in the upper classes of the college, where there is an opportunity for specialization, historical investigation becomes the most important element in the student's training. He must learn to exhaust the literature of the subject, to use all the available material, and to make himself master of that which he undertakes to investigate. A good standard for such a student to set before himself is to consider, from the beginning, how he can state the results in a manner most likely to be useful to others. Whether he aims at publication or not, his work should be written with reference to the reader.

American history lends itself readily to investigation in all grades, because the material is almost all in English, and because it is so available for pupils of every age. There are various sets of leaflets adapted for school use, and extracts from the works of the early narrators and travelers are in many places available for school reading. Most colleges have a set of the invaluable documents published by the United States Government, and many have full sets of colonial records. Some of the larger universities have access to such unsurpassed collections as those of the Boston Public Library, the Carter-Brown Library in Providence, the Lenox Library in New York, the Peabody Library of Baltimore, and the collections of the various state historical societies.

**§ 13. Study without a Teacher.**

Since the material of history is to be found in considerable part in print, the subject is one which can be carried on without a teacher and even without access to a large library. The admirable work of several societies for directing people by correspondence has proved that the study of history may be made both profitable and pleasant to persons far away from schools and universities; and the Chautauqua systems of directed home study have widely extended the love for the study of history. A distinction must be made between reading history and studying it. Such writers as Macaulay and Parkman may be read as one would read other masterpieces of English literature, and will leave a distinct impression upon the mind; but the study of history implies a concentration upon a field small enough to permit the use of various parallel authorities.

It is of little use to try to study general history by one's self. The best books are brief and cannot present the warm picture of men and stirring events which may be obtained from lectures and extended study. American history, however, is well adapted for home study. The first necessity is to choose some brief books which cover the ground in a summary fashion, so that the student may have in his mind the dimensions of the subject; then comes the process of widening, the working out of the ground plan of the historical edifice. For this purpose the students should choose some of the standard histories such as are suggested in paragraph 20 below or through the topical analyses (§ 16b). In the better brief books will be found lists of classified authorities. It is desirable that a student should own his books, so that he may annotate them in the margins as he goes on. Another excellent exercise is to put into the margins a running analysis of the book: it sharpens the faculties to consider what is the author's precise intention in each successive paragraph; and whenever the reader has occasion to use the same book again he will be surprised to find how the argument comes back to him through his abstract. Many students have derived benefit from the practice of writing out in a brief form the ideas which have been gathered from



reading on some previous day. Such a practice continued for a few weeks will almost invariably strengthen the memory and improve one's powers of application.

Having thus gone over several books on a period, the student begins to find that one effaces another; the methods, the order, the proportions, of one writer do not agree with those of the next; and the knowledge of men and events so laboriously acquired begins to dissolve in the very multiplicity of facts. Hence, it is necessary for the student at home to make up some written outline of his subject,—a sort of table of contents of his questions, arranged in what seems to him a logical order. This outline will be in a sense the student's own history. If several persons are working together in classes there may be some sub-division of labor. Thus, in studying the administration of Jackson one person may well take up Jackson's personal character; another his relations with the civil service; another his bank controversy; another the nullification episode; another the surplus-revenue question; and each may then communicate his results to the others.

The student at home should not neglect the use of sources. Presumably he will not have material so abundant that he may base his study upon it; but he ought to read enough to give him that flavor of original accounts which is indispensable for the right understanding of history. For instance, after going over a brief account of the Confederation and then reading Curtis or McMaster, a student should read Washington's letter of 1783 to the governors, the Northwest Ordinance, and Patrick Henry's speech in the Virginia Convention on the results of the Confederation. While it is not likely that the student will reach different conclusions from those of the standard writers, he will certainly come into contact with the men of the time which he is studying.

It is difficult to get a sharp and permanent impression from general books, or even from sources, without some system of note-taking. On the other hand, students are apt to do too much of this sort of writing; they copy out long, exact quotations from books which are perfectly accessible; they do not know how to digest the author's statements and to reduce them to a brief form.



Notes should be a summary rather than a digest ; they should state the main points with sufficient illustration to make the argument clear. The principal danger of the lonely student is always that he will read too much and absorb too little. Without some system of brief note-taking and outlining, the subject will quickly disappear. One means of holding it is for the student from time to time to write some historical narrative, using in part such original material as may be accessible to him. Another is to take every opportunity to listen to historical lectures, and so to add the element of personal association to that of knowledge of facts.

#### § 14. Collateral Subjects.

As has several times been suggested above (§ 3) the study of American history does not stand alone ; it should be associated throughout with the study of kindred subjects and of other fields of history. Geography cannot be too much emphasized ; a knowledge of the elementary physical geography of North America is essential for an understanding of the course of settlement and the distribution of races and communities inland. Political geography is founded upon physical, and is an index of the interplay of nations. Since the most absorbing questions of American history have been social and economic, a knowledge of the principles of economics is necessary for teachers and desirable in an elementary form for pupils. American literature, as illustrating the spirit of the people, is also a part of American history.

Of the histories of other countries, that of England comes nearest to ours, and up to 1776 the two are practically parts of each other. France was also for a century and a half an active political factor in North America, and the French Revolution is closely connected with the American. Spain was long a rival and enemy of the English colonies, and by the possession of Cuba is still important in the history of the United States. The Netherlands, Switzerland, and Germany furnish valuable points of comparison with our federal system ; and in the Napoleonic Wars the United States was a sufferer and at length a participant.

### III. BIBLIOGRAPHY OF AMERICAN HISTORY.

#### § 15. Bibliography of Methods in History.

To the subject of methods in history great attention has been paid of late years, and a considerable literature both of books and periodical articles has grown up. Those here mentioned are almost all in English. There are two bibliographies of the subject :

Granville Stanley Hall and John Mansfield, *Hints toward a Select and Descriptive Bibliography of Education*. Boston, Heath, 1886. — Includes the titles of many books, pamphlets, and articles on history, especially at pp. 140–149.

Burke Aaron Hinsdale, *How to Study and Teach History with Particular Reference to the History of the United States*. N.Y., Appleton, 1894 (International Education series, Vol. XXV). — Bibliographical note at the beginning of each chapter. An admirable book in arrangement and execution.

#### § 15 a. Books and Essays on Methods.

✓ Charles Kendall Adams, *A Manual of Historical Literature*. N.Y., Harper, 1882. Also later editions.

✓ Herbert B. Adams, *The Study of History in the United States in American Colleges and Universities*. Bureau of Education, Circular of Information No. 2. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1887.

William Parsons Atkinson, *On History and the Study of History*. Boston, Roberts, 1884.

William Parsons Atkinson, *The Study of Politics, an Introductory Lecture*. Boston, 1888.

John Sherren Brewer, *English Studies or Essays in English History and Literature*. Edited with a prefatory memoir by Henry Wace. London, 1881.

G. Diesterweg, *Instruction in History*. Translated from Diesterweg's *Wegweiser zur Bildung für Deutsche Lehrer* by Mina Wesselhoeft. (Forms Part I of G. S. Hall's *Pedagogical Library*, Vol. I, *Methods of*

*Teaching History*.) Boston, Ginn, 1883. Also published separately by Heath, Boston, 1885.

✓ Johann Gustav Droysen, *Outline of the Principles of History*. (*Grundriss der Historik*.) Translated by Elisha Benjamin Andrews. Boston, Ginn, 1893.

Frank Hugh Foster, *The Seminary Method of Original Study in the Historical Sciences illustrated from Church History*. N.Y., Scribners, 1888.

Edward A. Freeman, *Methods of Historical Study*. Eight lectures read in the University of Oxford. London, Macmillan, 1886.

James Anthony Froude, *Short Studies on Great Subjects*. N.Y., 1873. — *The Science of History*, Series I, pp. 7-36; *The Scientific Method applied to History*, Series II, 445.

Wilbur Fisk Gordy and Willis Ira Twitchell, *A Pathfinder in American History*. Boston, Lee, 1893. — For the use of teachers, normal schools, and more mature pupils.

G. S. Hall, editor, *Methods of Teaching History*. Boston, Ginn, 1883. Second edition, 1885, entirely recast and rewritten (*Pedagogical Library*, Vol. I). Third edition in preparation in 1895. — Essays by various hands. Bibliography of French and German works, pp. v-viii.

Frederick Harrison, *The Meaning of History*. London, Macmillan, 1894.

Albert Bushnell Hart, *Studies in American Education*. N.Y., Longmans, 1895. — Essays iv and v are on the study and teaching of History.

Albert Bushnell Hart, *Revised Suggestions on the Study of the History and Government of the United States*. Cambridge, Harvard University, 1895. — Prepared principally for the use of students in Harvard University.

National Educational Association. Committee on Secondary School Studies (Committee of Ten), *Report, with the Reports of the Conferences*. United States Bureau of Education, whole No. 205. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1893. Also another edition. N.Y., American Book Co., 1894. — *The Report of the Conference on History, Civil Government, and Political Economy* is at pp. 162-203 in both editions.

John T. Prince, *Methods of Instruction and Organization of the Schools of Germany*. Boston, Lee, 1892. — No. x is on Geography and History.

H. Reed, *Lectures in English History*. Phila., 1885.

George E. Seymour, *The Study of History; its functions*. St. Louis, 1889. Privately printed.

Francis Newton Thorpe, *American History in American Schools, Colleges, and Universities*. — Reprint from *Education*, VII, 149, 234.

J. Wells, *The Teaching of History in Schools*. London, 1892.

### § 15 b. Selected Periodical Articles on Methods.

#### Academy, Syracuse.

Mary Sheldon Barnes, *General History in the High School* (IV, 285); Lucy M. Salmon, *History in Academies and Colleges* (V, 283); A. B. Hart, *History in High and Preparatory Schools* (II, 256, 306); Rose B. Winterburn, *History in High Schools* (VI, 510); L. H. Porter, *Study of History* (III, 136); I. B. Burgess, *Methods of Teaching College Preparatory History* (III, 293).

#### Atlantic Monthly, Boston.

Andrew Dickson White, *The Study of History*, Jan. 1870, pp. 44-56.

#### American Historical Association Papers.

John Jay, *The Demand for Education in American History* (V, Nos. 1 and 2).

#### Arena, Boston.

James Schindler, *History in Public Schools* (I, 40).

#### Chautauquan, Meadville.

Albert Bushnell Hart, *How to Study History* (XVIII, 17). Reprinted in the writer's *Studies in American Education*, No. iv.

#### Education, Boston.

S. Mackibbin, *Outline Course of Study in History* (X, 159); H. B. Adams, *History in American Colleges* (Harvard, VI, 535, 618; Columbia, VII, 7, 92; Amherst, VII, 177; Yale, VII, 334); H. P. Judson, *History in Secondary Schools* (VI, 19); J. L. Hughes, *Topical Teaching of History* (II, 410); J. M. Greenwood, *Teaching of History* (IV, 623); W. Boughton, *Study of Local History* (XIII, 400).

#### Educational Review, New York.

L. M. Salmon, *History in Elementary Schools* (I, 438); R. G. Huling, *History in Secondary Education* (VII, 448); A. B. Hart, *Entrance Requirements in History* (X, 417).

#### Johns Hopkins University Studies in Historical and Political Science, Baltimore.

H. B. Adams, *Methods of Historical Study* (II, Nos. 1, 2); Andrew D. White, *European Schools of History and Politics* (V, No. 12);

P. Fredericq, *Study of History in England and Scotland* (V, No. 10); *Study of History in Belgium and Holland* (VII, No. 10); *Study of History in Germany and France* (VIII, Nos. 5, 6).

**Magazine of American History, New York.**

J. Schouler, *Historical Grouping* (XVIII, 326); *Ibid.*, *The Spirit of Historical Research* (XXIII, 132); W. Barrows, *Methods of Teaching History* (XIX, 245); C. K. Adams, *Recent Historical Work* (XXIII, 111).

**National Educational Association, Transactions.**

John Henry Wright, *The Place of Original Research in College Education*. 1892.

**School Review, Hamilton, N.Y.**

New England Association of Colleges and Preparatory Schools, *Report of the Conference on College Entrance Requirements* (III, 469); *Complete Report of the Tenth Annual Meeting* (III, 592).

**§ 15 c. Collateral Authorities on Methods.**

Parts of some of the general books contain special material on American History, especially W. F. Allen and others in Hall's *Methods of Teaching History*. Special suggestions to teachers may be found in the introduction to many of the brief school histories, especially: J. G. Allen, *Topical References*; G. L. Fox, *Study of History in Unity Clubs and Classes*; Alexander Johnston, *School History*; Horace E. Scudder, *School History*; A. C. Thomas, *History of the United States*; Sheldon-Barnes, *Studies in American History*; *Epochs of American History*, etc.

**§ 16. Special Bibliographical Aids.**

No systematic bibliography of American History exists. Sabin's *Dictionary of Books relating to America* is intended to include the title of every book published in America or about America: but it includes only titles up to the dates of the several volumes (1867-92) and it does not refer to periodicals. It now (1895) reaches the name of Henry H. Smith; a set costs, including all numbers so far published, about five hundred dollars. Of the

publishers' catalogues Clarke's *Bibliotheca Americana* is the most useful. Leypoldt's *American Catalogue* contains the titles of all books in print in America in 1876, and since issued up to 1890. Justin Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History of America* is a work of vast learning, and includes admirable bibliographies of all subjects treated. These bibliographies are complete to the date of publication (1884-1889); but the plan of the work did not provide for titles on the history of the United States since about 1840. W. E. Foster's invaluable *References to the History of Presidential Administrations*, and *References to the Constitution*, do not go back of about 1787. He has recently begun a new series of useful bibliographies in the *Bulletin* of the Library over which he so ably presides. Several topical outlines have been prepared by college and other teachers, of which Sparks's *Topical References* is the fullest: but they deal very little with sources. Poole's *Index*, the lists in the American edition of the *Review of Reviews*, Fletcher's *A. L. A. Index* (which hardly justifies its title) and Jones's *Index to Legal Periodicals* are indispensable guides to periodical literature. Of the library catalogues those of the Boston Athenæum and Peabody Institute (Baltimore) are the fullest in detailed classification and are comparatively recent; and the full titles of most books can be easily found in the catalogue of the British Museum. To the government documents the two pamphlets by John G. Ames, and Church and Smith's *Tables*, and the monthly catalogues issued by the government since the beginning of the year 1895, are the most useful guides. Poore's *Catalogue of Government Publications* has a very unsatisfactory index. (See § 16 e.)

For many subjects the easiest path of entrance is by the footnotes of the standard histories and biographies. The most serviceable are those of George Bancroft in the earlier volumes of his first edition and his *History of the Constitution*; Henry Cabot Lodge, *Short History of the English Colonies*; Henry Adams, *Administration of Jefferson and Madison*; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*; J. F. Rhodes, *History of the United States since 1850*; and more than all others, Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History*.

## § 16 a. Brief Bibliographies.

Charles Kendall Adams, *Manual of Historical Literature, comprising brief Descriptions of the most important Histories in English, French, and German*. N.Y., Harpers, 1882. 8vo. pp. xxxviii, 665.

James G. Barnwell, *Reading Notes on the Constitution of the United States*. Phila., 1887. — From the Bulletin of the Library Company.

Richard R. Bowker and George Iles, editors, *The Reader's Guide in Economic, Social, and Political Science*. N.Y., Putnams, 1891. *Economic Tracts*, No. 27. — A classified bibliography, American, English, French, and German, with descriptive notes, author, title, and subject index, courses of reading, college courses, etc.

Paul Leicester Ford, *Pamphlets on the Constitution of the United States*. Brooklyn, 1888. — Bibliography and Reference List of the History and Literature of the United States Constitution, at pp. 381-441.

William E. Foster, *References to Political and Economic Topics, to accompany a series of lectures*. Providence, Providence Press Co., 1885. — Valuable, but out of print.

William E. Foster, *Providence Monthly Reference Lists*. 1881-84. — Portions reprinted in the *References to the History of Presidential Administrations*.

William E. Foster, *References to the History of Presidential Administrations*. 1789-1885. N.Y., Society for Political Education, 1885. — The best brief bibliography of the subject.

William E. Foster, *References to the Constitution of the United States*. N.Y., Putnams, 1890. — The best brief bibliography of the subject.

Albert Bushnell Hart, *Introduction to the Study of Federal Government*. (*Harvard Historical Monographs*, No. 2.) Boston, Ginn, 1891. — Bibliography, at §§ 33-40, 469.

Alexander Johnston, in Lalor's *Cyclopadia of Political Science*. Chicago, Andrews, 1881-84. — Valuable bibliographies are appended to his signed articles.

William Coolidge Lane, *Index to Recent Reference Lists*. Harvard University Library (*Bibliographical Contributions*, No. 40). Cambridge, 1891.

Silas Marcus Macvane, *University and School Extension, American History, Courses A and B*. [Copyright, 1889.]

Henry Matson, *References for Literary Workers*: with introductions to topics and questions for debate. Chicago, 1892. — Includes many subjects related to American History.



John M. Vincent, *Contributions toward a Bibliography of American History*, 1888-92. (American Historical Association, *Annual Report for 1893*, pp. 501-572.) — Covers only a brief period of publication.

Justin Winsor, *The Reader's Handbook of the American Revolution*. 1761-83. Boston, Houghton, 1880.

### § 16 b. Topical Outlines.

John G. Allen, *Topical Studies in American History*. Rochester, 1885.

William F. Allen, *History Topics for the Use of High Schools and Colleges*. Boston, Heath, 1886.

E. Benjamin Andrews, *Brief Institutes of our Constitutional History. English and American*. Providence, 1886.

Charles F. Dunbar, *Topics and References, History of Financial Legislation in the United States*. Cambridge, 1892.

Charles F. Dunbar, *Topics and References in Political Economy IV. [Economic History of Europe and America since the Seven Years' War.]* Cambridge, Wheeler, 1885.

Hannah H. Davidson, *Reference History of the United States for High Schools and Academies*. Boston, Ginn, 1892. — Refers chiefly to brief books.

George Levi Fox, *The Study of Politics in Unity Clubs and Classes. (Unity Leaflets, No. 10.)* Chicago, 1885.

Wilbur F. Gordy and Willis Ira Twitchell, *A Pathfinder in American History*. Boston, Lee, 1893.

William C. Jones, *Papers and References to accompany Lectures on the Formation of the Federal Constitution*. Berkeley, 1889.

William H. Mace, *A Working Manual of American History for Teachers and Students*. Syracuse, N.Y., Bardeen, 1895.

Martin Leo Smith, *A Brief Compend of the History of the United States; Arranged for the Use of Teachers and Pupils*. Boston, 1886.

Ralph C. Ringwalt and Walter DuB. Brookings, *Briefs for Debates*. N.Y., Longmans, 1896.

John T. Short, *Historical Reference Lists*. Columbus, 1882. — Out of print: replaced by

Edwin Erle Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists in American History*. Columbus, Smythe, 1893.

Frank William Taussig, *Topics and References in Economics 6. [Tariff History of the United States.]* Cambridge, 1886.

Francis N. Thorpe, *Outline of a General Course of Lectures on the Principles of Government in the United States*. [Copyright, 1892.]



## § 16 c. Useful Indexes.

[Robert Clarke and Company.] *Bibliotheca Americana, Catalogue of a valuable collection of Books and Pamphlets relating to America.* Cincinnati, 1876. — With Supplements to 1887.

William Cushing, *Index to the North American Review.* Cambridge, 1878.

William I. Fletcher, *The "A. L. A." Index; an index to general literature, biographical, historical, and literary essays and sketches, reports and publications of boards and societies dealing with education, health, labor, charities, corrections, etc.* Issued by the publishing section of the American Library Association. Boston, Houghton, 1892.

Leonard Augustus Jones, *An Index to Legal Periodical Literature.* Boston, Soule, 1888.

F. Leypoldt and Lynds Eugene Jones, *The American Catalogue, authors and title entries of books in print and for sale (including reprints and importations).* 1876. — Continued to 1890 by R. R. Bowker, Augusta I. Appleton, and others. 4 vols. N.Y., 1880-90.

Massachusetts Historical Society, *Index to the first twenty volumes of the Proceedings of the Society.* Boston, 1887.

William Frederick Poole, *An Index to Periodical Literature.* Boston, Osgood, 1853. Third edition, continued to 1882, with the assistance of W. I. Fletcher. Boston, 1882. — There are two supplements: the *First Supplement*, by Poole and Fletcher, with the assistance of the American Library Association, covers the years 1882-87; the *Second Supplement* (without Poole) brings the work to 1892. Since then Fletcher and R. R. Bowker, with the coöperation of the American Library Association and of the Library Journal Staff, have resumed the work on the same lines in *The Annual Literary Index*.

Charles Carroll Soule, *The Lawyer's Reference Manual of Law Books and Citations.* Boston, Soule and Bugbee, 1883.

Joseph Sabin, *A Dictionary of Books relating to America, from its discovery to the present time.* 20 vols. N.Y., Sabin, 1868-92.

William Swan Sonnenschein, *The Best Books.* Second edition. London, 1891.

Pennsylvania Historical Society, *The Charlemagne Tower Collection of Colonial Laws.* Philadelphia, 1890.

## § 16 d. Useful Catalogues.

Boston Athenæum, *Catalogue of the Boston Athenæum, 1807-1871*. 5 vols. Boston, 1874-82.

Public Library of the City of Boston, *Index to the Catalogue of Books in the Upper Hall*. Boston, 1861.

Public Library of the City of Boston, *Index to the Catalogue of Books in Bates Hall, First Supplement*. Boston, 1861-66.

British Museum, *Catalogue of Printed Books*. London, 1882-93.

Brooklyn Mercantile Library, *Catalogue of the Mercantile Library of Brooklyn*. Brooklyn, 1877-80.

Cleveland Public Library, *Alphabetic Catalogue of the English Books*. Cleveland, 1889.

Library of Congress, *Catalogue, Index of Subjects*. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1869.

Harvard College Library, *Card Catalogue Subjects*. — To be used in connection with the *Card Catalogue*.

Massachusetts, *Catalogue of the State Library*. Boston, 1880.

New York Historical Society, *Catalogue of the Printed Books in the Library*. N.Y., 1859.

Peabody Institute of the City of Baltimore, *Catalogue of the Library*. Baltimore, 1883.

## § 16 e. Indexes to Public Documents, 1776-1895.

To the valuable set of government documents there is no adequate guide : Poore's *Catalogue of Government Publications* affords some aid, but not so much as its title would indicate, owing to an imperfect and misleading index. The following is a nearly complete list of aids :

1820-1891. John Griffith Ames, *Finding List, showing where in the set of Congressional Documents the individual volumes of certain series of Government publications are found*. Washington, 1893.

1817-1891. John Griffith Ames, *List of Congressional Documents from the Fifteenth to the Fifty-first Congress*. Washington, 1892.

1889-1893. John Griffith Ames, *Comprehensive Index of the Publications of the United States Government*. Washington, 1894.

1895- *Catalogue of United States Public Documents, issued monthly by the Superintendent of Documents*. Washington.

- 1789-1877. Boston Athenæum, *Catalogue*, V, 3054-3109.
- 1789-1859. Boston Public Library, *Index* (ed. 1861), pp. 795-842.
- 1859-1863. Boston Public Library, *Index, First Supplement* (ed. 1866), pp. 644-654.
- 1789-1892. Alonzo W. Church and Henry H. Smith, *Tables showing the Contents of the several volumes comprising the Annals of Congress, Congressional Debates, Congressional Globe, Supreme Court Reports, etc., arranged by Years and Congresses*. [Washington, 1892.]
- 1786-1851. *Digested Summary of Private Claims*. 3 vols. Washington, 1853.
- 1871-1880. J. B. Holloway and W. H. French, *Consolidated Index of Claims reported by the Commissioner of Claims to the House of Representatives*. Washington, 1892.
- 1789-1817. *Index to the Executive Communications made to the House until the end of the Fourteenth Congress*. 18 Cong., 1 sess., XII, No. 163.
- 1831-1839. *Index to the Executive Documents and Reports of Committees of the House from the Twenty-second to the Twenty-fifth Congress*. *House Docs.*, 35 Cong., 2 sess. Washington.
- 1815-1887. T. H. McKee, *Reports of the Select and Special Committees, United States Senate*. Washington, 1887.
- 1815-1887. T. H. McKee, *Reports of the Select and Special Committees, United States House of Representatives*. Washington, 1887.
- 1839-1869. Edward McPherson, *Consolidated Index of the Executive Documents of the House, from the Twenty-sixth to the Fortieth Congress*. Washington, 1869.
- 1839-1869. Edward McPherson, *Consolidated Index to Reports of the Committees of the House*. Washington, 1869.
- 1789-1809. Albert Ordway, *General Index of the Journals of Congress, from the First to Tenth Congress inclusive*. *House Reports*, 46 Cong., 2 sess., No. 1776. Washington, 1880.
- 1809-1821. Albert Ordway, *General Index of the Journals of Congress, from the Eleventh to Sixteenth Congress inclusive*. *House Reports*, 47 Cong., 1 sess., V [VII], No. 1556. Washington, 1883.
- 1776-1881. Ben Perley Poore, *Descriptive Catalogue of Government Publications*. Washington, 1885.

### § 17. General Reference Books on American History.

The following works contain a variety of historical data, usually arranged alphabetically by persons or subjects; such books much facilitate easy topical work, and the better ones are a guide to more detailed information. The titles are arranged alphabetically by editors (or publishers, where the editor is not indicated).

William Allen, *American Biographical Dictionary*. Boston, 1857.

S. Austin Allibone, *A Critical Dictionary of English Literature and British and American Authors*. Phila., 1858-71. 3 vols.—Also a *Supplement to Allibone's Critical Dictionary* (edited by John Foster Kirk). 2 vols. Phila., 1891.

*The American Annual Cyclopædia and Register of Important Events*. 36 vols. N.Y., Appleton, 1861-95.—The volumes from 1861 to 1875 inclusive form one series with an Index in a separate volume. The later volumes are denominated "New Series," and there is an Index, in a separate volume, to the twelve volumes from 1876 to 1887 inclusive.

Frederick A. P. Barnard, editor, *Johnson's [Revised] Universal Cyclopædia*. N.Y., 1888. 8 vols.—A new edition (edited by Charles Kendall Adams). 8 vols. N.Y., 1893.

Francis S. Drake, *Dictionary of American Biography, including Men of the Time*. Boston, 1872.

Evert A. Duyckinck and George L. Duyckinck, *Cyclopædia of American Literature*. 2 vols. N.Y., Scribners, 1856.

*The Encyclopædia Britannica*. Ninth edition. 25 vols. London, 1875.

John J. Lalor, editor, *Cyclopædia of Political Science, Political Economy, and of the Political History of the United States*. 3 vols. Chicago, 1881-84.

Charles Lanman, *Biographical Annals of the Civil Government of the United States*. N.Y. [Copyright, 1886].

Josephus Nelson Larned, *History for Ready Reference from the Best Historians, Biographers, and Specialists: Their own words in a complete system of history*. 5 vols. Springfield, Mass., 1894-95.

Benson John Lossing, *Harper's Popular Cyclopædia of United States History*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1881.

*The National Cyclopædia of American Biography*. 5 vols. N.Y., 1892-94.

Carl Ploetz, *Epitome of Ancient, Mediæval, and Modern History*. (Translated with extensive additions by William H. Tillinghast.) Boston, 1884.

George Ripley and Charles A. Dana, editors, *The American Cyclopædia: A Popular Dictionary of General Knowledge*. 16 vols. N. Y., etc., 1859-63. — Revised edition, 1873, with binder's title *Appleton's Cyclopædia*. 16 vols. N. Y., 1873-76. — Also a *General and Analytical Index to the American Cyclopædia*. N. Y., 1878.

Edmund Clarence Stedman and Ellen Mackay Hutchinson, *A Library of American Literature from the Earliest Settlement to the Present Time*. 10 vols. N. Y., 1888-90.

*Stoddard's Encyclopædia Americana, a Companion to the Encyclopædia Britannica (Ninth Edition) and to all other Encyclopædias*. 4 vols. N. Y., etc., 1883-89.

James Grant Wilson and John Fiske, editors, *Appleton's Cyclopædia of American Biography*. 6 vols. N. Y., 1887-89.

### § 18. School Text-Books.

Until very recently the text-books intended for schools were either dull or ridiculously out of proportion. The colonial and Revolutionary wars were usually the principal subjects. Later came a succession of poor popular histories, inaccurate and trivial; to some of them the authors did not so much as give their names. Recently there has been a great improvement, and there are now half a dozen text-books of decided merit.

The main characteristics of a good text-book are the following: it should be accurate and therefore it should be prepared by an expert on the subject; proper proportions should be observed, so that no part of the field be neglected or unduly expanded. A point of view should be adopted which avoids details of military history, and dwells on economic and social development as well as on political history. The book must be interesting, and hence great attention should be paid by the writer to style. An indispensable adjunct is a set of numerous, clear, and accurate maps illustrating historical geography, and not merely campaigns. Of course there must be bibliographical material enough to lead pupils to read and study in other books, and to aid them in topical work. A good book will have a convenient apparatus of contents, indexes, running headings, marginal dates, and the like, to make the subject clear. The writer must take a manly and patriotic tone, without

over-glorification of our own country ; and he must be sufficiently familiar with the history and institutions of other countries to know what is distinctively American. Illustrations are in part an aid to interest, and in part a necessary interpretation ; in selecting them care should be taken to represent real things and not imaginary sketches of what was or might have been ; portraits should be numerous and characteristic, and the artist and present place of the original of each picture should be mentioned ; but the pictures should not encroach upon the space needed for the text.

No book fills all these requirements. Higginson's *Young Folks' History* is still unsurpassed in its field, but it is devoted almost entirely to the colonial period. Alexander Johnston's *School History* (the larger work) is remarkable for the broad treatment of the later period and for its superior historical maps ; in its form it is rather solid ; the style is dull and the proportions are imperfect. Horace E. Scudder's *History of the United States* has excellent summaries and beautiful maps, but is written a little below the high-school age, and often is indistinct. John Fiske's *History of the United States for Schools* has a delightfully easy style, and the book is beautifully illustrated and is supplemented by the questions of Mr. Hill ; but the treatment of the period since 1789 is tender, the reading-matter is slender for a school history, and text and maps need revision. Sheldon-Barnes's *Studies in American History* is made up on a novel plan, — the weaving together of a narrative out of extracts from contemporary writers ; but only a superior teacher is likely to supply sufficient connective matter. A. C. Thomas in his *History of the United States* has made a good book, though dull, well furnished with aids ; but his maps are still imperfect, though better than the average.

Several new histories are now in course of preparation, and nearly all the books mentioned above are frequently revised and errors or omissions are corrected. For convenience of reference the exact titles of a few school text-books are here appended ; they are not of equal merit.

### § 18 a. Brief List of School Text-Books.

Edward Eggleston, *A History of the United States and its People for the Use of Schools*. N.Y., American Book Co. [Copyright, 1888].

Mary Sheldon Barnes and Earl Barnes, *Studies in American History*. Boston, Heath, 1893.

John Fiske, *A History of the United States for Schools*. Boston, Houghton, 1894.

Thomas Wentworth Higginson, *Young Folks' History of the United States*. N.Y., Longmans.

Alexander Johnston, *A History of the United States for Schools ; with an Introductory History of the Discovery and English Colonization of North America*. N.Y., Holt, 1885.

David H. Montgomery, *The Leading Facts of American History* (Leading Facts of History series). Boston, Ginn, 1891.

Horace E. Scudder, *A History of the United States . . . for the Use of Schools and Academies*. Phila., Butler [Copyright, 1894].

Joel D. Steele and Esther Baker Steele, *A Brief History of the United States*. N.Y. [Copyright, 1885].— Usually known as "Barnes' History."

Allen C. Thomas, *A History of the United States*. Boston, Heath, 1894.

### § 19. College Text-Books.

In college teaching two general methods appear to be employed ; either some small book is used as a text-book with or without collateral reading, and often supplemented by informal lectures by the teacher ; or some large philosophical work like Von Holst's *Constitutional History* is made a basis for class discussion or criticism by the instructor. The first method is the natural one, provided it is understood that the text-book is merely the nucleus about which shall be grouped the student's notes of lectures and reading. Hence the matter contained in the text-book should not be repeated in the lectures, although many subjects not otherwise properly treated may be given adequate attention before the class, and subjects difficult of explanation may be elucidated from a different point of view.

The basal book should contain, therefore, a good body of fact. It should be lucidly arranged and marked by a distinct literary style. Good maps are essential, and some help to collateral reading in the way of bibliographies will be useful. There is at present



no one volume on American history which can be said to answer these requirements. Goldwin Smith's *The United States* is an interesting essay on the political history of the nation; Arthur Gilman's *History of the People of the United States* is deficient in several respects and is now rather out of date; T. W. Higginson's *Larger History* is a bundle of essays, many of them of great value and all interesting, but it is not a connected history, and stops almost with the close of Jackson's second term; Alexander Johnston's *The United States* contains perhaps the best presentation of the later period to be found between two covers, but his treatment of the earlier period is peculiarly inaccurate and inadequate. The same author's *American Politics* is almost a model treatment of the political history of the country since 1789. E. B. Andrews's *History of the United States* in two volumes has not established its claim to the confidence of scholars. The *Constitutional History* of Judson S. Landon, and Simon Sterne's *Constitutional History* are hardly broad enough for text-book use.

Both the authors of this *Guide* have tried their hands at concise histories intended for college or for university-extension use. Edward Channing has published a brief *History of the United States, 1765-1865*, in the *Cambridge Historical Series*, and Albert Bushnell Hart has edited the *Epochs of American History* in three volumes, writing one of the volumes himself. On the same general plan as the latter publication is the *American History Series*, in five volumes.

#### § 19 a. List of College Text-Books.

*American History Series.* 5 vols. N.Y., Scribners, 1892. — Vol. I. George Park Fisher, *The Colonial Era.* 1892. — Vol. II. William M. Sloane, *The French War and the Revolution.* 1893. — Vol. III. Francis A. Walker, *The Making of the Nation.* 1895. — Vols. IV, V. John W. Burgess, *From the Conclusion of Peace in 1815 to the End of Reconstruction*; in preparation in 1895.

Elisha Benjamin Andrews, *History of the United States.* 2 vols. N.Y., Scribners, 1894.

Edward Channing, *The United States of America, 1765-1865.* (Cambridge Historical series.) N.Y., Macmillan & Co., 1896.



*Epochs of American History.* 3 vols. N.Y., Longmans. — Vol. I. Reuben Gold Thwaites, *The Colonies.* 1891. — Vol. II. Albert Bushnell Hart, *Formation of the Union.* 1892. — Vol. III. Woodrow Wilson, *Division and Reunion.* 1893.

Richard Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic of the United States.* Boston, Little, 1872.

Arthur Gilman, *History of the People of the United States.* N.Y., 1889.

George B. Getchell, *Our Nation's Executives and their Administrations.* — *The Continental and National Congresses. Conspectus of the National Government, 1775-1885. The Settlement and Formation of the State Governments and State Executives.* N.Y., 1885.

T. W. Higginson, *A Larger History of the United States.* N.Y., Harpers, 1886.

Alexander Johnston, *History of American Politics.* N.Y., Holt, 1880.

Alexander Johnston, *The United States; its History and Constitution.* N.Y., Scribners, 1889.

Judson S. Landon, *The Constitutional History and Government of the United States; a Series of Lectures.* Boston, Houghton, 1889.

Henry Cabot Lodge, *A Short History of the English Colonies in America.* N.Y., Harpers [Copyright, 1881].

Goldwin Smith, *The United States, an Outline of Political History, 1492-1871.* N.Y., Macmillan, 1893.

Simon Sterne, *Constitutional History and Political Development of the United States.* N.Y., Putnam's, 4th ed., 1888.

## § 20. General Histories.

There is no comprehensive history of America from the discovery to the present time. The so-called "Bryant's Popular History" which was written by Sydney Howard Gay, covers the whole field, but an undue proportion of the space is devoted to colonial history. Bancroft stops at 1789, Hildreth at 1821, Tucker at 1840, Winsor at about 1840; Von Holst begins practically at 1829, Schouler at 1781; and Parkman, Adams, McMaster, Fiske, and Rhodes cover only limited fields or periods. It is hence the more necessary to bring students in contact with a variety of histories. Hildreth, for the period he covers, is a painstaking and accurate historian, and he discusses most of the political events which are worth remembering; but his book is tedious and in parts

prejudiced. Many of the essays in Winsor's *America* have high historical value. For combined literary and historical merit no American historian equals Parkman, who has seized upon the imperishable interest of the French colonization, and the final victory over it of the English. Henry Adams's account of the administrations of Jefferson and Madison is a model of clear, enlightened, and fearless historical composition; Von Holst is too long for the ordinary reader, but the final chapters in most of his volumes are unique summaries of political and economic relations. Schouler's broad and reasonably complete treatment of the whole field since 1783 is marred by an eccentric and undignified style. For the Civil War and later history Ropes's *Story of the Civil War* and Rhodes's history are the only extended works written in a scientific spirit. There is still an opportunity for some able historian to write a complete history of America from the discovery to near the present day, in three or four volumes, a book comparable with J. R. Green's *History of the English People*; or even a book on the general lines of G. F. Bright's *English History* would be a boon to teachers and students.

In addition to the list of brief general histories (§ 19 a) the following books will be found more or less serviceable for reading, for topical work, and as parallels to college lecture courses. The list should also be supplemented by the special histories and biographies enumerated in §§ 22, 25.

### § 20 a. Larger Comprehensive Works.

- 1800-1817. Henry Adams, *History of the United States*. 9 vols. N.Y., Scribners, 1889-91.
- 1760-1804. John Adolphus, *The History of England*. 7 vols. London, 1840-45.
- 1492-1789. George Bancroft, *A History of the United States*. Boston, 1834-74. — A six-volume edition, known as *The Author's Last Revision*, was published at N.Y. in 1883-85.
- 1492-1870. William Cullen Bryant and Sydney Howard Gay, *A Popular History of the United States*. 4 vols. N.Y., Scribners, 1876-81.

- 1783-1789. George Ticknor Curtis, *Constitutional History of the United States*. — One volume published at N.Y. (Harpers) in 1889, a posthumous second volume is announced, 1895.
- 1784-1875. Jefferson Davis, *The Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government*. 2 vols. N.Y., Appleton, 1881.
- 1492-1700. John Andrew Doyle, *The English in America*. 3 vols. Published at London, Longmans, 1882-87. — Reprinted with a different pagination by Holt, N.Y.
- 1850-1865. John Williams Draper, *History of the American Civil War*. 3 vols. N.Y., Harpers, 1867-70.
- 1000-1600. John Fiske, *The Discovery of America*. 2 vols. Boston, Houghton, 1892. Fiske's other historical works form with this part of a comprehensive history as follows: *The Beginnings of New England*, *The American Revolution*, in 2 vols., *The Critical Period of American History* (1783-89).
- 1789-1867. Horace Greeley, *The American Conflict*. 2 vols. Hartford, Case, 1864-67.
- 1492-1821. Richard Hildreth, *The History of the United States*. 6 vols. N.Y., Harpers, 1851-56.
- 1700-1800. William Edward Hartpole Lecky, *A History of England in the Eighteenth Century*. 8 vols. London, Longmans, 1878-90.
- 1783-1821. John Bach McMaster, *A History of the People of the United States*. 4 vols. N.Y., Appleton, 1883-95.
- 1713-1783. Lord Mahon, *History of England*. 7 vols. Boston, Little, 1853-54. — A convenient edition is the "Tauchnitz edition" in paper covers.
- 1745-1802. William Nathaniel Massey, *A History of England during the Reign of George the Third*. 4 vols. London, 1855-63.
- 1492-1763. Francis Parkman, *France and England in North America, a Series of Historical Narratives*. 9 vols. Boston, Little, 1865-92.
- 1492-1775. John Gorham Palfrey, *History of New England*. 5 vols. Boston, Little, 1858-90.
- 1497-1797. Timothy Pitkin, *A Political and Civil History of the United States*. 2 vols. New Haven, 1828.
- 1783-1865. Edward Alfred Pollard, *The Lost Cause*. N.Y., 1867.
- 1492-1887. John Clark Ridpath, *A Popular History of the United States*. N.Y., Hunt and Eaton, 1889.
- 1849-1862. James Ford Rhodes, *History of the United States from the Compromise of 1850*. 3 vols. N.Y., Harpers, 1893-95.

- 1783-1861. James Schouler, *History of the United States under the Constitution*. 5 vols. N.Y., Dodd, 1891.
- 1492-1857. Jesse Ames Spencer, *History of the United States*. 3 vols. N.Y., 1858 [Copyright].
- 1861-1865. Alexander Hamilton Stephens, *A Constitutional View of the Late War between the States*. 2 vols. Phila., 1868-70.
- 1492-1840. George Tucker, *The History of the United States*. 4 vols. Phila., Lippincott, 1856-57.
- 1783-1861. Hermann Von Holst, *The Constitutional History of the United States* (translated from the German by Lalor and Mason). 8 vols. Chicago, Callaghan, 1876-92.
- 1789-1877. Henry Wilson, *History of the Rise and Fall of the Slave Power in America*. 3 vols. Boston, Osgood, 1872-77.
- 1000-1840. Justin Winsor, editor, *The Narrative and Critical History of America*. 8 vols. Boston, Houghton, 1886-89.

### § 21. Historical Geography.

No important subject connected with American history has been so neglected as the historical geography of the United States. Territorial history is nevertheless essential to an understanding of the general subject. The sources are : (1) the reports of the first explorers, the contemporaneous accounts of the early explorations, and the maps of the old cartographers ; (2) the grants made by various European powers for their colonies, — especially the English charters ; (3) treaties defining international boundaries ; (4) decisions of the English Privy Council on contested boundaries, and of international courts of arbitration ; and (5) the statutes of the United States establishing territories and admitting states.

Several books contain descriptions of the physical characteristics of the country and their influence on men of European origin. Among them may be mentioned the works of Professors Whitney and Shaler, both having the title *The United States*. The more important works dealing with the territorial development are Winsor's various contributions in his *Columbus*, *Cartier*, and *Mississippi*, and in the *Narrative and Critical History*. Professor Hinsdale has done good work in this field, especially in his *Old Northwest* ; and the government publications connected with

the names of Gannett and Donaldson contain many valuable suggestions and documents, which should, however, in every case be verified. In the general histories, such as Bancroft, Hildreth, McMaster, and Henry Adams, may be found elaborate discussions of boundary and other territorial questions. The larger state histories and historical society reports contain many important discussions of these and kindred subjects.

Besides the treatment of the subject in the general histories (especially Hildreth), the following special authorities may be mentioned :

Bioren and Duane, *Laws of the United States . . . including many other valuable . . . Documents.* 5 vols. Phila., Bioren, 1815. — Usually cited as "Duane's Laws."

Thomas Donaldson, *The Public Domain.* Third edition. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1884. — Reprint of *House Miscellaneous Documents*, 47 Cong., 2 sess., Pt. 4, No. 45.

*The Existing Laws of the United States of a general and permanent character and relating to the Survey and Disposition of the Public Domain.* Washington, Government Printing Office, 1884. — *House Misc. Docs.*, 47 Cong., 2 sess., Pt. I, No. 45.

*Laws of the United States exhibiting the Entire Legislation of Congress upon which the Public Land Titles in each State have depended.* 2 vols. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1884. — House of Representatives, *House Misc. Docs.*, 47 Cong., 2 sess., Pt. II, No. 45.

Henry Gannett, *Boundaries of the United States and of the several States and Territories.* Washington, 1885. — Reprint from United States Geological Survey, *Bulletin*, No. 13.

Burke Aaron Hinsdale, *Bounding the Original United States.* — Reprint from *Magazine of Western History*, II, 401-423, Sept., 1885.

Burke Aaron Hinsdale, *The Old Northwest: with a View of the Thirteen Colonies as Constituted by the Royal Charters.* N.Y., MacCoun, 1891.

Walter Bell Scaife, *America: Its Geographical History.* Baltimore, 1892.

Justin Winsor, *Narrative and Critical History of America.* 8 vols. Boston, Houghton, 1886-89. — Especially VII, 527-562.

## § 21 a. Physical Geography of America.

Physical geography and geology are intimately connected and much geographical matter is to be found in the publications of national and state geological surveys. The reports of state surveys are easily found in libraries under the name of the state; the more recent publications generally giving the best material. National surveys were for a number of years conducted under various governmental bureaus; their work was confined to the western part of the continent. The most important of these were Hayden's Survey (United States Geological and Geographical Survey of the Territories) whose geographical results are contained in *Annual Reports* (1869-79); Wheeler's Survey (United States Geographical Surveys West of the One Hundredth Meridian), Powell's Survey (United States Geographical and Geological Survey of the Rocky Mountain Region), King's Survey (United States Geological Exploration of the Fortieth Parallel). The reports of each of these three organizations were published in a series of volumes (Vol. I of Wheeler's Survey contains an analytical account of all explorations west of the Mississippi River, from 1500 to 1800). In 1879 these separate surveys were discontinued, and the United States Geological Survey was organized. It publishes *Annual Reports*, *Bulletins*, and *Monographs*, of which an analytical bibliography (1879-92) is contained in *Bulletins*, No. 100. The following bibliographical bulletins of the Survey also deserve mention: *A Dictionary of Altitudes of the United States* (*Bulletins*, No. 76); *Record of North American Geology* (*Bulletins*, Nos. 44, 75, 91, 99); *A Catalogue of Geological Maps of America* (*Bulletins*, No. 7). Much geographical material is also to be found in the *American Geologist*, published monthly at Minneapolis; the *Journal of Geology*, published semi-quarterly at Chicago; and the National Geographic Society's *National Geographic Magazine*, published at Washington.

Upon the basis of the geography of the country, its physiography, references will be found in §§ 21 b-21 e below. The following books will also be found serviceable :

W. M. Davis, C. F. King, and G. L. Collie, *Report on Governmental Maps for Use in Schools.* N.Y., Holt, 1894.

William Morris Davis, *Geographical Illustrations.* Cambridge, 1893. — Suggestions for teaching physical geography, based on the physical features of New England.

John William Draper, *History of the American Civil War.* 3 vols. N.Y., Harpers, 1867-70. — At Vol. I, 39-62.

Jedediah Morse, *American Universal Geography.* 2 parts. Boston. First edition, 1793; sixth edition, 1812.

*National Geographic Monographs.* N.Y., American Book Co.

Jacob Horace Patton, *National Resources of the United States.* N.Y., Appleton, 1888.

Friedrich Ratzel, *Die Vereinigten Staaten von Nord-Amerika.* 2 vols. München, 1878.

N. S. Shaler, *Nature and Man in America.* N.Y., 1891.

N. S. Shaler, editor, *The United States.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1894.

William D. Whitney, *The United States.* Boston, Little. Vol. I, 1889; Supplement, 1894.

### § 21 b. Physical Maps of North America.

The data for a complete physical map of the United States do not yet exist. Henry Gannett, in his essay on the *Maps of the United States* (Washington, National Geographical Society, 1892), points out the sources. The United States Geological Survey has in progress a topographical map to serve as a basis for a geological map on the scales of one, two, and four miles to the inch. Several hundred sheets have been issued, and several hundred more will be needed to complete the map. The states of Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and New Jersey alone have published serviceable contour maps of their own confines, and there is a somewhat inaccurate map of New Hampshire. Of most of these, separate sheets can be had. Davis, King, and Collie, in their *Report on Governmental Maps for Use in Schools*, suggest the sheets most useful for the purpose of teaching geography.

The United States Geological Survey has issued four very useful maps. (1) The most beautiful is the *United States Relief Map*, printed in several shades of brown; (2) the *United States Contour Map*, giving the contour lines in brown, is a more useful



map; and (3) a map of the same size as these ( $28 \times 17$  inches) but without title, and showing only land and water, is most serviceable for the filling in of historical data; (4) a small map ( $15\frac{1}{2} \times 10$ ), similar in other respects to the map just mentioned, is well adapted to desk use. These maps were compiled by Henry Gannett and issued under the direction of Major Powell.

The Survey has also issued a map of the United States in nine sheets on the scale of forty miles to an inch. The names and political boundaries are in black, the contours in brown, the water in blue. This is an admirable map for wall reference in the class-room. In the census publications there are some similar maps, especially in *Statistics of the Population of the United States at the Tenth Census*, Frontispiece, and Map No. 19.

The authors of this work have published for desk use a *Smaller Outline Map of the United States* ( $16\frac{1}{4} \times 10\frac{1}{4}$  inches), Boston, Heath, 1886. Also through the same publishers an *Outline Map of the United States* (4 ft.  $\times$  6 ft. 9 in.) in four sheets. This large map was designed as a basis for a series of special manuscript maps to illustrate exercises in history.

In the recent school histories (§ 18 a) are usually to be found colored maps in relief, based on the government maps. A similar one is in the *Epoch Maps*, No. 1. The two most valuable physical wall maps are the following:

[Steinwehr], *Case's Map of the United States, the British Provinces, Mexico, and Part of the West Indies*. Hartford, Case, 1893.  $60\frac{1}{2} \times 60\frac{5}{8}$  inches.

United States Land Office, *Map of the United States and Territories with Adjacent Parts of Canada and Mexico*. Washington, Land Office, 1886.—This excellent wall map may be had from the Land Office for \$1.25, unmounted. Size,  $62\frac{3}{4} \times 28\frac{3}{4}$  inches.

Of the two, "Case's" is the better for school use. There is also a series of school relief maps published by the School Supply Co. on a distorted scale, one being on the United States, and one on North America; but there is no evidence of their accuracy.



### § 21 c. Historical Maps.

Historical maps abound, but they are for the most part inaccurate. Of the school histories Johnston's (larger) contains the best and most carefully prepared; next to this perhaps Thomas's; Scudder's *History* has very clear and beautiful maps. Winsor's works all contain abundant reproductions of contemporary maps, and are a storehouse for cartographers.

There is a great need of an elaborate historical atlas of North America, worked out from the documentary sources, as illustrated by contemporary maps. At present there are only four series of historical maps of the United States outside of the ordinary histories :

Albert Bushnell Hart, *Epoch Maps Illustrating American History*. N.Y., Longmans, 1892. — Fourteen colored maps; the same maps appear in the three volumes of *Epochs of American History*.

Fletcher Willis Hewes and Henry Gannett, *Scribner's Statistical Atlas of the United States*. N.Y., Scribners, 1885. — Pages 31-40; Plates 12-17.

Townsend MacCoun, *Historical Geography of the United States*. Boston, Silver, 1889. — Reprint substantially of the maps in Labberton.

There is also a work which neither of the authors has seen :

Lucien H. Smith, *Historical and Chronological Atlas of the United States*. Washington, 1881.

### § 21 d. Sources of Historical Geography.

The advanced student of the subject must search for his material first of all in the various patents and charters, English, Spanish, Portuguese, French, Dutch, Swedish, and Russian. The principal English patents have been collected in Ben Perley Poore's *Charters and Constitutions* (see § 30). Many of the Dutch and Swedish documents are to be found in O'Callaghan's *Documentary History of the State of New York*; the French grants of Louisiana are in Gayarré's *Histoire de la Louisiane*. The Canadian documents may be found through the compiler of the *Canadian Archives*. Care should be taken in all these cases to keep as near as possible to the originals, as imperfect texts and translations are not uncommon.

For the treaties of partition and delimitation among the various European nations from 1492 up to 1895, the best collections are the following :

*Recueil des Traitez de Paix, de Trêve, . . . et d'autres Actes Publics.* 4 vols. folio. Amsterdam, 1700.

George Chalmers, *A Collection of Treaties between Great Britain and Other Powers.* 2 vols. London, 1790.

M. J. Dumont, *Corps Universel Diplomatique du Droit des Gens.* Amsterdam, 1726.

Barbeyrac and Rousset, *Supplément au Corps Universel Diplomatique.* Amsterdam, 1739.

Guillaume de Garden, *Histoire Générale des Traités de Paix.* 15 vols. Paris, 1848-87.

*A General Collection of Treatys.* 4 vols. London, 1732.

James Watson Gerard, *The Peace of Utrecht.* N.Y., Putnams, 1885.

F. Schoell, *Histoire Abrégée des Traités de Paix.* 15 vols. Paris, 1817-18.

Christophe Guillaume de Koch, *Abrégé de l'Histoire des Traités de Paix.* 4 vols. Basle, 1796-97.

Charles de Martens et Ferdinand de Cussy, *Traités et Conventions Diplomatiques.* 7 vols. Leipzig, 1846-57.

Georges Frédéric de Martens and others, *Recueil de Traités des Puissances et états de l'Europe, 1761-1893.* 74 vols. Göttingen, 1817-93.

All the treaties to which the United States was a party are in the official volume, *Treaties and Conventions.* Internal colonial boundaries must be ascertained from the original grants, the Colonial records (§ 29), and the decisions of the Privy Council. Internal boundaries within the United States are defined usually by an act of Congress (*Statutes at Large*). Frequently they are described in presidential proclamations, of which there is no complete collection. Controversies between states have almost always been subjects for investigation by Congress, and in such cases they are described in the *Congressional Documents*,—or they have given rise to suits before the Supreme Court of the United States, and the decisions will be found in the *Reports.* There are also many monographs and separate reports on these topics which will be found under the topical readings in Parts II and III of this *Guide.*

## § 22. Works on Special Topics.

In addition to the works which attempt to give a general summary of a longer or shorter period, there is a body of literature devoted to special topics which run all the way through American history. Many such works are an elaborate study of a very limited field. Others sweep over several centuries and have the dignity of standard histories.

The monographs have commonly been produced under the auspices of some historical society (§ 31) or of a university. The Johns Hopkins *Studies in Historical and Political Science*, the Columbia *Studies in History, Economics, and Public Law*, the Harvard *Historical Studies*, and the publications of the Universities of Michigan, Wisconsin, and Nebraska have been the means of bringing out carefully prepared books on American history. In the *Papers of the American Historical Association* are also to be found some valuable monographs. This kind of literature is on the increase, and as yet there is no convenient guide to it.

Akin to this form of historical writing is the coöperative history, of which the great examples are the *Memorial History of Boston* and the *Narrative and Critical History of America*, both edited by Justin Winsor; the *Memorial History of New York*, edited by James Grant Wilson; and *The United States*, edited by N. S. Shaler. The recent editions of the encyclopædias (§ 17) with their signed articles have adopted the same system. Below is a list of some of the more useful works of this class; others will be found in Parts II and III of this *Guide*.

## § 22 a. Brief List of Works on Special Topics.

James R. Albach, *Annals of the West*. Pittsburg, 1858.

[Anon.], *The History of the British Dominions in North America, 1497-1763*. London, 1773.

Albert S. Bolles, *The Financial History of the United States*. 3 vols. N.Y., 1879-86.

J. Leander Bishop, *A History of American Manufactures from 1608 to 1860*. 2 vols. Phila., 1861-64.

[Edmund Burke], *Account of the European Settlements in America*. 2 vols. Second edition, London, 1758.

James Bryce, *The American Commonwealth*. 2 vols. Revised edition, N.Y., Macmillan, 1895.

George Chalmers, *Political Annals of the Present United Colonies, from their Settlement to the Peace of 1763*. Book I (all ever published). London, 1780.

James Fenimore Cooper, *The History of the Navy of the United States*. 2 vols. London, Bentley, 1839.

William Douglass, *A Summary, Historical and Political, of the First Planting, Progressive Improvements, and Present State of the British Settlements in North America*. 2 vols. London, 1760.

Samuel Adams Drake, *The Making of the Great West*. 1812-83. N.Y., 1887.

Charles W. Elliott, *The New England History, from the Discovery of the Continent by the Northmen, A.D. 986, to 1776*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1857.

Joseph Barton Felt, *The Ecclesiastical History of New England*. 2 vols. Boston, 1855-62.

G. W. Greene, *Historical View of the American Revolution*. Boston, 1865.

Edgar Stanton Maclay, *A History of the United States Navy, from 1775*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1894.

John Gorham Palfrey, *A Compendious History of New England (1497-1765)*. 4 vols. Boston, 1884.

John Gorham Palfrey, *History of New England (1492-1774)*. 5 vols. Boston, 1858-90. — The last volume was published after the author's death under the editorship of his son, F. W. Palfrey.

Theodore Roosevelt, *Winning of the West*. 3 vols. N.Y., 1889-94.

Frank W. Taussig, *Tariff History of the United States, 1789-1888*. N.Y., Putnams, 1888.

n-309 Richmond Mayo Smith, *Emigration and Immigration*. N.Y., 1890.

Edward Stanwood, *A History of Presidential Elections*. Boston, 1892.

Martin Van Buren, *Inquiry into the Origin and Growth of Political Parties in the United States*. N.Y., 1867.

William B. Weedon, *Economic and Social History of New England*. 2 vols. Boston, 1890.

### § 23. State and Local Histories.

Successful attempts have been made of late years to arouse interest among school children and college students in the history of their own state and town. It is hence desirable that every good school library should have a set of all available books on the local history; the state histories are also often sources for the study of national history or of special topics. Two series of brief state histories are in progress: the *American Commonwealth* series, edited by H. E. Scudder, and the *Story of the States*; and there are older and more complete works on nearly all of the states. County and town histories abound; but there is little good literature on the history of cities. The following list is arranged alphabetically by states; books on important cities and important books on local history being grouped under the state in which the city or town is situated. Unless otherwise noted, additional material will be found on most of the states in the publications of the historical societies (§ 31).

[Frederick B. Perkins], *Check List for American Local History*. (Boston Public Library, *Bulletin*, October, 1875, and foll.)

#### Alabama.

Albert James Pickett, *History of Alabama, and incidentally of Georgia and Mississippi*. 2 vols. Charleston, 1851.

W. Brewer, *Alabama, her History, Resources, War Record, and Public Men*. Montgomery, 1872.

#### Alaska.

Hubert Howe Bancroft, *History of Alaska*. (*History of the Pacific States*, Vol. XXVIII.) San Francisco, 1886.

William Healy Dall and Marcus Baker, *Partial List of Charts, Maps, and Publications relating to Alaska and the adjacent region*. [Washington, 1880.]

William Healy Dall, *Alaska and its Resources*. Boston, 1870.

Henry W. Elliott, *Report on the Condition of Affairs in Alaska*. Washington, 1875.

Henry W. Elliott, *Our Arctic Province*. N.Y., 1886.

[For **Arizona**, see New Mexico.]

## California.

Hubert Howe Bancroft, *History of California*. 7 vols. Vols. II and III not yet published. (*History of the Pacific States*, Vols. XIII–XIX.) San Francisco, 1884.

John Shertzer Hittell, *A History of the City of San Francisco*. San Francisco, 1878.

Theodore Henry Hittell, *History of California*. 2 vols. San Francisco, 1885.

Josiah Royce, *California from the Conquest in 1846 to the Second Vigilance Committee in San Francisco*. (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1886.

Franklin Tuthill, *The History of California*. San Francisco, 1866.

## Colorado.

Hubert Howe Bancroft, *Nevada, Colorado, and Wyoming. 1540–1888*. (*History of the Pacific States*, Vol. XX.) San Francisco, 1890.

[O. L. Baskin, publishers], *History of Denver and Colorado*. Chicago, 1880. — The publishers state that the historical portion of this work was prepared by W. B. Vickers.

D. Boyd, *History of Greeley, and the Union Colony of Colorado*. Greeley, 1891.

## Connecticut.

Edward Elias Atwater, *History of the Colony of New Haven to its absorption into Connecticut*. New Haven, 1881.

Frances Manwaring Caulkins, *History of Norwich, Connecticut, from its possession by the Indians till 1866*. — "Published by the Author," 1866. Another edition was published by "Friends of the Author" in 1874.

Theodore Dwight, *The History of Connecticut, from the first Settlement*. N.Y., 1841.

Gideon Hiram Hollister, *The History of Connecticut, from the first Settlement of the Colony*. 2 vols. Hartford, 1857.

Alexander Johnston, *Connecticut: A Study of a Commonwealth-Democracy*. (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1887.

Edward R. Lambert, *History of the Colony of New Haven, before and after the Union with Connecticut*. New Haven, 1838.

Ellen D. Larned, *History of Windham County, Connecticut*. 2 vols. Worcester, 1874.

Charles Herbert Levermore, *The Republic of New Haven*. (*Johns Hopkins University Studies in Historical and Political Science*. Extra volume, I.) Baltimore, 1886.

Elias Benjamin Sanford, *A History of Connecticut*. Hartford, 1888.

Henry Reed Stiles, *The History of Ancient Windsor*. N.Y., 1859.

Henry Reed Stiles, *The History and Genealogies of Ancient Windsor, 1635-1891*. 2 vols. Vol. I, History; Vol. II, Genealogies and Biographies. Hartford, 1891-92.

Benjamin Trumbull, *A Complete History of Connecticut, from 1630 to 1764*. 2 vols. New Haven, 1818.

James Hammond Trumbull, *The Memorial History of Hartford County, Connecticut, 1633-1884*. 2 vols. Boston, 1886.

#### Delaware.

Israel Acrelius, *Beskrifning om de Swenska Vörsamlingars gedan Nya Nderland*. Stockholm, 1759.— Translated by William M. Reynolds as *A History of New Sweden*. (Pennsylvania Historical Society, *Memoirs*, Vol. IX.) Phila., 1876.

Jehu Curtis Clay, *Annals of the Swedes on the Delaware*. Phila., 1835.

Benjamin Ferris, *History of the Original Settlements on the Delaware*. Wilmington, 1840.

Thomas Campanius Holm, *Kort Beskrifning om Provincien Nya Sverige*. Stockholm, 1702.— Translated by Peter S. du Ponceau, as *Description of the Province of New Sweden*. Phila., 1834.

John Thomas Scharf, *History of Delaware, 1609-1888*. 2 vols. Phila., 1888.

Francis Vincent, *A History of the State of Delaware, from its first Settlement*. One volume published. Phila., 1870.

#### Florida.

William Whitwell Dewhurst, *The History of Saint Augustine, Florida*. N.Y., 1881.

George R. Fairbanks, *History of Florida*. (1512-1842.) Phila., 1871.

George R. Fairbanks, *The History and Antiquities of the City of Saint Augustine, Florida*. N.Y., 1858.

Paul Gaffarel, *Histoire de la Floride Française*. Paris, 1875.

Sidney Lanier, *Florida: its Scenery, Climate, and History*. Phila. [Copyright, 1875].

John Lee Williams, *The Territory of Florida*. N.Y., 1837.

#### Georgia.

Charles Colcock Jones, *The History of Georgia*. 2 vols. Boston, 1883.

Hugh McCall, *The History of Georgia*. 2 vols. Savannah, 1811.

Adelaide Wilson, *Historic and Picturesque Savannah*. Boston, 1889.

[For **Idaho**, see Washington.]

**Illinois.**

A. T. Andreas, *History of Chicago*. 3 vols. Chicago, 1885.

Sidney Breese, *The Early History of Illinois*. Chicago, 1884.

Henry Brown, *The History of Illinois*. N.Y., 1844.

Alexander Davidson and Bernard Stuvé, *A Complete History of Illinois, from 1673 to 1873*. Springfield, 1874.

George Flower, *History of the English Settlement in Edwards County, Illinois*. (Chicago Historical Society, *Collections*, Vol. I.) Chicago, 1882.

Thomas Ford, *History of Illinois*. Chicago, 1854.

John Moses, *Illinois, Historical and Statistical*. 2 vols. Chicago, 1889-92.

John Reynolds, *The Pioneer History of Illinois*. Belleville, Ill., 1852.

— Second edition, Chicago, 1887.

**Indiana.**

Wallace A. Brice, *History of Fort Wayne*. Fort Wayne, 1868.

Ignatius Brown, *Logan's History of Indianapolis*. [No date.]

Charles Rufus Brown, *The Government of Indiana, including the History*. Kalamazoo, 1875.

John Brown Dillon, *A History of Indiana to the Close of the Territorial Government in 1816*. Indianapolis, 1859.

Jacob Pratt Dunn, *Indiana, a Redemption from Slavery*. (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, Houghton, 1888.

De Witt Goodrich and Charles Richard Tuttle, *An Illustrated History of the State of Indiana*. Indianapolis, 1874. — Revised edition by W. S. Haymond, 1879.

**Iowa.**

[Anon.], *The History of Marshall County, Iowa*. Chicago, 1878.

W. J. J. Harsha, *The Story of Iowa*. Omaha, 1890.

Lurton Dunham Ingersoll, *Iowa and the Rebellion*. Phila., 1866. Third edition, 1867.

Franc B. Wilkie, *Davenport [Iowa] Past and Present*. Davenport, 1858.

**Kansas.**

Frye Williams Giles, *Thirty Years in Topeka: A Historical Sketch*. Topeka, 1886.

John N. Halloway, *History of Kansas*. Lafayette, Ind., 1868.

Leverett Wilson Spring, *Kansas: The Prelude to the War for the Union*. (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1885.



Daniel Webster Wilder, *The Annals of Kansas*. Topeka, 1875.  
— Another edition in 1886.

#### Kentucky.

Benjamin Casseday, *The History of Louisville*. Louisville, 1852.

Lewis Collins, *Historical Sketches of Kentucky*. — Published by the author at Maysville, Ky., and by J. A. James, Cincinnati, 1848.

Lewis Collins, *History of Kentucky*. Revised and enlarged by his son, Richard H. Collins. 2 vols. Covington, Ky., 1878.

Emma M. Connelly, *The Story of Kentucky*. (Story of the States series.) Boston, 1891.

Daniel Drake, *Pioneer Life in Kentucky*. Edited by his son, Charles D. Drake. Cincinnati, 1870.

George W. Ranck, *History of Lexington, Kentucky*. Cincinnati, 1872.

Nathaniel Southgate Shaler, *Kentucky: A Pioneer Commonwealth*. (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, etc., 1885.

#### Louisiana.

François Barbé-Marbois, *Histoire de la Louisiane et de la Cession*. Paris, 1829. — Translated as *The History of Louisiana, Particularly of the Cession of that Colony to the United States*. Phila., 1830.

JJ Benjamin Franklin French, *Historical Collections of Louisiana*. 5 vols. N.Y., 1846-53.

Benjamin Franklin French, *Historical Collections of Louisiana and Florida*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1869-75.

J Charles Gayarré, *Histoire de la Louisiane*. 2 vols. Nouvelle Orléans, 1846.

Charles Gayarré, *History of Louisiana*. 4 vols. Third edition, New Orleans, 1885.

Charles Gayarré, *Louisiana; its Colonial History and Romance*. 3 vols. N.Y., 1848-52.

JJ François Xavier Martin, *History of Louisiana*. 2 vols. New Orleans, 1827. — Reprinted in 1 vol. with continuation to 1861. New Orleans, 1882.

John W. Monette, *History of the Discovery and Settlement of the Valley of the Mississippi*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1846.

Benjamin Moore Norman, *New Orleans and Environs*. New Orleans, 1845.

Le Page du Pratz, *The History of Louisiana*. 2 vols. London, 1793 and 1794.

Amos Stoddard, *Sketches, Historical and Descriptive, of Louisiana*. Phila., 1812.

Maurice Thompson, *The Story of Louisiana*. (Story of the States series.) Boston, 1889.

#### Maine.

James Sullivan, *History of the District of Maine*. Boston, 1795.

George Jones Varney, *Brief History of Maine*. Portland, 1888.

William D. Williamson, *The History of the State of Maine*. Hallowell, 1832.

#### Maryland.

John Leeds Bozman, *The History of Maryland*. (1632-1660.) 2 vols. Baltimore, 1837.

William Hand Browne, *Maryland: The History of a Palatinate*. (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1884.

George Johnston, *History of Cecil County, Maryland*. Elkton, 1881.

John V. L. McMahan, *An Historical View of the Government of Maryland*. Baltimore, 1831.

David Ridgely, *Annals of Annapolis*. Baltimore, 1841.

John Thomas Scharf, *The Chronicles of Baltimore*. Baltimore, 1874.

John Thomas Scharf, *History of Maryland from the Earliest Period to the Present Day*. 3 vols. Baltimore, 1879.

#### Massachusetts.

Brooks Adams, *The Emancipation of Massachusetts*.<sup>1</sup> Boston, Houghton, 1887.

Charles Francis Adams, *Massachusetts, its Historians and its History*. Boston, 1893.

Charles Francis Adams, *Three Episodes of Massachusetts History*. 2 vols. Boston, etc., 1892.

John Stetson Barry, *The History of Massachusetts*. (1492-1820.) 3 vols. Boston, 1855-57.

Alden Bradford, *History of Massachusetts*. Boston, 1822-29. 3 vols. — Vol. I deals with the years 1764-77; II, with 1775-89; and III, with 1790-1820.

Thomas Hutchinson, *The History of Massachusetts*. London, 1755, 1768, and 1828. 3 vols. — Vol. I deals with the years 1628-91; II, with 1691-1750; III, with 1750-74.

<sup>1</sup> Under Massachusetts the state and local histories are separated, the latter being arranged alphabetically under the name of the city or town.

George Richards Minot, *Continuation of the History of the Province of Massachusetts Bay, from the Year 1748 to 1765*. 2 vols. Boston, 1798-1803.

Peter Oliver, *The Puritan Commonwealth: An Historical Review of the Puritan Government in Massachusetts*. Boston, 1856.

Jeremiah Colburn, *Bibliography of the Local History of Massachusetts*. Boston, 1871.

Joseph Merrill, *History of Amesbury and Merrimac*. Haverhill, 1880.

John Daggett, *Sketch of the History of Attleborough*. Dedham, 1834.

Samuel Gardner Drake, *The History and Antiquities of Boston*. Boston, 1856.

Arthur Gilman, *The Story of Boston*. N.Y., 1889.

Henry Cabot Lodge, *Boston*. (Historic Towns series.) N.Y., etc., 1891.

Josiah Quincy, *A Municipal History of Boston*. Boston, 1852.

Caleb Hopkins Snow, *A History of Boston*. Second edition. Boston, 1828:

Justin Winsor, editor, *The Memorial History of Boston, 1630-1880*. 4 vols. Boston, 1880-81.

Charles Francis Adams, *History of Braintree, Massachusetts, the North Precinct of Braintree, and the Town of Quincy*. Cambridge, 1891.

William S. Pattee, *A History of Old Braintree and Quincy*. Quincy, 1878.

Harriet F. Woods, *Historical Sketches of Brookline*. Boston, 1874.

Abiel Holmes, *The History of Cambridge*. Boston, 1801.

Lucius Robinson Paige, *History of Cambridge, 1630-1877*. Boston, 1877.

Frederick Freeman, *The History of Cape Cod*. 2 vols. Boston, 1860-62.

Richard Frothingham, *History of Charlestown*. Boston, 1845.

Herman Mann, *Historical Annals of Dedham*. Dedham, 1847.

*History of the Town of Dorchester (1626-1858)*. (By a Committee of the Dorchester Antiquarian and Historical Society.) Boston, 1859.

James Blake, *Annals of the Town of Dorchester*. Boston, 1846. (Dorchester Antiquarian and Historical Society, *Collections*, No. II.)

Frederick Clifton Pierce, *History of Grafton*. Worcester, 1879.

Samuel Abbott Green, *Groton Historical Series*. Boston, 1882, and onwards.

Sylvester Judd, *History of Hadley*. Northampton, 1863.

Lucius Robinson Paige, *History of Hardwick*. Boston, 1883.

George Wingate Chase, *The History of Haverhill*. Haverhill, 1861.  
*History of the Town of Hingham, Mass.* 3 vols. Hingham, 1893.  
 Published by the Town. Vol. I—in two parts—is historical.

Joseph Barlow Felt, *History of Ipswich, Essex, and Hamilton*.  
 Cambridge, 1834.

Samuel Roads, *The History and Traditions of Marblehead*. Boston,  
 1880.

John George Metcalf, *Annals of the Town of Mendon*. Providence,  
 1880.

Obed Macy, *History of Nantucket*. 2 parts. Boston, 1835.

Joshua Coffin, *Sketch of the History of Newbury, Newburyport, and  
 West Newbury*. Boston, 1845.

Joseph Edward Adams Smith, *The History of Pittsfield, from  
 1734 to 1800*. Boston, 1869.

William Thomas Davis, *Ancient Landmarks of Plymouth*. Boston, 1883.

John Abbott Goodwin, *The Pilgrim Republic: An Historical Review  
 of the Colony of New Plymouth*. Boston, 1888.

Francis Samuel Drake, *The Town of Roxbury*. Roxbury, 1878.

Joseph Barlow Felt, *The Annals of Salem*. Salem, 1827.

William A. Benedict and Hiram A. Tracy, *History of the Town of  
 Sutton*. Worcester, 1878.

Josiah Gilbert Holland, *History of Western Massachusetts*. 2 vols.  
 Springfield, 1855.

#### Michigan.

Thomas McIntyre Cooley, *Michigan: A History of Governments*.  
 (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1885.

Silas Farmer, *The History of Detroit and Michigan*. Detroit, 1884.

James H. Lanman, *History of Michigan*. N.Y., 1839.

Mrs. Electra M. Sheldon, *The Early History of Michigan*. N.Y.,  
 1856.

#### Minnesota.

Edward Duffield Neill, *Concise History of Minnesota*. Minneapolis,  
 1887.

Edward Duffield Neill, *Explorers and Pioneers of Minnesota*.—Pre-  
 fixed to a series of Minnesota county histories prepared by the  
 Minnesota Publishing Company, 1882.

Edward Duffield Neill, *The History of Minnesota, from the Earliest  
 French Explorations to the Present Time*. Phila., 1858.—Fifth edition,  
 revised and enlarged, Minneapolis, 1883.

E. S. Seymour, *Sketches of Minnesota*. N.Y., 1850.

John Fletcher Williams, *A History of the City of Saint Paul, Minnesota*. Saint Paul, 1876. — This volume forms the 4th volume of the Minnesota Historical Society Collections.

John Fletcher Williams, *Outlines of the History of Minnesota*. — See note to Neill's *Explorers*.

#### Mississippi.

John F. H. Claiborne, *Mississippi as a Province, Territory, and State*. Jackson, Miss., 1880.

Robert Lowry and William Henry McCardle, *A History of Mississippi*. Jackson, Miss., 1891.

Albert James Pickett, *History of Alabama, Georgia, and Mississippi*. 2 vols. Charleston, 1851.

#### Missouri.

Chancy R. Barns, editor, *The Commonwealth of Missouri*. St. Louis, 1877. The chapter on Educational Progress is by W. T. Harris.

Frederic Louis Billon, *Annals of St. Louis in its Territorial Days, 1804-1821*. St. Louis, 1889.

Lucien Carr, *Missouri, A Bone of Contention*. (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1888.

Walter Bickford Davis and Daniel Steele Durrie, *An Illustrated History of Missouri*. St. Louis, 1876.

Richard Edwards and M. Hopewell, *Edwards' Great West and her Commercial Metropolis [St. Louis]*. St. Louis, 1860.

John Thomas Scharf, *History of Saint Louis, City and County, from the Earliest Periods to the Present Day*. 2 vols. Phila., 1883.

Elihu H. Shepard, *The Early History of St. Louis and Missouri*. St. Louis, 1870.

[For **Montana**, see Washington.]

[For **Nevada**, see Colorado.]

#### New Hampshire.

Nathaniel Adams, *Annals of Portsmouth*. Portsmouth, 1825.

Jeremy Belknap, *The History of New Hampshire*. 3 vols. Boston, 1742.

Charles Henry Bell, *History of the Town of Exeter*. Exeter, 1888.

Nathaniel Bouton, *The History of Concord*. Concord, 1856.

Charles Warren Brewster, *Rambles about Portsmouth*. Portsmouth, 1859. (Second series published after the author's death, Portsmouth, 1869.)

Benjamin Chase, *History of Old Chester, from 1719 to 1869*. Auburn, N.H., 1869.

John Farmer and Jacob Bailey Moore, *Collections, Topographical, Historical, and Biographical, relating principally to New Hampshire*. 3 vols. Concord, 1822-24.

Walter Harriman, *The History of Warner, New Hampshire*. 1735-1879. Concord, 1879.

John Norris McClintock, *History of New Hampshire*. Boston, 1888.

Chandler Eastman Potter, *The History of Manchester, N.H.* Manchester, 1856.

Moses Thurston Runnels, *History of Sanbornton, N.H.* 2 vols. Boston, 1882. — Vol. I contains Annals.

Edwin David Sanborn, *History of New Hampshire*. Manchester, 1875.

Henry Hamilton Saunderson, *History of Charlestown, New Hampshire*. Claremont, N.H., 1876.

Ezra Scollay Stearns, *History of the Town of Rindge, N.H.* 1736-1874. Boston, 1875.

#### New Jersey.

Joseph Atkinson, *The History of Newark, New Jersey*. Newark, 1878.

Theodore Frelinghuysen Chambers, *The Early Germans of New Jersey*. Dover, N.J., 1895.

Thomas F. Gordon, *History of New Jersey, from its Discovery by Europeans to the Adoption of the Federal Constitution*. Trenton, 1834.

Edwin Francis Hatfield, *History of Elizabeth, New Jersey*. N.Y., 1868.

Andrew D. Mellick, Jr., *The Story of an Old Farm*. Somerville, N.J., 1889.

Isaac S. Mulford, *Civil and Political History of New Jersey*. Camden, 1848.

Nicholas Murray, *Notes, Historical and Biographical, concerning Elizabeth-Town*. Elizabeth-Town, 1844.

John Otto Raum, *The History of New Jersey, from its earliest Settlement to the present time*. 2 vols. Phila., 1877.

Samuel Smith, *The History of the Colony of Nova-Cæsaria, or New Jersey*. Burlington, N.J., 1765.

William Adeë Whitehead, *Early History of Perth Amboy*. N.Y., 1856.

## New Mexico (and Arizona).

Hubert Howe Bancroft, *Arizona and New Mexico. 1530-1888.* (*History of the Pacific States*, Vol. XII.) San Francisco, 1888.

Horatio O. Ladd, *The Story of New Mexico.* (Story of the States series.) Boston, 1892.

## New York.

John Warner Barber and Henry Howe, *Historical Collections of the State of New York.*<sup>1</sup> N.Y., 1845.

John Romeyn Brodhead, *History of the State of New York.* 2 vols. — Vol. I, 1609-64, N.Y., 1853; Vol. II, 1664-91, N.Y., 1871.

Elbridge Streeter Brooks, *The Story of New York.* (Story of the States series.) Boston, 1888.

Thomas F. Gordon, *Gazetteer of the State of New York.* Phila., 1836.

Jabez D. Hammond, *The History of Political Parties in the State of New York.* Fourth edition. 2 vols. Cooperstown, 1846.

John Stilwell Jenkins, *History of Political Parties in the State of New York.* Auburn, 1846.

James Macauley, *History of the State of New York.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1829.

Edmund Bailey O'Callaghan, *The History of New Netherland.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1848. — This work extends only to 1664.

Ellis Henry Roberts, *New York. The Planting and the Growth of the Empire State.* (American Commonwealth series.) 2 vols. Boston, 1887.

George Washington Schuyler, *Colonial New York.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1885.

William Smith, *The History of the late Province of New York, from its Discovery to 1762.* 2 vols. (New York Historical Society Collections, Vols. IV and V.) N.Y., 1829-30.

John V. N. Yates and Joseph White Moulton, *History of the State of New York.* Vol. I. N.Y., 1824.

William Ketchum, *History of Buffalo.* 2 vols. Buffalo, 1864-65.

Gabriel Furman, *Notes, Geographical and Historical, relating to the Town of Brooklyn.* Brooklyn, 1865.

Henry Reed Stiles, *A History of the City of Brooklyn.* 3 vols. Brooklyn, 1867-70.

Peter Saily Palmer, *History of Lake Champlain, from its first Exploration by the French in 1609, to 1814.* Albany, 1866.

<sup>1</sup> Books relating to New York are arranged in two lists: (1) those relating to the state; and (2) those dealing with the history of some city, town, or county. The latter are arranged alphabetically under the name of the city or town.

Jay Gould, *History of Delaware County, and Border Wars of New York*. Roxbury, 1856.

Gertrude Lefferts Vanderbilt, *The Social History of Flatbush*. N.Y., 1882.

James Riker, *Harlem (City of New York): Its Origin and Early Annals*. N.Y., 1881.

O. Turner, *Pioneer History of the Holland Purchase*. Buffalo, 1849.

Benson John Lossing, *The Hudson, from the Wilderness to the Sea*. N.Y., 1866.

Franklin Benjamin Hough, *A History of Jefferson County, New York, from the Earliest Period*. Albany and Watertown, N.Y., 1854.

Marius Schoonmaker, *The History of Kingston, New York, from its Early Settlement to the Year 1820*. N.Y., 1888.

Frank Moore, editor, *Antiquities of Long Island*, by Gabriel Furman; to which is added a *Bibliography of Long Island*, by Henry Onderdonk, Jr. N.Y., 1875.

Nathaniel Scudder Prime, *A History of Long Island, from its First Settlement by Europeans to the Year 1845*. (2 parts in one vol.) N.Y., 1845.

Benjamin Franklin Thompson, *History of Long Island*. N.Y., 1839.

Benjamin Franklin Thompson, *The History of Long Island*. 2 vols. Second edition, N.Y., 1843.

Silas Wood, *A Sketch of the First Settlement of the several Towns on Long Island*. Brooklyn, 1828.

Franklin Benjamin Hough, *A History of Lewis County, New York, from the Beginning of its Settlement*. Albany, 1860.

Edward Manning Rittenber, *History of the Town of Newburgh, New York*. Newburgh, 1859.

Edward Manning Rittenber, *History of the County of Orange, New York; with a History of the Town and City of Newburgh*. Newburgh, 1875.

Mary Louise Booth, *History of the City of New York*. N.Y., 1880.

Thomas Allibone Janvier, *In Old New York*. N.Y., 1894.

Mrs. Martha J. Lamb, *History of the City of New York*. 2 vols. New York and Chicago, 1877-80.

Benson John Lossing, *History of New York City. 1609-1884*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1884.

Theodore Roosevelt, *New York*. (Historic Towns series.) N.Y., 1891.

William Leete Stone, Jr., *History of New York City*. N.Y., 1872.

Charles Burr Todd, *The Story of the City of New York*. (Great Cities of the Republic series.) N.Y., 1890.



- David T. Valentine, *History of the City of New York*. N.Y., 1853.  
*New York City, Before and During the American Revolution*. (From Valentine's Manual of the Common Council of New York. 1862. pp. 499-773.)
- John Fanning Watson, *Annals and Occurrences of New York City and State*. Phila., 1846.
- James Grant Wilson, editor, *The Memorial History of the City of New York*. 4 vols. N.Y., 1892-93.
- O. Turner, *History of the Pioneer Settlement of Phelps and Gorham's Purchase*. Rochester, 1870.
- Charles Washington Baird, *History of Rye, New York. 1660-1870*. N.Y., 1871.
- Franklin Benjamin Hough, *A History of St. Lawrence and Franklin Counties, New York, from the Earliest Period*. Albany, 1853.
- Jonathan Pearson, and others, *A History of the Schenectady Patent in the Dutch and English times*. Albany, 1883.
- George Rogers Howell, *The Early History of Southampton, L.I.* Second edition, Albany, 1887.
- Epher Whitaker, *History of Southold, L.I. Its First Century*. Southold, 1881.
- John Jacob Clute, *Annals of Staten Island, from its Discovery to the Present Time*. N.Y., 1877.
- William W. Campbell, *Annals of Tryon County*. N.Y., 1831.
- James H. Hotckin, *A History of the Purchase and Settlement of Western New York*. N.Y., 1848.

#### North Carolina.

- Daniel Coxe, *A Description of the English Province of Carolana, by the Spaniards called Florida, and by the French La Louisiane*. London, 1722.
- William Henry Foote, *Sketches of North Carolina*. N.Y., 1846.
- Francis Lister Hawks, *History of North Carolina*. Second edition. 2 vols. Fayetteville, 1857-58.
- C. L. Hunter, *Sketches of Western North Carolina*. Raleigh, 1877.
- François Xavier Martin, *The History of North Carolina, from the Earliest Period*. 2 vols. New Orleans, 1829.
- John W. Moore, *History of North Carolina; from the Earliest Discoveries to the Present Time*. 2 vols. Raleigh, 1880.
- Jethro Rumple, *A History of Rowan County, North Carolina*. Salisbury, N.C., 1881.

David Schenck, *North Carolina. 1780-81.* Raleigh, 1889.

Mrs. Cornelia Phillips Spencer, *First Steps in North Carolina History.* (North Carolina History series, No. 1.) Raleigh, 1889.

John Hill Wheeler, *Historical Sketches of North Carolina, from 1584-1851.* 2 vols. (in one). Phila., 1851.

John Hill Wheeler, *Reminiscences and Memoirs of North Carolina and Eminent North Carolinians.* Columbus, Ohio, 1884.

Hugh Williamson, *The History of North Carolina.* 2 vols. Phila., 1812.

#### Ohio.

Peter Gibson Thomson, *A Bibliography of the State of Ohio.* Cincinnati, 1880.

Peter Gibson Thomson, compiler, *Catalogue of Books relating to the State of Ohio.* Published by the Historical and Philosophical Society of Ohio. Cincinnati, 1893.

Caleb Atwater, *A History of the State of Ohio.* Second edition, Cincinnati, 1838.

Jay Amos Barrett, *Evolution of the Ordinance of 1787. With an Account of the Earlier Plans for the Government of the Northwest Territory.* (University of Nebraska. Departments of History and Economics.) N.Y., 1891.

Alexander Black, *The Story of Ohio.* (The Story of the States series.) Boston [1888].

Rufus Blanchard, *The Discovery and Conquests of the Northwest.* Chicago, 1880.

Jacob Burnet, *Notes on the Early Settlement of the North-Western Territory.* N.Y., 1847.

Henry Bushnell, *The History of Granville, Licking County, Ohio.* Columbus, 1889.

Salmon Portland Chase, *A Sketch of the History of Ohio.* Cincinnati, 1833.

Charles Cist, *Cincinnati in 1841: its Early Annals and Future Prospects.* Cincinnati, 1841.

Harvey W. Crew, editor, *History of Dayton, Ohio* [by Robert Wilbur Steele and others]. Dayton, O., 1889.

William Parker Cutler, *The Ordinance of July 13th, 1787, for the Government of the Territory Northwest of the River Ohio.* Marietta, O., 1887.

Berthold Fernow, *The Ohio Valley in Colonial Days.* (Munsell's Historical series, No. 17.) Albany, 1890.

Henry A. Ford and Mrs. Kate B. Ford, compilers, *History of Cincinnati, Ohio*. Cleveland, 1881.

Samuel Prescott Hildreth, *Pioneer History: being an Account of the First Examinations of the Ohio Valley, and the Early Settlement of the Northwest Territory*. Cincinnati, 1848.

Burke Aaron Hinsdale, *The Old Northwest*. N.Y., 1888.

Henry Howe, *Historical Collections of Ohio*. Cincinnati, 1847. — Also the "*Ohio Centennial Edition*." 3 vols. (in two). Columbus, 1889-91.

Rufus King, *Ohio: First Fruits*. (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1888.

H. S. Knapp, *History of the Maumee Valley, commencing with its Occupation by the French in 1680*. Toledo, 1872.

Francis W. Miller, *Cincinnati's Beginnings*. Cincinnati, 1880.

A. Banning Norton, *A History of Knox County, Ohio, from 1779 to 1862*. Columbus, 1862.

Jacob Henry Studer, *Columbus, Ohio: its History, Resources, and Progress*. Columbus [Copyright, 1873].

Charles M. Walker, *History of Athens County, Ohio*. Cincinnati, 1869.

Charles Whittlesey, *Early History of Cleveland, Ohio*. Cleveland, 1867.

#### Oregon.

Hubert Howe Bancroft, *Oregon*. Vol. I, 1834-48; Vol. II, 1848-88. (*History of the Pacific States*, Vols. XXIV, XXV.) San Francisco, 1886-88.

William Barrows, *Oregon: The Struggle for Possession*. (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1883.

Thomas Bulfinch, *Oregon and Eldorado; or, Romance of the Rivers*. Boston, 1866.

M. Fédix, *L'Orégon et les Côtes de l'Océan Pacifique du Nord*. Paris, 1846.

Gabriel Franchère, *Narrative of a Voyage to the Northwest Coast of America in 1811-14*. Translated and edited by Jedediah Vincent Huntington. N.Y., 1854.

William Henry Gray, *A History of Oregon, 1792-1849*. Portland, Oregon, 1870.

Robert Greenhow, *The History of Oregon and California, and the other Territories on the North-West Coast of North America*. Boston, 1844.

Robert Greenhow, *Memoir, Historical and Political, on the Northwest Coast of North America*. Washington, 1840.

Gustavus Hines, *Oregon: its History, Condition, and Prospects*. N.Y., 1859.

Washington Irving, *Astoria*. 2 vols. Phila., 1836.

Hall Jackson Kelley, *A History of the Settlement of Oregon and the Interior of Upper California*. Springfield, Mass., 1868.

Oliver W. Nixon, *How Marcus Whitman Saved Oregon*. Chicago, 1895.

Alexander Ross, *Adventures of the First Settlers on the Oregon or Columbia River*. London, 1849.

Jessy Quinn Thornton, *Oregon and California in 1848*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1855.

Benjamin Waterhouse, *Oregon; or A short History of a Long Journey from the Atlantic Ocean to the Region of the Pacific, by Land. Drawn up from the notes of John B. Wyeth*. Cambridge, 1833.

George Wilkes, *The History of Oregon*. N.Y., 1845.

#### Pennsylvania.

Pennsylvania State Library, *Check-List of Pennsylvania County, Town, and Township Histories. 1794-1892*. Harrisburg, 1892.

Daniel Agnew, *A History of the Region of Pennsylvania North of the Ohio and West of the Allegheny River*. Phila., 1887.

Isaac A. Chapman, *A Sketch of the History of Wyoming*. Wilkesbarre, Penn., 1830.

William Mason Cornell, *The History of Pennsylvania, from the Earliest Discovery to the Present Time*. Phila. [1876].

Sherman Day, *Historical Collections of the State of Pennsylvania*. Phila. [Copyright, 1843].

Peter Stephen Duponceau, *An Historical Discourse delivered before the Society for the Commemoration of the Landing of William Penn, October 24th, 1832*. Phila., 1832.

William Henry Egle, *An Illustrated History of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania (1609-1876)*. Harrisburg, 1876. — Part I contains *General History*; Part II, *County Histories*.

Thomas F. Gordon, *The History of Pennsylvania, from its Discovery by Europeans to 1776*. Phila., 1829.

Samuel Hazard, *Annals of Pennsylvania, from the Discovery of the Delaware. 1609-1682*. Phila., 1850.

Charles Miner, *History of Wyoming, in a Series of Letters to his Son*. Phila., 1845.

Jacob Isidore Mombert, *An Authentic History of Lancaster County (Penn.)*. Lancaster, Penn., 1869.

Stewart Pearce, *Annals of Luzerne County, from the First Settlement at Wyoming to 1860*. Phila., 1860.

George Peck, *Wyoming; its History, Stirring Incidents, and Romantic Adventures*. N.Y., 1858.

Jacques Philibert Rousselot de Surgy, *Histoire Naturelle et Politique de la Pensylvanie*. Traduite de l'Allemand. Paris, 1768.

Robert Proud, *The History of Pennsylvania, from the Original Settlement in 1681, till after the Year 1742*. (There is added a description of Pennsylvania between the years 1760 and 1770, with an Appendix.) 2 vols. Phila., 1797-98.

Isaac Daniel Rupp, *Early History of Western Pennsylvania, and of the West, and of Western Expeditions and Campaigns, from 1754-1833*. Pittsburg, 1846.

Isaac Daniel Rupp, *History of Lancaster County (Penn.)*. Lancaster, Penn., 1844.

Laura G. Sanford, *The History of Erie County, Pennsylvania*. Phila., 1862.

Johann Ludewig Schulze, *Nachrichten von den vereinigten Deutschen Evangelisch-Lutherischen Gemeinen in Nord-America, absonderlich in Pensylvanien*. Halle, 1787.

John Thomas Scharf and Thompson Westcott, *History of Philadelphia, 1609-1884*. 3 vols. Phila., 1884.

George Smith, *History of Delaware County, Pennsylvania*. Phila., 1862.

William Leete Stone, *The Poetry and History of Wyoming*. N.Y., 1841.

Gabriel Thomas, *An Historical and Geographical Account of the Province and Country of Pensilvania; and of West-New-Jersey in America*. London, 1698. — Lithographed for H. A. Brady, of the New York Historical Society. N.Y., 1848.

James Veech, *The Monongahela of Old*. Pittsburgh, circa 1858.

John F. Watson, *Annals of Philadelphia and Pennsylvania, in the Olden Time*. 2 vols. Phila., 1857.

Sarah Chauncey Woolsey [Susan Coolidge], *A Short History of the City of Philadelphia, from its Foundation to the Present Time*. Boston, 1887.

#### Rhode Island.

John Russell Bartlett, *Bibliography of Rhode Island*. Providence, 1864.

Samuel Greene Arnold, *The History of Rhode Island*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1859.

John Callender, *An Historical Discourse on the Colony of Rhode-Island and Providence Plantations* (1638–1738). Boston, 1739.

George Washington Greene, *A Short History of Rhode Island*. Providence, 1877.

Wilfred Harold Munro, *The History of Bristol, R.I.* Providence, 1880.

Edward Peterson, *History of Rhode Island*. N.Y., 1853.

Elisha Reynolds Potter, Jr., *The Early History of Narragansett*. (Rhode Island Historical Society, *Collections*, Vol. III.) Providence, 1835.

[Sidney S. Rider, editor], *Rhode Island Historical Tracts*, First Series, 20 Numbers, Providence, 1877–95; Second Series, Nos. 1–2, Providence, 1895.

William Read Staples, *Annals of the Town of Providence, from its First Settlement, to the Organization of the City Government, in June, 1832*. Providence, 1843.

Wilkins Updike, *History of the Episcopal Church in Narragansett*. N.Y., 1847.

#### South Carolina.

B. R. Carroll, compiler, *Historical Collections of South Carolina* (1492–1776). 2 vols. N.Y., 1836.

[James Glen], *A Description of South Carolina*. London, 1761.

Alexander Hewatt, *An Historical Account of the Rise and Progress of the Colonies of South Carolina and Georgia*. 2 vols. London, 1779.

John H. Logan, *A History of the Upper Country of South Carolina, from the Earliest Periods to the Close of the War of Independence*. Vol. I. Charleston, 1859.

Robert Mills, *Statistics of South Carolina, including a View of its Natural, Civil, and Military History*. Charleston, 1826.

James Sheppard Pike, *The Prostrate State: South Carolina under Negro Government*. N.Y., 1874.

David Ramsay, *The History of South Carolina, from its First Settlement in 1670, to the Year 1808*. 2 vols. Charleston, 1809.

William Gilmore Simms, *The History of South Carolina*. Charleston, 1840.

#### Tennessee.

James Roberts Gilmore [Edmund Kirke], *The Rear-Guard of the Revolution*, N.Y., 1886; *John Sevier as a Commonwealth Builder*, N.Y., 1887; *The Advance-Guard of Western Civilization*, N.Y., 1888.

John Haywood, *The Civil and Political History of the State of*

*Tennessee, from its Earliest Settlement up to the Year 1796.* Exact reprint of the edition of 1823. Nashville, 1891.

James Phelan, *History of Tennessee: The Making of a State.* Boston, 1888.

J. G. M. Ramsey, *The Annals of Tennessee to the End of the Eighteenth Century.* Charleston, 1853.

John Wooldridge, editor, *History of Nashville, Tenn.* (Written by J. Wooldridge, E. E. Hoss, W. B. Reese, and others.) Nashville, 1890.

#### Texas.

Hubert Howe Bancroft, *North Mexican States and Texas, 1531-1889.* 2 vols. (*History of the Pacific States.* Vols. X and XI.) San Francisco, 1883-89.

Henry Stuart Foote, *Texas and the Texans; or, Advance of the Anglo-Americans to the Southwest.* 2 vols. Phila., 1841.

William M. Gouge, *The Fiscal History of Texas, from 1834 to 1851-52.* Phila., 1852.

George Wilkins Kendall, *Narrative of the Texan Santa Fé Expedition.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1844.

William Kennedy, *Texas: The Rise, Progress, and Prospects of the Republic of Texas.* 2 vols. London, 1841.

N. Doran Maillard, *The History of the Republic of Texas, from the Discovery of the Country to the Present Time.* London, 1842.

H. Yoakum, *History of Texas, from its First Settlement in 1685, to its Annexation to the United States in 1846.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1856.

#### Utah.

Hubert Howe Bancroft, *Utah, 1540-1886.* (*History of the Pacific States*, Vol. XXI.) San Francisco, 1889.

[Dyer Daniel Lunn], *Utah and its People.* [1882.]

#### Vermont.

Ira Allen, *The Natural and Political History of the State of Vermont.* London, 1798.

Benjamin Homer Hall, *History of Eastern Vermont, from its Earliest Settlement to the Close of the Eighteenth Century.* N.Y., 1858.

Hiland Hall, *The History of Vermont, from its Discovery to its Admission into the Union in 1791.* Albany, 1868.

Nathan Hoskins, *A History of the State of Vermont, from its Discovery and Settlement to the Close of the Year 1830.* Vergennes, 1831.

John L. Heaton, *The Story of Vermont*. (Story of the States series.) Boston, 1889.

Isaac Jennings, *Memorials of a Century*. (Relating chiefly to the early history of Bennington, Vt., and its first church.) Boston, 1869.

Rowland E. Robinson, *Vermont: A Study of Independence*. (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1892.

Samuel Williams, *The Natural and Civil History of Vermont*. Walpole, N.H., 1794.

### Virginia.

[Robert Beverly], *The History of Virginia, in Four Parts* (1584-1720). Second edition. London, 1722.

Robert Alonzo Brock, *Virginia and Virginians, 1606-1888*. 2 vols. Richmond and Toledo, 1888. — In this work, the "History of Virginia, from the Settlement of Jamestown to the Close of the Civil War," was written by Virgil A. Lewis, and revised by R. A. Brock.

John (Daly) Burk, *The History of Virginia, from its First Settlement to the Present Day*. 3 vols. Petersburg, Va., 1804-5. — This *History* is continued in a fourth volume (1775-81) by Skelton Jones and Louis Hue Girardin. Petersburg, 1816.

Charles Campbell, *History of the Colony and Ancient Dominion of Virginia*. Phila., 1860.

Charles Campbell, *Introduction to the History of the Colony and Ancient Dominion of Virginia*. Richmond, 1847.

John Esten Cooke, *Virginia: A History of the People*. (American Commonwealth series.) Boston, 1883.

William Henry Foote, *Sketches of Virginia, Historical and Biographical*. First series. Phila., 1850. Second series. Phila., 1855.

William S. Forrest, *Historical and Descriptive Sketches of Norfolk and Vicinity, including Portsmouth and the adjacent Counties, during a Period of Two Hundred Years*. Phila., 1853.

Wills de Hass, *History of the Early Settlement and Indian Wars of Western Virginia*. Wheeling, 1851.

[Thomas Jefferson], *Notes on the State of Virginia*. [Paris], 1782:

Samuel Kercheval, *A History of the Valley of Virginia*. Winchester, 1833.

Joseph Martin, *A New and Comprehensive Gazetteer of Virginia, and the District of Columbia*. (To which is added *A History of Virginia, from its First Settlement to the Year 1754*, with a sketch of events up to 1775.) Charlottesville, 1835.



Bishop [William] Meade, *Old Churches, Ministers, and Families of Virginia*. 2 vols. Phila., 1857.

John Lewis Peyton, *History of Augusta County, Virginia*. Staunton, Va., 1882.

Philip Slaughter, *A History of Bristol Parish, Va.* Second edition. Richmond, 1879.

Philip Slaughter, *History of St. George's Parish, in the County of Spottsylvania, and Diocese of Virginia*. Edited by R. A. Brock. Richmond, 1890.

Philip Slaughter, *A History of St. Mark's Parish, Culpeper County, Va.* Richmond, 1877.

William Stith, *The History of the First Discovery and Settlement of Virginia*. Virginia, printed 1747. London, reprinted 1753.

William Stith, *The History of the First Discovery and Settlement of Virginia*. N.Y., 1865. (Sabin's reprint of the Williamsburg edition of 1747.)

Joseph Addison Waddell, *Annals of Augusta County, Virginia*. Richmond, 1886.—The book contains also a *Diary of the War, 1861-65*, and a chapter on *Reconstruction, 1865-71*. The edition of 1888 contains all of the foregoing, with a supplement.

Alexander Scott Withers, *Chronicles of Border Warfare; or, A History of the Settlement by the Whites, of North-western Virginia*. Edited by R. G. Thwaites. Cincinnati, 1895.

#### Washington.

[Anon.], *The State of Washington*. Published by the World's Fair Commission of the State of Washington. Tacoma, 1893.

Hubert Howe Bancroft, *Washington, Idaho, and Montana*. (*History of the Pacific States*, Vol. XXVI.) San Francisco, 1890.

James G. Swan, *The Northwest Coast; or, Three Years' Residence in Washington Territory*. N.Y., 1857.

#### West Virginia.

Virgil Anson Lewis, *History of West Virginia*. Phila., 1889.

#### Wisconsin.

James Smith Buck, *Pioneer History of Milwaukee, from the First American Settlement in 1833, to 1846*. 4 vols. Milwaukee, 1876-86.

Donald McLeod, *History of Wisconsin, from its Discovery to the Present Period*. Buffalo, 1846.

William Rudolph Smith, *The History of Wisconsin*. 2 vols. Vol. I, historical. Vol. II, documentary. Madison, 1854.

Moses McLure Strong, compiler, *History of the Territory of Wisconsin, from 1836 to 1848*. Madison, 1885.

Reuben Gold Thwaites, *The Story of Wisconsin*. (Story of the States series.) Boston, 1890.

Charles Richard Tuttle, *An Illustrated History of the State of Wisconsin*. Boston, 1875.

[For **Wyoming**, see Colorado.]

### § 24. Books of Travel.

Our knowledge of the inner life of the past is based to a considerable extent on accounts by travelers of what they saw while on their journeyings. Perhaps it would be better to regard these books not so much as descriptions of what actually passed before the tourist's eyes, as descriptions of what the narrator thought he saw. We are all aware of the deficiency of vision of later visitors; there is no reason to suppose that earlier writers were better fitted to observe what was going on around them or to understand the genius of the people whose manners they depicted. A traveler also naturally notes the peculiar things he sees and thus gives a distorted picture at best. These books must be used with the greatest caution and checked in every possible way by reference to recorded fact. They are sometimes indispensable, however, to light up an otherwise dreary story, and some of them are good reading.

Edward Strutt Abdy, *Journal of a Residence and Tour in the United States of North America, from April, 1833, to October, 1834*. 3 vols. London, 1835.

Jean Jacques Ampère, *Promenade en Amérique: États-Unis, Cuba, Mexique* (1851-52). 2 tomes. Paris, 1855.

Thomas Anburey, *Travels through the Interior Parts of America*. 2 vols. London, 1789.

[Anon.], *A Visit to Texas: Being the Journal of a Traveler through those Parts most Interesting to American Settlers*. N.Y., 1834.

Carl David Arfwedson, *The United States and Canada, in 1832, 1833, and 1834*. 2 vols. London, 1834.

Sir Edwin Arnold, *Seas and Lands*. London, 1892.

Thomas Ashe, *Travels in America in 1806*. London, 1808.

Robert Barclay, *Agricultural Tour in the United States and Upper Canada*. Edinburgh, 1842.

W. H. Barneby, *Life and Labour in the far, far West*. London, 1884.

John Russell Bartlett, *Personal Narrative of Explorations and Incidents in Texas, New Mexico, California, Sonora, and Chihuahua (1850-53)*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1854.

William Bartram, *Travels through North and South Carolina, Georgia, East and West Florida, etc.* (1773-78). Phila., 1791.

[Heinrich Luden], *Reise Sr. Hoheit des Herzogs Bernard zu Sachsen-Weimar-Eisenach durch Nord-Amerika 1825-26*. Weimar, 1828.

Bernhard, Duke of Saxe-Weimar-Eisenach, *Travels through North America, during the Years 1825 and 1826*. 2 vols. Phila., 1828.

J. Richard Beste, *The Wabash; or Adventures of an English Gentleman's Family in the Interior of America*. 2 vols. London, 1855.

Isabella Bird, *The Englishwoman in America*. London, 1856.

Morris Birkbeck, *Notes on a Journey in America*. London, 1818.

[William Newnham Blane], *An Excursion through the United States and Canada during the Years 1822-23. By an English Gentleman*. London, 1824.

Paul Bourget, *Outre-Mer; Impressions of America*. N.Y., 1895.

John Bradbury, *Travels in the Interior of America, in the Years 1809, 1810, and 1811*. Liverpool, 1817.

Fredrika Bremer, *The Homes of the New World; Impressions of America (1849-51)*. Translated by Mary Howitt. 2 vols. N.Y., 1853.

Jean Pierre Brissot de Warville, *Nouveau Voyage dans les États-Unis de l'Amérique Septentrionale, fait en 1788*. 3 tomes. Paris, 1791.

Jean Pierre Brissot de Warville, *New Travels in the United States, performed in 1788*. 2 vols. Second edition. London, 1794.

Thomas Brothers, *The United States as they are; not as they are generally described*. London, 1840.

James Silk Buckingham, *America, Historical, Statistic, and Descriptive (1837-38)*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1841.

James Silk Buckingham, *The Eastern and Western States of America (1839-40)*. 3 vols. London [1842].

James Silk Buckingham, *The Slave States of America (1839)*. 2 vols. London [1842].

William Bullock, *Sketch of a Journey from New Orleans to New York, in 1827. With a Description of the New and Flourishing City of Cincinnati*, by Benjamin Drake and Edward Deering Mansfield. London, 1827.

Andrew Burnaby, *Travels through the Middle Settlements in North America, in the Years 1759 and 1760*. London, 1775.

Frances Anne [Kemble] Butler, *Journal* (1832-33). 2 vols. Phila., 1835.

William Chambers, *Things as They are in America* (1853). London, 1854.

Marquis de Chastellux, *Voyages dans l'Amérique Septentrionale dans les Années 1780, 1781 et 1782*. 2 tomes. Paris, 1786.

Marquis [François Jean] de Chastellux, *Travels in North America, in the Years 1780, 1781, and 1782*. 2 vols. Translated by J. Kent. London, 1787. Also N.Y., 1827.

Vicomte [François Auguste] de Chateaubriand, *Voyages en Amérique, en France, et en Italie* (1791-93). 2 tomes. Paris, 1828-29.

Michel Chevalier, *Lettres sur l'Amérique du Nord* (1834-35). 2 tomes. Paris, 1837.

Michael Chevalier, *Society, Manners, and Politics in the United States: being a Series of Letters on North America* (Jan., 1834, to Oct., 1835). Translated from the third Paris edition. Boston, 1839.

[A Clergyman], *Three Years on the Kansas Border*. N.Y., 1856.

William Cobbett, *A Year's Residence in the United States of America* (1817-18). — Second edition. 3 parts. London, 1819.

George Combe, *Notes on the United States of North America during a Phrenological Visit in 1838-40*. 2 vols. Phila., 1841.

[James Fenimore Cooper], *Notions of the Americans; picked up by a Travelling Bachelor* (1824-28). 2 vols. London, 1828. Phila., 1832.

Thomas Cooper, *Some Information respecting America* (1793-94). London, 1794.

St. John de Crèveçœur, *Letters from an American Farmer* (1770-81). London, 1782.

St. John de Crèveçœur, *Lettres d'un Cultivateur Américain, écrites à W. S. Ecuyer, depuis l'année 1770, jusqu'à 1781*. 2 tomes. Traduites de l'Anglois. Paris, 1784.

Jaspar Dankers and Peter Sluyter, *Journal of a Voyage to New York, in 1679-80*, translated by Henry C. Murphy. (Memoirs of the Long Island Hist. Society, Vol. I.) Brooklyn, 1867.

William Darby, *A Tour from the City of New York, to Detroit* (May 2d to Sept. 22d, 1818). N.Y., 1819.

John Davis, *Travels of Four Years and a Half in the United States. 1798-1802*. London, 1803.

Charles Dickens, *American Notes for General Circulation*. Leipzig, 1842. — Tauchnitz edition.

John Morison Duncan, *Travels through Part of the United States and Canada in 1818 and 1819*. 2 vols. Glasgow, 1823.

Timothy Dwight, *Travels; in New England and New York* (1796 to 1815). 4 vols. New Haven, 1821-22.

Emily Faithfull, *Three Visits to America* (1872, 1882, 1884). Edinburgh, 1884.

W. Faux, *Memorable Days in America: being a Journal of a Tour to the United States* (1818-20). London, 1823.

Henry Bradshaw Fearon, *Sketches of America. A Narrative of a Journey of Five Thousand Miles through the Eastern and Western States of America* (1817-18). London, 1818.

Isaac Fidler, *Observations on Professions, Literature, Manners, and Emigration, in the United States and Canada, made during a residence there in 1832*. N.Y., 1833.

John Finch, *Travels in the United States of America and Canada*. London, 1833.

Edward Augustus Freeman, *Some Impressions of the United States* (Oct., 1881, to April, 1882). London, 1883.

John Charles Frémont, *The Exploring Expedition to the Rocky Mountains, Oregon, and California* (1842-44). Auburn, 1854. — With this is an account of the Gold Regions of California.

John Charles Frémont, *Report of the Exploring Expedition to the Rocky Mountains in the Year 1842, and to Oregon and North California in the Years 1843-44*. Washington, 1845.

John Charles Frémont, *Memoirs of My Life. Including in the Narrative Five Journeys of Western Exploration, during the Years 1842, 1843-44, 1845-47, 1848-49, 1853-54*. Vol. I. Chicago, 1887.

Julius Froebel, *A Travers l'Amérique* (1849-55). Traduction de l'Allemand par Émile Tandel. 3 tomes. Bruxelles et Paris, 1861.

T. H. Gladstone, *The Englishman in Kansas*. N.Y., 1857.

[Mrs. Anne (MacVicar) Grant], *Memoirs of an American Lady; with Sketches of Manners and Scenery in America, as they existed previous to the Revolution*. 2 vols. (in one). Third edition. London, 1817.

Francis J. Grund, *The Americans in their Moral, Social, and Political Relations*. 2 vols. London, 1837.

Basil Hall, *Voyages and Travels (1802-12)*. London, 1895.

Captain Basil Hall, *Travels in North America, in the Years 1827 and 1828*. 3 vols. Edinburgh, 1829.

Captain Basil Hall, *Forty Etchings, from Sketches made with the Camera Lucida, in North America, in 1827 and 1828*. Edinburgh, 1829.

Judge [James] Hall, *Letters from the West; containing Sketches of Scenery, Manners and Customs*. London, 1828.

James Hall, *Sketches of History, Life, and Manners in the West*. 2 vols. Phila., 1835.

[Thomas Hamilton], *Men and Manners in America (1832)*. Second American edition. 2 vols. Phila., 1833.

Thaddeus Mason Harris, *The Journal of a Tour into the Territory Northwest of the Alleghany Mountains (in 1803)*. Boston, 1805.

Adam Hodgson, *Letters from North America, written during a Tour in the United States and Canada (1819-21)*. 2 vols. London, 1824.

Isaac Holmes, *An Account of the United States of America, derived from actual Observation during a Residence of four Years in that Republic*. London, 1823.

John T. Hughes, *Doniphan's Expedition; containing an Account of the Conquest of New Mexico*. Cincinnati, 1848.

Charles William Janson, *The Stranger in America*. London, 1807.

John Josselyn, *An Account of Two Voyages to New England, made during the Years 1638, 1663*. Boston, 1865.

Peter Kalm, *Beschreibung der Reise, die er nach dem nördlichen Amerika machte*. 3 vols. Göttingen, 1744.

Peter Kalm, *Travels into North America (1748-49)*. Translated by John Reinhold Forster. 3 vols. Vol. I, Warrington, 1770; Vols. II, III, London, 1771.

Edward Augustus Kendall, *Travels through the Northern Parts of the United States, in the Years 1807 and 1808*. 3 vols. N.Y., 1809.

John Knight, *Journal of the Voyage to seek the North-West Passage, 1606*. Contained in Lancaster's *Voyages to the East Indies*. (Hakluyt Society series.) London, 1877.

Le Docteur Édouard René Lefebvre Laboulaye, *Paris en Amérique (1862)*. Vingt-cinquième édition. Paris, 1870.

Dr. Édouard René Lefebvre Laboulaye, *Paris in America*. Translated by Mary L. Booth. N.Y., 1863.

Paul Allen, editor, *History of the Expedition under the Command of Captains Lewis and Clark, to the Sources of the Missouri, thence across the Rocky Mountains and down the River Columbia to the Pacific Ocean, performed during the Years 1804-6.* 2 vols. Phila., 1814.

Edwin James, compiler, *Account of an Expedition from Pittsburgh to the Rocky Mountains, performed in the Years 1819 and '20, under the Command of Major Stephen H. Long.* 2 vols. Phila., 1823.

Charles Lyell, *Travels in North America (1841-42).* 2 vols. London, 1845.

George A. McCall, *Letters from the Frontiers. Written during a Period of Thirty Years' Service in the United States Army.* Phila., 1868.

Alexander Mackay, *The Western World; or, Travels in the United States in 1846-47.* 2 vols. Phila., 1849.

Captain [Frederick] Marryat, *A Diary in America, with Remarks on its Institutions.* 3 vols. London, 1839.

Captain [Frederick] Marryat, *A Diary in America, with Remarks on its Institutions. Part Second.* 3 vols. London, 1839.

Harriet Martineau, *Retrospect of Western Travel.* 3 vols. London, 1838.

Harriet Martineau, *Society in America (1834-36).* 3 vols. London, 1837.

*Journal and Letters of Col. John May, of Boston, relative to Two Journeys to the Ohio Country, in 1788 and '89.* (Ohio Hist. and Philosophical Society.) Cincinnati, 1873.

John Melish, *Travels in the United States, in the Years 1806, 1807, and 1809-11.* 2 vols. Phila., 1812.

François André Michaux, *Voyage à l'Ouest des Monts Alléghanys, dans les états de l'Ohio, du Kentucky et du Tennessee, et Retour à Charleston par les Hautes Carolines (1802).* Paris, 1804.

François André Michaux, *Travels to the Westward of the Allegany Mountains, in the States of the Ohio, Kentucky, and Tennessee, and Return to Charlestown, through the Upper Carolinas (1802).* Translated by B. Lambert. London, 1805.

Francis Moore, *A Voyage to Georgia, begun in the Year 1735.* London, 1744.

Achille Murat, *Lettres sur les États-Unis, à un de ses Amis d'Europe (1826-27).* Paris, 1830.

Achille Murat, *America and the Americans.* Translated by Henry J. Bradfield. N.Y., 1849.



Thomas L. Nichols, *Forty Years of American Life*. 2 vols. London, 1864.

John Cosens Ogden, *An Excursion into Bethlehem and Nazareth, in Pennsylvania, in the Year 1799*. Phila., 1800.

Frederick Law Olmsted, *A Journey in the Seaboard Slave States* (1853). (*Our Slave States*, I.) N.Y., 1856.

Frederick Law Olmsted, *A Journey through Texas*. (*Our Slave States*, II.) N.Y., 1857.

Frederick Law Olmsted, *A Journey in the Back Country*. (*Our Slave States*, III.) N.Y., 1860.

Max O'Rell [Paul Blouët], *Jonathan and His Continent (Rambles through American Society)*. Translated by Madame Paul Blouët. N.Y. [1889].

A. A. Parker, *Trip to the West and Texas* (1834-35). Second edition. Concord and Boston, 1836.

Samuel Parker, *Journal of an Exploring Tour Beyond the Rocky Mountains*. Fifth edition. Auburn, etc., 1846.

Richard Parkinson, *A Tour in America, in 1798, 1799, and 1800*. 2 vols. London, 1805.

Francis Parkman, Jr., *The California and Oregon Trail: being Sketches of Prairie and Rocky Mountain Life* (1846). N.Y., 1849. — Originally published in the *Knickerbocker Magazine*, commencing in February, 1847.

Zebulon Montgomery Pike, *Account of Expeditions to the Sources of the Mississippi, and through the Western parts of Louisiana, during the Years 1805, 1806, 1807. And a Tour through the Interior Parts of New Spain*. Phila., 1810. — Another edition, N.Y., 1895.

John Pope, *A Tour through the Southern and Western Territories of the United States* (1790-91). Richmond, 1792. Reprinted with Index for Charles L. Woodward, N.Y., 1888.

Francis and Theresa Pulszky, *White, Red, Black: Sketches of American Society in the United States*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1853.

Frederick von Raumer, *America, and the American People* (1844). Translated by William Wadden Turner. N.Y., 1846.

M. l'Abbé Robin, *Nouveau Voyage dans l'Amérique Septentrionale, en l'année 1781*. Paris, 1782.

Abbé Claude Robin, *New Travels through North-America* (in 1781). Translated by Philip Freneau. Phila., 1783.



[François Alexandre Frédéric de] La Rochefoucauld-Liancourt, *Voyage dans les États-Unis d'Amérique, fait en 1795, 1796 et 1797*. 8 tomes. Paris, 1799.

Rocheboucauld, *Travels through the United States of North America, in the Years 1795, 1796, and 1797*. 2 vols. London, 1799.

James Robertson, *A Few Months in America* (1853-54). London [1855].

William Howard Russell, *Hesperothen; Notes from the West: A Record of a Ramble in the United States and Canada, in the Spring and Summer of 1881*. 2 vols. London, 1882.

E. Schlaeger, *Die sociale und politische Stellung der Deutschen in den Vereinigten Staaten*. Berlin, 1874.

John F. D. Smyth, *A Tour in the United States of America* (1784). 2 vols. London, 1784.

James Stuart, *Three Years in North America* (1828-31). 2 vols. Edinburgh, 1833.

Robert Sutcliff, *Travels in some Parts of North America, in the Years 1804, 1805, and 1806*. Second edition. York, 1815.

William Tallack, *Friendly Sketches in America*. London, 1861.

Anthony Trollope, *North America* (1861-62). N.Y., 1862.

[Mrs.] Frances M. Trollope, *Domestic Manners of the Americans*. London, 1832.

Henry Theodore Tuckerman, *America and her Commentators. With a Critical Sketch of Travel in the United States*. N.Y., 1864.

Thomas Twining, *Travels in America One Hundred Years ago* (1795-96). N.Y., 1894.

Godfrey T. Vigne, *Six Months in America* (1831-32). Phila., 1833.

Henry Wansey, *The Journal of an Excursion to the United States, in the Summer of 1794*. Salisbury, England, 1796.

Charles Dudley Warner, *Studies in the South and West, with Comments on Canada*. N.Y., 1889.

Elkanah Watson, *Memoirs, including Journals of Travels in Europe and America, from 1777 to 1842*. N.Y., 1856.

Adlard Welby, *A Visit to North America and the English Settlements in Illinois* (1819-20). London, 1821.

Isaac Weld, Jr., *Travels through the States of North America, and the Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada, during the Years 1795, 1796, and 1797*. London, 1799.

George Whitefield, *Journal of a Voyage from London to Savannah* (Dec. 28th, 1737, to May 7th, 1738). Fifth edition. London, 1739.

John Woods, *Two Years' Residence in the Settlement on the English Prairie in the Illinois Country, United States* (1820-22). London, 1822.

John Woolman, *Journal*. Phila., 1845, and Boston, 1873.

Lady Emmeline Stuart Wortley, *Travels in the United States, etc., during 1849 and 1850*. N.Y., 1851.

Frances Wright, *Views of Society and Manners in America* (1818-20). London, 1821.

Francis Wyse, *America, its Realities and Resources*. 3 vols. London, 1846.

Lorenzo de Zavala, *Viage a los Estados-Unidos del Norte de America*. Paris, 1834.

### § 25. Biographies.

Biographies stand midway between sources and secondary histories in so far as they contain letters and other material. The literature of American history is rich in such works, of an elaborate and painstaking kind; and of late years several series of brief biographies have been published which are really little political histories of the period covered by the public life of the characters described. Marshall's *Washington* and Curtis's *Daniel Webster* are illustrations of the first class. The most useful brief biographies are the following volumes of the American Statesmen series: Lodge's *Washington* and *Webster*; Morse's *Jefferson*, *John Quincy Adams*, and *Lincoln*; Sumner's *Jackson*; Von Holst's *Calhoun*; Schurz's *Henry Clay*. In the *Makers of America* series may be mentioned Sumner's *Robert Morris* and Barrett Wendell's *Cotton Mather*. Few of the collections of biographies are of much value: Sparks's *American Biography*, Van Santvoord's *Lives of the Chief Justices*, and J. S. Jenkins's *Lives of the Governors of New York* are exceptions. Good dictionaries of biography are Allen's, Drake's, and Lanman's works (see § 17); and Harper's *Cyclopædia of American Biography*. To this list should be added Alexander Johnston's admirable biographical articles in *Lalor's Cyclopædia*.

A few of the more useful biographies are enumerated below : the arrangement is alphabetical by the subjects of the works (not by authors) :

John Quincy Adams and Charles Francis Adams, *The Life of John Adams*. 2 vols. Phila., 1871.

John T. Morse, Jr., *John Adams*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1884.

Charles Francis Adams, Jr., *Charles Francis Adams*. (American Statesmen series.) [In preparation.]

John T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1882.

Josiah Quincy, *Memoir of the Life of John Quincy Adams*. Boston, 1858.

William H. Seward, *Life and Public Services of John Quincy Adams*. Auburn, 1849.

J. K. Hosmer, *Samuel Adams*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1884.

William V. Wells, *The Life and Public Service of Samuel Adams*, 3 vols. Boston, 1865.

Elizabeth Cary Agassiz, editor, *Louis Agassiz: His Life and Correspondence*. 2 vols. Boston, 1885.

Henry Hall, *Ethan Allen*. N.Y., 1892.

Seth Ames, editor, *Works of Fisher Ames*. 2 vols. Boston, 1854. — With a biographical sketch by John Thornton Kirkland.

Winthrop Sargent, *The Life and Career of Major John André*. Boston, 1861.

A. G. Browne, Jr., *Sketch of the Official Life of J. A. Andrew*. N.Y. 1868.

Isaac N. Arnold, *Life of Benedict Arnold*. Chicago, 1880.

Jared Sparks, *Life and Treason of Benedict Arnold*. (Library of American Biography, Vol. III.) Boston, 1838.

Alvah Hovey, *A Memoir of the Life and Times of the Rev. Isaac Backus*. Boston, 1858.

Mary Barney, editor, *A Biographical Memoir of the late Commodore Joshua Barney*. Boston, 1832.

Theodore Roosevelt, *Thomas Hart Benton*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1887.

William Birney, *James G. Birney and his Times*. N.Y., 1890.

William Constantine Beecher and Rev. Samuel Scoville, assisted by

Mrs. Henry Ward Beecher, *A Biography of Rev. Henry Ward Beecher*. N.Y., 1888.

Gail Hamilton [Mary Abigail Dodge], *Biography of James G. Blaine*. Norwich, 1895.

Grace King, *Jean Baptiste le Moyne, Sieur de Bienville*. (Makers of America series.) N.Y., Dodd, 1892.

Geo. W. Brown, *Reminiscences of old John Brown*. Rockford, Ill., 1880.

James Redpath, *Public Life of Capt. John Brown*. Boston, 1860.

F. B. Sanborn, *Life and Letters of John Brown*. Boston, 1885.

George Ticknor Curtis, *Life of James Buchanan*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1883.

Edward Barrington de Fonblanque, *Political and Military Episodes derived from the Life and Correspondence of John Burgoyne*. London, 1876.

Matthew L. Davis, *Memoirs of Aaron Burr*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1836, 1837.

James Parton, *Life and Times of Aaron Burr*. N.Y., 1858.

Henry Cabot Lodge, *Life and Letters of George Cabot*. Boston, 1877.

[Anon.], *Life of John C. Calhoun*. N.Y., 1843.

Mary Bates, *The Private Life of J. C. Calhoun*. Charleston, 1852.

John Stilwell Jenkins, *The Life of John Caldwell Calhoun*. Auburn, 1850.

H. Von Holst, *John C. Calhoun*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1882.

William Hand Browne, *George Calvert and Cecilius Calvert, Barons Baltimore of Baltimore [in Ireland]*. (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1890.

Augustus Granville Stapleton, *The Political Life of the Right Honourable George Canning (1822-27)*. 3 vols. London, 1831.

Andrew Cunningham McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1891.

Wm. H. Channing, *Memoirs of William Ellery Channing*. 3 vols. Boston, 1848.

Jacob William Schuckers, *The Life and Public Services of Salmon P. Chase*. N.Y., 1874.

Robert Bruce Warden, *An Account of the Private Life and Public Services of Salmon Portland Chase*. Cincinnati, 1874.

Daniel Chipman, *A Memoir of Thomas Chittenden, the First Governor of Vermont*. Middlebury, Vt., 1849.

S. G. Brown, *Life of Rufus Choate*. Boston, 1870.

- Calvin Colton, *Life and Times of Henry Clay*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1846.
- Calvin Colton, *The Last Seven Years of the Life of Henry Clay*. N.Y., 1856.
- D. Mallory, *Life and Speeches of Henry Clay*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1843.
- Epes Sargent, *The Life and Public Services of Henry Clay*. N.Y., 1859.
- Samuel Mosheim Schmucker, *Life and Times of Henry Clay*. Phila., 1860.
- Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*. (American Statesmen series.) 2 vols. Boston, 1887.
- James B. Swain, *The Life and Speeches of Henry Clay*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1842.
- William W. Campbell, *The Life and Writings of De Witt Clinton*. N.Y., 1849.
- David Hosack, *Memoir of De Witt Clinton*. 2 parts. N.Y., 1829.
- Samuel Boykin, *Memorial Volume of Hon. Howell Cobb*. Phila., 1870.
- Edward Smith, *William Cobbett: A Biography*. 2 vols. London, 1878.
- Alfred Ronald Conkling, *The Life and Letters of Roscoe Conkling*. N.Y., 1889.
- Charles Ross, editor, *Correspondence of Charles, First Marquis Cornwallis*. 3 vols. London, 1859.
- Addison Peale Russell, *Thomas Corwin*. Cincinnati, 1882.
- Washington Irving, *History of the Life and Voyages of Christopher Columbus*. 3 vols. N.Y., 1828.
- Clements R. Markham, *Life of Christopher Columbus*. London, 1892.
- Justin Winsor, *Christopher Columbus and how he received and imparted the Spirit of Discovery*. Boston, 1891.
- John J. Jacob, *A Biographical Sketch of the Life of Captain Michael Cresap*. Cincinnati, 1866.
- Mrs. Ann Mary Coleman, *Life of John J. Crittenden, with selections from his Correspondence and Speeches*. 2 vols. Phila., 1871.
- Edward Cary, *George William Curtis*. (American Men of Letters series.) Boston, 1894.
- Charles E. Fitch, *George William Curtis*. [In preparation.]
- William Parker Cutler and Julia Perkins Cutler, *Life, Journals, and Correspondence of Rev. Manasseh Cutler*. 2 vols. Cincinnati, 1888.
- George Mifflin Dallas, *Life and Writings of Alexander J. Dallas*. Phila., 1871.
- Charles Francis Adams, *Richard Henry Dana: A Biography*. 2 vols. Boston, 1890.

- Oliver Dyer, *Personal Recollections of Jefferson Davis*. N.Y., 1889.
- E. A. Pollard, *Life of Jefferson Davis*. Phila., 1869.
- Frank H. Alfried, *Life of Jefferson Davis*. Cincinnati, 1868.
- Mrs. Varina Jefferson Davis, *Jefferson Davis, Ex-President of the Confederate States. A Memoir*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1890.
- Charles Janeway Stillé, *The Life and Times of John Dickinson. 1732 to 1808*. (Pennsylvania Historical Society, *Memoirs*, Vol. XIII.) Phila., 1891. — Also printed separately.
- Francis Tiffany, *Life of Dorothea Lynde Dix*. Boston, 1890.
- James W. Sheahan, *Life of Stephen A. Douglas*. N.Y., 1860.
- Robert Bruce Warden, *Voter's Version of the Life and Character of Stephen A. Douglas*. Columbus, O., 1860.
- Alexander Viets Griswold Allen, *Life of Jonathan Edwards*. (American Religious Leaders series.) Boston, 1889.
- Sereno Edwards Dwight, *The Life of President Edwards*. N.Y., 1830.
- James Elliot Cabot, *A Memoir of Ralph Waldo Emerson*. 2 vols. Boston, 1887.
- Oliver Wendell Holmes, *Ralph Waldo Emerson*. (American Men of Letters series.) Boston, 1885.
- Charles M. Endicott, *Memoir of John Endicott*. Salem, 1847.
- Loyall Farragut, *The Life of David Glasgow Farragut*. N.Y., 1879.
- Lord John Russell, editor, *Memorials and Correspondence of Charles James Fox*. 4 vols. London, 1853-57.
- Henry Offley Wakeman, *Life of Charles James Fox*. (Statesmen series.) London, 1890.
- Paul Leicester Ford, *Franklin Bibliography*. Brooklyn, 1889.
- John Bach McMaster, *Benjamin Franklin as a Man of Letters*. (American Men of Letters series.) Boston, 1887.
- John T. Morse, Jr., *Benjamin Franklin*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1889.
- James Parton, *Life and Times of Benjamin Franklin*. 2 vols. Boston, 1867.
- Jared Sparks, *Life of Benjamin Franklin*. Boston, 1844.
- Henry Adams, *Life of Albert Gallatin*. Phila., 1879.
- J. A. Stevens, *Albert Gallatin*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1884.
- H. C. Pedder, *Garfield's Place in History*. N.Y., 1882.
- William Osborn Stoddard, *The Life of James A. Garfield*. (Lives of the Presidents series, Vol. X.) N.Y., 1889.

Francis Jackson Garrison and W. P. Garrison, *William Lloyd Garrison. The Story of his Life told by his Children.* 4 vols. N.Y., 1885-89.

Archibald Henry Grimke, *William Lloyd Garrison the Abolitionist.* N.Y., 1891.

Oliver Johnson, *William Lloyd Garrison and his Times.* Boston, 1880.

Goldwin Smith, *The Moral Crusader: A biographical Essay on William Lloyd Garrison.* N.Y., 1892.

James Trecothick Austin, *The Life of Elbridge Gerry.* 2 vols. Boston, 1829.

George Washington Julian, *Life of Joshua R. Giddings.* Chicago, 1892.

George A. Brayton, *A Defence of Samuel Gorton and the Settlers of Shawomet.* (*Rhode Island Historical Tracts*, No. 17.) Providence, 1883.

Adam Badeau, *Grant in Peace.* Hartford, 1887.

Adam Badeau, *Military History of U. S. Grant.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1868.

C. C. Chesney, *Military Life of General Grant.* 1874.

G. W. Childs, *Recollections of General Grant.* Phila., 1888.

Henry Coppée, *Grant and his Campaigns.* N.Y., 1866.

Charles A. Dana and J. H. Wilson, *Life of U. S. Grant.* Springfield, 1868.

Whitelaw Reid, *A Memorial of Horace Greely.* N.Y., 1873.

Francis Vinton Greene, *General Greene.* (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1893.

George Washington Greene, *The Life of Nathanael Greene.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1867-71.

William Johnson, *Sketches of the Life and Correspondence of Nathanael Greene.* 2 vols. Charleston, 1822.

Isaac William Stuart, *Life of Captain Nathan Hale.* Hartford, 1856.

John C. Hamilton, *The Life of Alexander Hamilton.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1834.

Henry Cabot Lodge, *Alexander Hamilton.* (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1882.

John T. Morse, Jr., *The Life of Alexander Hamilton.* 2 vols. Boston, 1876.

George Shea, *The Life and Epoch of Alexander Hamilton.* Boston, 1877.

Samuel Mosheim Schmucker, *The Life and Times of Alexander Hamilton.* Phila., 1856.

William Graham Sumner, *Alexander Hamilton*. (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1890.

William Clarence Burrage, *John Hancock and his Times*. Boston, 1891.

Francis Amasa Walker, *General [Winfield Scott] Hancock*. (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1894.

William Wirt Henry, *Patrick Henry. Life, Correspondence and Speeches*. 3 vols. N.Y., 1891.

Moses Coit Tyler, *Patrick Henry*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1887.

William Wirt, *Sketches of the Life and Character of Patrick Henry*. Second edition. Phila., 1818.

Thomas Wentworth Higginson, *Francis Higginson*. (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1891.

George L. Walker, *Thomas Hooker*. (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1891.

William Eaton Foster, *Stephen Hopkins, a Rhode Island Statesman. A Study in the Political History of the Eighteenth Century*. 2 parts. (*Rhode Island Historical Tracts*, No. 19.) Providence, 1884.

[Anon.], *The Life of Sam Houston*. N. Y., J. C. Derby, 1855.

Henry Bruce, *Life of General Houston*. (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1891.

W. C. Crane, *Life and Select Literary Remains of Sam Houston*. 2 vols. Phila., 1885.

A. M. Williams, *Sam Houston and the War of Independence in Texas*. Boston, 1893.

Henry Athanasius Brann, *Most Reverend John Hughes*. (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1892.

Mrs. Maria Campbell, *Revolutionary Services and Civil Life of General William Hull*. (With this is a *History of the Campaign of 1812*, by James Freeman Clarke.) N.Y., 1848.

G. E. Ellis, *Life of Mrs. Anne Hutchinson, with a Sketch of the Antinomian Controversy*. Boston, 1845.

Griffith J. McRee, *Life and Correspondence of James Iredell*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1857-58.

Charles Dudley Warner, *Washington Irving*. (American Men of Letters series.) Boston, 1881.

James Parton, *Life of Andrew Jackson*. 3 vols. N.Y., 1860.

James Parton, *General Jackson*. (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1893.



William Graham Sumner, *Andrew Jackson as a Public Man*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1882.

William Jay, *Life of John Jay*. N.Y., 1833.

George Pellew, *John Jay*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1890.

William Whitelock, *The Life and Times of John Jay*. N.Y., 1887.

Cornelis De Witt, *Thomas Jefferson, Étude historique*. Paris, 1861.

— Translated by R. S. H. Church. London, 1862.

Theodore Dwight, *The Character of Thomas Jefferson as exhibited in his own Writings*. Boston, 1839.

James Parton, *Life of Thomas Jefferson*. Boston, 1874.

John Torrey Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1883.

Hamilton Wilcox Pierson, *The Private Life of Thomas Jefferson*. N.Y., 1862.

Henry S. Randall, *The Life of Thomas Jefferson*. 3 vols. N.Y., 1888.

Sarah N. Randolph, *The Domestic Life of Thomas Jefferson*. N.Y., 1876.

Hamilton Bullock Tompkins, *Bibliotheca Jeffersonia*. N.Y., 1887.

George Tucker, *The Life of Thomas Jefferson*. 2 vols. Phila., 1837.

James Schouler, *Thomas Jefferson*. (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1893.

Frank Moore, *Speeches of Andrew Johnson. With a Biographical Introduction*. Boston, 1865.

William Elliot Griffis, *Sir William Johnson and the Six Nations*. (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1891.

Alexander Slidell Mackenzie, *Life of Paul Jones*. 2 vols. Boston, 1841.

Friedrich Kapp, *Leben des Amerikanischen Generals Johann Kalb*. Stuttgart, 1862.

Friedrich Kapp, *Life of John Kalb*. N.Y., 1870.

F. S. Drake, *Life and Correspondence of Henry Knox*. Boston, 1873.

Charlemagne Tower, Jr., *The Marquis de La Fayette in the American Revolution*. 2 vols. Phila., 1895.

Bayard Tuckerman, *Life of Lafayette*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1889.

Isaac Q. Leake, *Memoir of the Life and Times of General John Lamb*. Albany, 1857.

Hamilton Andrews Hill, *Memoir of Abbott Lawrence*. Boston, 1883.

William Lawrence, *Life of Amos A. Lawrence*. Boston, 1888.

- R. H. Lee, *Life of Arthur Lee*. 2 vols. Boston, 1829.
- Edward Langworthy, *Memoirs of Charles Lee*. Dublin, 1792.
- Jared Sparks, *Life of Charles Lee*. (Library of American Biography, Vol. XVIII.) Boston, 1846.
- Robert Henry Lee, *Memoir of the Life of Richard Henry Lee*. 2 vols. Phila., 1825.
- J. E. Cooke, *Life of Robert E. Lee*. N.Y., 1871.
- J. W. Jones, *Personal Reminiscences of Gen. R. E. Lee*. N.Y., 1875.
- A. L. Long, *Memoirs of Robert E. Lee*. N.Y., 1886.
- Thomas Sergeant Perry, editor, *The Life and Letters of Francis Lieber*. Boston, 1882.
- I. N. Arnold, *The History of Abraham Lincoln and the Overthrow of Slavery*. Chicago, 1866.
- William Henry Herndon and Jesse William Weik, *Herndon's Lincoln The True Story of a Great Life etiam in minimis major. The History and Personal Recollections of Abraham Lincoln*. 3 vols. Chicago [1889].
- Josiah G. Holland, *Life of Abraham Lincoln*. Springfield, 1866.
- Charles G. Leland, *Abraham Lincoln*. London, 1879.
- John T. Morse, Jr., *Abraham Lincoln*. (American Statesmen series.) 2 vols. Boston, 1893.
- John George Nicolay and John Hay, *Abraham Lincoln. A History*. 10 vols. N.Y., 1890.
- H. J. Raymond, *Life and Public Services of Abraham Lincoln, with his State Papers*. N.Y., 1865.
- A. J. Rice, *Reminiscences of Abraham Lincoln by distinguished Men of his Time*. N.Y., 1886.
- Carl Schurz, *Abraham Lincoln*. Boston, 1891.
- C. H. Hunt, *Life of Edward Livingston*. N.Y., 1864.
- Theodore Sedgwick, Jr., *A Memoir of the Life of William Livingston*. N.Y., 1833.
- G. F. Dawson, *Life and Services of Gen. John A. Logan*. Chicago, 1887.
- (Thomas Earle?), *The Life, Travels, and Opinions of Benjamin Lundy*. Phila., 1847.
- G. S. Hillard, *Life and Campaigns of G. B. McClellan*. Phila., 1865.
- George Brinton McClellan, *McClellan's Own Story*. N.Y., 1887.
- Roberdeau Buchanan, *Life of the Hon. Thomas McKean*. Lancaster, Pa., 1890.
- Edward R. Cotton, *Life of Nathaniel Macon*. Baltimore, 1840.

John Quincy Adams, *Lives of J. Madison and J. Monroe*. Boston, 1850.

Sydney Howard Gay, *James Madison*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1884.

William C. Rives, Jr., *History of the Life and Times of James Madison*. 3 vols. Boston, 1859.

Mrs. Caroline Crane Marsh, *Life and Letters of George Perkins Marsh*. N.Y., 1888.

Allan Bowie Magruder, *John Marshall*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1885.

S. E. Marshall, *Life of John Marshall*. [In preparation.]

H. P. Goddard, *Luther Martin, The Federal Bulldog*. Baltimore, 1887.

Kate Mason Rowland, *The Life of George Mason. 1725-1792*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1892.

George S. Hillard, *Memoir and Correspondence of Jeremiah Mason*. Cambridge, 1873.

Barrett Wendell, *Life of Cotton Mather the Puritan Priest*. (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1891.

Enoch Pond, *Life of Increase Mather*. Boston, 1847.

Alden Bradford, *Memoir of the Life and Writings of Rev. Jonathan Mayhew*. Boston, 1838.

John W. Campbell, *Sketch of R. J. Meigs*. Cincinnati, 1838.

John Quincy Adams, *Lives of J. Madison and J. Monroe*. Boston, 1850.

D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe in his Relation to the Public Service*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1883.

William Osborn Stoddard, *Life of James Monroe*. (Lives of the Presidents series, Vol. III.) N.Y., 1887.

James Graham, *The Life of General Daniel Morgan*. N.Y., 1856.

Theodore Roosevelt, *Gouverneur Morris*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1888.

Jared Sparks, *Life of Gouverneur Morris*. 3 vols. Boston, 1832.

Charles Henry Hart, *Robert Morris, the Financier of the American Revolution*. Phila., 1877.

William Graham Sumner, *The Financier [Robert Morris] and the Finances of the American Revolution*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1891.

William Graham Sumner, *Robert Morris*. (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1892.

Oliver Wendell Holmes, *John Lothrop Motley. A Memoir*. Boston, 1879.

Mrs. Anna D. Hallowell, *James and Lucretia Mott. Life and Letters.* Boston, 1884.

Henry Augustus Muhlenberg, *The Life of Major-General Peter Muhlenberg of the Revolutionary Army.* Phila., 1849.

Henry Bruce, *Life of General Oglethorpe.* (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1890.

Robert Wright, *Memoir of General Oglethorpe.* London, 1867.

Francis Bowen, *Life of James Otis.* (Sparks's American Biography series.) Boston, 1844.

William Tudor, *Life of James Otis.* Boston, 1823.

James Cheetham, *The Life of Thomas Paine.* N.Y., 1809.

Moncure Daniel Conway, *Life of Thomas Paine.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1892.

Octavius Brooks Frothingham, *Theodore Parker: A Biography.* Boston, 1874.

John Weiss, *Life and Correspondence of Theodore Parker.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1864.

Theophilus Parsons, Jr., *Memoir of Chief Justice Parsons.* Boston, 1859.

William Joseph Buck, *William Penn in America (1681-1701).* Phila., 1888.

Thomas Clarkson, *Memoirs of the Private and Public Life of William Penn.* 2 vols. Phila., 1814.

Thomas Pym Cope, editor, *Passages from the Life and Writings of William Penn.* Phila., 1882.

Samuel Macpherson Janney, *The Life of William Penn.* Second edition. Phila., 1852.

J. Marsillac, *La Vie de Guillaume Penn.* Paris, 1791.

John Stoughton, *William Penn, the Founder of Pennsylvania.* London, 1882.

William Elliot Griffis, *Matthew Calbraith Perry.* Boston, 1887.

George Lowell Austin, *Life and Times of Wendell Phillips.* Boston, 1888.

T. W. Higginson, *Wendell Phillips.* Boston, 1884.

Octavius Pickering, *The Life of Timothy Pickering.* 4 vols. Boston, 1867-73.

Nathaniel Hawthorne, *Life of Franklin Pierce.* Boston, 1852.

Henry Wheaton, *Some Account of the Life, Writings, and Speeches of William Pinkney.* Boston, 1826.

[John Almon], *Anecdotes of the Life of the Right Hon. William Pitt, Earl of Chatham.* Seventh edition. 3 vols. London, 1810.

Lord Rosebery, *Pitt*. (Twelve English Statesmen series.) London, 1891.

Earl Stanhope, *Life of the Right Honourable William Pitt*. 4 vols. London, 1861-62.

Wm. Plumer, Jr., *Life of William Plumer*. Boston, 1857.

J. S. Jenkins, *Life of James K. Polk*. Auburn, 1850.

Anson [Nelson] and Fanny Nelson, *Memorials of Sarah Childress Polk*. N.Y., 1892.

George Ticknor, *Life of William Hickling Prescott*. Boston, 1864.

Oliver W. B. Peabody, *Life of Israel Putnam*. (Sparks's *Library of American Biography*, Vol. VII.) Boston, 1837.

Mary Cone, *Life of Rufus Putnam*. Cleveland, 1886.

Josiah Quincy, *Memoir of the Life of Josiah Quincy, Jun.* Boston, 1825.

Edmund Quincy, *Life of Josiah Quincy*. Boston, 1867.

Moncure D. Conway, *Omitted Chapters of History, disclosed in Life and Papers of Edmund Randolph*. N.Y., 1888.

Henry Adams, *John Randolph*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1882.

H. A. Garland, *The Life of John Randolph*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1850.

Frederick William Thomas, *John Randolph of Roanoke*. Phila., 1853.

Luther Hamilton, *Memoirs, Speeches and Writings of Robert Rantoul, Jr.* Boston, 1854.

William Thompson Read, *Life and Correspondence of George Read*. Phila., 1870.

Wm. B. Reed, *Life and Correspondence of Joseph Reed*. 2 vols. Phila., 1847.

Elbridge Henry Goss, *The Life of Colonel Paul Revere*. 2 vols. Boston, 1891.

William Barton, *Memoirs of the Life of David Rittenhouse*. Phila., 1813.

George Thomas [Keppel], Earl of Albemarle, *Memoirs of the Marquis of Rockingham and his Contemporaries*. 2 vols. London, 1852.

Henry Cruger Van Schaack, *The Life of Peter Van Schaack*. N.Y., 1842.

Benson John Lossing, *The Life and Times of Philip Schuyler*. [Vol. I.] N.Y. [1860].

George Washington Schuyler, *Colonial New York, Philip Schuyler and his Family*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1885.

Marcus Joseph Wright, *General Scott*. (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1894.

O. J. Victor, *The Life and Military and Civic Services of Lieut. Gen. Winfield Scott*. N.Y., 1861.

Eben Edwards Beardsley, *Life and Correspondence of the Right Reverend Samuel Seabury*. Boston, 1881.

J. R. Gilmore, *John Sevier as a Commonwealth-Builder*. N.Y., 1887.

Frederic Bancroft, *Life of William H. Seward*. [In preparation.]

Thornton K. Lothrop, *William H. Seward*. (American Statesmen series.) [In preparation.]

Frederick William Seward, *Seward at Washington as Senator and Secretary of State*. N.Y., 1891.

Lord Edmond Fitzmaurice, *Life of William, Earl of Shelburne (1737 to 1805)*. 3 vols. London, 1875-76.

Henry Eugene Davies, *General Sheridan*. (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1895.

Octavius Brooks Frothingham, *Gerrit Smith: A Biography*. N.Y., 1878.

Herbert Baxter Adams, *The Life and Writings of Jared Sparks*. 2 vols. Boston, 1893.

Caleb Stark, *Memoir and Official Correspondence of Gen. John Stark*. Concord, 1860. — With this are memoirs of Capt. Phinehas Stevens and Col. Robert Rogers.

Henry Wilson and J. S. Black, *A Contribution to History*. Edwin M. Stanton. Easton, Pa., 1871.

R. M. Johnston and W. H. Browne, *Life of Alexander H. Stephens*. Phila., 1878.

H. Cleveland, *Alex. H. Stephens in Public and Private*. Phila., 1866.

William Alexander Duer, *The Life of William Alexander, Earl of Sterling*. (New Jersey Historical Society, *Collections*, Vol. II.) N.Y., 1847.

Friedrich Kapp, *Leben des Amerikanischen Generals Friedrich Wilhelm von Steuben*. Berlin, 1858.

Friedrich Kapp, *The Life of Major General Frederick William Von Steuben*. 2 parts. N.Y., 1859.

E. B. Callender, *Thaddeus Stevens, Commoner*. Boston, 1882.

William Wetmore Story, *Life and Letters of Joseph Story*. 2 vols. Boston, 1851.

Bayard Tuckerman, *Peter Stuyvesant*. (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1893.

Thomas Coffin Amory, *Life and Writings of James Sullivan*. 2 vols. Boston, 1859.

Thomas Coffin Amory, *The Military Services and Public Life of Major-General John Sullivan*. Boston, 1868.

Anna Laurens Dawes, *Charles Sumner*. (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1892.

A. H. Grimké, *The Life of Charles Sumner, the Scholar in Politics*. N.Y., 1892.

Edward Lillie Pierce, *Memoir and Letters of Charles Sumner*. 4 vols. Boston, 1877-93.

Moorfield Storey, *Charles Sumner*. (American Statesmen series.) [In preparation.]

Samuel Tyler, *Memoir of Roger B. Taney*. Baltimore, 1872.

Oliver Otis Howard, *General Taylor*. (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1892.

Thomas Budd Van Horne, *The Life of Major-General George H. Thomas*. N.Y., 1882.

John Bigelow, *Samuel J. Tilden, His Writings and Speeches*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1885.

Pleasant A. Stovall, *Robert Toombs; Statesman, Speaker, Soldier, Sage*. N.Y., 1892.

John Hannibal Sheppard, *The Life of Samuel Tucker*. Boston, 1868.

Lyon Gardiner Tyler, *Letters and Times of the Tylers*. 2 vols. Richmond, 1884.

Peter Smith Michie, *The Life and Letters of Emory Upton*. N.Y., 1885.

James L. Vallandigham, *Life of Clement L. Vallandigham*. Baltimore, 1872.

Edward M. Shepard, *Martin Van Buren*. (American Statesmen series.) N.Y., 1888.

James Kendall Hosmer, *The Life of Young Sir Henry Vane*. Boston, 1888.

A. G. Riddle, *Life of Benjamin F. Wade*. Cleveland, 1886.

Edward Warren, *The Life of John Warren*. Boston, 1874.

Richard Frothingham, *Life and Times of Joseph Warren*. Boston, 1865.

John Fiske, *Washington and his Country*. (Classics for Children series.) Boston, 1889. — This is Washington Irving's *Life of Washington*, abridged for the use of schools.

Edward Everett Hale, *The Life of Washington studied anew*. N.Y., 1888.

Washington Irving, *Life of George Washington*. 5 vols. N.Y., 1855-59.

Bradley Tyler Johnson, *General Washington*. (Great Commanders series.) N.Y., 1894.

Charles Cooper King, *George Washington*. London, 1894.

Henry Cabot Lodge, *George Washington*. (American Statesmen series.) 2 vols. Boston, 1889.

John Marshall, *Life of George Washington*. 5 vols. Phila., 1804-07.  
— Also an abridged edition in 2 vols. 1832.

Horace Elisha Scudder, *George Washington: An Historical Biography*. (Riverside Library for Young People series.) Boston, 1889.

[Mrs.] Elizabeth Eggleston Seelye, *The Story of Washington*. N.Y., 1893.

Jared Sparks, *The Life of George Washington*. Boston, 1839.

Charles Janeway Stillé, *Major-General Anthony Wayne and the Pennsylvania Line in the Continental Army*. Phila., 1893.

George T. Curtis, *Life of Daniel Webster*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1870.

Peter Harvey, *Reminiscences and Anecdotes of Daniel Webster*. Boston, 1877.

Henry Cabot Lodge, *Daniel Webster*. (American Statesmen series.) Boston, 1883.

Horace Elisha Scudder, *Noah Webster*. (American Men of Letters series.) Boston, 1882.

Thurlow Weed Barnes, *Memoir of Thurlow Weed*. Boston, 1884.

William Sloane Kennedy, *John Greenleaf Whittier, the Poet of Freedom*. (American Reformers series.) N.Y., 1892.

Henry Martyn Dexter, *As to Roger Williams*. Congregational Publishing Society, Boston. [Copyright, 1876.]

James Davis Knowles, *Memoir of Roger Williams*. Boston, 1834.

Oscar Solomon Straus, *Roger Williams: The Pioneer of Religious Liberty*. N.Y., 1894.

Robert C. Winthrop, *Life and Letters of John Winthrop*. Boston, 1864.

Joseph Hopkins Twichell, *John Winthrop*. (Makers of America series.) N.Y., 1891.

J. P. Kennedy, *Memoirs of William Wirt*. 2 vols. Phila., 1849.

George Gibbs, *Memoirs of the Administrations of Washington and John Adams*. N.Y., 1820.

John S. Jenkins, *Life of Silas Wright*. Auburn, 1847.

John Witherspoon Du Bose, *The Life and Times of William Lowndes Yancey*. Birmingham, Ala., 1892.



Joseph Hodgson, *The Cradle of the Confederacy; or, The Times of Troup, Quitman, and Yancey*. Mobile, 1876.

George Quayle Cannon, *Life of President Brigham Young*. [In preparation.]

### § 26. Periodicals.

Much valuable material, both secondary and original, is buried in the sets of American periodicals. Few of them are wholly devoted to historical matters, but many contain occasional articles. Out of the following list of periodicals the most serviceable in an historical library would be the *American Historical Review*, *Atlantic Monthly*, *Century* (especially for the Civil War), *Democratic Review*, *Forum*, *North American Review* (old series to 1878), *Magazine of American History*, *Political Science Quarterly*, *Scribner's Magazine*, and the *Yale Review*.

Until the publication of Poole's *Index to Periodicals* such matter was almost inaccessible. At present, by means of this aid and Jones's *Index to Legal Periodicals*, it is easy to assemble material either as a basis of historical knowledge or for topical work. The value of a library is much increased by these publications, including the supplements to Poole. There are also special indexes to *Harper's*, *North American Review*, and the *New York Nation*.

Of the earlier periodicals the most valuable for its historical material is *Niles's Register* (1811-46); for the last thirty years the *New York Nation* (since 1865); the *North American Review* fills the gap between. The only periodical wholly devoted to American history has been the *Magazine of American History*, now discontinued: but, in October, 1895, appeared the first number of the *American Historical Review*, which is intended to be a national clearing-house for historical writers and readers. The *Political Science Quarterly* and the *Yale Review* have also much historical matter. For a record of current events and criticisms *Public Opinion* is useful. The illustrated magazines have some historical articles frequently gathered into later volumes. The *Forum* and *North American Review* deal rather with current political and social questions than with historical questions.

§ 26 a. List of Periodicals Containing Historical Material.

- American Law Review.* Boston, 1867-.
- The American.* Philadelphia, 1881-.
- The American Antiquarian.* Chicago, 1878-.
- The American Whig Review.* 16 vols. N.Y., 1845-52.
- The Andover Review.* Boston, 1884-93.
- Appleton's Journal.* 15 vols. N.Y., 1869-76. — New series, 11 vols. 1876-81.
- The Atlantic Monthly.* Boston, 1857-.
- Annals of the American Academy of Political and Social Science.* Phila., 1890-.
- The Bangor Historical Magazine.* 8 vols. Bangor, 1885-93.
- The Baptist Quarterly Review.* 11 vols. N.Y., 1867-77.
- Bibliotheca Sacra.* Andover, 1844-83; Oberlin, 1884-.
- Carey's American Museum.* 10 vols. Phila., 1787-92.
- The Catholic World.* N.Y., 1865-.
- The Century Magazine.* N.Y., 1881-.
- The Chautauquan.* Meadville, 1884-.
- The Cosmopolitan.* N.Y., 1887-.
- De Bow's Commercial Review.* 29 vols. New Orleans, 1846-60.
- De Bow's Review.* 5 vols. New Orleans, 1860-64. — "After the War series," 8 vols., 1866-70.
- The Democratic Review.* 43 vols. N.Y., 1838-59.
- William Henry Egle, editor, *Notes and Queries, Historical and Genealogical, chiefly relating to Interior Pennsylvania.* Harrisburg, 1881-95.
- The Forum.* N.Y., 1886-.
- The Galaxy.* 24 vols. N.Y., 1866-77.
- The Granite Monthly.* 9 vols. Concord, N.H., 1878-86.
- Harper's New Monthly Magazine.* N.Y., 1850-.
- Harvard Law Review.* Cambridge, 1887-.
- Samuel Hazard, editor, *Register of Pennsylvania (1828-35).* 16 vols. Phila., 1828-36.
- The Historical Magazine (Dawson's).* 23 vols. Boston, etc., 1857-75.
- The International Review.* 14 vols. N.Y., 1874-83.
- Johns Hopkins University Studies in Historical and Political Science.* Baltimore, 1883-.
- The Knickerbocker Magazine.* 64 vols. N.Y., 1833-64.
- Lippincott's Magazine.* Phila., 1868-.

- Magazine of American History.* N.Y., 1877-94.
- Magazine of New England History.* 2 vols. Newport, 1891-93.
- Magazine of Western History.* 14 vols. Cleveland, N.Y., 1884-91. — Continued as *The National Magazine.* Vols. XV-XIX. N.Y., 1891-94.
- Maine Historical and Genealogical Recorder.* Portland, 1884-.
- William Maxwell, editor, *The Virginia Historical Register, and Literary Advertiser.* 6 vols. Richmond, 1848-53.
- The Methodist Quarterly.* N.Y., 1841-.
- The Narragansett Historical Register.* 8 vols. Hamilton, R.I., 1882-91.
- The Nation.* N.Y., 1865-.
- The National Geographic Magazine.* Washington, 1889-.
- The New England Historical and Genealogical Register.* Boston, 1847-.
- New Princeton Review.* 6 vols. N.Y., 1886-88.
- The New Englander.* 56 vols. New Haven, etc., 1843-92.
- The New England Magazine.* 9 vols. Boston, 1831-35.
- The New England Magazine.* New series. Boston, 1889-.
- The Newport Historical Magazine.* Vols. I-IV. Newport, 1880-83. — Continued as *The Rhode Island Historical Magazine.* Vols. V-VII. Newport, 1884-87.
- The North American Review.* Boston, 1815-77; N.Y., 1878-.
- Ohio Archæological and Historical Quarterly* (1887-89). 2 vols. Columbus [1887-89].
- The Penn. Monthly.* 12 vols. Phila., 1870-82.
- The Pennsylvania Magazine of History and Biography.* — The official publication of the Pennsylvania Historical Society. Phila. 1877-.
- Political Science Quarterly.* N.Y., 1886-.
- The Portfolio* (Dennie's). 34 vols. Phila., 1809-25.
- Potter's American Monthly.* 14 vols. Phila., 1875-81.
- The Presbyterian Quarterly Review.* 6 vols. N.Y., 1872-77.
- The Presbyterian Review.* 10 vols. N.Y., 1880-89.
- The Princeton Review.* 43 vols. Princeton, 1829-71. — New series, N.Y., 1878-84.
- The Quarterly Journal of Economics.* Boston, 1886-.
- Scribner's Monthly.* 22 vols. N.Y., 1870-81. — New series, *Scribner's Magazine*, N.Y., 1887-.
- Southern Historical Magazine.* Vol. I, Nos. 1-6. Charleston, W.Va., 1892.
- Southern Literary Messenger.* 29 vols. Richmond, 1835-59.
- The Southern Quarterly Review.* 27 vols. Charleston, 1842-56.

- The Southern Review.* 8 vols. Charleston, 1828-32.  
*The Southern Review.* 8 vols. Baltimore, 1867-70.  
*The Unitarian Review.* 36 vols. Boston, 1874-91.  
*The Universalist Quarterly.* 48 vols. Boston, 1844-91.  
*Western Law Journal.* 10 vols. Cincinnati, 1843-53.  
*The Yale Review.* New Haven, 1892-.

### § 27. Newspapers.

Newspapers are difficult to use for historical purposes, and their record of events is apt to be imperfect or distorted by the political views of the editor. Early newspapers, especially in colonial times, had very little important news in them, and are useful principally for the unintentional information of advertisements and items. Newspapers of the present day are hard to handle, owing to their bulk and to the lack of systematic arrangement. In general such material ought to be used rather for illustration and corroboration; it is not safe to make newspapers the sole, or even the principal, dependence for an historical narrative. The system of newspaper clippings employed in some schools has the serious drawback of failing to instil discrimination in the selection of material.

The following books about American newspapers may be found suggestive :

Joseph T. Buckingham, *Specimens of Newspaper Literature.* 2 vols. Boston, 1850.

Frederic Hudson, *History of Journalism in the United States, from 1690 to 1872.* N.Y., 1873.

S. N. D. North, *History and Present Condition of the Newspaper and Periodical Press in the United States.* (Publications of the Tenth Census.) Washington, 1884.

Isaiah Thomas, *History of Printing in America.* 2 vols. Worcester, 1810. Second edition. 2 vols. Albany, 1874.

A most useful newspaper for historical purposes is *Niles's Register*, in which appear significant extracts from a variety of the papers of the day. The *New York Tribune* and *New York Times* represent the two sides from about 1840 to 1865. The *Nation* at

that date (1865) began its valuable weekly review of politics. Recently, *Public Opinion* has revived Niles's system of extracts from other papers. Out of the thousands of newspapers in the United States the following brief list includes some of the most serviceable. They are arranged in the order of their first appearance.

- Boston News-Letter*, 1704-76.  
*Boston Gazette*, 1719-52.  
*New York Gazette*, N.Y., 1725-41.  
*New York Gazette, or Post Boy*, 1744-73.  
*New England Weekly Journal*, 1727-41.  
*Maryland Gazette*, Annapolis, 1727-29, and 1745-1839.  
*Pennsylvania Gazette*, Phila., 1728-1845.  
*New York Weekly Journal* [Zenger], 1733-46.  
*Boston Weekly Post Boy*, 1734-55.  
*Boston Evening Post*, 1735-75.  
*Virginia Gazette*, Williamsburg, 1736-75.  
*Pennsylvania Journal*, 1742-97.  
*Evening Post*, N.Y., 1746, 1794-95, 1801-.  
*Boston Weekly Advertiser*, 1751-75.  
*Connecticut Gazette*, New Haven, 1755-68.  
*New Hampshire Gazette*, Portsmouth, 1756-.  
*Newport Mercury*, 1758-.  
*South Carolina and American General Gazette*, 1758-80.  
*Providence Gazette and Daily Journal*, 1762-.  
*Georgia Gazette*, 1763-1802.  
*New London Gazette*, 1763-73; *Connecticut Gazette*, 1773-1844.  
*Connecticut Courant*, Hartford, 1764-.  
*New York Journal, or General Advertiser* [Holt], 1766-1800.  
*Connecticut Journal and New Haven Post Boy*, 1767-1835.  
*Massachusetts Spy*, Boston, 1770-75; Worcester, 1775-.  
*Maryland Journal and Baltimore Advertiser*, 1773-97.  
*Essex Journal*, Newburyport, 1773-1800.  
*Salem Gazette*, 1774-.  
*Independent Chronicle*, Boston, 1776-84, 1789-1831.  
*Morning Post*, Boston, 1780-92.  
*Massachusetts Centinel*, Boston, 1784-90. — Later, published as *Columbian Centinel*, Boston, 1790-1840.  
*Gazette of the United States*, N.Y. and Phila., 1789-1847.  
*National Gazette*, Phila., 1791-93.

- General Advertiser and Aurora*, Phila., 1798-1814.  
*National Intelligencer*, Washington, 1800-70.  
*New England Palladium*, 1801-35.  
*New York Herald*, 1802-.  
*The Enquirer*, Richmond, 1804-.  
*Niles's Register*, Baltimore, 1811-49. 76 vols. — Republished in 36 vols.  
*Boston Daily Advertiser*, Boston, 1796, 1798, 1813-.  
*Charleston Mercury*, 1822-68.  
*Genius of Universal Emancipation*, Baltimore and Washington,  
 1831-36.  
*Louisville Courier-Journal*, 1831-.  
*The Liberator*, Boston, 1831-65.  
*New York Times*, 1834-.  
*New Orleans Picayune*, about 1837-.  
*National Anti-Slavery Standard*, N.Y., 1840-70.  
*New York Tribune*, 1841-.  
*The National Era*, Washington, D.C., 1847-60.  
*Chicago Tribune*, 1847-.  
*Missouri Democrat*, about 1852-.  
*The Nation*, New York, 1865-.  
*Public Opinion*, Washington, 1865-.

### § 28. Printed Sources.

The ultimate source of our knowledge of American history is the record made at the time of the events described. In part we have official records — conscious history ; and the founders of the English Colonies, especially in New England, were well aware of the value which posterity would place on their account of the planting of the New World. Winsor in the *Narrative and Critical History* (VIII, 426) enumerates the principal publications, including the colonial records, which are among the most precious of our documents. Those of Massachusetts and Connecticut, Maryland, Pennsylvania, and New Hampshire have been published by the respective states ; and the two series edited by O'Callaghan called the *Documents relating to the History of New York* and *Documentary History of New York* are substantially records of that colony. Side by side with these must be mentioned the historical narratives of Bradford, Winthrop, Mather,

and Hutchinson on Massachusetts history — a kind of material peculiar to Massachusetts.

The records of the New England Confederation are reprinted in the Plymouth and Connecticut records. Since 1774 we have continuous *Journals* for the Congresses of the United States. For the Convention of 1787 there is the *Journal* and also Madison's notes on the debates. From 1789 to 1837 we have reprints of contemporary newspaper reports of debates in Congress; and since 1833 an official stenographic report, the *Congressional Globe* and *Congressional Record*. There are several elaborate series of public documents published by authority of Congress; of these the earlier ones were gathered up and republished in the folio *State Papers*. To all these documents there are elaborate indexes (§ 16). The *Supreme Court Reports* contain the decisions of that court. The ordinances of Congress before 1788 are not printed except in the *Journals*: but since 1788 there is a series of *Statutes at Large* containing the laws and treaties of the United States (§ 30).

Few states have printed sets of documents, and none have official reports of legislative proceedings. Nor are the town and city transactions in print, except in a few cases. On the other hand few countries have such abundant sets of works of statesmen. Those of Franklin, Washington, Hamilton and Jefferson have been twice published in different forms. These works contain state papers and correspondence, and are well adapted for use in schools and colleges. Many public men have also put together their experiences and reminiscences into autobiographies and recollections — of these the most valuable are John Quincy Adams's *Memoirs*, Franklin's *Autobiography*, Benton's *Thirty Year's View*, McCullough's *Men and Measures*, and Josiah Quincy's *Figures of the Past* (§ 32).

### § 29. Colonial Records.

The old saying, "As the twig is bent so the tree inclines," applies with great force to the history of American political and legal institutions. He that would have a true and accurate insight

into the institutions and political development of the United States since the inauguration of President Washington must first gain a thorough comprehension of the institutions of colonial days. This knowledge can be best acquired by an actual perusal of the legislation and records of the colonial epoch. To facilitate this study the following list of sources is given. It is not intended to be a complete bibliography; but is designed to include the most valuable works which may be found in our large libraries.

#### General.

*The Statutes of the Realm.* Printed by Command of His Majesty King George III. 12 vols. [London], 1810-28. — Extends to the end of the reign of Queen Anne.

Danby Pickering, *The Statutes [of England and Great Britain] at Large from Magna Charta to ... 1761.* Cambridge, 1762. With a *Continuation*, edited by Pickering and others, Cambridge and, later, London, 1762-1869. 109 vols., and a good Index in three vols. — This set is always cited as Pickering's *Statutes*.

Nicholas Trott, *The Laws of the British Plantations in America, relating to the Church and the Clergy, Religion and Learning.* London, 1721. — Imperfect, but useful as pointing the way.

*An Abridgement of the Laws in Force and Use in Her Majesty's Plantations.* London, 1704.

John Brown Dillon, *Oddities of Colonial Legislation in America.* Indianapolis, 1879.

François Xavier Martin, *A Collection of the Statutes of the Parliament of England in Force in the State of North Carolina.* Newbern, 1792. — Most of these laws were in force in the other colonies as well as in North Carolina.

W. Noël Sainsbury, editor, *Calendar of [British] State Papers, Colonial Series (1574-1676).* 9 vols. London, 1860-93.

J. Redington and R. A. Roberts, editors, *Calendar of Home Office, Papers of the Reign of George III (1760-72).* 3 vols. London, 1878-81. — Among the other volumes of the "Rolls Series," which the student of American history will find helpful, are the *Domestic Papers*, the *Carew Manuscripts*, etc.

[John Almon], *A Collection of Papers, relative to the Dispute between Great Britain and America, from 1764 to 1775.* London, 1777. — Always cited as *The Prior Documents*.



*The Charters of the British Colonies in America.* London, 1775. — Printed for John Almon.

Ben. Perley Poore, compiler, *The Federal and State Constitutions, Colonial Charters, and other Organic Laws of the United States.* 2 parts. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1877.

*Extracts from the Votes and Proceedings of the American Continental Congress, held at Philadelphia, Sept. 5th, 1774.* Phila., 1774.

Francis Lister Hawks and William Stevens Perry, *Documentary History of the Protestant Episcopal Church in the United States of America, containing numerous documents concerning the Church in Connecticut.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1863-64.

William Stevens Perry, editor, *Historical Collections relating to the American Colonial Church.* 5 vols. Hartford, 1870-78. (Only 250 copies printed.) Vol. I contains documents relating to Virginia; Vol. II, Pennsylvania; Vol. 3, Massachusetts; Vol. IV, Maryland; Vol. V, Delaware. — This publication contains papers drawn from the English State Papers and not elsewhere accessible in print.

Thomas B. Akins, *Selections from the Public Documents of the Province of Nova Scotia.* Halifax, 1869.

Douglas Brymner, archivist, *Report on Canadian Archives.* Ottawa, 1881-95. — Eight reports have been issued. They contain matter of the greatest value to the student of the history of the United States.

William Houston, *Documents Illustrative of the Canadian Constitution.* Toronto, 1891.

William Kingsford, *The History of Canada. 1608-1779.* 6 vols. London and Toronto, 1888-93. — This work contains many important documents relating to colonial history not easily accessible elsewhere.

#### New Hampshire.

*Acts and Laws of His Majesty's Province of New Hampshire in New England. With sundry Acts of Parliament, 1696-1771.* Portsmouth, 1771.

New Hampshire, *Acts and Laws of the Colony of New Hampshire (1776-80).*

*Records of New Hampshire,* in 17 vols. Vols. I-VII contain *Provincial Papers*, 1623-1776; Vol. VIII, *State Papers*, 1776-83; Vol. IX, *Town Papers*, 1638-1784; Vol. X, *Miscellaneous Documents* (Constitutional Conventions, 1788-92, censuses, and copies of original papers); Vols. XI-XIII, *Town Documents*; Vols. XIV-XVII, *Revolutionary Rolls.* Vols. I-X, compiled by Nathaniel Bouton, 1867-77; Vols. XI-XVII, by Isaac W. Hammond, Boston, 1882-89.

*Concord Town Records, 1732-1820.* Printed by authority, Concord, 1894.

Frank Warren Hackett, compiler, *Portsmouth Records, 1645-1656.* Portsmouth, 1886.

#### Massachusetts.

Nathaniel B. Shurtleff, editor, *Records of the Governor and Company of the Massachusetts Bay in New England (1628-86).* 5 vols. Boston, 1853-54. — A copy now costs about twenty-five dollars.

Thomas Hutchinson, *A Collection of Original Papers Relative to the History of the Colony of Massachusetts-Bay.* Boston, 1769.

*Journals of the Honourable House of Representatives of His Majesty's Province of the Massachusetts-Bay, in New-England (1723-79).* Boston, 1723-78.

William Lincoln, editor, *The Journals of each Provincial Congress of Massachusetts, 1774-1775, and other Documents.* Boston, 1838.

Alden Bradford, editor, *Speeches of the Governors of Massachusetts from 1765 to 1775; and the Answers of the House of Representatives, with their Resolutions.* Boston, 1818.

William H. Whitmore, editor, *A Bibliographical Sketch of the Laws of the Massachusetts Colony from 1630 to 1686.* Boston, 1890. — Contains, among other things, the "Body of Liberties" in photographic facsimile.

*The Body of Liberties. 1641.* Reprinted in facsimile by William H. Whitmore in *The Colonial Laws of Massachusetts.* Boston, 1889.

*The Book of the General Lawes and Libertyes concerning the Inhabitants of the Massachusetts. Cambridge, 1660.* — Reprinted in facsimile, with supplements to 1672, by William H. Whitmore, in *The Colonial Laws of Massachusetts.* Boston, 1889.

*The General Laws and Liberties of the Massachusetts Colony: Revised and Reprinted. By Order of the General Court Holden at Boston, May 15th, 1672. Edward Rawson, Secr. Cambridge, 1672.* — This is reprinted in facsimile in the next title.

William H. Whitmore, editor, *The Colonial Laws of Massachusetts. Reprinted from the edition of 1672, with the supplements through 1686.* Boston, 1887.

*Acts and Laws, of His Majesty's Province of the Massachusetts-Bay in New-England, 1692-1758.* Boston, 1759. — A copy, with supplements to 1774, is in Harvard College Library.

*Acts and Laws, Passed by the Great and General Court or Assembly of the Colony of the Massachusetts-Bay in New-England (1775-80).* Boston, 1780.

*The Perpetual Laws of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, from the commencement of the Constitution, in 1780, to 1789.* Boston, 1789.

Nathan Dane, William Prescott, and Joseph Story, compilers, *The Charters and General Laws of the Colony and Province of Massachusetts Bay.* Boston, 1814.

Ellis Ames and Abner Cheney Goodell, compilers, *The Acts and Resolves, public and private, of the Province of the Massachusetts Bay.* 7 vols. Boston, 1869-92.

Edward Buck, *Massachusetts Ecclesiastical Law.* Boston, 1866.

*Catalogue of Records and Files in the Office of the Clerk of the Supreme Judicial Court for the County of Suffolk* [Massachusetts]. Boston, 1890.

*Suffolk Deeds* (1629-72). Libri I-VII. Boston, 1880-94.

*York Deeds* (1642-1722). 10 vols. Portland, 1887.

William Henry Whitmore and William S. Appleton (Record Commissioners), *Reports of the Record Commissioners of the City of Boston.* 25 vols. issued, containing records of Boston, Dorchester, Roxbury, the Boston Selectmen's Minutes, etc. Boston, 1876-96.

Samuel A. Bates, editor, *Records of the Town of Braintree. 1640 to 1793.* Randolph, Mass., 1886.

*Muddy River and Brookline Records. 1634-1838. By the Inhabitants of Brookline.* 1875.

Don Gleason Hill, editor, *Dedham Records. Town and Selectmen. 1636-1673.* Dedham, 1892-94. — *Church Records* (1638-1845). Dedham, 1888.

Henry Stedman Nourse, *The Early Records of Lancaster.* Lancaster, 1884.

*Watertown Records.* Watertown, 1894.

Mary Francis Peirce, *Town of Weston, Records* (1746-1803). Boston, 1893.

Franklin Pierce Rice, editor, *The Records of Worcester.* (Worcester Society of Antiquity, *Collections*, Vols. I-XIII.)

W. P. Upham, *Town Records of Salem* (1634-59). (Essex Institute, *Historical Collections*, second series, I.) Salem, 1869.

Nathaniel Bradstreet Shurtleff and others, compilers, *Records of the Colony of New Plymouth in New England* (1620-92). 12 vols. Boston, 1855-61. — Vol. XI, which was edited by David Pulsifer, contains the *Plymouth Colony Laws*, 1623-82; Vol. VI, those from 1683 to 1686, 1689 to 1692; Vols. IX and X contain the *Acts of the Commissioners of the United Colonies* (1643-79).

William Brigham, compiler, *The Compact with the Charter and Laws of the Colony of New Plymouth.* Boston, 1836.

Franklin Benjamin Hough, *Papers relating to the Island of Nantucket*. Albany, 1856.

#### Rhode Island.

*Acts and Laws of His Majesty's Colony of Rhode-Island and Providence-Plantations in New-England*. — Editions printed at Newport by the Widow Franklin in 1745 and 1764, and by Samuel Hall in 1767. All the editions of the Rhode Island laws are imperfect; the student must therefore consult the original *Schedules* to gain a comprehension of the history of Rhode Island.

John Russell Bartlett, compiler, *Records of the Colony of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations in New England*. 10 vols. Providence, 1856-65. — Imperfect; the historian is obliged to go to the original records.

*The Early Records of the Town of Providence*. 9 vols. Published by authority. Providence, 1892-95.

#### Connecticut.

James Hammond Trumbull and Charles J. Hoadly, compilers, *The Public Records of the Colony of Connecticut* (1636-1776). 15 vols. Hartford, 1850-90.

Charles J. Hoadly, compiler, *New Haven Colonial Records: Records of the Colony and Plantation of New Haven* (1638-49). Hartford, 1857. — *Records of the Colony or Jurisdiction of New Haven* (1653-65). Hartford, 1858.

*The General Laws and Liberties of Connecticut Colonie: Cambridge, 1673*. Reprinted at Hartford, 1865.

*Acts and Laws of His Majesty's Colony of Connecticut in New England*. — Editions of 1715 and 1769, with supplements to 1779.

*Acts and Laws of the State of Connecticut, in America*. New London, 1784, with supplements to 1794.

#### New York.

Edmund Bailey O'Callaghan, compiler, *Laws and Ordinances of New Netherland, 1638-1674*. Albany, 1868.

*Acts of Assembly, Passed in the Province of New York, from 1691 to 1718*. London, 1719.

*Laws of Assembly from 1691 to 1773*. Vol. I. N.Y., 1774.

*Laws of the State of New York* (1777-1801). "Republished by the Secretary of State, pursuant to Chapter 341 of the laws of 1885." 5 vols. Albany, 1886-87.

*Journal of the Votes and Proceedings of the General Assembly of the Colony of New York (1691-1765).* 2 vols. N.Y., 1764-66.

Edmund Bailey O'Callaghan, *The Documentary History of the State of New York.* 4 vols. Albany, 1849-51.

Edmund Bailey O'Callaghan and Berthold Fernow, editors, *Documents relative to the Colonial History of the State of New York.* 15 vols. Albany, 1856-87. — Vol. XV contains *State Archives.*

*Journals of the Provincial Congress, Provincial Convention, etc., of the State of New York (1775-77).* 2 vols. Albany, 1842. — The journals are also contained in the above publication.

Joel Munsell, *The Annals of Albany (1609-1858).* 10 vols. Albany, 1850-59.

*Records of the Town of East-Hampton, Long Island.* 4 vols. Sag-Harbor, 1887-89. (Published by authority.)

J. Wickham Case, *Southold (L.I.) Town Records.* 2 vols. Printed by order of the towns of Southold and Riverhead. Copyright, 1882-84.

#### New Jersey.

Aaron Leaming and Jacob Spicer, *The Grants, Concessions, and Original Constitutions of the Province of New-Jersey (1664-82).* Phila., [1758].

William A. Whitehead and others, compilers, *Archives of the State of New Jersey: Documents relating to the Colonial History (1631-1775).* 18 vols. Trenton, 1880-95. — Vols. XI-XII contain *Newspaper Extracts (1704-50)*; Vols. XIII-XVIII, *Journal of Governor and Council (1682-1775).*

Samuel Allinson, compiler, *Acts of the General Assembly of the Province of New-Jersey, 1702-1776.* Burlington, N.J., 1776.

Peter Wilson, compiler, *Acts of the General Assembly of the State of New-Jersey (1776-83).* Trenton, 1784.

*Minutes of the Provincial Congress and the Council of Safety of the State of New Jersey, 1774-1776.* Trenton, 1879.

*Minutes of the Council of Safety of the State of New Jersey, 1777-1778.* Jersey City, 1872.

George Scot, *The Model of the Government of the Province of East New Jersey.* Edinburgh, 1685. — Reprinted in Whitehead's *East Jersey under the Proprietary Government.*

### Pennsylvania and Delaware.

*The Charters and Acts of Assembly of the Province of Pennsylvania* (1744-59). Vol. II. Phila., 1762.

Staughton George and others, compilers, *Duke of Yorke's Book of Laws* (1676-82) and *Charter to William Penn and Laws of the Province of Pennsylvania passed between 1682 and 1700*. Harrisburg, 1879.

*A Collection of all the Laws of the Province of Pennsylvania: Now in Force*. Phila., 1742.

*The Acts of the General Assembly of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania* (1777-81), with an Appendix containing the "Laws now in Force, passed between the 30th Day of September 1775, and the REVOLUTION." Phila., 1782.

*The Record of the Court at Upland, in Pennsylvania. 1676 to 1681*. Phila., 1860. (In Vol. VII of *Pennsylvania Historical Memoirs*.)

Alexander James Dallas, compiler, *Laws of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania, from 1700 to 1790. Republished on authority*. 2 vols. Phila., 1793, 1797.

Mathew Carey and John Bioren, *Laws of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania* (1700-1802). 6 vols. Phila., 1803.

*Votes and Proceedings of the House of Representatives of the Province of Pennsylvania* (1682-1776). 6 vols. Phila., 1752-76.

*Colonial Records* (1683-1790). 16 vols. Phila., 1852-53. — Vols. I-X, *Minutes of the Provincial Council of Pennsylvania*; Vols. XI-XVI, *Minutes of the Supreme Executive Council of Pennsylvania*.

*Pennsylvania Archives* (1664-1790), compiled by Samuel Hazard. 12 vols. Phila., 1852-56.

The same, Second Series, edited by John B. Linn and William H. Egle. 19 vols. Harrisburg, 1874-90.

[Michael Hillegas], editor, *Journals of the House of Representatives of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania* (Nov. 28th, 1776, to Oct. 2d, 1781). Vol. I. Phila., 1782. — Probably no more published.

John Bach McMaster and Frederick Dawson Stone, editors, *Pennsylvania and the Federal Constitution. 1787-1788*. Phila., 1888.

### Maryland.

*Acts of Assembly, Passed in the Province of Maryland, from 1692 to 1715*. London, 1723.

*A Compleat Collection of the Laws of Maryland*. Annapolis, 1727.

Thomas Bacon, *Laws of Maryland at Large* (1637-1763). Annapolis, 1765. — Contains also the Charter in Latin, with an English translation.

*Laws of Maryland* (1763-92). 2 vols. Annapolis, 1787.

James Bisset, *Abridgment and Collection of the Acts of Assembly of the Province of Maryland*. Phila., 1759.

*Archives of Maryland*, edited by William Hand Browne. 13 vols. Baltimore, 1883-94. — Vols. I, II, VII, XIII, *Proceedings of the General Assembly* (1637-92); Vols. III, V, VIII, *Proceedings of the Council* (1636-93); Vols. IV, X, *Business of the Provincial Court* (1637-57); Vols. VI, IX, *Correspondence of Governor Horatio Sharpe* (1753-61); Vols. XI, XII, *Journals of the Convention of 1775*, and of the *Council of Safety* (1775-76).

#### Virginia.

William Waller Hening, *The Statutes-at-Large, being a Collection of all the Laws of Virginia* (1619-1792). 13 vols. Phila. and N.Y., 1823.

*Acts of Assembly, Passed in the Colony of Virginia from the Year 1662*. London, 1728.

*The Acts of Assembly, Now in Force, in the Colony of Virginia* (1661-1752). Williamsburg, 1752.

*The Acts of Assembly, Now in Force, in the Colony of Virginia* (1661-1768). Williamsburg, 1769.

*A Collection of all such Public Acts of the General Assembly, and Ordinances of the Conventions of Virginia, passed since the Year 1768, as are now in force* (1769-83). Richmond, 1785.

*A Collection of all such Acts of the General Assembly of Virginia, of a public and permanent nature, as are now in force* (1776-94). Richmond, 1794.

*Report of the Committee of Revisors appointed by the General Assembly of Virginia in 1776*. Richmond, 1784.

Thomas Hicks Wynne and W. S. Gilman, editors, *Colonial Records of Virginia*. Richmond, 1874. (Senate Doc., Extra.)

#### North Carolina.

François-Xavier Martin, *Revisal of the Laws of North Carolina, 1715-1790*. New Bern, 1804.

James Davis, *Revisal of the Laws of North Carolina*. New Bern, 1752.

James Davis, *Revisal of the Laws of North Carolina, 1715-1773*. New Bern, 1773.

François-Xavier Martin, *A Collection of the Statutes of the Parliament of England in Force in the State of North Carolina*. Newbern, 1792.

[William Lawrence Saunders, compiler], *The Colonial Records of North Carolina* (1662-1776). 10 vols. Raleigh, 1886-90.



**South Carolina.**

Nicholas Trott, *The Laws of the Province of South Carolina before 1734*. 2 vols. Charleston, 1736.

John Faucheraud Grimké, compiler, *The Public Laws of the State of South-Carolina (1694-1790)*. Phila., 1790.

Thomas Cooper and David James McCord, *Statutes at Large of South Carolina*. 10 vols. Columbia, 1836-41.

Thomas D. Condy, *Digest of the Laws of the United States and of South Carolina relating to the Militia. Also Patrol Laws, Slave Laws, and Judicial Decisions thereon*. Charleston, 1830.

Joseph Brevard, *An Alphabetical Digest of the Public Statute Law of South-Carolina*. 3 vols. Charleston, 1814.

*The Revised Statutes of the State of South Carolina*. Columbia, 1873. — An Appendix to some copies gives a list of old acts.

Charles Jennett Weston, editor, *Documents connected with the History of South Carolina*. London, 1856.

**Georgia.**

R. and G. Watkins, *A Digest of the Laws of the State of Georgia*. Phila., 1800. — Contains material of value as regards the boundaries of Georgia.

Horatio Marbury and William H. Crawford, compilers, *Digest of the Laws of the State of Georgia*. Savannah, 1802. — Contains all the laws passed before 1802, and then in force.

Charles Colcock Jones, editor, *Acts passed by the General Assembly of the Colony of Georgia. 1755 to 1774*. Wormsloe, 1881.

John Perceval, First Earl of Egmont, *A Journal of the Transactions of the Trustees for Establishing the Colony of Georgia in America*. Wormsloe, 1886.

**Louisiana.**

[Buckingham Smith, editor], *Coleccion de Varios Documentos para la Historia de la Florida y Tierras Adyacentes*. Tome I. Londres [1857].

[Don John O'Reilly], *Regulations*. 1770. — In French, in Appendix to Gayarré's *Histoire de la Louisiane*; in English, in *American State Papers*, folio edition, *Public Lands*, V, and *Miscellaneous*, I, 369 *et seq.*

*Recopilacion de Leyes de los Reynos de las Indias*. 4 vols. Madrid, 1774.

*Novisima Recopilacion de las Leyes de Espana*. 6 vols. Madrid, 1805.



Joseph M. White, *A New Collection of Laws, Charters ... of Great Britain, France and Spain, relating to the Concessions of Land in their several Provinces.* 2 vols. Phila., 1839. — Contains a mass of papers, difficult of access elsewhere, relating to the early history and institutions of Louisiana.

**Digests and Reports.**

Benjamin Vaughan Abbott, *United States Digest ... from the Earliest Period to the Year 1870.* 15 vols. Boston, 1874.

Thomas Bee, *Reports of cases adjudged in the District Court of South Carolina, to which is added an Appendix containing decisions in the Admiralty Court of Pennsylvania.* Phila., 1810. — The Appendix contains many cases decided between 1779 and 1785.

Edmund H. Bennett, *Massachusetts Digest ... of reported decisions* [1804-79, with references to earlier cases]. 2 vols. Boston, 1881.

Frederick Charles Brightly, *A Digest of the Decisions of the Courts of Pennsylvania* (1754-1877). 2 vols. Phila., 1877.

Daniel Call, *Reports of Cases ... in the Court of Appeals of Virginia.* Second edition. 6 vols. Richmond, 1824. — A few early cases will be found scattered through these volumes.

Alexander James Dallas, *Reports of Cases in the Courts of Pennsylvania; and in the Several Courts of the United States and of Pennsylvania* (1754-1806). 4 vols. Phila., 1790-1835. — Vol. I is entitled: *Reports of Cases ruled and adjudged in the Courts of Pennsylvania, before and since the Revolution.* Second edition of Vol. I, Phila., 1806.

Thomas Harris and John McHenry, *Maryland Reports* (1700-99). 4 vols. N.Y., 1809-18.

Thomas Jefferson, *Reports of Cases determined in the General Court of Virginia, from 1730 to 1748, and from 1768 to 1772.* Charlottesville, 1829.

François Xavier Martin, *Notes of a few Decisions in the Superior Courts of North Carolina, and in the Circuit Court of the United States for North Carolina District* [with a Translation of Latch's Cases]. Newbern, 1797. — Included with other matter in a second edition, Raleigh, 1843.

William Henry Norris and others, *Digest of the Maryland Decisions.* 2 vols. Baltimore, 1847.

Richard Peters, *Admiralty Decisions in the District Court of the United States for the Pennsylvania District.* 2 vols. Phila., 1807. — Contains Hopkinson's decisions, 1780-1806, and other interesting matter, as, for example, the "Marine Ordinances of Louis XIV."

Josiah Quincy, Jr., *Reports of Cases Argued and Adjudged in the Superior Court of Judicature of the Province of Massachusetts Bay, between 1761 and 1772*. Boston, 1865.

Jesse Root, *Reports of Cases adjudged in the Superior Court [of Connecticut]*. Hartford, 1798. — Vol. I contains several cases decided before 1789.

George Fred. Williams, *Massachusetts Citations. Quincy to 122 Mass.* Boston, 1878.

George Chalmers, *Opinions of Eminent Lawyers on various points of English Jurisprudence, chiefly concerning the Colonies, Fisheries, and Commerce, of Great Britain*. 2 vols. London, 1814.

William Forsyth, *Cases and Opinions on Constitutional Law and various points of English Jurisprudence*. London, 1869. — Contains a few opinions dealing with the thirteen English colonies on the American continent.

### § 30. United States Records.

Under the Constitution both Houses of Congress are obliged to keep a Journal; and a statement of receipts and expenditures must also be made. In the course of years many other documents have come to be regularly published. Most of these publications for the current year may be had by applying to the member of Congress from one's district; sometimes back sets may also be had, by gift or purchase. These are among the most valuable sources accessible to students of American history.

The manuscripts of the Journals from 1774 to 1788 are in the State Department at Washington. No full and accurate printed edition exists. The two titles below (§ 30 a) show what exists in print.

Indexes to the Journals and Debates are enumerated in § 16 e.

The laws are printed in annual volumes, and they are also to be found in the Appendices to the records of debates (§ 30 b). The standard editions, authoritative in the courts, are enumerated below (§ 30 c). Volume VIII of the *Statutes at Large* contains an index to the laws up to 1845. There is also a *Synoptical Index to the Laws and Treaties*, 1789-1851. Boston, 1882. An index in another form is: F. C. Brightly, *Analytical Digest of the Laws of the United States*, 1789-1857. Phila., 1858; and the indexes to the *Revised Statutes* cover all laws still in force.

Indexes to the Documents are enumerated in § 16 e.

To the decisions of the Federal Courts the most convenient guide is: Robert Desty, *Constitution of the United States*. San Francisco, 1887; it is arranged in the order of the clauses of the Federal Constitution. The commentators refer freely to cases. There are also three "Digests" to Supreme Court Decisions: Jonathan Kendrick Kinney, *Digest of the Decisions of the Supreme Court*. 2 vols. Boston, 1886; Henry G. Danforth, *Digest of the United States Supreme Court Reports*. 2 vols. Albany and N.Y., 1885; H. D. Clarke, *Hand-Book of all the Decisions of the Supreme Court*. Rochester, 1892.

### § 30 a. Journals of Congress.

- 1774-1788. *Journals of Congress. Containing their proceedings.* (Contemporaneous edition) 13 vols. Phila., 1777-88. Reprint. 13 vols. N.Y., 1800-01. — Another reprint, with additions as *Public Journals of Congress*. 4 vols. Boston, 1823.
- 1775-1788. *Secret Journals of the Acts and Proceedings of Congress*. 4 vols. Boston, 1821. — Extracts from the Manuscript Journals, omitted in preparing the Public Journals, described above.
- 1789-1895. *Journal of the House of Representatives of the United States.* (Annual volume.) 106 vols. Phila. and Washington, 1789-1895. — Also a reprint (1789-1815). 9 vols. Washington, 1826.
- 1789-1895. *Journal of the Senate of the United States.* (Annual volume.) 106 vols. Phila. and Washington, 1789-1895. — Also a reprint (1789-1815). 5 vols. Washington, 1820.
- 1789-1869. *Journal of the Executive Proceedings of the Senate of the United States.* 18 vols. Washington, 1828-87. — Contains matter omitted from the public journals.

### § 30 b. Records of Debates.

- 1789-1824. [*Annals of Congress.*] *Annals of the Congress of the United States.* 42 vols. Washington, Gales & Seaton, 1834-56.
- 1825-1837. [*Congressional Debates.*] *Register of Debates in Congress.* 29 vols. Washington, Gales & Seaton, 1825-37.
- 1833-1873. *The Congressional Globe, containing the Debates and Proceedings.* 108 vols. Washington, 1834-73.

- 1873-1895. *Congressional Record, containing the Proceedings and Debates.* 27 vols. (in 152). Washington, 1873-95.

### § 30 c. Laws.

- 1789-1895. *The Statutes at Large of the United States of America.* 17 vols. Boston, 1850-73. — (1789-1873). 11 vols. Washington, Government Printing Office, 1873-95. — Includes treaties and the later proclamations.
1873. *Revised Statutes of the United States ... embracing the Statutes of the United States, general and permanent in their nature, in force on Dec. 1st, 1873.* Washington, 1875. — Also a second edition, with slight corrections, Washington, 1878.
- 1873-1891. *Supplement to the Revised Statutes of the United States, embracing the Statutes, general and permanent in their nature, passed after the Revised Statutes.* (Edited by William A. Richardson.) Washington, 1881. Vol. I only. *Legislation of 1874-1881.* — Also a *Second Edition, revised and continued, 1874-1891.* Washington, 1891.
1893. *Revised Statutes of the United States, embracing the statutes, in force on the first day of December, 1893.* Washington, 1893.

### § 30 d. Documents.

- 1778-1884. *Treaties and Conventions concluded between the United States and other Powers since July 4th, 1776.* Washington, 1889.
- 1789-1818. Thomas B. Waite, *State Papers and Public Documents of the United States ... exhibiting a Complete View of our Foreign Relations.* 12 vols. Boston.
- 1789-1838. *American State Papers. Documents, legislative and executive.* Folio, 38 vols. Washington, Gales & Seaton, 1832-61.
- 1789-1801. [Congressional Documents were published in a variety of forms, as:] *Messages, Documents, Reports, Account of the Receipts and Expenditures, etc.*
- 1801-1817. [Congressional Documents were printed, with few exceptions, in uniform size, without any general title; the binder's titles are:] *Documents, Reports, and, usually, State Papers.*

- 1817-1849. *Senate Documents*. — Include substantially what was afterwards called *Senate Executive Documents* and *Reports of Committees*.
- 1847-1895. *Senate Executive Documents*. — Earlier sets in this period often bear the title *Senate Documents*.
- 1847-1895. *Senate Miscellaneous Documents*.
- 1847-1895. *Senate Reports of Committees*.
- 1817-1830. [*House Documents* usually appear under the binder's title:] *State Papers*.
- 1830-1847. [The *House Documents* are included among the] *Executive Documents* [and make up nearly or quite the whole of the set so designated].
- 1847-1895. *House Executive Documents*. — Earlier sets in this series have simply the title *Executive Documents*.
- 1847-1895. *House Miscellaneous Documents*.
- 1819-1895. *House Reports of Committees*.

### § 30 e. Reports of Judicial Decisions.

- 1781-1800. Alexander Jones Dallas, *Reports of Cases in the Courts of the United States, and Pennsylvania, before and since the Revolution*. 4 vols. Phila., 1790-1807.
- 1801-1815. William Cranch, *Reports of Cases argued and adjudged in the Supreme Court of the United States*. 9 vols. Washington, 1804-17.
- 1816-1827. Henry Wheaton, *Reports of Cases argued and adjudged in the Supreme Court*. 12 vols. N.Y., etc., 1816-27.
- 1828-1843. Richard Peters, Jr., *Reports of Cases argued and adjudged in the Supreme Court*. 17 vols. Phila., 1828-43.
- 1843-1860. Benjamin C. Howard, *Reports of Cases argued and adjudged in the Supreme Court*. 24 vols. Phila., 1843-60.
- 1861-1862. Jeremiah Sullivan Black, *Reports of Cases argued and determined in the Supreme Court*. 2 vols. Washington, 1862-63.
- 1863-1874. John William Wallace, *Cases argued and adjudged*. 13 vols. Washington, 1876-83. — Also bears the title *United States Reports, Supreme Court, Vols. 91-107*.
- 1882-1895. J. C. Bancroft Davis, *United States Reports*. Vols. 108-150. 47 vols. Washington, 1884-95.
- 1791-1827. Richard Peters, *Condensed Reports of Cases argued and*

- adjudged in the Supreme Court of the United States.* 6 vols. Phila., 1828-43.
- 1790-1854. B. R. Curtis, *Reports of Decisions in the Supreme Court of the United States. With Notes and a Digest.* 23 vols. Boston. — Condensed reports.
- 1855-1863. Samuel F. Miller, *Reports of Decisions in the Supreme Court of the United States.* 4 vols. Washington, 1874-75. — Condensed reports, in continuation of Curtis.
- 1791-1895. *Official Opinions of the Attorneys-General of the United States.* 20 vols. Washington, 1852-95.

### § 31. Proceedings of Learned Societies.

Important collections of historical essays of great value are to be found in the proceedings of the historical societies. These have recently been made accessible by A. P. C. Griffin's *Bibliography of the Historical Societies of the United States*, published in the *Annual Reports of the American Historical Association* for 1890 and 1892: it contains tables of contents of all the publications of all available societies, up to the date of publication. There are also indexes to some of the sets of Proceedings and Collections. Among the more important are the following :

American Historical Association, *Papers.* 5 vols. N.Y., 1885-90; *Annual Reports.* Washington, Government Printing Office, 1887-.

Archæological Institute of America, *Annual Reports and Papers.* Boston, 1881-. Contains many valuable papers on pre-historic America.

Alabama Historical Society, *Transactions.* 2 vols. 1851 and 1855; *Alabama Historical Reporter.* 3 vols. Tuscaloosa, 1879-84.

California Historical Society, *Papers* and other publications. San Francisco, 1874-90.

Connecticut Historical Society, *Collections.* 4 vols. Hartford, 1860-92.

New Haven Colony Historical Society, *Papers.* New Haven, 1875-.

Delaware Historical Society, *Papers.* Wilmington, 1879-.

Georgia Historical Society, *Collections*, and other publications. Savannah, 1840-.

Chicago Historical Society, *Collections.* 4 vols. Chicago, 1882-90.

Kansas State Historical Society, *Transactions* (1875-90). 4 vols. Topeka, 1881-90.

Maine Historical Society, *Collections*. Portland, 1831-. — Also other publications.

Maryland Historical Society, *Fund Publications*. Baltimore, 1867-. — Also many other publications.

Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*. 67 vols. Boston, 1792-1894; *Proceedings*. 30 vols. Boston, 1859-94. — The *Collections* were first printed in *The American Apollo*, Boston, 1792; they then appeared in pamphlet form. The early numbers were reprinted from time to time. The *Collections* are divided into series of ten volumes each, the tenth volume containing an index to the whole series. The first twenty volumes of the *Proceedings* form the first series of that publication, and an additional volume contains an index to these twenty volumes. Each volume of the *Proceedings* and of the later *Collections* also contains an index of the matter in that volume.

American Antiquarian Society, *Archæologia Americana. Transactions and Collections of the Society*. 7 vols. Worcester, etc., 1820-85; *Proceedings*. Worcester, 1843-80; new series, Worcester, 1880-.

New England Historic-Genealogical Society, *The New England Historical and Genealogical Register*. Boston, 1847-; *Proceedings* (1871-94). Boston; *Memorial Biographies* (1845-64). 5 vols. Boston, 1880-94.

Essex Institute, *Historical Collections*. First series. Vols. I-VIII. 1859-68. Second series. Vols. IX-XXX. 1869-93. Salem, 1859-93.

Worcester Society of Antiquity, *Collections*. 13 vols. Worcester, 1881-94.

Pioneer Society of the State of Michigan, *Reports*. 18 vols. 1877-91. The first thirteen volumes have as binder's title: "Pioneer Collections," to which the words "Historical Collections" were added in the fourteenth volume.

Minnesota Historical Society, *Collections*. 7 vols. St. Paul, 1872-93. — Vol. I is a republication of the original parts issued from 1850-56.

New Hampshire Historical Society, *Collections*. 9 vols. Concord, 1824-.

New Jersey Historical Society, *Proceedings*. 2 series. 20 vols. Newark, 1847-90; *Collections*. 7 vols. Newark, 1846-72.

New York Historical Society, *Collections*. 9 vols. N.Y., 1811-59; *Collections, Publication Fund Series*. 18 vols. N.Y., 1868-81.

Albany Institute, *Transactions*. 11 vols. Albany, 1830-87.

Long Island Historical Society, *Memoirs*, and other publications. Brooklyn, 1867-.



Ohio Historical and Archæological Society, *Ohio Archæological and Historical Quarterly*. 3 vols. Columbus, 1888-91.

Pennsylvania Historical Society, *Memoirs*. 13 vols. Phila., 1826-91; *Bulletin*. Vol. I. Phila., 1848; *Collections*. Vol. I. Phila., 1853; *Pennsylvania Magazine of History and Biography*. Phila., 1877-.

Wyoming Historical and Geological Society, *Proceedings and Collections*. 3 vols. Wilkes-Barre, Pa., 1858-86.

Rhode Island Historical Society, *Collections*. 8 vols. Providence, 1827-92; *Proceedings*. 4 vols. Providence, 1871-92; *Publications*. New series. Providence, 1893-. — After 1892, the *Proceedings* form the first number of each volume of the *Publications*.

South Carolina Historical Society, *Collections*. 4 vols. Charleston, 1857-87.

Vermont Historical Society, *Proceedings and Addresses*. 1846, 1860-94 (at intervals). Montpelier, 1860-94.

Virginia Historical Society, *Virginia Historical Reporter*. 2 vols. Richmond, 1854-60; *Collections*. New series. 11 vols. Richmond, 1882-92; *The Virginia Magazine of History and Biography*. Richmond, 1893-.

State Historical Society of Wisconsin, *Reports and Collections*. 12 vols. Madison, 1855-92.

Literary and Historical Society of Quebec, *Transactions*. Quebec, 1829-91; *Manuscripts relating to the early History of Canada*. 5 series. Quebec, 1866-77.

### § 32. Works of American Statesmen.

In this and the following section (§ 33) it has not been thought necessary to repeat the titles of the books on statesmen and worthies of the colonial period which have already been given under § 25. The letters and reports of the men of the earlier time are often to be found in monographs dealing with a particular topic, in the proceedings and collections of learned societies, or built into a biography, told, as the phrase is, in the subject's "own words."

John Adams, *Works with a Life of the Author, Notes and Illustrations*. (Edited by Charles Francis Adams.) 10 vols. Boston, 1850-56.

Fisher Ames, *Works, with a Selection of his Speeches and Correspondence*. (Edited by Seth Ames.) 2 vols. Boston, 1854.

Joel Barlow, *Political Writings*. N.Y., 1796.



George S. Boutwell, *Speeches and Papers relating to the Rebellion*. Boston, 1867.

William Bradford, *History of Plymouth Plantation*. (Edited by Charles Deane. Boston, 1856.—Reprinted from Mass. Hist. Soc., *Collections*.)

John C. Calhoun, *Works*. 6 vols. N.Y., 1853-85.

Rufus Choate, *Works*. 2 vols. Boston, 1862.

Henry Clay, *Private Correspondence*. (Edited by Colton.) N.Y., 1855.

Henry Clay, *Works*. (Edited by Colton.) 6 vols. N.Y., 1863.

Thomas Corwin, *Speeches*. (Edited by Isaac Strohm.) Dayton, 1859.

George William Curtis, *Orations and Addresses*. (Edited by C. E. Norton.) 3 vols. N.Y., 1894.

Silas Deane, *The Deane Papers*. (N.Y. Hist. Soc., *Collections*; edited by Charles Isham.) 3 vols. N.Y., 1887-89.

Daniel S. Dickinson, *Speeches, Correspondence, etc.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1867.

John Dickinson, *Political Writings*. 2 vols. Wilmington, 1801.

John A. Dix, *Speeches and Occasional Addresses*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1864.

Edward Everett, *Orations and Speeches on various Occasions*. 4 vols. Boston, 1853-68.

Henry Stevens, *Benjamin Franklin's Life and Writings. A Bibliographical Essay on the Stevens' Collection of Books and Manuscripts relating to Doctor Franklin*. London, 1881.

Benjamin Franklin, *Works ... with Notes and a Life of the Author*. (Edited by Jared Sparks.) 10 vols. Boston, 1836-50.

Benjamin Franklin, *Complete Works*. (Edited by John Bigelow.) 10 vols. N.Y., 1887-88.

James Abram Garfield, *Works*. (Edited by B. A. Hinsdale.) 2 vols. Boston, 1882-83.

Albert Gallatin, *Writings*. (Edited by Henry Adams.) 3 vols. Phila., 1879.

Joshua R. Giddings, *Speeches in Congress*. Boston, 1853.

Alexander Hamilton, *The Works, comprising his Correspondence*. (Edited by John C. Hamilton.) 7 vols. N.Y., 1850-51.

Alexander Hamilton, *The Works*. (Edited by Henry Cabot Lodge.) 4 vols. N.Y., 1885.

*The Diary and Letters of His Excellency Thomas Hutchinson, Esq.* (Edited by Peter Orlando Hutchinson.) 2 vols. Boston, 1884-86.

*Correspondence of Mr. Ralph Izard, of South Carolina. 1774-1804*. Vol. I. N.Y., 1844.

John Jay, *Correspondence and Public Papers*. (Edited by H. P. Johnston.) 4 vols. N.Y., 1890-93.

William Jay, *Miscellaneous Writings on Slavery*. Boston, 1853.

Hamilton Bullock Tompkins, *Bibliotheca Jeffersoniana. A List of Books written by or relating to Thomas Jefferson*. N.Y. and London, 1887.

Thomas Jefferson, *Writings ... being his Autobiography, Correspondence ... and other Writings*. . . . (Edited by H. A. Washington.) 9 vols. Washington, 1853-54.

Thomas Jefferson, *Writings*. (Edited by P. L. Ford.) N.Y., 1892-. [In progress.]

*Extracts from the Diary and Correspondence of the late Amos Lawrence*. (Edited by W. R. Lawrence.) Boston, etc., 1855.

*Letters of William Lee. 1766-1783*. (Edited by W. C. Ford.) 3 vols. Brooklyn, 1891.

Hugh S. Legare, *Writings*. 2 vols. Charleston, 1846.

Abraham Lincoln, *Complete Works*. (Edited by John G. Nicolay and John Hay.) 2 vols. N.Y., 1894.

James Madison, *The Papers ... being his Correspondence and Reports of Debates*. (Edited by Henry D. Gilpin.) 3 vols. Washington, 1840.

James Madison, *Letters and other Writings*. 4 vols. Phila., 1865.

John Marshall, *Writings ... upon the Federal Constitution*. Boston, 1839. — Reprints of important decisions of the Supreme Court.

Department of State, *Calendar of the Correspondence of James Monroe*. [Washington, 1891.]

*The Correspondence of John Lothrop Motley*. (Edited by G. W. Curtis.) 2 vols. N.Y., 1889.

Wendell Phillips, *Speeches, Lectures, and Letters*. Boston, 1863.

*The St. Clair Papers. — The Life and Public Services of Arthur St. Clair*. (Edited by W. H. Smith.) 2 vols. Cincinnati, 1882.

John Sergeant, *Select Speeches*. Phila., 1832.

William H. Seward, *Works*. (Edited by G. E. Baker.) 5 vols. N.Y., 1853-54.

John Sherman, *Selected Speeches and Reports*. N.Y., 1879.

Joseph Story, *Miscellaneous Writings*. (Edited by W. W. Story.) Boston, 1835.

Charles Sumner, *Works*. 15 vols. Boston, 1874-83.

Samuel J. Tilden, *Writings and Speeches*. (Edited by John Bigelow.) 2 vols. N.Y., 1885.

C. L. Vallandigham, *Record on Abolition, the Union, and Civil Power*. Cincinnati, 1863.

George Washington, *Writings . . . being his Correspondence, Addresses, Messages, and other Papers, official and private.* (Edited by Jared Sparks.) 12 vols. Boston, 1837.

George Washington, *Writings.* (Edited by W. C. Ford.) 14 vols. N.Y., 1889-[93].

*Washington-Irvine Correspondence, 1781-83.* (Edited by C. W. Butterfield.) Madison, 1882.

Jared Sparks, editor, *Correspondence of the American Revolution; being Letters of Eminent Men to George Washington.* 4 vols. Boston, 1853.

Daniel Webster, *Works.* 6 vols. Boston, 1851.

Daniel Webster, *Private Correspondence.* (Edited by Fletcher Webster.) 2 vols. Boston, 1857.

Noah Webster, *Collection of Essays and Fugitive Writings.* Boston, 1790.

James Wilson, *Works.* 3 vols. Phila., 1804.

*Life and Letters of John Winthrop.* (Edited by R. C. Winthrop.) 2 vols. Boston, 1864 and 1867.

John Winthrop, *History of New England.* (Edited by J. Savage.) 2 vols. Boston, 1825-26. — New edition, 1853.

R. C. Winthrop, *Addresses and Speeches on various Occasions.* 4 vols. Boston, 1852-86.

John Witherspoon, *Works.* 4 vols. Phila., 1802.

Levi Woodbury, *Writings . . . Political, Judicial, and Literary.* 3 vols. Boston, 1852.

### § 33. Autobiographies and Reminiscences.

Hannah Adams, *Memoir, written by Herself.* Boston, 1832.

John Quincy Adams, *Memoirs. Comprising Parts of his Diary from 1795 to 1848.* 12 vols. Phila., 1874-77.

John Adams and Mrs. Abigail Adams, *Familiar Letters during the Revolution.* N.Y., 1876.

G. Allen, *Reminiscences.* (Edited by F. P. Rice.) Worcester, 1883.

Bacourt, *Souvenirs d'un Diplomate. Lettres intimes sur l'Amérique.* Paris, 1882.

Lyman Beecher, D.D., *Autobiography, Correspondence, etc.* (Edited by Charles Beecher.) 2 vols. London, 1863-65.

[Thomas Hart Benton], *Thirty Years' View, A History of the Working of the American Government for Thirty Years; from 1820 to 1850.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1854-56.

John Bernard, *Retrospections of America, 1792-1811*. N.Y., 1887.

Charles Biddle, *Autobiography, 1745-1821*. (Edited by James S. Biddle.) Phila., 1883.

John Binns, *Recollections of his Life, written by himself*. Phila., 1854.

James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress (1860-80)*. 2 vols. Norwich, Conn., 1884-86.

*Log-Book of Timothy Boardman. Kept on Board the Privateer Oliver Cromwell, during a Cruise from New London, Ct., to Charleston, S.C., and Return, in 1778*.— Issued by the Rutland County Historical Society. Albany, 1885.

Josiah Bonham, *Fifty Years' Recollections* [in Illinois]. Peoria, 1883.

Noah Brooks, *Washington in War Time*. N.Y., 1895.

[James Buchanan], *Mr. Buchanan's Administration on the Eve of the Rebellion*. N.Y., 1866.

J. T. Buckingham, *Specimens of Newspaper Literature with personal Memoirs*. Boston, 1850.

Aaron Burr, *Private Journal during his Residence of Four Years in Europe*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1838.

F. B. Carpenter, *Six Months at the White House with Abraham Lincoln*. N.Y., 1866.

Lucius Eugene Chittenden, *Personal Reminiscences, 1840 to 1890, including some not hitherto published of Lincoln and the War*. N.Y., 1893.

John F. H. Claiborne, *Life and Times of Gen. Sam. Dale*. N.Y., 1860.

James Freeman Clarke, *Anti-Slavery Days*. N.Y., 1884.

Cassius Marcellus Clay, *Life, Memoirs, Writings, and Speeches*. In 2 vols. Vol. I. Cincinnati, 1886.

Mrs. Mary Clemmer Ames, *Ten Years in Washington*. Hartford, 1873.

Levi Coffin, *Reminiscences. . . The Reputed President of the Underground Railroad*. Cincinnati, 1880.

C. T. Congdon, *Reminiscences of a Journalist*. Boston, 1880.

Samuel Sullivan Cox, *Union—Disunion—Reunion. Three Decades of Federal Legislation, 1855 to 1885*. Providence, 1885.

David Crockett, *Col. Crockett's Exploits and Adventures in Texas*. Phila., 1836.

James Madison Cutts, *A brief Treatise upon Constitutional and Party Questions, and the History of Political Parties, as received orally from the late Stephen A. Douglas*. N.Y., 1866.

John F. Darby, *Personal Recollections*. St. Louis, 1880.

Reuben Davis, *Recollections of Mississippi and Mississippians*. Boston, Houghton, 1891.

Frederick Douglass, *Life and Times*. . . . *Written by himself*. Hartford, 1881.

J. W. Forney, *Anecdotes of Public Men*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1873-81.

Benjamin Franklin, *Autobiography*, edited from his *Manuscripts*. (Edited by John Bigelow.) Phila., 1868. — Also many earlier editions under title of *Life*, *Memoirs*, etc.

John Charles Frémont, *Memoirs of my Life*. Chicago, 1887.

Jessie Benton Frémont, *Memoirs of my Life*. Chicago, 1887.

D. Lee and John H. Frost, *Ten Years in Oregon*. N.Y., 1844.

Alexander Garden, *Anecdotes of the Revolutionary War, with Sketches of Character of Distinguished Persons*. Charleston, 1822.

C. Gilman, *Recollections of a New England Bride and of a Southern Matron*. N.Y., 1852.

L. A. Gobright, *Recollections of Men and Things at Washington during a Third of a Century*. Phila., 1869.

S. C. Goodrich, *Recollections of a Lifetime, or Men and Things I have seen*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1856.

E. W. Gould, *Fifty Years on the Mississippi, or Gould's History of River Navigation*. St. Louis, 1889.

Mrs. Anne McVicker Grant, *Memoirs of an American Lady* [Madame Margarita Schuyler]. London, 1808.

Ulysses S. Grant, *Personal Memoirs*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1886.

Alexander Graydon, *Memoirs of His Own Time, with Reminiscences of the Men and Events of the Revolution*. (Edited by J. S. Littell.) Phila., 1846.

Horace Greeley, *Recollections of a busy Life*. N.Y., 1868.

S. C. Hall, *Retrospect of a Long Life*. N.Y., 1883.

James A. Hamilton, *Reminiscences . . . or Men and Events at Home and Abroad*. N.Y., 1869.

Winfield Scott Hancock, *Reminiscences of*. *By His Wife*. N.Y., 1887.

Col. George Hanger, *Life, Adventures, and Opinions*. *Written by himself*. 2 vols. London, 1801.

Peter Harvey, *Reminiscences and Anecdotes of Daniel Webster*. Boston, 1877.

Philip Hone, *The Diary of, 1828 to 1851*. (Edited by Bayard Tucker-man.) 2 vols. N.Y., 1889.

Thomas Hutchinson, *Diary and Letters, with an Account of his Administration*. 2 vols. Boston, 1884-86.

Thomas Jefferson, *The Anas*. In his *Writings, published from the original Manuscripts in the Department of State*. Vol. IX. Washington, 1853-54.

Joseph E. Johnston, *Narrative of Military Operations during the late War between the States*. N.Y., 1874.

George W. Julian, *Political Recollections. 1840 to 1872*. Chicago, 1884.

Friedrich Kapp, *Aus und über Amerika. Thatsachen und Erlebnisse*. Berlin, 1876.

Frances Ann Kemble, *Records of a Girlhood*. N.Y., 1879.

Frances Ann Kemble, *Records of later Life*. 3 vols. London, 1882.

Amos Kendall, *Autobiography*. (Edited by William Stickney.) Boston, 1872.

E. D. Keyes, *Fifty Years' Observation of Men and Events, Civil and Military*. N.Y., 1885.

Lucius P. Little, *Ben Hardin: his Times and Contemporaries*. Louisville, 1887.

*Final Memorials of Henry Wadsworth Longfellow*. (Edited by Samuel Longfellow.) Boston, 1887.

A. K. McClure, *Abraham Lincoln and Men of War-Times*. Phila., 1892.

Hugh McCullough, *Men and Measures of Half a Century; Sketches and Comments*. N.Y., 1888.

William Maclay, *Journal*. (Edited by Edgar S. Maclay.) N.Y., 1890.

Mrs. Dorothy Madison, *Memoirs and Letters of Dolly Madison, Wife of James Madison*. Boston, 1886.

Edward Deering Mansfield, *Personal Memories, Social, Political and Literary. 1803-43*. Cincinnati, 1879.

Charles W. March, *Reminiscences of Congress*. N.Y., 1850.

Christopher Marshall, *Passages from his Diary*. (Edited by Wm. Duane, Jr.) Phila., 1839-49.

Samuel Joseph May, *Memoirs: Consisting of Autobiography and Selections from his Diary and Correspondence*. Boston, 1873.

Samuel Joseph May, *Some Recollections of our Anti-Slavery Conflict*. Boston, 1869.

Robert Mayo, *Political Sketches of Eight Years in Washington*. Baltimore, 1839.

Gouverneur Morris, *Diary and Letters*. (Edited by Anne C. Morris.) 2 vols. N.Y., 1888.

Artemas Bowers Muzzey, *Reminiscences and Memorials of Men of the Revolution and their Families*. Boston, 1883.

Wallis Nash, *Two Years in Oregon*. N.Y., 1882.

Thomas Nelson Page, *The Old South: Essays, Social and Political.* N.Y., 1892.

B. F. Perry, *Reminiscences of Public Men.* Phila., 1883.

Benjamin Perley Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences of Sixty Years in the National Metropolis.* 2 vols. Phila., 1886.

[Mrs. Lydia Minturn Post], *Personal Recollections of the American Revolution. A Private Journal.* (Edited by Sidney Barclay.) N.Y., 1859.

Josiah Quincy, *Figures of the Past from the Leaves of old Journals.* Boston, 1883.

John Randolph, *Letters to a young Relative.* Phila., 1834.

A. T. Rice (editor), *Reminiscences of Abraham Lincoln, by distinguished Men of his Time.* N.Y., 1886.

A. G. Riddle, *Recollections of War Times.* N.Y., 1895.

Frederika [Baroness von] Riedesel, *Die Berufs-Reise nach Amerika.* Berlin, 1800.

Madame de Riedesel, *Letters and Memoirs relating to the War of American Independence, and the Capture of the German Troops at Saratoga.* — Translated by Jules Wallenstein. N.Y., 1827.

Mrs. General Riedesel, *Letters and Journals relating to the War of the American Revolution, and the Capture of the German Troops at Saratoga.* — Translated by William Leete Stone. Albany, 1867.

Max von Eelking, *Memoirs, and Letters and Journals, of Major-General Riedesel, during his Residence in America.* 2 vols. — Translated by William Leete Stone. Albany, 1868.

Richard Rush, *Memoranda of a Residence at the Court of London.* Phila., 1833.

Lord John Russell, *Recollections and Suggestions.* London, 1875.

Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events.* [1817-53.] 2 vols. Phila., 1875.

Winfield Scott, *Memoirs.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1864.

Samuel Sewall, *Diary (1674-1729).* 3 vols. (In Mass. Hist. Soc., Collections, fifth series, Vols. V-VII. Boston, 1878-82.)

William H. Seward, *Autobiography, from 1801 to 1834, with a Memoir of his Life.* N.Y., 1877.

Andrew Sherburne, *Memoirs.* Utica, 1828.

John Sherman, *Recollections of Forty Years in House, Senate, and Cabinet.* N.Y., 1895.

William Tecumseh Sherman, *Memoirs. By himself.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1888.

John Sherman and William Tecumseh Sherman, *Letters.* N.Y., 1894.

Philip H. Sheridan, *Personal Memoirs.* 2 vols. N.Y., 1888.

W. H. Sparks, *Memories of 50 Years*. Phila., 1872.

H. B. Stanton, *Random Recollections*. N.Y., 1886.

William Sullivan, *Familiar Letters on Public Characters*. Boston, 1834.

James Thacher, *A Military Journal during the American Revolutionary War, from 1775 to 1783*. (An appendix contains "Biographical Sketches" of several officers.) Boston, 1823.

Ebenezer Smith Thomas, *Reminiscences of the last Sixty-five Years, commencing with the Battle of Lexington. Also Sketches of his own Life and Times*. 2 vols. Hartford, 1840.

Richard W. Thompson, *Recollections of Sixteen Presidents*. Indianapolis, 1894.

John Trumbull, *Autobiography, Reminiscences, and Letters, from 1756 to 1841*. N.Y., 1841.

Thurlow Weed, *Autobiography*. (Edited by H. A. Weed.) Boston, 1884.

*The Diary of Thomas Vernon, a Loyalist banished from Newport by the Rhode Island General Assembly in 1776*. (Rhode Island Historical Tracts, No. 13.) Providence, 1881.

George Washington, *Journal of my Journey over the Mountains, in 1747-48*. (Copied from the Original and edited by Joseph Meredith Toner.) Albany, 1892.

*Correspondence and Journals of Samuel Blackley Webb, 1772-1806*. (Edited by W. C. Ford.) 3 vols. N.Y., 1893-94.

John Wentworth, *Congressional Reminiscences — Adams, Benton, Clay, Calhoun, and Webster*. (Fergus Historical series, No. 24.) Chicago, 1882.

Henry G. Wheeler, *History of Congress, biographical and political*. 2 vols. N.Y., 1848.

James Wilkinson, *Memoirs of my own Times*. 3 vols. Phila., 1816.

C. J. Wood, *Reminiscences of the War*. [No place, no date.]

Henry A. Wise, *Seven Decades of the Union*. Phila., 1876.

David Zeisberger, *Diary of David Zeisberger, a Moravian Missionary among the Indians of Ohio*. (Translated and edited by Eugene F. Bliss.) 2 vols. Cincinnati, 1885.

### § 34. Collections of Documents and Speeches.

Henry Adams, *Documents relating to New England Federalism, 1800 to 1815*. Boston, 1877.

*American Annual Cyclopædia* [Annual Volume]. N.Y., 1861-75.

*Appleton's Annual Cyclopædia* [Annual Volume]. N.Y., 1876-93.



Francis Bowen, *Documents of the Constitution of England and America, from Magna Charta to the Federal Constitution of 1789.* Cambridge, 1854.

Matthew Carey, *The Olive Branch, or Faults on both sides.* Phila., 1815.

Thomas V. Cooper and Hector V. Fenton, *American Politics (non-partisan) from the beginning to date.* 7 "books" (bound in one volume). Phila., 1882.

Peter Force, compiler, *American Archives, A Documentary History of the North American Colonies.* Fourth series, 6 vols. (March 7, 1774, to July 4, 1776). Fifth series, 3 vols. (July 4, 1776, to Sept. 30, 1783). Washington, 1837-53. — No more published.

Peter Force, *Tracts and other Papers relating to the Colonies in North America.* Washington, 1836-46.

*Collectanea Adamantæa.* (Edited by Edmund M. Goldsmid.) 63 vols. Edinburgh, 1884-86.

*Works issued by the Hakluyt Society.* London. — The first number was issued in 1847. Since that time nearly one hundred volumes have been published under different editors.

Albert Bushnell Hart and Edward Channing, *American History Leaflets.* N.Y., 1892-. In progress. 24 nos. to 1896.

Ebenezer Hazard, *Historical Collections; Consisting of State Papers and other Documents.* 2 vols. Phila., 1792-94.

Franklin B. Hough, *American Constitutions, comprising the Constitution of each State in the Union, and of the United States.* 2 vols. Albany, 1872.

Alexander Johnston, *Representative American Orations to illustrate American Political History.* 3 vols. N.Y., 1884.

Abraham Lincoln and Stephen A. Douglas, *Political Debates in the Celebrated Campaign of 1858.* Columbus, 1860.

Edward McPherson, *Political History of the United States of America during the great Rebellion.* Washington, 1865.

Edward McPherson, *Political History of the United States of America during the Period of Reconstruction.* Washington, 1875.

Edward McPherson, *A Handbook of Politics.* [Biennial volumes, except 1870.] Washington, 1868-94.

Hezekiah Niles, *Principles and Acts of the Revolution in America.* Baltimore, 1822. — Also reprint, N.Y., 1876.

Edwin Doak Mead, editor, *Old South Leaflets.* 55 nos. Boston, Heath, 1883-95; Directors of the Old South Studies in History, 1895-.

Ben Perley Poore, *Federal and State Constitutions, Colonial Charters, and other Organic Laws of the United States*. Congressional Documents. 2 vols. Washington, 1871.

Howard W. Preston, *Documents illustrative of American History*. 1606-1863. N.Y., 1886.

Prince Society, *Publications*. Albany and, later, Boston, 1865-95. — Some twenty volumes have been printed under the editorship of different persons.

Erastus H. Scott, editor, *The Federalist and other Constitutional Papers*. (Federalist Statesmen series.) Chicago, 1894.

Jared Sparks, editor, *The Diplomatic Correspondence of the American Revolution*. 12 vols. Boston, 1829-30.

Edmund Clarence Stedman and Ellen Mackay Hutchinson, *A Library of American Literature from the Earliest Settlement to the Present Time*. 11 vols. N.Y., 1888-90.

Frank W. Taussig, *State Papers and Speeches on the Tariff*. Cambridge, 1893.

James Bradley Thayer, *Cases on Constitutional Law with Notes*. 2 vols. Cambridge, 1894-95.

Edwin Williams, *The Statesman's Manual*. 4 vols. N.Y., 1849.

Francis Wharton, *A Digest of the International Law of the United States*. 3 vols. Washington, 1886.

Francis Wharton, *The Revolutionary Diplomatic Correspondence*. 6 vols. Washington, 1889.

Alexander Young, *Chronicles of the First Planters of the Colony of Massachusetts Bay*. (1623-1636.) Boston, 1846.

Alexander Young, *Chronicles of the Pilgrim Fathers of the Colony of Plymouth*. (1602-25.) Boston, 1841.

### § 35. Manuscript Sources.

Mr. Winsor has devoted an important part of the general bibliographical appendix to the *Narrative and Critical History* (Vol. VIII, 413) to a list of the available collections of manuscripts. The State Department in Washington has the original documents of the Continental Congress, the Confederation, and the Federal Convention of 1787, with the manuscripts of the Declaration of Independence, the Articles of Confederation, and the Constitution. It has also the manuscript rolls of statutes and treaties made since 1789. In those archives are also deposited

valuable parts of the papers of Washington, Madison, Jefferson, Franklin, Monroe, Hamilton, and the manuscripts collected, but not printed, by Peter Force. In the War Department are the little known archives of the Confederate States of America, including the Journals of the two Houses of the Confederate Congress. Of the State Archives that of Massachusetts may be mentioned as especially rich. The various state historical societies have in many cases valuable collections of family papers. Frequently, however, important sets of manuscripts have been scattered or destroyed for want of an appreciation of their value. The letters and especially the diaries of any person who has been in public life have a permanent value, and should be carefully preserved.

In using manuscript material great care must be taken to identify each piece, to ascertain its date, and to be sure that it is really by the person to whom it is ascribed. In some cases there are two manuscript copies of the same letter by the same hand, as in the famous letters of Washington supposed to have been re-written by his editor Sparks, till the two originals were compared.

### § 36. **Illustrative Material.**

Historical events and movements are frequently fixed in the memory by the perusal of books which may be inaccurate in themselves, especially as to details, but which, nevertheless, leave a permanent and reasonably correct impression on the mind of the reader. Thus Keats's famous sonnet, in which he made the Conqueror of Mexico discover the Pacific Ocean, could not well be less in accordance with the historical fact; but it enforces the charm of discovery more intensely than the reading of many original letters and reports. There are critics, however, who think that when, as in this case, the facts are well known and easily to be discovered, it is the business of the story-teller or verse-maker to know what actually happened sufficiently well to make the historical basis of his story reasonably accurate. A famous American writer once said that the poet was indebted to history for the general fact only, around which he could build up his own

imaginative work. Perhaps it is true that the novel-writer or poet produces the best and truest work when he is unhampered by the details of the real story and may aim to create only a general impression which shall be true to the general trend of history. Mrs. Austin carries the Mayflower's shallop into a cove in Clark's Island, where the narrative of Bradford forbids the idea that the shallop was; the plan of the story, the author has said, made it necessary for the boat to be at that particular place at the precise moment, and the spirit of the explorers is not affected by the deviation. Longfellow's *Miles Standish* would be painfully inaccurate and anachronistic as history; but he adds a man to our affectionate acquaintance. Just how far it is safe to accept a picture of which the details are not true to the time, — whether the "general reader" of Mrs. Austin's tale or Longfellow's poem gains a truer and more lasting impression of the spirit of Pilgrim colonization than he or she would obtain from Doyle, or Bancroft, or still better from Bradford's epic itself, — is a question which the authors of the *Guide* do not answer. Certain it is that for all pupils and students of American history such books are useful in connection with accurate text-books, other secondary accounts, and especially as an adjunct to a moderate use of the sources which tell the same tale more simply.

In the following lists of novels and poems no attempt is made to separate the works based on sound study from those which may justly be classed with fiction. They are inserted as additional and subordinate illustrative material. Nor can the lists claim to be complete; the principle of choice is to give at least examples of those standard authors who have woven out of American history, and to add some books from obscure writers which are known to have given pleasure or to have aroused interest. Other titles can be found in the first five works noted in § 36 a, especially in the *Chronological Index* issued by the Boston Public Library; the third edition, printed under the editorship of Mr. Whitney, is the more complete; the earlier editions, prepared by Mr. Winsor, are likely to be more useful. In these publications, novels, poems, and ballads are grouped together under the head of "fiction."

## § 36 a. Historical Novels.

William Francis Allen, *The Reader's Guide to English History*. Revised edition, Supplement, pp. 48 and 49. Boston, 1883. — A short list of American historical novels.

W. M. Griswold, compiler, *A Descriptive List of Novels and Tales dealing with the History of North America*. Cambridge, 1895.

[Justin Winsor], *Chronological Index to Historical Fiction*. Second edition. Public Library, Boston, 1875.

Selden L. Whitcomb, *Chronological Outlines of American Literature*. N. Y., 1894.

[James L. Whitney], *A Chronological Index to Historical Fiction*. Third edition. (Boston Public Library, *Bulletin*, Jan., 1892, and foll.)

Louisa May Alcott (1832-88), *Hospital Sketches* (Civil War). Boston, 1869.

Thomas Bailey Aldrich (b. 1836), *Prudence Palfrey* (Life in Portsmouth, N.H.).

[Mrs.] Jane Goodwin Austin (1831-94), *Standish of Standish*; *Betty Alden*; *A Nameless Nobleman*; *Dr. Le Baron and his Daughters*; *David Alden's Daughters* (stories of life in the "Old" Colony of New Plymouth); *Dora Darling* (Civil War).

Hugh Henry Brackenridge (1748-1816), *Modern Chivalry* (The Whiskey Insurrection).

Charles Brockden Brown (1771-1810), *Arthur Mervyn*. (Phila., 1793-98.)

[Mrs.] Frances Hodgson Burnett (b. 1849), *Through One Administration*. N. Y., Scribners, 1886.

Edwin Lassetter Bynner (1842-93), *Agnes Surriage* (story of New England); *Zachary Phips* (adventures of a Boston lad, especially in connection with Burr's conspiracy); *Penelope's Suitors* (Massachusetts, Seventeenth century); *The Begum's Daughter* (Leisler's Revolt).

George Washington Cable (b. 1844), *Old Creole Days*; *The Granddissimes, a Tale of Creole Life*; *Strange True Stories of Louisiana*; *Bonaventure, a Prose Pastoral of Acadian Louisiana*.

William A. Caruthers, *Cavaliers of Virginia* (middle of the Seventeenth Century); *Knights of the Golden Horseshoe* (early part of the Eighteenth Century).

[Mrs.] Harriet V. (Foster) Cheney (about 1815), *A Peep at the Pilgrims in Sixteen Hundred Thirty-six*. Boston, 1850.

[Mrs.] Lydia Maria Child (1802-80), *Hobomok* (New Plymouth Colony); *The Rebels, or Boston before the Revolution*.

Charles Carleton Coffin (b. 1823), *Winning his Way* (Civil War). Boston, 1866.

John Esten Cooke (1830-86), *My Lady Pocahontas*; *Virginia Comedians*; *The Youth of Jefferson*; *Fairfax*; *Doctor Vandyke* (tales of life in Virginia in the quarter century preceding the Revolution); *Bonnybel Vane, Embracing the History of Henry St. John, Gentleman* (Revolutionary epoch); *Leather Stocking and Silk* (a story of the Valley of Virginia, about 1800); *Justin Harley, a Romance of Old Virginia*; *Stories of the Old Dominion*; *Hilt to Hilt*; *Mohun*; *Wearing of the Gray* (the last three titles are stories of the Civil War from a Southern standpoint).

James Fenimore Cooper (1789-1851), *Mercedes of Castile* (Columbus); *Water Witch* (New York after the English conquest); *Satanstoe* (New York country life in the Eighteenth Century); *The Red Rover* (Newport and the slave-trade); *Leather-Stocking Tales* (the Indians in New York); *Lionel Lincoln* (Siege of Boston); *The Pilot*; *The Spy* (Revolutionary epoch); *The Two Admirals*.

Charles Augustus Davis (1795-1867), *Letters of J. Downing, Major* (Jackson's administration).

Samuel Gardner Drake (1798-1875), *A Book of New England Legends and Folk-Lore in Prose and Poetry*.

George Cary Eggleston (1839-), *A Man of Honor* (Virginia, since the war).

Charles Étienne Arthur Gayarré (b. 1805), *Aubert Dubayet* (France and the United States, 1780-97).

[Mrs.] Caroline Gilman (1794), *Recollections of a New England House-keeper*.

Edward Everett Hale (b. 1822), *The Man without a Country*; *Philip Nolan's Friends* (Burr's Conspiracy); *Mrs. Merriam's Scholars* (the Freedmen).

Thomas Chandler Haliburton (1797-1865), *The Clockmaker: Sayings and Doings of Samuel Slick of Slickville*.

Joseph C. Hart, *Miriam Coffin* (Nantucket life).

Francis Bret Harte (b. 1839), *Thankful Blossom; a Story of the Jerseys* (1779).

Nathaniel Hawthorne (1804-64), *The Maypole of Merrymount*; *Grandfather's Chair*; *Legends of New England*; *Legends of the Province House*; *Liberty Tree*; *The Scarlet Letter*; *Twice Told Tales* (Massachusetts Bay Colony); *Septimius Felton* (Massachu-

setts, 1775); *Blithedale Romance* (Brook Farm); *The House of the Seven Gables*.

Richard Hildreth (1807-65), *The Slave; or, the Memoirs of Archy Moore*. Boston, 1836.

Josiah Gilbert Holland (1819-81), *Bay-Path, a Tale of New England Colonial Life*; *Arthur Bonnicastle*.

Oliver Wendell Holmes (1809-94), *Grandmother's Story of the Battle of Bunker Hill*; *Elsie Venner*.

Washington Irving (1783-1859), *Knickerbocker's History of New York*.

[Mrs.] Helen Hunt [Helen Maria Fiske] Jackson (1831-85), *Ramona* (the Indians in later days); *Mercy Philbrick's Choice* (American life).

Richard Malcolm Johnston (b. 1822), *Mr. Absalom Billingslea and other Georgia Folks*; *Georgia Sketches*; *The Primes and their Neighbors* (stories of Georgia life).

Sylvester Judd (1813-53), *Margaret*.

John Pendleton Kenedey (1795-1870), *Swallow Barn* (Life in Virginia, about 1800); *Rob of the Bowl* (Maryland in colonial times); *Horseshoe Robinson* (the Tories in the South).

Grace King, *Monsieur Motte*; *Tales of a Time and Place* (stories of Louisiana life).

Charles Kingsley (1819-75), *Westward Ho! or, The Voyages and Adventures of Sir Amyas Leigh*.

Lucy Larcom (1826-93), *A New England Girlhood*.

Emma Leslie, *Saxby* (Puritans in England and America).

Augustus Baldwin Longstreet (1790-1870), *Georgia Scenes in the first half-century of the Republic*.

James De Mille (1837-80), *The Lily and the Cross* (Acadia).

Silas Weir Mitchell (b. 1829), *In War Time*; *Roland Blake* (stories of the Civil War).

John Lothrop Motley (1814-77), *Merry-Mount; a Romance of the Massachusetts Colony* (early period).

Thomas Nelson Page (b. 1853), *Among the Camps*; *Marse Chan*.

Francis Parkman (1823-93), *Vassall Morton*.

James Kirke Paulding (1779-1860), *Koningsmarke* (the Swedes on the Delaware); *The Dutchman's Fireside*; *Book of St. Nicholas* (New York life); *The Old Continental; or, the Price of Liberty*; *Westward Ho!* (settlement of Kentucky); *The Diverting History of John Bull and Brother Jonathan* (the years preceding the war of 1812); *The Lay of the Scottish Fiddle* (British in the Chesapeake).

Albert Gallatin Riddle (b. 1816), *Bart Ridgeley: a Story of Northern Ohio*.



Edward Payson Roe (1838-88), *Near to Nature's Heart* (Washington and Arnold); *An Original Belle*; *His Sombre Rivals*; *Miss Lou* (stories of the Civil War).

Horace Elisha Scudder (b. 1838), *Stories and Romances* (some of them relate to American history).

• Catherine Maria Sedgwick (1789-1867), *Hope Leslie*; or, *Early Times in the Massachusetts*; *The Linwoods* (1770); *Clarence*; *A New England Tale*; *Redwood*.

William Gilmore Simms (1806-70), *The Damsel of Darien* (Balboa and the discovery of the Pacific); *Vasconcelos* (De Soto in Florida); *Lily and Totem* (Huguenots in Florida); *Cassique of Kioway* (South Carolina, 1684); *Yemassee* (Indian conspiracy, 1715); *The Partisan*; *Mellichampe*; *The Scout*; *Katharine Walton*; *The Forayers*; *The Eutaws* (these six stories form a connected account of the Revolution in the South from the fall of Charleston to 1782).

Seba Smith (1792-1868), *The Life and Letters of Major Jack Downing* (time of Jackson). Boston, 1833.

[Mrs.] Harriet Beecher Stowe (b. 1812), *Uncle Tom's Cabin*; *Dred*, or, later, *Nina Gordon* (slavery in Kentucky); *Mayflower* (Connecticut life); *The Minister's Wooing* (Newport, first part of Nineteenth Century).

William Makepeace Thackeray (1811-63), *The Virginians*.

Daniel Pierce Thompson (1795-1868), *The Green Mountain Boys: A Historical Tale of the early Settlement of Vermont*. 2 vols. Montpelier, 1839.

[Mrs.] Mary F. Spear Tiernan (1836-91), *Homoselle* (Virginia before the war).

[Mrs.] Nina Moore Tiffany, *Pilgrims and Puritans; Stories of the Revolutionary Days in Boston*.

John Townsend Trowbridge (b. 1827), *Cudjo's Cave*.

St. George Tucker, *Hansford* (Bacon's Rebellion).

Lewis Wallace (b. 1827), *The Fair God* (Astec civilization).

Mary Eleanor Wilkins, *The Adventures of Ann: Stories of Colonial Times*.

Albion Winegar Tourgée (b. 1838), *Hot Plowshares*; *Figs and Thistles, a Romance of the Western Reserve*; etc. (stories of western and southern life).



## § 36 b. Poems and Ballads.

Frank Cowan, *Southwestern Pennsylvania in Song and Story*. Greensburg, 1878.

S. G. Drake, *A Book of New England Legends and Folk-lore in Prose and Poetry*. Boston, 1884.

E. A. and G. L. Duyckinck, editors, *Ballads of the Old French War and Revolution (Cyclopædia of American Literature)*. N.Y., 1856.

G. C. Eggleston, editor, *American War-Ballads and Lyrics*. 2 vols. N.Y. [1889].

Thomas D. English, *American Ballads*. N.Y., 1880.

William McCarty, editor, *Songs, Odes, and other Poems on National Subjects*. 3 vols. Phila., 1842.

Frank Moore, editor, *Songs and Ballads of the American Revolution*. N.Y., 1856.

Frank Moore, editor, *Anecdotes, Poetry, and Incidents of the War, 1860-65*. N.Y., 1865; *The Civil War in Song and Story*. N.Y., 1889; *Songs and Ballads of the Southern People*. N.Y., 1887.

Winthrop Sargent, editor, *The Loyalist Poetry of the Revolution*. Phila., 1857.

W. G. Simms, editor, *War Poetry of the South*. N.Y., 1867.

E. C. Stedman and E. M. Hutchinson, editors, *Library of American Literature*. N.Y., 1888.

Joel Barlow (1755-1812), *Vision of Columbus*.— In a later edition called *The Columbiad*.

Thomas Campbell (1777-1844), *Gertrude of Wyoming*.

William Dunlap (1766-1839), *André, a Tragedy in Five Acts*.

Timothy Dwight (1752-1817), *Greenfield Hill* (burning of Fairfield, 1779).

Philip Freneau (1752-1832), *Poems . . .* (illustrative of the period 1774-1815).

Francis Hopkinson (1737-91), *Battle of the Kegs*.

Henry Wadsworth Longfellow (1807-82), *Skeleton in Armor* (Northmen); *The Courtship of Miles Standish*; *John Endicott*; *Giles Corey* (Salem witchcraft); *Evangeline* (Acadia); *Hiawatha*; *Paul Revere's Ride*.

James Russell Lowell (1819-91), *Columbus*; *The Biglow Papers*; *Commemoration Ode*.

Margaret Preston (b. 1825), *Colonial Ballads and Sonnets*.

L. H. Sigourney (1791-1865), *Pocahontas*.

Edmund Clarence Stedman (b. 1833), *Peter Stuyvesant's New Year's Call*; *Alice of Monmouth* (the Civil War).

John Greenleaf Whittier (1808-92), *Cobbler Keezar's Vision*; *Passaconaway*; *Leaves from Margaret Smith's Journal*; *Skipper Ireson's Ride* (early New England); *The Witch of Wenham*; *The King's Missive* (the Quakers, in Winsor's *Memorial History of Boston*, Vol. I); *The Bridal of Pennacook*; *Mogg Megone* (New England life); *The Pennsylvania Pilgrims*.

## IV. WORKING LIBRARIES.

### § 37. Necessity of Working Libraries.

No proper work can be done in history by the use of a single book. The study resembles those scientific subjects, such as botany and physics, in which laboratory practice is an essential part of the instruction from the very beginning. The principle to be observed is that the teacher's part is not to deal out knowledge, but to aid the pupils in getting their knowledge for themselves. Digests are not nutriment, and a text-book is to be considered an aid and not an end. Hence, if history is really to be taught at all, in every school there must be some collection of books. It need not be large in order to get benefit from it; but it must be used.

In order to secure the use of a working library, it must be accessible all the school time, and if possible be made available at other hours. A shelf in the schoolroom, where the books stand in view all day, is the most convenient arrangement. Larger collections may need to be kept in a particular room, but it should be open as long as the building is open; and if the machinery of drawing books out and registering them seems necessary, it should be made as simple as possible. Pupils should be encouraged to carry books home over night. At the same time should be inculcated that reverence for the clean and unsoiled page which is a part of every proper education. To injure or to use up another's book should be included among the vices; while a child may be taught to make intelligent marginal notes and cross references on his own copy.

If the books are more than a hundred, some kind of catalogue is almost indispensable, and should be conspicuously placed. Large libraries should of course have two card catalogues, one by authors and another by subjects; and the making of a school catalogue may be an excellent experience for children.

College libraries have usually a system of cataloguing and a permanent librarian. Here it is of much consequence that the books on history be classified and kept together, and, if all the books are not open and accessible, a select historical library should be placed where it can be consulted at any time ; and the use should be made as free and unrestricted as possible.

### § 38. Cheap Libraries.

The multiplication of brief but well-written books on American history makes it possible to select a few books which, taken together, cover the whole field of American history in some systematic fashion. In making up the lists below, care has been taken to include, so far as possible, books which balance each other, either by treating different phases of American history or by taking different sides on the same general question.

#### § 38 a. Smallest Possible Collection.

Two good text-books selected out of the list in § 18. For example : H. E. Scudder, *History of the United States for Schools*; A. C. Thomas, *History of the United States*.

#### § 38 b. A Five-Dollar Collection.

Edward Channing, *The United States of America, 1765-1865*. (Cambridge Historical series.) N.Y., Macmillan & Co., 1896.

John Fiske, *School History of the United States*. Boston, Houghton, 1894.

T. W. Higginson, *Young Folks' History of the United States*. N.Y., Longmans.

Alexander Johnston, *History of the United States for Schools*. N.Y., Holt, 1889.

Mary S. Sheldon and Earl Barnes, *Studies in American History*. Boston, Heath, 1893.

Albert Bushnell Hart, *Epoch Maps illustrating American History*. N.Y., Longmans, 1893.

### § 38 c. A Ten-Dollar Collection.

Benjamin Franklin, *Autobiography*. — To be found in many different issues.

Henry Cabot Lodge, *George Washington*. 2 vols. Boston, Houghton, 1892.

John T. Morse, Jr., *Abraham Lincoln*. 2 vols. Boston, Houghton.

Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*. 2 vols. Boston, Houghton.

Goldwin Smith, *The United States, an Outline of Political History*. (1492-1871.) N.Y., Macmillan, 1893.

Thwaites, Hart, and Wilson, *Epochs of American History*. 3 vols. N.Y., Longmans, 1894.

The combination of the two collections enumerated in § 38 b and § 38 c would make a good fifteen-dollar collection.

### § 38 d. A Twenty-Dollar Collection.

*American History Leaflets*. N.Y., A. Lovell, 1892-95.

American History series. N.Y., Scribners. Volumes published: George P. Fisher, *The Colonies*; Wm. M. Sloane, *The French War and the Revolution*; Francis A. Walker, *The Making of the Nation*.

American Statesmen. Boston, Houghton. H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*. 2 vols.; John T. Morse, Jr., *Abraham Lincoln*. 2 vols.

Edward Channing, *The United States of America, 1765-1865*. N.Y., Macmillan & Co., 1896.

Epochs of American History. N.Y., Longmans. Reuben G. Thwaites, *The Colonies*; Albert Bushnell Hart, *Formation of the Union*; Woodrow Wilson, *Division and Reunion*.

Benjamin Franklin, *Autobiography*.

T. W. Higginson, *Larger History of the United States*. N.Y., Harpers, 1886.

Alexander Johnston, *History of American Politics*. N.Y., Holt, 1885. *Old South Leaflets*. Boston, Heath.

Josiah Quincy, *Figures of the Past*. Boston, 1883.

Mary Sheldon Barnes and Earl Barnes, *Studies in American History*. Boston, Heath, 1893.

Goldwin Smith, *The United States, an Outline of Political History*. 1492-1871. N.Y., Macmillan & Co., 1893.

Edward Stanwood, *A History of Presidential Elections*. Boston, 1892.

Simon Sterne, *Constitutional and Political History of the United States*. N.Y., 1889.

Barrett Wendell, *Cotton Mather*. N.Y., Dodd, 1891.

### § 38 e. A Fifty-Dollar Collection.

In addition to the books enumerated in the twenty-dollar collection the following additional volumes, costing about thirty dollars may be mentioned :

Charles Francis Adams, *Three Episodes of Massachusetts History*. 2 vols. Boston, Houghton, 1893.

William Bradford, *History of Plymouth Plantation*. (Mass. Hist. Soc.) Boston.

Judson K. Landon, *The Constitutional History and Government of the United States*. Boston, Houghton, 1889.

American Statesmen. Boston, Houghton. John T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson* ; H. C. Lodge, *Alexander Hamilton* ; Lodge, *Daniel Webster* ; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson* ; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*. 2 vols. ; John T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams* ; H. Von Holst, *John C. Calhoun*.

J. A. Doyle, *The English in America*. 3 vols. N.Y., Holt.

Henry Cabot Lodge, *The English Colonies in North America*. N.Y., Harpers, 1881.

James Schouler, *History of the United States*. 5 vols. N.Y., Dodd, 1893.

John Fiske, *The Discovery of America*. 2 vols. Boston, Houghton, 1893.

### § 38 f. A Hundred-Dollar Collection.

In addition to the list in §§ 38 d and 38 e, a good history of one's own state (§ 23) and the following works may be added :

John B. McMaster, *History of the People of the United States*. 4 vols. N.Y., Appleton, 1883-95.

H. Von Holst, *Constitutional and Political History of the United States*. 8 vols. Chicago, Callaghan, 1877-91.

James F. Rhodes, *History of the United States since 1850*. 3 vols. N.Y., Harpers, 1890-95.

James Freeman Clarke, *Anti-Slavery Days*. N.Y., 1884.

Lucius E. Chittenden, *Personal Reminiscences (1860-90)*. N.Y., 1893.

W. E. H. Lecky, *History of England*. Vols. III and IV. N.Y., Holt.  
 Thomas Jefferson, *Notes on Virginia*. — Many editions.

Hugh McCullough, *Men and Measures of Half a Century*. N.Y., 1888.

Josiah Quincy, *Figures of the Past from the Leaves of Old Journals*.  
 Boston, 1883.

Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*. 2 vols. Phila., 1875.

John C. Ropes, *Story of the Civil War*. 3 vols. N.Y., Putnams, 1895.

### § 39. A Good Working Library.

The small collections above described have few sources in them, and ought to be supplemented by printed records, by biographies containing letters and other original material, and by the works of statesmen, and local and special histories. From the lists of classified books given above (§§ 23–36) many additional titles may be drawn. At the beginning of each section will be found some hints as to the books most desirable. Among them should be included :

(1) Atlases of American historical geography, and some of the descriptive books and sources.

(2) A good supply of text-books, both school and college.

(3) Additional general histories mentioned in § 20.

(4) Some of the special histories, especially Taussig's *Tariff History*.

(5) The local histories of the state and place in which the teacher or reader lives (§ 23).

(6) Biographies of all the Presidents, and also of John Winthrop, Hutchinson, Sam Adams, Patrick Henry, Franklin, Hamilton, John Randolph, Gallatin, Henry Clay, Webster, Calhoun, Benton, Seward, Chase, Sumner, Blaine, Davis.

(7) A few of the reviews containing historical matter, especially the *Nation*, and the *American Historical Review*.

(8) If possible some sets of colonial records, which may be obtained at reasonable prices at the second-hand book stores.

(9) A set of the *Annals of Congress*, *Congressional Debates*, *Congressional Globe*, and *Congressional Record*; the two last may sometimes be had through a senator or member of the House of Representatives.

(10) The *Statutes at Large* and *Treaties and Conventions* (§§ 30 c, 30 d).

Lists of desirable books will be found in another form in the "General Readings" (§ 56).

#### § 40. Collateral Use of Public Libraries.

The large number of public libraries in the United States makes possible careful work in history even in schools which have small or ill-selected libraries. One method is to recommend pupils to draw books which will be useful in connection with their study. For this purpose it is very desirable to coöperate with the librarian in preparing reading-lists, including only material in the library, and illustrating the regular lessons. Good descriptive books, travels, and historical novels may thus be indicated, as well as histories and biographies. The admirable *Reference Lists* prepared by W. E. Foster, librarian of the Providence Public Library, are illustrations of what may be done to bring readers and books into relations with each other over subjects of current interest. For school use, however, this system has the disadvantage that the nimblest pupil withdraws the most valuable book, and the others cannot use it till he returns it.

Perhaps a better method is for the school to secure the privilege of drawing out a certain number of books, and keeping them for a definite time in the school building as a special reference library. This system has the advantage of keeping together for general use the set of most useful books. One of the reasons for placing the Cambridge English High School near the Public Library was that the use of books would thus be facilitated. Without any such formal privilege being granted, it is easy to arrange that children, holders of cards, shall unite their drawings, so as to make up a reference set, to be used by the whole class so long as the library regulations permit the books to remain out. In many cases public libraries will purchase sets of books on American history, with special reference to their usefulness for school work. Another advantage of a good public library should be that it can give the pupils an opportunity to learn the use of catalogues, special bibliographies, and other keys to literature. (§ 16.)



## § 41. Use of Great Libraries.

A few favored cities and some universities have the advantage of great public or endowed libraries, containing rich historical literature and preserving extensive sets of printed records, works of public men, and files of periodicals. The first duty of a student or reader in such a library is to make himself familiar with the catalogue, so that he may, without loss of time, go straight to the authorities on any subject he may be studying. A few hours spent in mastering the intricacies of a printed or card subject catalogue will make the whole of the historical way smooth. Next the student should learn the arrangement and use of special aids such as Poole's *Index* and Fletcher's *A. L. A. Index to General Literature*. The best printed catalogues should be examined also, such as Leypoldt's *American Catalogue* and the catalogues of the Boston Athenæum, Peabody Institute of Baltimore, and Brooklyn Public Library. This familiarity may most easily be gained by following out some specific subject through the various bibliographical aids. The Special Report on Bibliography, described below (§ 69), is an illustration of this method.

The next duty of the student is to make himself familiar with the general literature of American history. If he have a select set of works on the subject at his disposal, he should go through a considerable number of the books, examining them sufficiently to acquaint himself with their aim and arrangement. Then he should look into the sources, particularly the colonial records and the records of the United States government, so as to understand the principle upon which they are arranged, and the indexes and other means of getting at their contents.

All the work above described is of course only a reconnaissance, intended to prepare the way for a careful study of some part of the material thus examined, in connection with class work or private reading. A great library means not so much that the student is to read an enormous amount, as that he is to learn how to select from the mass the books or parts of books most useful to him; and especially that he may learn how to draw from the sources material for knowledge or the confirmation of knowledge

gained elsewhere. Thought, selection, discrimination are most essential to the right use of great collections.

#### § 42. The Reserved and "Over-Night" System.

For large classes, in schools, colleges, and universities, it is difficult to provide enough material to serve for the wants of all at once. Important books may be drawn out when most needed by the class; one copy is often insufficient, and few libraries will buy duplicates to be used freely, and perhaps worn out, by students. Much may be done by private gift to increase the copies of the most valuable books. Sometimes members of classes will give reference books at the end of their course, or classes raise a subscription or assess themselves to provide additional copies. It may be set down as an axiom that more than twenty-five students cannot use a small number of reference books to advantage. Of course in a large collection there are many alternative books; for instance, on the period of the Confederation, one may get an excellent foundation out of either Bancroft, McMaster, Fiske, Curtis, Hildreth, or Pitkin, — it is not necessary for all to read the same account, if every one reads a good narrative.

To provide as well as possible for the largest possible number of students, Mr. Justin Winsor, Librarian of Harvard University, has worked out a system of which the success has been proved by the experience of a dozen years. Out of the numerous stores of the library each instructor has the right to select such books as seem to him essential for his courses, and to have them assembled in an alcove of the reading-room, where they are entirely open and accessible, without any formality of drawing out, during the library hours. With this existence of a good working collection behind him, the instructor may safely call for a large amount of parallel reading and special written work. The only practical difficulty is the occasional hiding or carrying away of a book. The pressure for the use of particular books at a particular time is strong, and a discreditable number of volumes disappear in the course of a year. The loss is small in comparison with the advantage to the students, and concealment of a "reserved book" is considered one of the meanest of college crimes.

A further provision of the scheme adds greatly to the effectiveness of the library in cases where the reading-room cannot be used after sundown. No book thus reserved can be drawn out by any student during the day; but he has the privilege, an hour before the library closes, to draw a certain number of reserved books for "over-night use"; such books are returnable at nine o'clock the next morning, and neglect so to return them, if repeated, places the negligent student for a month on the "black list" of persons whose privilege is suspended. The reserved books system thus serves a double use, and promotes an intelligent use of library material. It makes the library a kind of laboratory for the "humanities."

Some instructors in smaller colleges, where the general library facilities are not ample, have established small working libraries in rooms set apart for the purpose by the college authorities. To each student in the course for which such a library is provided a key is given in return for the deposit of a small sum of money. A portion of the money thus obtained is used to replace books lost through theft or carelessness or through abuse. The interests of the students and of the library are thus made identical. This system is said to work well in some institutions.

## V. CLASS EXERCISES.

### § 43. Recitations.

THE class-room is the place where the pupils' general work is to be tested. But, at the outset, teachers ought never to lose sight of the fact that repetition of the words or ideas of a text-book is a test of the memory and not of the mind. The only proper test is that which ascertains how far a pupil is able to use and apply what he knows ; and in that process one is certain to find out whether he really knows anything. It is a deadening experience to have hour after hour given up in class to a recital by pupils of facts which the others either know already, or will never learn in class. The recitation is the teacher's opportunity to enforce, explain, illustrate, and amplify the lesson.

The first duty of the teacher is therefore throughout the exercise to point out what is most important in the lesson, and what is a minor matter, and thus to break up the notion that every word in the text-book deserves equal attention with every other word. Any good teacher ought to be able even to suggest omissions. The interest and opinion of the pupils may sometimes be drawn out as to the comparative importance of two events. Thus in the discussion of the Declaration of Independence it is easy to bring out the fact that the day or manner of signature is only a detail ; that the essential thing at the moment was the determination then taken to separate from the home-land and to establish a new nation.

The recitation is also the place to bring out cross-relations of events, as set forth elsewhere in the text-book, or in other books. Thus, in studying the New England Confederation, the likeness between the Commissioners of the Confederation and the Congress of the later Confederation may be pointed out ; the fugitive-slave clause may be compared with the similar provision of the Federal Constitution of 1787 ; and the insubordinate resolutions

of Massachusetts may be likened to the votes of the Hartford Convention of 1814, and the Secession ordinances of 1861. This work the teacher must guide, but need not carry on alone; pupils may make pertinent suggestions, or the teacher may draw them out by skillful questioning. Illustrations may be drawn also from the history of any other country which has been studied by the class, but this should be done with the greatest care, as the conditions of problems of different ages and races are often very unlike, although on the surface appearing to be the same. With such intelligent teaching there will be no need of calling for a repetition of the words, or even the substance of the text-books. The weak, lazy, or inattentive scholar will surely be discovered.

In collèges the ordinary set recitation is an anachronism; students old enough to come to college ought not to need the stimulus of their own discussion. For them the only suitable oral exercise in history is the "quiz" (§ 46) or "conference," or some form of written exercise (§§ 65-73). If text-book recitations are necessary, it is a proof that the work done is not college work.

#### § 44. Proper Use of Text-Books.

What is the advantage of a text-book, if it is not to be absorbed by the pupil? In the first place, it is to be the backbone of his knowledge, — the ridge connecting and holding firm all that comes to him from other sources. Text-books are to be studied carefully, in order to fix in the mind the principal events, so that they may be carried from the beginning of the course to the end. A certain body of facts should thus be acquired, and drilled in by constant cross-reference.

Most text-books on American history are well illustrated, and thus serve to bring home to the mind historical places and public men. The maps also ought to be — and in a few cases are — suggestive and helpful; they should be used constantly both in and out of the class-room. The best text-books are further provided with a set of select bibliographies, which will lead pupils to use other books; or contain lists of questions requiring for answer the use of additional books.

One other use of text-books is that of the "open text-book recitation," in which, with their books before them, and the privilege to turn the leaves back and forth, pupils reply to off-hand questions, including past and even future lessons. It is an exercise likely to train pupils to swift and discriminating use of books; and to keep fresh in their minds the conception that the history of the United States is one thing, and not a succession of detached episodes.

For college work the text-book has a different purpose. It should be employed not as a basis of class exercises, but as a substitute for what must otherwise be acquired from lectures. The instructor may omit the groundwork included in the text-book; and assume in his lectures and other work that so much knowledge may be taken for granted. The text-book may also serve as a guide to the parallel reading, if furnished with suitable bibliographies.

#### § 45. Reviews.

Many schools waste the most valuable part of the year, the last month or more, in an elaborate review of study already pursued within too narrow limits. A proper system of teaching will secure all the good that there is in this system, without its loss of time and energy. Two such devices are thus described by a very efficient teacher in secondary schools: "The pupil is given the entire subject, for instance, the Homeric Age, the Conquest of Italy by Rome, the Early Norman Kings, the New England Colonies. To recite these 'fluents' are the special glory of the class; the brilliant recitation that holds the interest of all the pupils, although the subject is familiar, is one that is especially prized. After the 'fluent' is finished it is criticised as to matter and manner; the English, the attitude, and intonation of the reciter all coming under fire, as well as the historical matter."

The second device is thus described: "But a very important part of the work yet remains, — the fixing of the whole indelibly on the mind. This is attempted by what . . . are called 'cards,' *i.e.*, a raking fire of short, sharp questions every morning, to which a prompt, direct answer is required, or the dread 'next,' 'next,'

'next' is heard. To fail in cards is thought a great disgrace, for they are taken up only when the subject has been most carefully explained, and failure in them is an evidence of unfaithfulness on the part of the pupil."

The essential element in both these systems is that every recitation, properly conducted, is a review of all the lessons which have gone before. It is like going up a flight of steps, from each of which one looks back over all that he has climbed. Besides the oral reviews there are several systems of written questions which will be described below (§§ 65, 66).

#### · § 46. The "Quiz."

For sufficiently advanced pupils the recitation may be replaced by a different sort of oral exercise, the "quiz." Here the text-book has place only as one of several authorities that may be quoted to sustain or overthrow a proposition. The object is to draw out by discussion the meaning and relations of the day's topic. For instance, instead of "hearing the class" on the witchcraft delusion, the whole body of pupils may become a sort of committee of the whole on the subject, and may discuss how far the Puritans were abreast or behind their contemporaries in other lands and other colonies as respects belief in witches; how far the evidence was worthy of credence; what kindred delusions exist in our own day, etc. Such a discussion may be made the medium of ethical teaching, of the greater effect because introduced incidentally.

One method of carrying on such a "quiz" is to assign to each member of the class some phase of the general subject, on which he is to make special preparation, so as to contribute to the discussion as often as his special topic bears upon it. In studying the slavery and secession questions, for instance, to each member of the class might be assigned a state, the attitude of which was to be considered on each successive national crisis. An assignment of the principal American statesmen might be made when going over the period of the Revolution; as each Congress or important measure came up some member of the class should be ready to

describe the part of John Dickinson, or James Wilson, or Patrick Henry. Another method is to make each member of the class responsible for a particular book, so as to state the view of the author on each controversy that comes up, or to add details not elsewhere mentioned.

In college the "quiz" may approach the well-known and successful "law-school method" of the deduction of principles from a study of cases, and not of text-books. For the college students the substitute for cases must usually be the leading historians; but a skillful instructor and interested class will find plenty of material for ardent discussion over such questions as the right of the Massachusetts Bay Colony to bring over its charter, or the purport of the Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions. Now that sets of select cases in Constitutional Law are available, the principal constitutional questions—such as the annexation of Louisiana, or the legal-tender question—may be studied from actual cases, even in considerable classes.

In small and highly advanced courses it is possible to conduct a "quiz" based partly on texts and partly on personal knowledge. Young men are often gathered in the universities from many states, and have had widely varying experiences. Political and constitutional questions may be discussed in such classes by assigning to each man a state—presumably his own—or an institution, upon which he shall make himself an authority.

#### § 47. Memorizing.

No improved method of teaching can do away with the necessity of memorizing certain data; but here, as elsewhere, there must be caution to select essential things. Neither the child's knowledge of history, nor his power of mind, are aroused by learning by heart the phraseology of a text-book writer. What he most needs is a list of important events, in their logical connection; the names of a few of the great characters, with determining dates; and parts of the phraseology of some of the constitutional documents. A ready use of this material, out of its connection, should be required and enforced at every opportunity,



so that it may be firmly fixed in the memory as a permanent acquirement. It should be the multiplication-table of history, always at the tongue's end. The date of the settlements of Virginia, Massachusetts, or New York, and dates and succession of American Congresses and Conventions from 1754 to 1789, the names and dates of the presidents, should be as familiar as seven times nine; and the use of these dates to group current events should be as free as nine times seven. Beyond these epoch-making dates pupils should remember whatever adheres naturally to the events, but drill should be given to fixing a few dates in the mind rather than to suggesting so many that they will have no life or meaning.

The following list is a suggestion of the things best worth remembering as a basis for the study of the history of America.

#### § 47 a. Discovery and Exploration.

- 1000 (about). The Norse Discoveries.
1492. Columbus.
1493. Bull of Partition.
1497. John Cabot.
1513. Ponce de Leon (Florida).
1513. Vasco Nuñez de Balboa (Pacific).
- 1519-21. Cortez (Conquest of Mexico).
1520. Magellan.
1524. Verrazano and Gomez (Atlantic Coast).
- 1527-36. Cabeza de Vaca (Southern United States).
- 1531-32. The Brothers Pizarro (Conquest of Peru).
- 1534-35. Cartier (Quebec and Montreal).
- 1539-42. De Soto (Southern and Eastern United States).
- 1540-41. Coronado (Southwestern United States).
1578. Drake (Pacific Coast).
1583. Gilbert (North Atlantic Coast).
1584. Amadas and Barlow (North Carolina).
1609. Hudson (Hudson's River for Dutch).
1610. Hudson (Hudson's Bay for England).
1615. Champlain (Lake Huron).
1634. Nicolet (Lake Michigan).
1673. Marquette and Joliet (Mississippi).
1681. La Salle (Mississippi).

**§ 47 b. Colonial History, 1604-1760.**

- 1604. Acadia (De Monts and Champlain).
- 1607. Virginia (Jamestown, Captain John Smith).
- 1608. Quebec (Champlain).
- 1619. Representative Government and Slavery in Virginia.
- 1620. The Council for New England (Gorges).
- 1620. Plymouth (Mayflower Compact, William Bradford).
- 1630. Great Emigration to Massachusetts (Winthrop).
- 1632. Maryland (The Calverts, Baron Baltimore).
- 1635. Connecticut.
- 1636. Providence (Roger Williams and Religious Liberty).
- 1637. Rhode Island (Anne Hutchinson).
- 1638. New Haven.
- 1638-39. The "Orders" of Connecticut.
- 1641. Massachusetts "Body of Liberties."
- 1643. New England Confederation.
- 1649. Maryland Toleration Act.
- 1651. The Navigation Ordinance.
- 1662. Connecticut Charter.
- 1663. Rhode Island Charter.
- 1663 and 1665. The Carolina Charters.
- 1664. English Conquest of New Netherland.
- 1665. New Jersey.
- 1676. Bacon's Rebellion in Virginia.
- 1681. Pennsylvania Charter (Penn and the Quakers).
- 1689. Rebellions in Massachusetts, New York, and Maryland.
- 1691. Province Charter of Massachusetts.
- 1699. Louisiana.
- 1701. Pennsylvania Charter of Privileges.
- 1713. Treaty of Utrecht.
- 1721. Rebellion in Carolina.
- 1732. Georgia Charter.
- 1734. Trial of Zenger.
- 1749. Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle.
- 1763. Peace of Paris.

### § 47 c. The American Revolution.

- 1761. Writs of Assistance.
- 1763. The Parson's Cause.
- 1765. The Stamp Act (Henry's Resolves).
- 1766. The Declaratory Act.
- 1767. The Townshend Acts.
- 1768. The Massachusetts Circular Letter.
- 1769. Virginia Resolves.
- 1772. Burning of the Gaspee.
- 1773. Destruction of the Tea.
- 1774. The Boston Port Act, Massachusetts Government Act, Quebec Act, etc.
- 1775. Lexington and Concord.
- 1776. Declaration of Independence.
- 1778. The French Alliance.
- 1781. Ratification of the Articles of Confederation.
- 1782 and 1783. Preliminary Articles and Definitive Treaty of Peace.

### § 47 d. Development of the Constitution of the United States.

- 1754. Albany Congress.
- 1765. Stamp Act Congress.
- 1774. First Continental Congress.
- 1775. Second Continental Congress.
- 1776. Declaration of Independence.
- 1781. Articles of Confederation in effect.
- 1781. Five-per-cent Amendment proposed.
- 1783. Revenue Amendment proposed.
- 1784. Commerce Amendment proposed.
- 1786. Annapolis Convention.
- 1787. Federal Convention.
- 1787. Northwest Ordinance.
- 1789. Federal Constitution in effect.
- 1789-91. First Ten Amendments (Bill of Rights).
- 1794. Jay Treaty.
- 1798-99. Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions.
- 1798. Eleventh Amendment (Suits against States).
- 1803. *Marbury vs. Madison* (Acts of Congress void).
- 1803. Annexation of Louisiana.

1804. Twelfth Amendment (Election of President).  
 1807. The Embargo (National Power over Commerce).  
 1812-15. War with England.  
 1814. Hartford Convention.  
 1819. McCullough *vs.* Maryland (Implied Powers).  
 1820. Missouri Compromise (National Prohibition of Slavery).  
 1823. Monroe Doctrine.  
 1824. Gibbons *vs.* Ogden (State Powers over Commerce).  
 1832. Nullification Controversy.  
 1845. Annexation of Texas.  
 1846-48. Mexican War.  
 1850. Compromise on Slavery Questions.  
 1854. Kansas-Nebraska Act (Popular Sovereignty).  
 1857. Dred Scott Case (Slavery Restrictions annulled).  
 1861. Secession Controversy.  
 1861-65. Civil War.  
 1863. Emancipation Proclamation (War Powers).  
 1865. Thirteenth Amendment (Slavery forbidden).  
 1867. Reconstruction Act (Congress asserts its Power).  
 1868. Fourteenth Amendment (Citizenship defined).  
 1868. Impeachment of President Johnson.  
 1870. Fifteenth Amendment (Negro Suffrage).  
 1870. Legal Tender Cases (Legal Tender Notes approved).  
 1873. Slaughter-House Cases (Citizenship restrained).  
 1883. Civil Service Act (Examinations for Service).  
 1884. *Juillard vs. Greenman* (Legal Tender Notes confirmed).  
 1886. Interstate Commerce Act (Legislation on Railroads).  
 1889-95. Tariff Controversy.  
 1896. Discussion of the Monroe Doctrine.

### § 47 e. Presidents of the United States.

- 1793-97. George Washington (Jay Treaty).  
 1797-1801. John Adams (Alien and Sedition Acts).  
 1801-09. Thomas Jefferson (Annexation of Louisiana).  
 1809-17. James Madison (War of 1812).  
 1817-25. James Monroe (Monroe Doctrine).  
 1825-29. John Quincy Adams (Panama Congress).  
 1829-37. Andrew Jackson (Bank and Nullification Controversies).  
 1837-41. Martin Van Buren (Panic of 1837).

1841. William Henry Harrison (First Death in Office).  
 1841-45. John Tyler (Annexation of Texas).  
 1845-49. James K. Polk (Mexican War).  
 1849-50. Zachary Taylor (Died in Office).  
 1850-53. Millard Fillmore (Compromise of 1850).  
 1853-57. Franklin Pierce (Kansas-Nebraska Act).  
 1857-61. James Buchanan (Lecompton Constitution).  
 1861-65. Abraham Lincoln (The Civil War).  
 1865-69. Andrew Johnson (Reconstruction and Impeachment).  
 1869-77. Ulysses S. Grant (Treaty with England).  
 1877-81. Rutherford B. Hayes (Troops withdrawn).  
 1881. James A. Garfield (Died in Office).  
 1881-85. Chester A. Arthur (Civil Service Reform).  
 1885-89. Grover Cleveland (Tariff Controversy).  
 1889-93. Benjamin Harrison (McKinley Tariff).  
 1893. Grover Cleveland (Currency and Tariff Bills).

### § 47 f. Admission of States.

- 1-11. 1787-88. By ratification of the Constitution before it went into effect: Delaware, Pennsylvania, New Jersey, Georgia, Connecticut, Massachusetts, Maryland, South Carolina, New Hampshire, Virginia, New York.
- 12, 13. 1789-90. By ratification of the Constitution after it was in effect: North Carolina, Rhode Island.
- 1791-1895. By act of Congress (the date is that of taking effect):
- |                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 14. 1791. Vermont.     | 27. 1845. Florida.       |
| 15. 1792. Kentucky.    | 28. 1845. Texas.         |
| 16. 1796. Tennessee.   | 29. 1846. Iowa.          |
| 17. 1803. Ohio.        | 30. 1848. Wisconsin.     |
| 18. 1812. Louisiana.   | 31. 1850. California.    |
| 19. 1816. Indiana.     | 32. 1858. Minnesota.     |
| 20. 1817. Mississippi. | 33. 1859. Oregon.        |
| 21. 1818. Illinois.    | 34. 1861. Kansas.        |
| 22. 1819. Alabama.     | 35. 1863. West Virginia. |
| 23. 1820. Maine.       | 36. 1864. Nevada.        |
| 24. 1821. Missouri.    | 37. 1867. Nebraska.      |
| 25. 1836. Arkansas.    | 38. 1876. Colorado.      |
| 26. 1837. Michigan.    | 39. 1889. North Dakota.  |

- |                         |                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| 40. 1889. South Dakota. | 43. 1890. Idaho.   |
| 41. 1889. Montana.      | 44. 1890. Wyoming. |
| 42. 1889. Washington.   | 45. 1896. Utah.    |

### § 47 g. Population of the United States.

In round numbers, at each decennial census :

|                  |                   |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1790. 3,900,000. | 1830. 12,900,000. | 1870. 38,600,000. |
| 1800. 5,300,000. | 1840. 17,000,000. | 1880. 50,200,000. |
| 1810. 7,200,000. | 1850. 23,200,000. | 1890. 62,600,000. |
| 1820. 9,600,000. | 1860. 31,400,000. |                   |

### § 47 h. Significant Extracts from the Declaration of Independence.

When in the Course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the Laws of Nature and of Nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty and the pursuit of Happiness. That to secure these rights, Governments are instituted among Men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed,—That whenever any Form of Government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the Right of the People to alter or to abolish it, and to institute new Government, laying its foundation on such principles and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their Safety and Happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that Governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes ; and accordingly all experience hath shewn, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same Object evinces a design to reduce them under absolute Despotism,

it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such Government, and to provide new Guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these Colonies ; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former Systems of Government. The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute Tyranny over these States. To prove this, let Facts be submitted to a candid world.

. . . . .

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws ; giving his Assent to their Acts of pretended Legislation :

. . . . .

We, therefore, the Representatives of the united States of America, in General Congress, Assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the Name, and by Authority of the good People of these Colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of Right ought to be, Free and Independent States ; that they are Absolved from all Allegiance to the British Crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain, is and ought to be totally dissolved ; and that as free and independent States, they have full Power to levy War, conclude Peace, contract Alliances, establish Commerce, and to do all other Acts and Things which independent States may of right do. And, for the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other, our Lives, our Fortunes, and our sacred Honor.

**§ 47 i. Significant Extracts from the Articles of Confederation.**

ARTICLE I. The stile of this confederacy shall be "THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA."

ARTICLE II. Each state retains its sovereignty, freedom and independence, and every Power, Jurisdiction and right, which is

not by this confederation expressly delegated to the United States, in Congress assembled.

ARTICLE III. The said states hereby severally enter into a firm league of friendship with each other, for their common defence, the security of their Liberties, and their mutual and general welfare. . . .

ARTICLE VI. No two or more states shall enter into any treaty, confederation or alliance whatever between them, without the consent of the united states in congress assembled, specifying accurately the purpose for which the same is to be entered into, and how long it shall continue.

No state shall lay any imposts or duties, which may interfere with any stipulations in treaties, entered into by the united states in congress assembled, with any king, prince or state, in pursuance of any treaties already proposed by congress, to the courts of France and Spain.

ARTICLE IX. . . . The united states in congress assembled shall never engage in a war, nor grant letters of marque and reprisal in time of peace, nor enter into any treaties or alliances, nor coin money, nor regulate the value thereof, nor ascertain the sums and expenses necessary for the defence and welfare of the united states, or any of them, nor emit bills, nor borrow money on the credit of the united states, nor appropriate money, nor agree upon the number of vessels of war, to be built or purchased, or the number of land or sea forces to be raised, nor appoint a commander in chief of the army or navy, unless nine states assent to the same: nor shall a question on any other point, except for adjourning from day to day be determined, unless by the votes of a majority of the united states in congress assembled.

ARTICLE XIII. Every state shall abide by the determinations of the united states in congress assembled, on all questions which by this confederation are submitted to them. AND the Articles of



this confederation shall be inviolably observed by every state, and the union shall be perpetual ; nor shall any alteration at any time hereafter be made in any of them ; unless such alteration be agreed to in a congress of the united states, and be afterwards confirmed by the legislatures of every state.

**§ 47 j. Significant Extracts from the Constitution of the United States.**

ARTICLE I. SECTION 8. The Congress shall have Power

[§ 1.] To lay and collect Taxes, Duties, Imposts and Excises, to pay the Debts and provide for the common Defence and general Welfare of the United States ; but all Duties, Imposts and Excises shall be uniform throughout the United States ;

[§ 2.] To borrow Money on the credit of the United States ;

[§ 3.] To regulate Commerce with foreign Nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian Tribes ;

[§ 4.] To establish an uniform Rule of Naturalization, and uniform Laws on the subject of Bankruptcies throughout the United States ;

[§ 5.] To coin Money, regulate the Value thereof, and of foreign Coin, and fix the Standard of Weights and Measures ;

[§ 6.] To provide for the Punishment of counterfeiting the Securities and current Coin of the United States ;

[§ 7.] To establish Post Offices and post Roads ;

[§ 8.] To promote the Progress of Science and useful Arts, by securing for limited Times to Authors and Inventors the exclusive Right to their respective Writings and Discoveries ;

[§ 9.] To constitute Tribunals inferior to the supreme Court ;

[§ 10.] To define and punish Piracies and Felonies committed on the high Seas, and Offences against the Law of Nations ;

[§ 11.] To declare War, grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal, and make Rules concerning Captures on Land and Water ;

[§ 12.] To raise and support Armies, but no Appropriation of Money to that Use shall be for a longer term than two Years ;

[§ 13.] To provide and maintain a Navy ;

[§ 14.] To make Rules for the Government and Regulation of the land and naval Forces ;

[§ 15.] To provide for calling forth the Militia to execute the Laws of the Union, suppress Insurrections and repel Invasions ;

[§ 16.] To provide for organizing, arming and disciplining, the Militia, and for governing such Part of them as may be employed in the Service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the Appointment of the Officers, and the Authority of training the Militia according to the Discipline prescribed by Congress ;

[§ 17.] To exercise exclusive Legislation in all Cases whatsoever, over such District (not exceeding ten Miles square) as may, by Cession of particular States, and the Acceptance of Congress, become the Seat of the Government of the United States, and to exercise like Authority over all Places purchased by the Consent of the Legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the Erection of Forts, Magazines, Arsenals, dock-Yards, and other needful Buildings ;— And

[§ 18.] To make all Laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into Execution the foregoing Powers, and all other Powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any Department or Officer thereof.

ARTICLE I. SECTION 9. [§ 2.] The Privilege of the Writ of Habeas Corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in Cases of Rebellion or Invasion the public Safety may require it.

[§ 3.] No Bill of Attainder or ex post facto Law shall be passed.

[§ 4.] No Capitation, or other direct, Tax shall be laid, unless in Proportion to the Census or Enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

[§ 5.] No Tax or Duty shall be laid on Articles exported from any State.

[§ 6.] No Preference shall be given by any Regulation of Commerce or Revenue to the Ports of one State over those of another : nor shall Vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay Duties in another.

ARTICLE II. SECTION 10. [§ 1.] No State shall enter into any Treaty, Alliance, or Confederation ; grant Letters of Marque

and Reprisal ; coin Money ; emit Bills of Credit ; make any Thing but gold and silver Coin a Tender in Payment of Debts ; pass any Bill of Attainder, ex post facto Law, or Law impairing the Obligation of Contracts, or grant any Title of Nobility.

[§ 2.] No State shall, without the Consent of the Congress, lay any Imposts or Duties on Imports or Exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection Laws : and the net Produce of all Duties and Imposts, laid by any State on Imports or Exports, shall be for the Use of the Treasury of the United States ; and all such Laws shall be subject to the Revision and Controul of the Congress.

[§ 3.] No State shall, without the Consent of Congress, lay any Duty of Tonnage, keep Troops, or Ships of War in time of Peace, enter into any Agreement or Compact with another State, or with a foreign Power, or engage in War, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent Danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE III. SECTION 2. [§ 1.] The judicial Power shall extend to all Cases, in Law and Equity, arising under this Constitution, the Laws of the United States, and Treaties made, or which shall be made, under their Authority ;— to all Cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers, and Consuls :— to all Cases of admiralty and maritime Jurisdiction ; to Controversies to which the United States shall be a Party ;— to Controversies between two or more States ;— between a State and Citizens of another State ;— between Citizens of different States, — between Citizens of the same State claiming Lands under Grants of different States, and between a State, or the Citizens thereof, and foreign States, Citizens or Subjects.

ARTICLE III. SECTION 3. [§ 1.] Treason against the United States, shall consist only in levying War against them, or in adhering to their Enemies, giving them Aid and Comfort. No Person shall be convicted of Treason unless on the Testimony of two Witnesses to the same overt Act, or on Confession in open Court.

ARTICLE VI. [§ 2.] This Constitution, and the Laws of the United States which shall be made in Pursuance thereof; and all Treaties made, or which shall be made, under the Authority of the United States, shall be the supreme Law of the Land; and the Judges in every State shall be bound thereby, any Thing in the Constitution or Laws of any State to the Contrary notwithstanding.

. . . . .

AMENDMENTS.—ARTICLE IX. The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

AMENDMENTS.—ARTICLE X. The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

. . . . .

AMENDMENTS. ARTICLE XIII. SECTION I. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

. . . . .

AMENDMENTS.—ARTICLE XIV. SECTION I. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law, which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

. . . . .

AMENDMENTS.—ARTICLE XV. SECTION I. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

**§ 48. Historical Geography.**

In a previous section (§ 21) have been described the sources and authorities in American historical geography. Without an adequate knowledge of the physical and historical geography of the United States, of the natural "lay of the land," and the process of subdivision by artificial lines, the historical student is all at sea. For historical purposes the river systems and drainage basins are the proper basis of geographical study. By the phenomena of erosion, which are not too difficult for grammar and even primary schools, are to be explained most of the natural highways which lead from the sea up into the Appalachian range, and thence down the westward slope; and especially the position and interrelation of the St. Lawrence and Mississippi basins. By the tides and wave action are to be explained the harbors which determined the site of colonies, and the growth of great cities. Most of the colonial wars had their theatre in and about the passes from the seaboard to Canada, or on the coast. The Revolutionary War and the Civil War are also to be understood only by reference to the topography of the country in which they were fought. The falls in the principal rivers have become the site of manufacturing towns, or the limit of navigation. Chicago and New York, St. Paul and Minneapolis, Richmond and Norfolk, mark the head and foot of great water communications. From the earliest study of geography the features of the continent should be treated as having a connection with the settlement of the country, and with political events.

To understand a map requires a training; to the child's mind it is only a picture at first, — or rather a confused set of lines. Map-drawing and map-making help to teach the pupil to look on a map as representing a surface; but it takes a long time to learn to read the vertical element, even on the best maps. Children should early be accustomed to think of the maps as representing an uneven surface, like that of the surrounding country, or — if it be flat region — like the little plateaus and channels made by rain. Clay modeling is an efficient aid to this part of a child's education.

Upon the knowledge of physical geography may be based a study of the development of political geography. Every child who studies American history at all ought to have some notion of the successive geographical status of the country. Unfortunately, there exists no satisfactory set of historical wall-maps. MacCoun's *Charts* are too small for a large schoolroom, and are not entirely accurate. Much may be done, however, in the way of making a set of maps. A large outline, or better, a relief map, may be painted on a movable blackboard. By using colored crayons it is easy in a few minutes to present upon it any desired general map, on a scale large enough to be seen at a distance of forty feet. Where a larger scale is desired, or the field is out of the limits of the blackboard, sketches may be made on the blackboard, or permanent maps on thick paper. The large wall outline maps, issued by several firms, will here be useful; and it is much simpler than it seems to draw rough maps on a large scale; even those who are not draughtsmen will find no difficulty. A roll of strong manilla paper, a few colored crayons, or, better still, water-colors, a yardstick, and a small map on which rectangles may be lightly ruled, are all the materials necessary.

The first use of the maps is to illustrate the territorial development of the country, by bringing before the eye the successive cessions and purchases. At the same time, the perplexing boundary controversies may be made clear. The close connection between annexations and the inner political history of the country is often brought out in startling relief when presented to the eye. Next comes the internal development of the country. Successive maps, dated, say, ten years apart, may show the extent of settlement, and the formation of territories and states. Even political affairs may sometimes be strikingly mapped out; thus, a series of maps showing the distribution of the presidential vote in each succeeding election will forever fix in the mind the slow growth of sectional parties. Special maps may be used for a variety of purposes. The theatre of wars and campaigns, detailed boundary controversies, proposed sites for the national capital, schemes of internal improvements,—these and many like subjects may be made to appeal to the eye.

Besides the wall-maps every child should have at constant command a set of small maps or an historical atlas; and should be encouraged to follow every lesson, map in hand. Sites should be learned, not with reference to a particular river or body of water only, but with some reason for that spot having been chosen. For instance, Cincinnati owes its growth to the existence of a little area of flat land between the hills and the river; and Cleveland lies at the mouth of a river making the only natural harbor on that part of Lake Erie.

In developing the political geography of the United States much use may be made of local geography, especially in the older states. Every child should know all the territorial changes which have befallen his own state, and especially his own town. A citizen of New York, for instance, ought to be aware that he lives in that part of the continent claimed by England in virtue of John Cabot's voyage; that the town was originally settled by the Dutch following on Hudson's voyage of 1609; that it was included in the territory granted by the English king to the Council for New England in 1620; was conquered from the Dutch in 1664, and was granted to James Duke of York and Albany.

In learning these data the student cannot help noticing that America was first divided among Christian nations; that then the northern portion was subdivided into colonies, with overlapping and conflicting claims.

One of the easiest ways of teaching geography is to use desk outline maps, filling them in as the subject progresses. A series of such maps will be a little historical atlas, and the making of them is an exercise in geometry as well as in geography. For college courses historical geography should never be relaxed; the more detailed and special a course, the more reason for treating the geography carefully, and making it underlie the whole body of instruction.

#### § 49. *Illustrative Methods.*

Much criticism has been passed upon recent reformed school programmes because they include no distinct instruction in æsthetics.



Drawing, however, is a usual subject of study, and should be so taught as to cultivate a love of beautiful forms ; and history is the natural medium for instruction in art as a part of a nation's life. The first step is to make the schoolroom attractive with busts and portraits of great men, and other suggestive objects. One may follow the example of a teacher in Brown University, and make a kind of wainscot of portraits for the lecture room. Or, like an excellent academy in Massachusetts, the room may be adorned with busts of Greek gods and historical pictures. To such a cheerful collection, children, students, parents, and public-spirited people interested in the school will often contribute ; and something may perhaps be had from school funds. Where means are scanty there are still excellent portraits cut from illustrated weeklies or old magazines, and arranged in scrap books or on the walls. Any real picture of a person or place or scene, well executed, has a value ; imaginary scenes are much less satisfactory. It is to be hoped that series of lantern slides of historical value may be sometime introduced, so as to allow the use of the magic lantern. Wherever possible, by maps, charts, or pictures, the eye ought to be associated with the ear in historical teaching.

Historical excursions, common in Germany, are little practised in this country, although in all the older states there are places of great national interest. If there be no famous hall or tree or house within reach, there are at least the local political deliberative bodies,—town meetings or councils, aldermen or legislatures or courts, which are to history what chemical works are to chemistry, or steel works to manual training,—a practical illustration of the study. Wherever there is a museum it should be visited, if it have in it something more than mere curiosities.

Class discussions have already been considered (§ 49) ; many schools have regular debating clubs, in which historic questions may be threshed out as they come along in the study. Home reading (§ 13), lectures by people from outside the school, compositions and themes on subjects from American history (§ 66),—these and all like methods should come in to make the study more interesting.



**§ 50. Debates.**

One of the most suggestive of class exercises is to organize the class into a debating society, or to induce the regular debating societies to take up questions which arise in historical study. This method very closely connects itself with the practice and needs of everyday life: all children discuss with each other, state arguments, and try to convince, and must do it all their lives.

The usual method is to appoint one, two, or more persons as principal disputants on each side, and then to let others come in with less formal speeches. It is well to have a member of the class preside; and he should be instructed to enforce rigorously the limits of time, and to make the debate move briskly. But debates as a class exercise should be as free as possible from the machinery of parliamentary law, — points of order, discussion of technicalities, and the like.

It adds much to the directness of a debate if the principal disputants in advance reduce their arguments to the form of a brief, in which the main points are stated in their logical order, with subsidiary points arranged under each; and with references to authorities, wherever possible. Such briefs may be placed on the blackboard, or reproduced by cyclostyle.

Every such debate ought to be criticised by the teacher, at the end of the exercise, in the presence of the class. Each of the speakers should have brief notice, including praise as well as blame, and calling attention to the principal faults of each, both in delivery and in matter. Errors, inaccuracies, and misstatements should be scored, and children should be taught to consider how to make their arguments pointed and convincing.

American history furnishes many debatable questions, — on the actions and motives of public men, such as Aaron Burr; on great measures, such as the Kansas-Nebraska act; and on questions of public policy, such as woman suffrage.

In some of the universities debate has been organized into regular courses, counting toward the degree, and carried out with briefs printed in the college papers, before each debate. Instruc-

tors in elocution and in history and economics criticise the participants.<sup>1</sup>

### § 51. Reports of Pupils.

Some famous schools find it possible to enliven their exercises by giving the pupils a part. This may be simply the assignment to each of a general subject from which he shall be prepared to make a contribution to the discussion whenever that subject has application (§ 46); or the best of the written reports may be called for, and perhaps a sufficient number combined to fill the hour. In either case caution is necessary: all the pupils must understand that the criticisms of a fellow-pupil are those of an immature person who has only a small amount of information: that his abstracts are subject to the faults of one little accustomed to precise use of language; and that quotations, carefully made, carry only the authority of the source from which they are drawn. There is no danger, if pains be taken to teach pupils to discriminate between different classes of writers — the contemporary, the careful secondary writer, and the slipshod compiler; or between the prejudiced enemy, the blind friend, and the later impartial biographer. One of the main purposes of good teaching is to give to every pupil such a part in the work that neglect is at once apparent; such a method as has been suggested leads to a feeling of responsibility, both for accurate work and for prompt and skillful performance.

### § 52. Student Lectures.

In colleges and universities it is possible to make a broader use of the same principle. In coöperative classes students do most of the work, and they often are able to bring to the study of an assigned topic an amount of time and thought which no instructor could devote to each subject if he worked it out by himself. Of course much of this time is wasted, and oftentimes the results are

<sup>1</sup> The methods of such a course at Harvard are set forth in a pamphlet, *Harvard Debating: Subjects and suggestions for Courses in oral Discussion*. Cambridge, published by the University, 1896.

disappointing. Occasionally a good seminary student can conduct an exercise in a large course to advantage. The difficulty in carrying on a systematic course of successive lectures by students, even the ablest, is that none of them has in mind the dimensions and relations of the whole subject; the lectures are apt to take the form of a lyceum course — each interesting, but none necessary to the understanding of any other. That student lectures may be effective in certain limited fields of historical study seems established by the result of a course on the History of Political Theories, with especial reference to the origin of American Institutions, which has for some years been conducted on these lines in connection with the Graduate School of Harvard University. It will be conceded that the circumstances under which this course has been given are peculiarly fortunate. It has been possible to admit to it mature men only, who, for the most part, were well acquainted with the course of American history, possessed some knowledge of English history, and had studied general history. Furthermore, it has frequently happened that one or more of the members of the course had already studied the general topic with a former instructor in some other institution. The instructor has usually delivered from twenty to thirty lectures at the beginning of the year on the origin of American institutions, — setting forth in detail the various theories on the subject, and tracing the history of several most important institutions or ideas; and on the underlying causes of the American Revolution, — elucidating the theories underlying the American system of government and calling attention to the historical origin of those theories first put to a practical test by the founders of the American Republic. Meantime some great political writer has been assigned to each student — men like Locke, Hobbes, Rousseau, Jefferson. The student is thus given ample time to study the life and career of his author, to discover the method of his training, the circumstances under which the book was written, and the previous writers who influenced him. He also makes a thorough study of the works themselves so far as they bear on the subject in hand and expounds them to the class. The students have always taken a great interest in each other's work and have entered actively into the discussion. Free scope is

given to each student. It is understood that he must (1) cover his subject to the satisfaction of the instructor, as a large portion of whatever credit is given for the course is based on the impression made on the instructor by the student in his lectures on his selected theme ; (2) he must be prepared to defend the successive steps in his argument, the points in his narrative, or the interpretation of his author, against the criticisms of his fellow students as well as of the instructor ; and (3) he must not weary his audience. The students are obliged to take notes of all the lectures, to read the books and topics studied, and to pass an examination on the whole work of the course. With a small class of advanced mature students this scheme has worked well. The training in the elucidation of difficult subjects to the satisfaction of a critical audience, the rubbing against earnest men from many universities in all parts of the country, is of great benefit to the student. The disadvantages of the method are that it takes about as much of the instructor's time in preparation as it would if he himself lectured ; the students frequently waste the time of the class in discussing irrelevant matter and do not lecture so effectively as a more experienced person could ; and finally it is a method to be adopted with great caution, as it is certain to fail with a class of more than twenty students, or with a small class of persons of very different grades of intelligence or attainment.

### § 53. *Seminaries.*

The term "seminary method," and perhaps the thing itself, has been much abused in the United States. In Germany it has a perfectly distinct meaning : there it is a system of instruction of the most advanced students, in which the work is entirely original research, the necessary technical preparation for such work, and the examination and comparison of results. In that sense the word is employed also in the score of advanced institutions in the United States which have the three essential elements of the system — large libraries, trained instructors, and a body of advanced students. "Original work" is not necessarily seminary work : nor is a coöperative class necessarily a seminary. The system is in-

applicable in most colleges. What is sometimes called "the seminary method" in secondary schools is really nothing but the use of sources, under competent direction; and combination of the results on some system likely to arouse interest and aid other members of the class. The aim of the seminary student is to exhaust his subject, to examine all the literature bearing on it, to say the last word: and the aim in secondary or grammar schools must be to get as much as possible out of a very limited range of material. It is the difference between the comprehensive work of Mr. Gardiner on the English Commonwealth, and a magazine article on the execution of Charles I. So far as methods of research are applicable in schools, they will be considered below (§§ 67-72).

In the true seminary there are two systems in use. The first is to assign to students topics generally unrelated; and, as each student brings his work to a point, to let him occupy the hour of class exercises. The other way is to assign a series of related topics which, with an occasional lecture from the instructor, will make up a systematic and consecutive course. Each of these methods has its advantages: the former consults individual preference, and allows greater variety of treatment; the latter accustoms students to fit their historical timber into a given space. The two systems may be illustrated by the two following lists of topics in American history pursued in the same institution, under two different instructors, in the same year.

Taxation in the Colonies in 1760. — Slavery in the Colonies in 1760. — Education in the Colonies in 1760. — Religion in the Colonies, 1760. — Poor Law System in the Colonies, 1760. — Punishment of Crime in the Colonies. — The Colonial System.

Fox and Wisconsin River Improvements. — Reconstruction, 1865-1877. — Boston Politics. — The Census. — The Veto Power. — Workings of the Judiciary Department, 1865-1885. — The Greenback Labor Party. — Civil Government of the Southern Confederacy. — Foreign Relations of the United States, 1860-1885.

A teacher in a small college who desires to establish such a "practice course," or to use the "seminary method" under some other name, has two very practicable plans to work upon. He can — especially in the newer states — set his class to work up inter-

esting incidents in the history of the state in which the college is situated ; or he can set them to studying the origin (so far as America is concerned) of the institutions with which he is familiar. One hundred dollars will buy Hening's *Statutes at Large* of Virginia, the *Records* of New Plymouth Colony, including those of the New England Confederation and the Laws of Plymouth ; Bradford's *History* ; Winthrop's *Journal* ; and the *Massachusetts Colony Records* (§ 29). With this material at his command an instructor will find an abundance of interesting topics for his students to study : the origin of representative systems, and the various questions connected therewith, land systems and local institutions — town, county, parish, etc. Of course this material will not prepare one to say a new word on any topic ; but it will enable a teacher to train a class in methods of original research.

## VI. READING.

### § 54. Necessity of Reading.

CLASS-ROOM work of every kind depends upon the preparation and energy of the teacher. The reaction by the pupils is only to be had if they know something and think about it ; and for history the source of knowledge is chiefly reading. Study of a text-book has its advantages (§ 18), but it is not necessarily a study of history. From the youngest classes to the most advanced graduate courses reading is essential.

We are bidden to "beware of the man of one book" ; reading must be not only abundant, it must also be varied. Of course much that thus goes into the mind will not be retained : the endless detail of history easily slips away. Yet every book leaves a certain impression, though the source of that impression be forgotten ; and from much reading results a residuum of fact and conclusion which lasts a long time, and perhaps a lifetime. Sufficiently mature students may safely be turned loose in a well-chosen library, and told to browse : for they are sure to get something good. For young pupils there must be some selection indicated, but there ought always to be alternatives, so that no one need feel shut in to one writer, who is supposed to speak the final word ; and where large classes use one reference library some suggestions must be made so as to relieve the pressure on the books, and lists of selected readings are useful. For detailed courses of lectures students will find advantageous sets of more elaborate references, arranged by topics in the order of the lectures. These three systems — consecutive reading according to the student's judgment, general readings of selected passages on general subjects, and topical readings on special subjects — will be described in the following sections.

**§ 55. Consecutive Reading.**

For advanced students, who wish to get a view of the literature of the subject, and to compare diverging views, the best method is to take the books that seem from inspection most promising, and to read one after the other, making such comparisons as suggest themselves, and widening the field of the lectures. It is well to begin with one or two brief books so as to get a general view of the subject; and care should be taken to include contemporary material, biography, reminiscences. Sometimes a chapter of original material freshens the mind as much as a volume of a secondary work, and leaves a more distinct impression. If such work is carried on in connection with a course of lectures, topics which are treated in the lectures but have not been covered by the reading had better be prepared from the topical readings.

Even among children it is well to encourage a habit of looking into books, and selecting something that attracts for itself; but a few books well read are to them more important than a large amount of material skimmed. The advice that Sir William Petty gave to Robert Boyle to read at one time only as much as one could then assimilate is still pertinent.

**§ 56. General Reading.**

The subjoined lists are intended for high-school pupils and college students. Under each division is arranged a series of groups of associated books or parts of books; and any one of the later groups, together with the group numbered "1" in each case at the beginning, is considered a fair amount of reading for that period. A choice of groups is offered to allow for individual preference, and to place a larger number of books at the disposal of large classes. Pains have been taken to throw into the same division books of divergent views; in passing from period to period it is well to bring into use a set of writers not already familiar.



## § 56 a. Brief List of General Readings.

## 1000-1700. Discovery and Exploration.

(For topical references, see §§ 81-87, 89-96, 104.)

1. R. G. Thwaites, *The Colonies*, Ch. ii; T. W. Higginson, *Larger History*, 27-137.
2. C. R. Markham, *Christopher Columbus*, and Charles Deane's "Voyages of the Cabots," in J. Winsor, *America*, III, 1-7.
3. J. A. Doyle, *The English in America, Virginia*, 1-108; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 35-63, 92-200, 312-313.
4. F. Parkman, *Pioneers of France*, 28-309.
5. T. W. Higginson, *American Explorers*; E. J. Payne, *Voyages of the Elizabethan Seamen*.
6. J. A. Froude, *English Seamen in the Sixteenth Century*; J. K. Laughton, Introduction to *The Armada*, in *Papers of the Navy Records Society of Great Britain*.
7. M. Creighton, *Age of Elizabeth*; F. Seebohm, *Era of the Protestant Revolution*.

## 1606-1760. Colonization.

(For topical references, see §§ 88, 89, 91, 95, 97-130.)

1. H. C. Lodge, *English Colonies in America*, Chs. i-xxi; T. W. Higginson, *Larger History*, Chs. vi-viii.
2. R. G. Thwaites, *The Colonies*, 45-284.
3. G. P. Fisher, *Colonial Era*, 30-312.
4. J. Fiske, *Beginnings of New England*.
5. W. M. Sloane, *French War and Revolution*, 22-115; Albert Bushnell Hart, *Formation of the Union*, 22-41.
6. G. Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I-III.
7. R. Hildreth, *United States*, I, II.
8. J. A. Doyle, *The English in America*, 3 vols.
9. S. R. Gardiner, *History of England from the Accession of James I*, III, Ch. xxvi, IV, Ch. xxxvi.
10. For a short account of England during the Seventeenth Century, see S. R. Gardiner, *The First Two Stuarts and the Puritan Revolution* (Epochs of Modern History series); or S. R. Gardiner, *A Student's History of England*, 481-768; or Higginson and Channing, *English History for Americans*, 144-244.
11. E. A. Freeman, *English People in its Three Homes*; Hannis Taylor, *Origin and Growth of the English Constitution*, Introduction;

J. Fiske, *American Political Ideas*; Woodrow Wilson, *The State*; Charles F. Adams and others, "Genesis of the Massachusetts Town," in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, Second Series, VII, 172-262; J. R. Seeley, *Expansion of England*; Borgeaud, *Rise of Modern Democracy*.

12. Edward Eggleston, in the *Century Magazine*, III, 61, 724; V, 431; VI, 234, 848; VII, 873; VIII, 387.

### 1760-1783. The American Revolution.

(For topical references, see §§ 133-135.)

1. H. C. Lodge, *English Colonies*, Chs. xxiii, xxv; A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union*, 42-101; W. M. Sloane, *The French War and Revolution*, 116-369; T. W. Higginson, *Larger History*, Chs. ix-xii; E. Channing, *The United States, 1765-1865*, 1-106.

2. G. W. Greene, *Historical View*, 1-209; J. R. Greene, *Short History of the English People*, Ch. x, Sect. ii.

3. R. Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, Chs. iv-xii; W. E. H. Lecky, *England in the Eighteenth Century*, III, Ch. xii; IV, Chs. xiv, xv.

4. Wm. Tudor, *Life of James Otis*; J. K. Hosmer, *Samuel Adams*; J. T. Morse, Jr., *Benjamin Franklin*, 99-396.

5. H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, I; M. C. Tyler, *Patrick Henry*.

6. J. T. Morse, Jr., *John Adams*, 1-225; W. G. Sumner, *Robert Morris*.

7. C. Tower, *Lafayette in the American Revolution*, I, II.

8. W. B. Weedon, *Economic History*, II; W. G. Sumner, *Financier and Finances of the Revolution*.

9. F. Pollock, *Science of Politics*; A. Borgeaud, *Rise of Democracy*.

### 1750-1789. Genesis of the Constitution.

(For topical references, see §§ 131-156.)

1. H. Von Holst, *Constitutional Law*, 1-32; E. Channing, *The United States, 1765-1865*, Chs. i-iv; H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, II, 1-46.

2. H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*, I, 1-63; Albert Bushnell Hart, *Formation of the Union*, Chs. i-vi.

3. Joseph Story, *Commentaries on the Constitution*, §§ 198-372.

4. H. C. Lodge, *English Colonies in North America*, 406-475; John T. Morse, Jr., *John Adams*, 50-240.

5. T. W. Higginson, *Larger History of the United States*, 137-332.

6. H. C. Lodge, *English Colonies in America*, 476-521; James Schouler, *History of the United States*, I, 1-70; H. C. Lodge, *Alexander Hamilton*, 1-83.
7. J. K. Hosmer, *Samuel Adams*, 313-350.
8. George Tucker, *History of the United States*, I, 21-383.
9. John Fiske, *Critical Period of American History*.
10. W. M. Sloane, *French War and Revolution*; F. A. Walker, *Making of the Nation*, 1-50.

#### 1789-1829. Federation.

(For topical references, see §§ 157-179.)

1. Alexander Johnston, *American Politics*, Chs. ii-xi; E. Channing, *The United States, 1765-1865*, Chs. v-vii; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*, I, 181-272; Josiah Quincy, *Figures of the Past*, 101-290.
2. S. H. Gay, *Bryant's History of the United States*, IV, 242-291; Albert Bushnell Hart, *Formation of the Union*, Chs. vii-xi; John T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson*, 209-320, and *John Quincy Adams*, 25-98.
3. John T. Morse, Jr., *John Adams*, 241-324; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, 38-310.
4. John T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson*, 98-208, and *John Quincy Adams*, 98-220; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, 252-332.
5. H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, II, 47-388; Simon Sterne, *Constitutional History*, 145-168; J. S. Landon, *Constitutional History*, Lects. v, vi.
6. John Austin Stevens, *Gallatin*, 58-175; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*, I, 181-272; D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe*, 125-175.
7. S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, 128-251; John T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, 25-98; H. Von Holst, *John C. Calhoun*, 12-83.
8. H. C. Lodge, *Alexander Hamilton*, 84-284; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I.
9. H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*, I.
10. James Schouler, *History of the United States*, I, 70-501, II, III.
11. Richard Hildreth, *History of the United States*, IV-VI.
12. George Tucker, *History of the United States*, I, 384-627; II, III.
13. F. A. Walker, *Making of the Nation*, Chs. iv-xiii; J. W. Burgess, *From the Conclusion of Peace in 1815*, I. [In preparation, 1895.]

**1829-1860. Economic Questions and the Slavery Contest.**

(For topical references, see §§ 180-203.)

1. Alexander Johnston, *American Politics*, Chs. xii-xix; E. Channing, *The United States, 1765-1865*, Chs. viii-ix; H. Von Holst, *John C. Calhoun*, Chs. v-ix.
2. Woodrow Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, Chs. i-vii; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*, II, Chs. iv; V, Ch. x; VII, Ch. vii.
3. J. F. Rhodes, *History of the United States*, I, II.
4. H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, 85-309; Jefferson Davis, *Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government*, I, 1-85; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, II, 69-94, 152-170, 228-372.
5. J. S. Landon, *Constitutional History*, Lects. vii, viii; J. G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Chs. i-x; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, 69-340; H. C. Lodge, *Daniel Webster*, 171-332.
6. J. W. Draper, *History of the Civil War in America*, I, 301-338, 388-567; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's History of the United States*, IV, 282-434; Jefferson Davis, *Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government*, I, 1-85.
7. Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, 311-349; II, 1-383; H. Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, 224-309.
8. H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*, I, 459-505; II-VII.
9. Henry Wilson, *Rise and Fall of the Slave Power in America*, I, 165-651; II, III.
10. J. W. Burgess, *From the Conclusion of Peace in 1815*, I, II. [In preparation, 1895.]
11. James Schouler, *History of the United States*, III-V.

**1860-1895. Civil War and Restoration.**

(For topical references, up to 1865, see §§ 204-214; for readings in the separate periods, 1860-65, and 1865-95, see § 56 b.)

1. Woodrow Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, Chs. viii-xiii; Alexander Johnston, *American Politics*, Ch. xx to end; E. Channing, *The United States*, Ch. x; Edward Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Ch. xxi to end.
2. Judson S. Landon, *Constitutional History and Government*, Lect. ix to end; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia of Political Science*, III, 532-556, 693-701; Alexander Johnston, *The United States, its History and Constitution*, Chs. x, xi.

3. Goldwin Smith, *United States*, Ch. v; Simon Sterne, *Constitutional History*, 190-274; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History of the United States*, IV, Chs. xvii-xxiii.
5. James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Chs. xi-xxvi; II.
6. J. C. Ridpath, *Popular History of the United States*, Chs. lxxvii-lxxi.

The following general works on this period were announced or in preparation in December, 1895 :

J. W. Burgess, *History of the United States since 1815*; James Schouler, *History of the United States*, VI; James F. Rhodes, *History of the United States since 1850*, IV-V; Frederic Bancroft, *Life of William H. Seward*; Geo. C. Gorham, *Life of Edwin M. Stanton*; Eben G. Scott, *History of Reconstruction*; George T. Curtis, *Constitutional History of the United States*, II; Thornton K. Lothrop, *William H. Seward*; Moorfield Storey, *Charles Sumner*; Charles Francis Adams, Jr., *Charles Francis Adams*; Albert Bushnell Hart, *Salmon P. Chase*.

### § 56 b. General Readings.

#### 1000-1600. Discovery and Exploration.

(For topical references, see §§ 81-87, 92-96.)

1. T. W. Higginson, *Larger History*, 27-108; R. G. Thwaites, *The Colonies*, 20-32, 36-42.
2. S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 118-174; J. G. Palfrey, *Compendious History of New England*, I, 2-17; J. A. Doyle, *The English in America, Virginia*, 18-82.
3. George Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), I, 1-68; (last revision) I, 1-49.
4. J. Winsor, *America*, I, 59-75; II, 1-23, 129-152, 231-259, 473-498; III, 1-7.
5. C. R. Markham, *Christopher Columbus*; J. Winsor, *Columbus*; A. Helps, *Spanish Conquest of America*, and *Columbus*.
6. H. Harrisse, *Discovery of America*; John Fiske, *Discovery of America*.
7. R. Biddle, *Sebastian Cabot*; H. Harrisse, *John Cabot, the Discoverer of North America*.
8. F. Parkman, *Pioneers of France*.
9. J. A. Froude, *English Seamen in the Sixteenth Century*, and *History of England*, XI, 94, 369-403, 441; J. K. Laughton, *The Spanish Armada*, Introduction; J. Cobbett, *Life of Sir Francis Drake*; C. R.

Markham, *The Hawkins' Voyages*; E. Edwards, *Life of Walter Raleigh*; I. Tarbox, *Sir Walter Raleigh*.

10. E. J. Payne, *Elizabethan Seamen*; T. W. Higginson, *American Explorers*.

#### 1490-1700. French Exploration and Colonization.

(For topical references, see §§ 87-91.)

1. R. G. Thwaites, *The Colonies*, 32-36, 246-252; T. W. Higginson, *Larger History*, Ch. v; G. Bryce, *History of the Canadian People*, 128-162.

2. S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 174-200; J. A. Doyle, *English Colonies in America, Virginia*, I, 82-146; F. Parkman, *Conspiracy of Pontiac*, Ch. ii.

3. G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), I, 15-34, 68-83; III, 109-174; (last revision) I, 15-21, 50-59; II, 149-174.

4. R. Hildreth, *United States*, I, 42, 44-46, 71-75, 91-92; II, 99-122.

5. Winsor, *America*, II, 260-283; IV, 5-10, 46-62, 103-130.

6. F. Parkman, *Pioneers of France* (edition 1887), 1-179, 187-443; *La Salle and the Discovery of the Great West* (edition of 1879); *A Half-Century of Conflict*, I, Ch. xiii.

7. H. Harrisse, *Discovery of America*, 214-228; Murphy, *Voyage of Verrazano*; J. C. Brevoort, *Verrazano, the Navigator*; H. B. Stephens, *Jacques Cartier*; J. Sparks, *Life of Ribault*; E. M. Slafter, "Memoir," prefixed to his edition of Champlain's *Works*.

#### 1607-1760. The Southern Colonies.

(For topical references, see §§ 97-103.)

1. H. C. Lodge, *English Colonies*, Chs. i-x; R. G. Thwaites, *The Colonies*, 64-111, 258-263; G. P. Fisher, *Colonial Era*, 30-81, 272-312.

2. S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 262-339, 476-517; J. A. Doyle, *The English in America, Virginia, and the Carolinas*.

3. J. Winsor, *America*, III, 127-153, 517-553; V, 258-270, 285-335, 357-392.

4. G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), I, 97-108, 133-176, 209-285; II, 128-234, 246-256; III, 13-34, 417-446; (last revision) I, 99-118, 135-176, 408-474; II, 9-13, 20-23, 281-299, 340-341.

5. R. Hildreth, *United States*, I, 94-96, 99-135, 204-215, 335-367, 509-572; II, 25-43, 90-92, 173-182, 208-215, 228-240, 267, 276, 285-293, 326-329, 336-340, 362-369, 374-385, 414.

6. C. Campbell, *Introduction to History of Virginia*; W. H. Browne, *Maryland* (Commonwealth series); W. J. Rivers, *Sketch of the History of South Carolina*.

7. Charles Campbell, *History of Virginia*; J. T. Scharf, *History of Maryland*, I and II; F. X. Martin, *North Carolina*; D. Ramsay, *South Carolina*; C. C. Jones, *History of Georgia*.

8. Ann Maury, *Huguenot Family*; Kercheval, *History of the Valley of Virginia*; Streeter, *Maryland Two Hundred Years ago*; Bernheim, *German Settlements in North and South Carolina*.

9. Meade, *Old Churches and Families of Virginia*; W. H. Browne, *George and Cecilius Calvert*; H. Bruce, *Oglethorpe*.

#### 1609-1760. The Middle Colonies.

(For topical references, see §§ 104-108.)

1. H. C. Lodge, *English Colonies*, Chs. xi-xvii; R. G. Thwaites, *The Colonies*, 195-232; G. P. Fisher, *Colonial Era*, 177-206, 241-271.

2. S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 339-369, 429-450; J. Winsor, *America*, IV, 395-409; III, 385-411, 421-449, 469-495.

3. G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), II, 256-326, 359-404, 410-426; III, 35-65; (last revision) I, 475-527; II, 24-46, 339-342.

4. R. Hildreth, *United States*, I, 136-149, 413-450; II, 44-78, 87, 91, 130, 138-140, 171-172, 182-187, 192, 200-207, 219, 226, 242-246, 260, 315, 320, 342-345, 357-361, 365, 391, 408.

5. E. H. Roberts, *New York* (Commonwealth series); T. F. Gordon, *History of New Jersey*; W. H. Egle, *Illustrated History of Pennsylvania*.

6. W. H. Smith, *History of the Province of New York*; Samuel Smith, *History of the Colony of New Jersey*; Robert Proud, *History of Pennsylvania*.

7. Archer, *Henry Hudson*; J. R. Brodhead, *History of the State of New York* (to 1691); Janney, *Life of Wm. Penn*; Benjamin Franklin's *Autobiography* (in his *Works*, see § 32); Biographies of Franklin (see § 25).

#### 1607-1760. New England.

(For topical references, see §§ 109-130.)

1. H. C. Lodge, *English Colonies*, Chs. xviii-xxii; R. G. Thwaites, *The Colonies*, 112-194; G. P. Fisher, *Colonial Era*, 82-176, 215-240.

2. J. Fiske, *Beginnings of New England*; R. Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, 33-67; J. Bryce, *American Commonwealth*, I, 589-598.

3. S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 370-428, 517-558; II, 1-51, 68-114, 373-471; Winsor, *America*, III, 257-283, 295-339; V, 87-104.

4. G. Bancroft, *The United States* (original edition), I-III; (last revision) I and II, *passim*.

5. R. Hildreth, *United States*, I, II, *passim*.

6. J. G. Palfrey, *Compendious History of New England*, I-IV.

7. J. Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, I, II.

8. C. F. Adams, *Three Episodes of Massachusetts History*; J. A. Doyle, *The English in America, The Puritan Colonies*.

9. Wm. Barry, *History of Massachusetts*; S. G. Arnold, *History of Rhode Island*; B. Trumbull, *History of Connecticut*; H. Hall, *History of Vermont*; J. Belknap, *History of New Hampshire*; W. D. Williamson, *History of Maine*.

10. S. R. Gardiner, *History of England since the Accession of James I*, III, Ch. xxvi; IV, Ch. xxxvi.

11. A. Young, *Chronicles of the Pilgrim Fathers*, and *Chronicles of Massachusetts*; Davis's edition of Morton's *New England's Memorial*.

12. M. Egleston, *Land Systems of New England*; C. F. Adams and others, *The Genesis of the New England Town System*, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, Second Series, VII; W. F. Allen, *Essays*; W. B. Weedon, *Economic and Social History of New England*.

### 1690-1763. Expulsion of the French.

(For topical references, see §§ 131, 132.)

1. T. W. Higginson, *Larger History*, Ch. vii; W. M. Sloane, *French War and Revolution*, 22-115; R. G. Thwaites, *The Colonies*, 252-257; A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union*, 22-41.

2. J. Winsor, *America*, V, 105-110, 153-156, 406-418, 483-559; F. Parkman, *Conspiracy of Pontiac*, Ch. v.

3. S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, II, 314, 322, 327, 499-526; III, 45, 125, 192-221; B. A. Hinsdale, *Old Northwest*, Ch. v.

4. G. Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), II, 175-185, 305-311, 343, 419-443, 450-565.

5. R. Hildreth, *United States*, II, 182, 193, 258-262, 265, 276, 317, 330-332, 394-400, 433-496.

6. Francis Parkman, *Frontenac and New France*, 208-285, 335-387, *A Half-Century of Conflict*, and *Montcalm and Wolfe*.

7. Wm. Kingsford, *History of Canada*; McMullen, *History of Canada*; D. Hannay, *Acadia*; B. Murdock, *History of Nova Scotia*.



8. P. H. Smith, *Acadia, a Lost Chapter*; E. Richard, *Acadia, Missing Links in a Lost Chapter of American History*.

9. Histories of the New England States, of New York, Pennsylvania, Maryland, and Virginia, and of the States formed from the Territory northwest of the Ohio River, especially Dunn's *Indiana* (see § 23).

### 1760-1783. The American Revolution.

(For topical references, see §§ 133-143.)

1. H. C. Lodge, *English Colonies*, Chs. xxiii-xxv; J. Fiske, *The War of Independence* (Riverside Library for Young People); T. W. Higginson, *Larger History*, Chs. ix-xii.

2. W. M. Sloane, *French War and Revolution*, 116-369; G. W. Greene, *Historical View*, 1-320; A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union*, 42-101; E. Channing, *The United States, 1765-1865*, 1-106.

3. R. Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, 158-558; W. E. H. Lecky, *England in the Eighteenth Century*, III, Ch. xii; IV, Chs. xiv, xv.

4. J. Winsor, *America*, VI, 1-62, 113-172, 275-314, 367-403, 469-507, 563-588, 605-647, 716-753; VII, 1-72, 89-165.

5. J. Fiske, *The American Revolution*, 2 vols.

6. G. Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), III-VI, 86.

7. R. Hildreth, *United States*, III.

8. S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, III, 329-623.

9. William Tudor, *Life of James Otis*; W. V. Wells, *Life of Samuel Adams*; J. T. Morse, Jr., *John Adams*; J. Bigelow, *Benjamin Franklin*; W. W. Henry, *Life of Patrick Henry*; W. Jay, *Life of John Jay*; Randall, *Life of Thomas Jefferson*; H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, I, Chs. v-xi.

10. W. G. Sumner, *Finances and Financier of the Revolution*; W. B. Weedon, *Economic and Social History of New England*; E. J. Lowell, *The Hessians*; G. W. Greene, *German Element*.

11. Mahon, *History of England*, Chs. li-liiii; Adolphus, *History of England*; E. F. De Lancey's edition of Jones, *New York in the Revolutionary War*; Sabine, *The Loyalists*; Ryerson, *The American Loyalists*.

12. B. J. Lossing, *Field-Book of the Revolution*; Dawson, *Battles of the United States*; Carrington, *Battles of the American Revolution*.

**1781-1789. Confederation and Constitution.**

(For topical references, see §§ 149-156.)

1. Joseph Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 218-272; E. Channing, *The United States, 1765-1865*, Ch. iv; Alexander Johnston, *The United States, its History and Constitution*, Ch. v; H. C. Lodge, *Alexander Hamilton*, 1-70; F. A. Walker, *Making of the Nation*, Chs. i-iii.

2. Justin Winsor, *America*, VII, 215-255; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*, I, Ch. i; Albert Bushnell Hart, *Formation of the Union*, §§ 45-68; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, 40-127; Judson S. Landon, *Constitutional History and Government*, Lects. iii, iv; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History of the United States*, IV, Ch. iv.

3. R. Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, 569-610; George Tucker, *History of the United States*, I, 291-383; John T. Morse, Jr., *Benjamin Franklin*, 216-420.

4. R. Hildreth, *History of the United States*, III, 374-546; James Schouler, *History of the United States*, I, 1-70; H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, II, Ch. i.

5. J. B. McMaster, *History of the People of the United States*, I, 103-501.

6. G. T. Curtis, *History of the Constitution*, I, II, and *Constitutional History*, I.

7. George Bancroft, *History of the United States* (last revision), VI, 5-462, and *History of the Constitution*, I, 1-278; II, 1-350.

8. John Fiske, *Critical Period of American History*.

**1789-1801. Organization of the Government.**

(For topical references, see §§ 157-166.)

1. J. S. Landon, *Constitutional History and Government*, 97-135; E. Channing, *The United States, 1765-1865*, Ch. v; H. C. Lodge, *Alexander Hamilton*, 84-284; John T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson*, 96-208.

2. H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*, I, 65-181; Albert Bushnell Hart, *Formation of the Union*, §§ 69-92; H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, II, 47-298.

3. Alexander Johnston, *American Politics*, 18-51; Francis A. Walker, *Making of the Nation*, Chs. iv-viii; John T. Morse, Jr., *John Adams*, 241-324; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, 128-251; T. W. Higginson, *Larger History of the United States*, 309-344; J. A. Stevens, *Albert Gallatin*, 58-175.

4. Edward Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Chs. ii-v; Alexander Johnston, *The United States, its History and Government*, Ch. vi; George Pellew, *John Jay*, 262-339; W. G. Sumner, *Alexander Hamilton*.

5. John Bach McMaster, *History of the People of the United States*, I, 525-593; II, III, 1-145.

6. Richard Hildreth, *History of the United States*, IV, V, 24-418.

7. George Tucker, *History of the United States*, I, 384-627; II, 21-145.

8. James Schouler, *History of the United States*, I, 70-501.

#### 1801-1815. Foreign Complications.

(For topical references, see §§ 167-173.)

1. Henry Adams, *History of the United States*, I, 3-184; II, 1-93; E. Channing, *The United States, 1765-1865*, Ch. vi; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, 252-332.

2. H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*, I, 181-272; John T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson*, 204-320; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, 38-125; Albert Bushnell Hart, *Formation of the Union*, §§ 93-117; Alexander Johnston, *American Politics*, 52-82.

3. S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History of the United States*, IV, 144-242; T. W. Higginson, *Larger History of the United States*, 344-380; John T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, 25-98; Henry Adams, *John Randolph*, 48-248.

4. F. A. Walker, *Making of the Nation*, Chs. ix-xii; Henry Adams, *Life of Albert Gallatin*, Book III.

5. Henry Adams, *History of the United States during the Administrations of Jefferson and Madison* [9 vols.].

6. James Schouler, *History of the United States*, II, 1-444.

7. Richard Hildreth, *History of the United States*, V, 419-686; VI, 25-374.

8. George Tucker, *History of the United States*, II, 146-515; III, 21-145.

#### 1815-1829. Reorganization.

(For topical references, see §§ 174-179.)

1. Alexander Johnston, *American Politics*, 83-101; Edward Channing, *The United States, 1765-1865*, Ch. vii; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, 125-310; D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe*, 125-175; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H.*

*Benton*, 47-68 ; T. W. Higginson, *Larger History of the United States*, 381-430.

2. John T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, 98-220; Albert Bushnell Hart, *Formation of the Union*, §§ 223-262; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*, I, 273-458.

3. S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History of the United States*, IV, 242-291; H. Von Holst, *John C. Calhoun*, 12-83; A. B. Magruder, *John Marshall*, 161-201; H. C. Lodge, *Daniel Webster*, 48-172; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, 26-119.

4. James Schouler, *History of the United States*, II, 444-463; III, 1-450.

5. George Tucker, *History of the United States*, III, 146-515.

6. John Bach McMaster, *History of the People of the United States*, IV [V in preparation in 1895].

#### 1829-1837. Jackson's Administration.

(For topical references, see §§ 180-185.)

1. Woodrow Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, §§ 1-58; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*, II, 1-79, 127-218.

2. Alexander Johnston, *American Politics*, 103-132; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, 136-386.

3. Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, 311-349; II, 11-68, 95-151, 171-197; H. C. Lodge, *Daniel Webster*, Chs. vi-viii; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History of the United States*, IV, Ch. xii.

4. H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*, I, 458-505; II, 80-127, 219-505.

5. Edwin M. Shepard, *Martin Van Buren*, Chs. v-ix; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, 61-156, 184-236.

6. James Schouler, *History of the United States*, III, 451-531; IV, 1-187, 229-273.

7. George Tucker, *History of the United States*, IV, 17-434 [415 pp.].

8. Thomas H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, 121-739; II, 7-110.

#### 1829-1848. Slavery and Texas.

(For topical references, see §§ 186-195.)

1. Alexander Johnston, *American Politics*, Chs. xiii-xvi; H. Von Holst, *John C. Calhoun*, Chs. iv-ix; John T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, 236-308; Edward Channing, *The United States, 1765-1865*, Ch. viii; Comte de Paris, *History of the Civil War in America*, I, 70-89.

2. Woodrow Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, §§ 117-150; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*, I, 302-356; II, 80-146, 219-329; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, 85-160; H. C. Lodge, *Daniel Webster*, Ch. viii.
3. Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, Chs. xii, xiii; II, Chs. xiv-xxv.
4. W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, Chs. vii-xv; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, Chs. xii, xiii; A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, Ch. vii; J. W. Draper, *History of the Civil War*, I, Chs. xx-xxii; James Freeman Clarke, *Anti-Slavery Days*.
5. James Schouler, *History of the United States*, III, Ch. xiii; IV.
6. Thomas H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, Chs. xxxviii to end; II, Chs. i-clxv.
7. H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*, I, Ch. xii; II, Chs. i-vii.
8. Henry Wilson, *Rise and Fall of the Slave Power*, I, Chs. xiii-xlv.
9. Edwin M. Shepard, *Martin Van Buren*, Chs. x, xi; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Chs. ii-iv.

#### 1846-1860. The Slavery Crisis.

(For topical references, see §§ 196-203.)

1. Alexander Johnston, *American Politics*, Chs. xvi-xix; Edward Channing, *The United States, 1765-1865*, Ch. ix; H. Von Holst, *John C. Calhoun*, 283-352; John T. Morse, Jr., *Abraham Lincoln*, I, Chs. iv-vi; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, II, 283-391; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Chs. xiv-xxi; Jefferson Davis, *Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government*, I, Chs. ii-vii.
2. Woodrow Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, §§ 150-213; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*, III, Chs. ix, xvi, xvii; IV, Chs. vi, vii; V, Ch. x; VI, Ch. i; VII, Chs. vii, viii; J. S. Landon, *Constitutional History*, Lect. viii.
3. James Ford Rhodes, *History of the United States since 1850*, I, Chs. ii-v; II, III, Ch. xii.
4. H. C. Lodge, *Daniel Webster*, Chs. ix, x; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, Chs. xiv, xv; A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, 221-334; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History of the United States*, IV, Chs. xv, xvi; T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, II, 693-787.
5. James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Chs. iv-x; J. W. Draper, *History of the Civil War*, I, Chs. xxiii-xxv, xxx.
6. James Schouler, *History of the United States*, V.

7. Henry Wilson, *Rise and Fall of the Slave Power*, II.
8. H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*, VII.

#### 1860-1865. The Civil War.

(For topical references, see §§ 204-214.)

1. Woodrow Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, §§ 213-238; Alexander Johnston in *Lalor's Cyclopædia*, III, 693-701; Edward Channing, *The United States, 1765-1865*, Ch. x; Alexander Johnston, *American Politics*, Ch. xx; Goldwin Smith, *United States*, Ch. v.
2. J. W. Draper, *History of the Civil War in America*, I, 438-567; Henry Wilson, *Rise and Fall of the Slave Power in America*, II, 673-704; III, 1-108.
3. Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, 309-449; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History of the United States*, IV, 435-446; Jefferson Davis, *Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government*, I, 47-85, 199-289.
4. John T. Morse, Jr., *Abraham Lincoln*, I, Chs. vii-xii; II.
5. James F. Rhodes, *History of the United States*, III [IV, in preparation, 1895].
6. John C. Ropes, *Story of the Civil War*, I [II, III, in preparation, 1895].
7. James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Chs. xi-xxvi.
8. J. G. Nicolay and John Hay, *Abraham Lincoln, a History*, III-X.
9. Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Chs. xxii-xxviii; II.
10. J. W. Draper, *American Civil War*, I, Chs. xxvi-xxxiii; II.
11. Jefferson Davis, *Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government*, I, Parts iii, iv; II.
12. Alexander H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II.
13. S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History of the United States*, IV, Chs. xvii-xxiii.

For additional general works on this period in preparation in 1895, see § 56 a.

#### 1865-1895. Restoration.

1. Woodrow Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, §§ 124-148; Edward Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Ch. xxi to end; Alexander Johnston, *American Politics*, Ch. xxi to end; Alex. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, Colloquy xxiv.
2. J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, III, 532-556; Alexander Johnston, *The United States, its History and Constitution*, 214-272; T. M. Cooley,

*Story's Commentaries*, Chs. xlvi-xlviii ; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress* (to 1881).

3. Judson S. Landon, *Constitutional History and Government*, Lect. vii to end ; Moorfield Storey, *Charles Sumner* [in preparation in 1895].

4. Simon Sterne, *Constitutional History and Political Development*, Ch. vi ; T. K. Lothrop, *William H. Seward* ; Albert Bushnell Hart, *Salmon P. Chase*. [Last two in preparation in 1895].

5. Henry Wilson, *Rise and Fall of the Slave Power*, III, Chs. xxxiii-1 (to 1869) ; J. W. Burgess, *History since the Peace of 1815*, II [in preparation in 1895].

6. J. C. Ridpath, *Popular History of the United States*, Chs. lxvii-lxxii (to 1887) ; Wm. H. Barnes, *History of the Thirty-Ninth Congress* [1865-1867].

### § 57. Topical Reading.

In Parts II and III of this work will be found a series of topics covering, in general, the whole field of American history. These may be used in connection with courses of lectures or lessons (§ 7), or in the preparation of written work. The effort is to digest and classify the more valuable part of the immense literature of the subject. As a guide to the reading these topics may be used either before or after set lectures ; if used afterward they will serve to group the material about the lecturer's notes (§ 62). Elaborate systems of notes will naturally be so arranged as to bring the lecturer's material and the material from the topical readings together into one part of the notes.

This system, more than either of the two previously described (§§ 55, 56), makes the student acquainted with a variety of books, and is especially convenient in leading direct to the sources.

### § 58. The Conference System.

The principal obstacle to the establishment of a system of collateral reading, in connection with the proper use of a text-book, is to be found in the difficulty of properly testing such work. Written examinations give little aid here unless all the members of a class read on one narrow field, as in the method described in § 66. Where the supply of books is adequate, and the subject

susceptible of division into suitable topics, this is probably the best method to adopt. When these favorable conditions do not prevail, or when a college teacher feels the need of a better acquaintance with his class, the "conference system" may be employed. This method consists in giving out references to books, or parts of books, at the beginning of each month, or other convenient unit of time. Sometimes all students are required to read in the designated books on one topic, with an option as to other topics; more often, reading on several topics is required; but there is almost always a considerable choice given both as to topics and books. The amount of reading required is stated at so many hundred pages—an amount which the teacher may regard as a reasonable requirement in addition to the study of the text-books, map-making exercises, and work in the class-room. The list of "General Readings" given in § 56 fits in well with this method.

After the students have had a chance to make a substantial beginning in this reading, appointments for conferences are made at only a few hours' notice. At these conferences each student is alone with the instructor or assistant for fifteen minutes,—a period sufficiently long to enable a practised questioner to assess with some degree of accuracy a student's intelligence, power of application, and diligence. There is also time to help the well-meaning though plodding student, or to give an unpleasant five minutes to the lazy or negligent pupil. The instructor may set a student to a certain specified task to be performed within certain hours, and in this way, by special drill, train a well-meaning student to overcome his lack of application or slovenly habits of thinking or reading,—these being the besetting sins of our American youth at the present time. The instructor should keep a careful record of these conferences, to which he can at once turn and refresh his memory as to the needs and shortcomings of successive students at later meetings. The number and frequency of these conferences can be apportioned according to the student's needs; the bright, hard-working pupil requires slight assistance, and may be left to work out his own salvation; and, on the other hand, the young person of dormant mind and no habits of work can be



held rigidly to account. The method requires a good deal of the instructor's time, but not more than a properly conducted system of written work demands; and the personal contact with intelligent, and sometimes aggressive, young persons, is much more invigorating than the perusal of large masses of written examination papers, essays, weekly papers, special reports, etc.

### § 59. How to use Books.

Many persons who have read widely have little notion how to go to work to find a book on a given subject, or how to reach a specific point within a book when found. As has been already suggested in the paragraph on the use of libraries (§ 16), the first thing is to learn how to use catalogues. Some libraries print separate parts for the authors and subjects; others, like the Boston Athenæum and the Cleveland Public Library, have but one alphabet, in which appear both authors and topics. The approved method is to break the general subjects up into small topics, and to distribute these in their alphabetical place, with numerous cross-references.

In noting the title of a book for which search is to be made, the author's full name, if obtainable, should be set down; then a sufficient extract from the title to identify the book; and then it is usual to add the place of publication (sometimes the publisher) and the date. These particulars all add to the probability that the right book and the right edition will be found. Sometimes the necessary particulars are not stated in the catalogues examined; but are obtainable from some other printed catalogue. The title on the outside of the book, — "binder's title," — is not taken into account in bibliographical work.

Having secured the book, the next step is to get at its contents. The titlepage is often so descriptive as to tell at a reading whether anything on the specified topic is to be found within. The preface is, or should be, a guide to the author's purpose and point of view. A good table of contents opens up the work at once; and a single index of persons and subjects, with brief intimations of the particular thing to be found at a particular page, is like punctu-

ality, "the politeness of kings." If contents and index are both defective, there may be no resource but to turn the leaves, and in such a case rapid skimming is advisable.

In making notes upon books and writing down references it should be remembered that there is no other proper form of reference than the name of the author, with the significant part of the titlepage title of the book, volume, and page or section—sometimes chapters. Any briefer labor-saving form will return to plague the user; and general references to back up specific points are more than useless,—they are offensive. A little care taken while the book is in the hands may save time, trouble, and vexation.

If the book is not likely to come into the hands again it is well to take full notes, including any quotations that may be needed. If the book is common, or can be had at any time, it will often serve the investigator's purpose to make skeleton notes with references, to be filled out later. Whenever a quotation is made it should be carefully protected by quotation-marks; it should be literal, so far as it goes, in punctuation, spelling, capitalization, and italicizing; every addition of the note-taker should be included in brackets; and omissions should be denoted by ellipses. Less careful methods may cause a confusion of original and quoted matter, or may result in misrepresentation.

### § 60. Talks by Teachers.

In school work the lesson must be directed, enlarged, and enforced by the teacher. Here his superior knowledge and ability to group material, and his power of clear statement, may come in to supplement the text-books. If recitations are to be more than repetition, however (§ 39), the teacher's part must not be a mere "pour in" of additional facts. To the old difficulty that teachers talked too little to their pupils in history, may succeed an over amount of talk, in which the whole matter is arranged and subdivided so that the pupil has nothing to do but to open his mouth and swallow the lumps of wisdom. Talk must not take the place of quick, sharp question and answer, or of the thought-provoking

inquiry as to the causes and effects of the events passing under review.

The teacher may often describe places or scenes to which there is allusion in the text, may bring in parallels from other fields of history, may add the illustrations and incidents which give life to the story and cause it to be remembered. He should not often take up the whole time with information or comment. The object of the teacher is always to teach pupils to think about what they read or hear, rather than to force upon them the passive reception of historical matter. In general, lecture methods are out of place in lower grades, and admissible rarely in secondary schools. The "talk" should be occasional, pointed, and a clear addition to other available material.

### § 61. Formal Lectures.

In college work the lecture has an important place, though always in connection with reading and written work. In many historical fields the material is little organized, and good general books are few. In such cases—especially in advanced courses—a set of carefully prepared lectures may be the only means of clearing up the subject. The reading in such cases is intended to fill out the details, and to complete the view of important phases—though even here a good general book serves to keep the connection of the parts of the subject in mind.

Where there is already a body of available literature on a subject, the lecturer hesitates to repeat the outline facts which appear in common books; he likes to throw upon his hearers the responsibility of reading the narrative for themselves; the lectures then serve to bring out the principles, to show the relation between the parts of the subject, to point out causes and effects, and to elucidate motives. So far as the lectures are thrown into a connected narrative form, it will be to illustrate the course of the history, and to correlate the different books.

In the lectures, also, it is possible to use more freedom than in printed work,—to bring in the little incidents which are typical of character or manners, to accentuate evidence on a disputed point.

For instance, in lecturing on the Confederation of 1781, the lecturer may rearrange the narrative into the principal topics, — such as the formation of the Articles, finances, commerce, foreign relations, and internal difficulties; he may select the attitude of the state in which he lives as typical; he may quote passages from the two Websters, Hamilton, Madison, and Washington, to bring out the discontent of American statesmen with their own system. Short, vigorous quotations add life and point to a lecture; but long quotations should be avoided, as they destroy the confidence of a student in the lecturer — unless they are from original documents, and these should be read by the student.

Care should be taken not to talk over the heads of students, and also not to talk to them as children, unacquainted with the ordinary course of American history. Too much pains cannot be taken to bring out the essential things in a period, and to suggest the underlying conditions of the life of the people, which are the basis of history.

### § 62. Note-Taking.

Lectures of value are always so far different from the books on the same subject that the student needs to take notes. The practice trains the mind to grasp principles and to condense them into brief statement. A good note-book cements the parts of the course together, and may be useful to the student in later study, or in his own teaching. The note-book should further be so conducted as to leave space for the entry of brief abstracts from the reading. The following suggestions may prove helpful to students and to teachers who wish to put their material together in a permanent and convenient form.

1. Have a regular SYSTEM.
2. If you have worked out a system of YOUR OWN which satisfies you, do not change it.
3. SHORTHAND is not a great convenience, unless the notes are afterwards put into a form which may be read by any one.
4. A system of recognizable ABBREVIATIONS is desirable.
5. Take notes ALL THE TIME during the lecture.

6. A word-for-word reproduction of what you hear is much less valuable to you than your own CONDENSED FORM, embodying the lecturer's ideas.

7. Distinguish in your own mind the HEADS OF THE LECTURE, as it proceeds, and paragraph your notes accordingly.

8. Aim to set down the SUBSTANCE OF GENERAL STATEMENTS, in your own words, rather than to note a part of each sentence.

9. Practice getting the EXACT WORDS of significant phrases or quotations.

10. If you miss something important, ASK TO HAVE IT REPEATED.

11. If you lose a lecture, FILL UP THE BLANK immediately, from the note-book of a fellow-student.

12. After each lecture, go over your notes, and clearly INDICATE THE HEADS: (*a*) by catch-words in the margin; or (*b*) by underlining words.

13. Once a week REVIEW the notes taken since the previous review.

14. Make out a brief TABLE OF CONTENTS, as you go along, referring to pages of your note-book.

Every student should devise for himself a system of note-taking, and having once devised a satisfactory method, he should adhere to it at all hazards. The one thing which will seriously impair the usefulness of any system, how good soever it may be in other respects, is the use of a note-book with fixed leaves. Separate sheets or pieces of paper are indispensable, and only one topic should be noted on one piece of paper. The main desiderata of a good system of note-taking are, that it should be (1) self-indexing, (2) portable, (3) always available: doubtless no system fills all these requirements. Following are three methods employed by at least three well-known and successful students of American history.

I. 1. Use a note-book, or better, loose sheets of note paper ruled in three vertical columns: a narrow one next to the outer edge; about one-half of the width in a middle column; about one-third in an inner column. Let there be a broad horizontal line an inch or more from the top.

2. Enter your notes in the middle column ; dates and headings (if desired) in the outer column.

3. Do not rewrite the notes taken in class.

4. Enter abstracts or quotations from your later readings in the inner column, each opposite the passage in the notes which it is meant to illustrate.

5. Across the top of the page write a running heading in two, three, or four members, summarizing the matter on the page ; *e.g.*, "Methods : — Lectures : — Note-Taking."

6. Begin to write on the right side of the open book and begin each distinct general head on a new leaf.

7. Each leaf being thus complete in itself may at any time be detached and used in another connection ; or others may be interleaved, without disturbing the logical connection.

8. Copy or reproduce tables, diagrams, or maps before the succeeding lecture.

II. 1. Use loose sheets of paper  $3\frac{1}{2} \times 4\frac{1}{2}$  inches.

2. Write on only one side of each sheet.

3. Do not rewrite notes once taken.

4. Attach abstracts or quotations from your later reading to your first piece of paper on that topic with one of the many convenient fasteners made for the purpose, or with a common pin.

5. Across the top of the first page write a running heading.

6. Begin to write near the upper left-hand corner of the sheet.

7. Each leaf or collection of leaves, being thus complete in itself, may at any time be taken from its original place and used in another connection ; or other leaves may be introduced without disturbing the arrangement.

These pieces of paper and collections of sheets can be stood on their lower edges either in boxes or held together by rubber bands. The notes on a large number of books and on many topics occupy little space and are easily arranged and rearranged.

III. 1. Take the first piece of paper that comes to hand.

2. Make such notes on it as one desires.

3. Have some recognized mode of arrangement, — chronologically by countries or divisions of countries ; or follow the arrange-

ment of some familiar and well-indexed book, which will thus serve as a key.

4. Arrange your notes once a week, according to this system, in large-paper envelopes or portfolios and stand them in boxes.

This method requires no special kind of paper, indexes itself, is not cumbersome, and is cheap. Its efficiency depends, however, on the skill with which the classification is made and the persistency with which it is adhered to. Whenever material can be arranged chronologically by topics this system has been found to work well. It may be added that two of the largest works on American history have been prepared on this scheme.

### § 63. Use of Notes.

A good set of notes should thus be a sort of elaborated syllabus of the course; and if it include abstracts and quotations from collateral books, it will serve always to recall to the student's mind what he has once heard, read, and pondered. But no self-respecting instructor allows the notes of his lectures alone to be sufficient to prepare for examinations, or to become in any way the sole test of diligence and knowledge. No instructor can afford to let his own words go out as the only or final utterance on a question; comparison of views and a filling out of details must be exacted by the required reading (§ 56) and written work (§§ 65-73).

### § 64. Giving out References.

To aid the reading it is a common and useful practice during the lectures to give out references, more or less specific, to the best literature on the topic under discussion. Some lecturers mention books in the course of the lecture; others put the references on the blackboard; others prepare them in cyclostyle or other multiplying process, and distribute them; others arrange them in print, and require the students to provide themselves with sets; others use some published topical outline. There is something to be said for and against each of these systems. On the one hand, too rigid an adherence to a printed outline interferes with a lecturer's

proper relations and influence with his class ; on the other hand, the copying of long lists of books from the lecturer or the black-board sacrifices valuable time and oftentimes interferes with the attention of the class. Perhaps the best method is for the students to have a printed set of references at their desks to which the lecturer may refer, — stating the strong points of this author or the weak points of that writer, giving the biographical and other details which show how far an author had had exceptional opportunities to know the truth, either as a contemporaneous actor in the scenes described or through access to material since destroyed or not used by any other writer. Information of this kind adds life to a list of books and often arouses attention which might otherwise remain dormant. The lecturer should especially point out such authors as disagree with his positions, and should encourage the reading of books written from a point of view other than his own.

In whatever way the system is carried out, the references should be unmistakable, — that is, author and title should be so clearly indicated that no confusion can arise. If a part of the references are specific, to volume and pages, much more reading will be done. The indispensable habit of searching among books for a point of view to one's mind, the useful dipping into books, the acquaintance with many authors, — these advantages may be gained from the various forms of written work which will now be described.



## VII. WRITTEN WORK.

### § 65. Written Reviews.

NEITHER the acquirement of facts nor the discussion of their relations is all that is required in teaching history; there must be some reaction by the pupils' minds, and written work has the advantage of training both the historical and the literary sense. The simplest form of such work is to call for a written review, without previous announcement. Each pupil is thus tested, and has the opportunity to think over what he has studied. A list of very short questions will bring out the knowledge of detail; but a better system is to set two or three general questions, from which the child may choose, and to expect him in his answer to show that he can use intelligently what has gone before.

Another variety of the exercises is to give the pupil his textbook, and to ask him from it to work out an answer to a question relating both to past and future work. Thus, when the War of 1812 is reached, pupils might be asked to state briefly all the difficulties and quarrels with Great Britain. Or, at the end of the Revolutionary War they might be asked to describe how far Washington's previous training was useful to him in later life. Any system is good if it really require a child to combine in new relations what he has learned in various ways and at various times.

### § 66. Brief Written Recitations.

Examinations will be considered below (§ 75). They stimulate the memory and may be employed so as to train the judgment. It is desirable, however, to devise some regular written exercise which will lay more stress on judgment and connection of events, and less on detached facts; and which will not call for any other preparation than that of regular daily work. Such exercises should preclude cram, and fit into the ordinary class-hours, whether recitations or lectures. Nothing better has been devised than the

system of brief written answers to one or two questions especially chosen to test the judgment.

Suitable questions ought to be on some novel phase of a general subject with which the pupil is familiar. For example, after studying the Revolutionary War, pupils might be asked to explain why none of the conciliation schemes proposed by the British were adopted; after going through Jackson's administration, a suitable question would be what there was admirable in Jackson's character. In many cases a child's reasoning would be imperfect and his results crude; but one cannot begin too early to expect some thought and comparison. Children form judgments about the people among whom they live, and bring to bear upon the process their own standards of human character. They may easily be taught that history is a record of people who lived and thought very much as we do now.

In high schools the questions may take a broader range, adapted to the age of the pupils. For instance, after a study of the period from 1829 to 1861, they may be asked to select the president, or the statesman, or the general, whom they most admire, and to give reasons for their preference.

The system is especially applicable to college classes, and may be used to deduce constitutional principles. In some such classes there is a regular weekly exercise of this kind, the "paper" being always on some subject in constitutional practice which has been of importance in the previous week's work. With large classes it is desirable to give out a special reading-list in advance, such as may be found among the topics in Parts II and III. Here is an example of a set of such questions which has been actually used by a class; the division into questions for "odd and even record numbers" is intended to prevent two students who sit side by side from having the same topic; the alternation is intended simply to avoid any danger of catching a student on some particular topic which he feels incompetent to discuss — to allow a choice. The class had before this "paper" been studying the arguments of Hamilton and Jefferson upon the First National Bank of 1791.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This system is described in detail in Albert Bushnell Hart, *Revised Suggestions on the Study of the History and Government of the United States*, §§ 35-70.

## IMPLIED POWERS.

*Odd Record Numbers.* [Take either 1 or 2.]

1. May Congress constitutionally charter a life insurance company?
  2. May Congress constitutionally vote money for aid to sufferers from forest fires?
- 

*Even Record Numbers.* [Take either 3 or 4.]

3. May Congress constitutionally grant money in support of state schools?
4. May Congress constitutionally vote pensions to former government clerks?

### § 67. The Topical System.

Perhaps the most fruitful method for pupils of the grammar-school age, and above, is the "topical,"—the assignment of very limited subjects on which pupils are to prepare themselves with especial care, using a variety of material. The advantages of such a system are obvious: it breaks up the servile adherence to the limited text of a single book; it trains in the use of books, and in the selection of pertinent facts out of a mass of material, it gives practice in bibliographical work, by the search for books and articles which bear on the subject in hand; it leads to the comparison of authors, the explanation of discrepancies, the weighing of authorities; it adds life and interest to the class work. The dangers of the system are simple, and it is easy to guard against them. Taken alone the method would lead to scrappy knowledge of detached episodes, but of course the good teacher will insist that every pupil go over the whole ground in one or two text-books. It might lead to an impression that it is so easy a matter to write a history, that anybody can do it; but skillful teaching will easily make the pupil understand that to go to the bottom of every question which an historian treats is the labor of years; that the selection from the material grows more difficult as the material accumulates; and that only a mind furnished with a

great knowledge of the collateral history, and able to judge from imperfect and conflicting evidence, can produce something worthy of permanent form.

The methods of topical work are described in many places. It requires a library, however small; it needs careful supervision from the teacher; pupils must be warned against mere copying of extracts, or stringing together of paraphrases, and taught to analyze their subjects for themselves, and to arrange their results in systematic form. It is well to assign separate subjects for each pupil: this prevents collusion, and gives each a sense of the importance of his study. Every piece of work ought to include some reference to sources, if only to a volume of extracts. Such collections as Larned's *History for Ready Reference* include many extracts from originals; and in the various *Leaflets* are available reprints. The system is in essence like laboratory methods in botany and physics; and, like such methods, needs to be accompanied by systematic teaching. The flavor of those sources behind which human knowledge does not go, is invigorating and prolific of thought.

### § 68. Subjects for Topics.

The success of any scheme of topical study is dependent on a judicious choice of subjects: they must not be too long; they must require substantial work; they must be assigned with due reference to the available material; they must be capable of solution, for it discourages a pupil to find nothing on his subject, however much training he may get from his search.

The first and simplest kind of topical work, where there is a good library, is the bibliographical, the collection of a body of references on some subject. This gives invaluable training in the use of indexes, tables of contents, library catalogues, special indexes to periodicals or classes of literature; of cyclopædias, biographical dictionaries, and the like aids. It also fixes the habit of selecting out of a book the small portion which really bears on the subject in hand. The best subjects for such work are biographies of great men, for catalogues usually take more

account of names than of matters. For instance, in studying the early history of Massachusetts or Pennsylvania, a list of books, articles, and references on John Winthrop and William Penn would be easily obtained and valuable. For large classes it is hard to get a sufficient number of prominent men, but much may be done with the second-rate characters who have at least a reference here and there, men like John Cotton, Lord Berkeley, or Clayborne.

Another excellent group of subjects is the geographical: the territorial history of a place, such as Philadelphia, or Vincennes, or St. Paul, or Mount Desert; or a map of a colony or region or state, or group of colonies or states, at any given period. Political data may also be worked out in graphic maps; such would be the distribution of votes on some question in Congress; the distribution of electoral votes; the distribution of members of Congress by parties; states having and not having prohibitory laws or woman suffrage or Australian ballot laws.

Very useful subjects, especially in the lower grades, are little biographies of public men. Such work may be done with a very few books, if no more are available, and may often have a romantic human interest. In this work children might be taught to see how one author copies from another, and thus how errors are propagated. They might also learn to distrust a Weems or an Abbott as historical authorities.

The more complete form of topical work in schools will usually be the study of episodes in history. Here the pupil must always be held down to a search for the truth, as developed by comparing conflicting accounts; and at the same time he must learn to state his results clearly, methodically, and so as to bring out the important points.

For more advanced students, a variety of subjects may be found,—such as constitutional discussions; accounts of assemblages, like the Stamp Act Congress, or the conferences at Ghent in 1814; phases of social institutions, such as the Puritan Church or the early colleges, or slavery in any one of the American colonies or of the later states of the Union. The statistics of finance, commerce, and population may be worked out in tables.

Biography may be studied by tracing the attitude of some public man on a great question throughout his life, as Madison's opinion on the tariff, or Webster's on slavery.

Throughout, the wise teacher will try to connect the topics with what may be presumed to be the interest of a particular pupil,—his local history, his family or his birthplace: a Delaware student on Swedish colonization; a Dickinson on John Dickinson; a Winslow on Plymouth.

### § 69. Composition in Historical Subjects.

Written work is not only a training in history, it may be so used as to build up a good English style. Teachers are often hard put to it to find suitable subjects for compositions on fresh topics, in fields where there is material available for something more than a rude statement of fleeting ideas. From many of the groups of subjects suggested for topical work (§ 68) may be chosen excellent composition subjects; and a requirement that the returns shall be made in good English, and shall be criticised for the style, will make the same paper serve the double purpose of historical training and training in English.

Biography lends itself readily to such treatment, provided the pupil understands that they are not to give simply a bald statement of the events of a man's life,—that they must suggest what there was about him which made him unlike other men of whom they know something, or at least what he did that was memorable.

On the striking events of history it is always possible to write something pointed. Such an episode as the expulsion of Roger Williams, or the settlement of Georgia, or the Stamp Act Congress, or the establishment of the Southern Confederacy in 1861, may be worked up even by young pupils, if they have some variety of materials; and it will furnish an agreeable relief from the ordinary hackneyed subjects. Here is also an opportunity to consider the ethical side of history,—human motive and effect,—Cotton Mather's relation with the witchcraft delusion; the American loyalists; or Webster's Seventh of March speech. One cannot expect long discussions on such topics, or elaborate character analysis;

but even children may apply to historical characters the same standards as those which they habitually apply to people whom they know.

In setting questions, care should always be taken not to put them too high for children to reach, always to direct them to some point, and to be satisfied with moderate evidence of a power to rearrange the results and to state them in an original form. In many schools the teacher of history is also the teacher of composition, and can make the two subjects run parallel.

**§ 70. The "Special Report" System.**

Some account of topical work, drawn from experience, may be useful to other teachers. In the course on United States History at Harvard University each student works out four topics (if the set is not satisfactory, also a fifth). These are assigned about six weeks before they are due, on a blank of which the following is the heading.

---

**U. S. HISTORY (13): — SPECIAL REPORT No. ....; — 1894-95.**

Mr. .... Class ..... Record No. ....

**SUBJECT:** .....

**Overdue Reports received only through the Recorder.**

|   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <i>Important references are:</i>          | <i>Please investigate the above subject according to the directions in the Revised Suggestions, §§ ..... and report in not more than ..... pages, before .....</i> |  |
|   | <i>First Conference,.....</i>  | <i>Time spent in preparation,.....</i> |
|   | <i>Second Conference,.....</i>   | <i>Grade,.....</i>                     |
|   | <i>Approved,.....</i>  | <i>Explanations or remarks,.....</i>   |
|   | .....  | .....                                  |
| <i>Exact references in inside column.</i> | <i>Text of the report in middle column (on all pages).</i>   | <i>Dates in outside column.</i>        |

The uniform blanks are a convenient means of giving out the subjects in written and unmistakable form; the more important books may be indicated on the slips, if the teacher so choose; they serve also as a record of the progress of each student, inasmuch as he is obliged to present himself to the person in charge of the work at least three times, and to explain what he is doing; and they make it easier to handle and record the results. Furthermore, it is of great importance to teach pupils to state their results systematically, to arrange them well, and to make returns in a form prescribed by other people. It is the process of the drawer of briefs or abstracts of title or official reports. Another vital lesson which may best be taught in topical work is that specific references must accompany every important statement: author, brief title (from inspection of the titlepage), volume, and page or section.

The material for these "reports" is arranged in select libraries, containing secondary books and treatises; in sets of Colonial records; and in a set of United States Documents, Statutes, and Supreme Court Decisions, Congressional Records and the like. Students are expected to work for themselves, referring to the person in charge of the work when they can get no further, or to assure themselves that they are on the right track.

The attempt is made to connect each man's subject with his own family or local history and interests: to a student from New Orleans, studies of Louisiana history or of some phase of slavery; to the son of a railroad president, investigations into the Interstate Commerce Act, or the history of the first railroad. In order to get at the data for such assignment, on entering the class each student is called upon to fill out one of the descriptive blanks of which a reduced copy appears below:

---

TO BE FILLED OUT BY THE STUDENT.

1. *Name in full*: ..... *Class*: .....
2. *Birthplace*: .....
3. *Home address*: .....
4. *Father's profession*: .....



5. *College address:*.....
  6. *Name and address of your adviser (if you are a Freshman or Special Student):*  
.....
  7. *Where prepared for college:* .....
  8. *Colleges in which you studied before entering Harvard:* .....
  9. *Degrees held, if any:* .....
  10. *For what profession or business are you preparing:* .....
  11. *Languages (besides English) which you can read without serious difficulty:*.....  
.....
  12. *Do you expect to count this course towards a degree?* .....
  13. *Are you a candidate for honors, second year or final?*.....
  14. *Mention any persons, places, or subjects relating to the History of the United States, upon which you would like to have special reports assigned.*  
    - (a) *Persons (especially public men connected with your own family, neighborhood, or state).* .....
    - (b) *States, towns, or cities.*.....
    - (c) *Acts of Congress or lines of legislation.* .....
    - (d) *Constitutional questions.* .....
    - (e) *Slavery questions.* .....
  15. *Enumerate all historical and other courses taken in college, including those of the present year:* .....
- 

The first report called for in United States History is the bibliography of a public man eminent in colonial or later history. Here is the Pennsylvania list, from which selections are first made for Pennsylvania students, and afterwards for any other students not otherwise assigned.

PENNSYLVANIA. James Buchanan, Simon Cameron, Andrew G. Curtin, Alexander J. Dallas, George M. Dallas, William G. Duane, Robert Fulton, Albert Gallatin, Stephen Girard, Andrew Gregg, David McM. Gregg, Robert C. Grier, Jared Ingersoll, Thomas McKean, George G. Meade, Thomas Mifflin, Robert Morris, Frederick A. Muhlenberg, Henry A. Muhlenberg, John P. G. Muhlenberg, David D. Porter, David R. Porter, James M. Porter, Samuel J. Randall, Benjamin Rush, John Sergeant, Arthur St. Clair, Edwin M. Stanton, Thaddeus Stevens, David Wilmot, James Wilson, William Wilkins.

The second report is a history of an Act of Congress, drawn from the records, with a brief summary of the arguments on each

side and of the provisions of the statute. Here is one group of the subjects :

IMMIGRATION ACTS. Contract labor act, 1867 ; Chinese indemnity act, 1867 ; alien labor act, 1891 ; Chinese immigration act, 1884 ; contract labor act, 1887 ; Chinese indemnity act, 1887 ; Chinese exclusion act, 1888 ; Chinese registration act, 1891 ; Chinese immigration act, 1892.

The third report calls for a careful study of some very limited constitutional subject, making use of the treatises and special works on the subject, of the decisions of the Supreme Court, and of the practice of the government. A group of such subjects relating to the judiciary is given below :

May Congress create a judgeship with a limited term ?

May Congress constitutionally abolish a judgeship without pensioning the incumbent ?

May a President be impeached for incompetency ?

Can Senators of the United States be impeached ?

Does resignation remove an official from liability to impeachment ?

Is impeachment a judicial process ?

May an executive official be required by a court to perform an act forbidden by the President ?

Is a decision of the Supreme Court binding on Congress ?

Is a decision of the Supreme Court binding on the President ?

Is there a remedy for an unconstitutional decision of the Supreme Court ?

Is there any limitation on the President's power of pardon ?

May Congress by law relieve from penalties already incurred ?

The fourth report is upon some phase of the slavery question, such as abolition societies, meetings and mobs, slave life, fugitive cases, sale of slaves, and the like. Here is one set of examples :

SALE. Slaves buying their own freedom ; slaves purchased to set free ; sale of slaves ; advertisements, private sale ; sales at auction ; separation of families ; usual market value ; very high prices.

The fifth report is statistical, and requires the use of the Congressional Documents and other official publications. The kind of subjects is indicated by the annexed extract :

RECEIPTS OF THE UNITED STATES FROM THE TARIFF: on lumber; crockery and china; silks; works of art; books; hemp and flax; provisions; sugar; tea and coffee; salt; fish; eggs; woolen goods; glass; pig iron; wrought iron; iron and steel; hardware; cotton goods; lead ore; carpet wools; carpets; copper; cutlery; ready-made clothing; worsteds; scientific and optical instruments; quinine; manufactures of leather; fire arms.

Another group of reports may be a series of statements of the utterances and opinions of some public man (usually the same as the subject of the first report prepared by the student) on a public question. For instance:

The attitude of James G. Blaine on the tariff; of John C. Calhoun on public lands; of Martin Van Buren on the civil service.

Having finished this series of reports, students are expected to be at any time ready to find materials on any subject in United States history, to use the government publications, to state results clearly and methodically, and to apply constitutional principles to new problems.

These specific methods apply to advanced students, but they are of a kind suitable for secondary and lower schools. Exactness in stating the subject; care in supervising; aid where the pupil needs it; exhaustion of the material available; care; accuracy; neat form in arranging the results; punctuality in handing in the work, — these are the essentials of such work anywhere, and are attainable in all grades.

### § 71. The Essay or Thesis System.

In this system, which is used in the course in Colonial History at Harvard University, the attempt is made to combine training in historical methods of investigation with practice in writing English. Four essays are required from each student — two in the first and two in the second half-year. Frequently a student is permitted to continue a research which has taken him far into the sources, and to count it for two essays. The practice is not encouraged, however, as it is believed to be better for the beginner to become

acquainted with the sources and modes of work on four different lines of research than it is for him to specialize at the outset within so limited a subject as American History. Such specialization belongs to the seminary rather than to practice in the use of historical materials.

At the beginning of the year each student fills out a blank, which is given herewith in a greatly reduced form:

## HISTORY 10.

---

|                   |  |
|-------------------|--|
| Name and class :  | any of the original thirteen states,     |
| College address : | ( <i>b</i> ) with the Revolutionary War? |
| Home address :    | (Give his name in full.)                 |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Have you ever studied COLONIAL History? | Is there any topic connected with this course you would like to look up? (State the topic.) |
|---|---|

|  |   |
|--|---|
| To what extent? (Give name of textbook and a rough estimate of time occupied.) | What profession or business do you expect to enter? |
|--|---|

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Have you ever done any "Outside" reading on this subject? If yes — give the title of the books read. | How can you connect this work with your other college work? |
|--|---|

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Was any ancestor of yours connected ( <i>a</i> ) with the settlement or history of | Add any information you think would be useful in arranging your topics. |
|--|---|

---

### ESSAY 1.

Subject :  
References :  
Notes :  
Essay :

### ESSAY 2.

Subject :  
References :  
Notes :  
Essay :

## ESSAY 3.

Subject :  
References :  
Notes :  
Essay :

## ESSAY 4.

Subject :  
References :  
Notes :  
Essay :

---

First Hour Examination :

Second Hour Examination :

Third Hour Examination :

Mid-Year Examination :

Mid-Year Mark :

Final Examination :

Mark for year :

The instructor learns from the answers to these questions as to a student's surroundings and family history, and is thus enabled to assign as the subject for the First Essay some topic that will at once awaken the student's interest. At first sight it might seem to be a matter of considerable difficulty to find suitable subjects for one hundred and fifty or two hundred students. As a matter of fact it has not been difficult, as the answers of the students suggest topics. Thus a descendant of John Alden is naturally interested in investigating the story of the landing of the Pilgrims, or the authenticity of portions of Longfellow's *Miles Standish*. A descendant of Clayborne finds the early history of Kent Island interesting, and a South Carolinian will give a good deal of time and effort to the endeavor to discover a time when South Carolina was a free, independent, and sovereign state. An inhabitant of Ohio is always interested in mound-builders, and never tires of examining the claims of Virginia to lands northwest of the Ohio river; the Chicago student feels a keen interest in the first exploration of the southern end of Lake Michigan; the Pennsylvania German finds intercolonial migration an attractive theme; the Irishman derives a good deal of instruction from a study of the Roman Catholics in New York, Virginia, or Maryland in colonial times; the Baptist is interested in Roger Williams, the Quaker in William Penn, and the grandson of an abolitionist leader gains instruction from a study of the problem of why was negro slavery introduced into Georgia?

The subject of the Second Essay is taken from a different part of the country from that studied in preparing the First Essay. Thus the Virginian, who has studied Virginia for his first topic, learns something at first hand from the annals of Plymouth, January to June, 1621; the Bostonian finds the separation of Church and State in Virginia a useful inquiry; the Chicago student does well to study the causes of New York's commercial prosperity in 1760; and the South Carolinian finds the history of the New England Confederation, 1644-47, inspiring.

The Third Essay has to do with some constitutional topic, as for example: Was Otis's argument against the Writs of Assistance legally sound? Was the Stamp Act constitutional? What man, or body of men, exercised sovereign power in or over the thirteen colonies or states on January 1, 1777 (or any other convenient date)? When did the English colonies cease to be colonies? What was the constitutional status of a state at a particular time, as Virginia on June 15, 1776, or Vermont on January 1, 1780, etc.? Trace the history of the executive power in Massachusetts, 1630-40, or 1775-80; the origin of constitutional conventions; the formation of the first constitution of some state, as South Carolina; jury trials in Massachusetts, 1630-1700; the duties of a constable in Virginia in 1740, etc.

The subject of the Fourth Essay is drawn from the career of some historic personage, generally of the Revolutionary era; but in the case of a student who has already devoted a good deal of time to that period, the topic is selected from an earlier time. The following are a few subjects by way of example: Washington's preparation for war; Patrick Henry as a lawyer; Hutchinson's charges against Samuel Adams; Benedict Arnold's services to America; the military career of Count Rumford; Franklin as a scientific man; Jefferson as an educator; why should Pulaski have a monument at Savannah? These are a few topics selected at random from many hundreds. There are innumerable topics suited to different classes of students, as, for instance, the intending lawyer will do well to look up the subject of appeals from colonial courts to the Privy Council, the trial of Zenger, or procedure in the case of Anne Hutchinson; the student interested in

economics finds the Massachusetts Land Bank, Communism at Plymouth, or the attempt to regulate wages in Massachusetts, stimulating. The conflicting evidence to be found in the reports of Revolutionary commanders furnishes many valuable subjects, as the construction of a map showing Greene's retreat across the Carolinas, marking the position of the different portions of the American and British armies each day; the advance of the British army to the Battle of Long Island; the tactics of the Battle of Brandywine, etc. Oftentimes it is well to give a student a topic that will take him away from his ordinary work. In this way a person whose ambition was to write a novel found the determination of the rights and duties of a freeman in Massachusetts in 1650 a useful exercise; and a student whose ambition was to excel in experimental chemistry found a narrative of George Rogers Clarke's Vincennes Expedition from the sources an interesting incursion into fields quite alien to his ordinary occupation.

These essays are written under the immediate supervision of an assistant, who has stated hours for conference in the library. The class is divided into sections, for essay purposes, of about twenty students each. The subjects for one section are given out at one time, and the work of all the students in any one section is due at the dates specified in advance, as follows: References, one week from the day the subject is given out; Notes, two weeks later; and the Essay in its final form one week after the notes are approved, or about four weeks from the day the subjects are assigned. The references are to be found by going to a section in this *Guide*, Part II. Frequently the books noted in the "Sources" under the section will be sufficient, but it more often happens that the student will be obliged to consult other parts of the *Guide* and the bibliographies mentioned in the section referred to. Enough information is given in the *Guide* to start an intelligent student well on his way. He is expected to look over the books and to tell the assistant which works he intends to use. The assistant endeavors to impress on him the necessity of consulting the original source in each case. The books mentioned under "General" in the section referred to usually contain enough information to enable one to understand the relations of his topic. Sometimes it is necessary

to consult the references under "Special," and sometimes the assistant or the instructor is obliged to explain what is desired, and not infrequently to change the subject by limiting the inquiry to some specific part of the general topic assigned; or, on the other hand, to enlarge its scope on account of lack of materials. These preliminaries being arranged to the satisfaction of the assistant and the student, the authorities are next examined, extracts, abstracts, and digests prepared, and submitted to the assistant for his approval. He frequently suggests other sources to be looked into, and sometimes requires the work to be done anew in whole or in part. The students receive credit for this work of seeking and note-taking, the assistant bearing in mind how much aid has been given to the student. The Essay is now written in the student's own words, and based entirely on the *Notes*, which form an appendix, and are cited in footnotes to the Essay to justify every important statement made. These processes are precisely those on which every historical work must be built. The writing of these essays sharpens the faculties, arouses the student's interest, cultivates his judgment, and shows him how history is written. This system has been in successful operation for several years.

### § 72. Monographs.

The highest and most difficult kind of written work for students in history is the preparation of monographs, — of complete studies of some subject, with the use of all the material in print which bears upon it, and of manuscripts, if necessary. This is work to be done only in seminary courses, under the careful guidance of instructors who are specialists in their field.

Two kinds of subjects are usual in such work: an extensive study of some brief episode, or a tracing of some line of investigation through a long period of history. Of the first type a history of the Thirteenth Amendment is an example; of the second type, the veto power of the President of the United States. The former would resemble a chapter out of a large book; the latter cuts a cross-section through a long succession of events; hence,



the second type is probably the most helpful to a person who is still a student.

The first step in either case is to clear the ground by making up a bibliography of the subject, including all sources and all valuable secondary authorities ; the periodical indexes should also be examined for contributions to or discussions on the subject. At the same time some general account, or accounts, should be read, in order to give some idea of the proportions and relations of the parts of the subject.

Next comes the collection of material, a long and laborious process, if the subject be — as it ought to be — important and not already worked out. Notes should be taken on loose sheets, only on one side, and with exact references as one goes along. A saving of paper means, sooner or later, a disproportionate loss of time. At this stage is the opportunity to compare, weigh, and offset evidence. (See §§ 62, 63.)

Later on the work must be put into careful written form ; well-prepared notes, arranged by topics, will now reward the investigator. The subject must be carefully subdivided and analyzed ; material must fall into its proper place, and must be properly subordinated. Exact references to precise footnotes, containing extracts from rare material, must appear at every step. It is an excellent practice to enrich the text as it is written with quotations from sources, or with occasional characteristic passages out of secondary authorities.

It is well to append the text of rare and important documents, exactly transcribed, and to throw into tabular or other form, such facts as cannot easily appear in the body of the work. If printed, an index is an indispensable part of the work.

American history is a convenient field for this kind of study, because materials are abundant, because there are many important and unworked subjects, and because the history of the United States must eventually be rewritten on the basis of carefully prepared studies of limited scope.

**§ 73. Subjects for Monographs.**

As an illustration of the kind of topics which in actual practice have proved interesting and worth studying may be mentioned some subjects which have been investigated in the Seminary of American History and Institutions in Harvard University: Aboriginal Man in America; Explorations of Coronado; Authority exercised by the Bishop of London in the Colonies; Origin of the Free Public-School System; various topics having to do with the general subject of the New England Town System; Development of Municipal Government in Massachusetts, New York, and other States; Slavery in New York; The Franchise in the Colonies and in the United States; The Colonial Governor, Colonial Tariffs; Colonial Immigration; Separation of Church and State; Taxation, Slavery, Education, Religion, Poor-Law Systems, Punishment of Crimes in the Colonies in 1760; North Carolina, Pennsylvania, etc., in 1775; Constitutional History of a State; The Townshend Acts; Revolutionary Embargoes; The "Old Congress"; Shays's Rebellion; Interstate Conflicts, 1783-89; Financial History of Massachusetts, 1780-87; Opposition to the Ratification of the Constitution; Interpretation of the Ordinance of 1787; Organization of the Treasury Department; History of the Constitution of New York; Status of a Citizen of the United States; Jefferson's Use of the Executive Patronage; Historical Development of the Theory of Secession; Federal Relations of a State; Anti-slavery Movements in the Northwest; Proposed Amendments to the Constitution of the United States; The Eleventh, Twelfth, Thirteenth, or Fourteenth Amendment; Reconstruction in a Southern State; Foreign Relations, 1860-65; The Acquisition of Florida; Title of the United States to Oregon; The Fisheries Question; Suppression of the African Slave-trade; The Underground Railroad; Social Life in the Confederacy; Education and Illiteracy in the South; The Consular Service; Railroad Land Grants; Fox and Wisconsin River Improvements; The Veto Power; Nominating Conventions; The Scandinavians in the Northwest; Biographies of important men, as Oglethorpe, Silas Deane, John Hancock, Roger Sherman, Rufus King, Salmon P. Chase.

## VIII. TESTS.

### § 74. Class-Room Tests.

THE proper teaching of history requires that pupils should be frequently called upon to show not only that they "know the lesson," but that they know and can apply earlier lessons. Hence, informal tests must be devised. Devoting a part of each exercise to a review of the previous lesson has its advantages; but such a review is apt to be a wearisome and perfunctory exercise. It is better to keep pupils alive on all the field already traversed by compelling them to put their minds upon the whole subject.

One excellent device has been described above (§ 45) under the name of "fluents"; pupils are called upon repeatedly to give the whole narrative of some episode, or period, as nearly and as fully as they remember it. By going over and over this method pupils get saturated with the history, and carry it in their minds a long time.

An equally effective plan is that of the so-called "cards"; a few minutes of each exercise are given up to the asking of very brief questions, put sharply and quickly, and to be answered immediately and categorically. By writing the questions on a set of cards, and then mixing them, they will come out haphazard, and the answer to one will not suggest the answer to the next. (§ 45.)

Geography, of course, is tested by the constant use of wall maps and atlases, and by the construction of maps or outlines from memory. (§ 48.)

### § 75. Formal Written Tests.

Written tests are undoubtedly more searching and instructive, if properly applied. The danger in the lower schools—especially in large systems handling many children—is that examinations come to be an end instead of a means, and pupils are diverted

from their studies in order to get ready for examinations. In many city schools, however, pupils are now transferred from grade to grade on the teacher's estimate of their fitness; and promotion examinations are forbidden.

So far as examinations in history are mere memory tests they have little value. But the written tests suggested in §§ 65, 66 are helpful, especially the "paper," or written application of principles to a question up to that time not considered by the pupil.

School examinations may be so contrived as to be of real assistance to historical training. The questions ought to be such as require comparison, and the use of facts acquired at different times and in different connections. For instance, instead of asking pupils who was chief general of the United States army in the Revolutionary war, and who was president in 1796, they may be asked to state what offices George Washington occupied. The old query, "Who went where with how many men?" is not an unfair satire on ordinary questions. Entrance examinations to college ought to be arranged on the same principle of calling for the selection of significant things out of the mass of detail, and the bringing out of relations between things which depend upon each other.

In colleges the written examination has greater importance because recitations in history are there antiquated; but the examination is commonly less searching than the "quiz," the "report," or the "paper." Some instructors give frequent hour examinations, others depend upon the mid-year and final examinations. In all cases examinations must come in somewhere, in order to compel the student to "take account of stock," and to show what he can do with his whole set of acquirements. Here, also, questions must test the judgment, rather than the memory; for the judgment cannot act without material, and if it be found well trained, it will be because the memory has gathered something valuable upon which the judgment stands.

**§ 76. Oral Examinations.**

The old-fashioned oral examinations have fallen into disuse, with the school committees solemnly ranged on the platform, and anxious children awaiting their turn. It always gave an undue advantage to the ready, off-hand pupil, and often caught pupils on some unimportant or small part of the subject. The advantage of keeping the wits sharpened, and being ready to use one's knowledge, can be gained by skillful recitations, and especially by the device known as "cards" (§ 45).

For small classes, and especially for advanced students, where there is time to go into detail, the oral examination has important uses; and it is accepted as a proper test (in part, at least) for the degree of Ph.D. The power to marshal a large body of knowledge, and to select the portion which is pertinent to an inquiry, is best tested in this way.



## PART II.

### TOPICS AND REFERENCES IN COLONIAL HISTORY.

---

#### IX. DISCOVERY AND LATIN COLONIZATION.

##### § 77. Physiography of North America.

**Summary.** — The physical conformation of North America : Characteristics of the Atlantic Slope, of the Great Valleys, of the Pacific Slope ; soils, mineral deposits, climate, rainfall ; comparison with European lands. — Products : tobacco, Indian corn, cotton, potatoes, wheat, indigo, rice, lumber and naval stores, coal, iron, precious metals, cattle, sheep, hides and furs, etc. — Effects of this environment on men of European origin.

**General.** — N. S. Shaler in Winsor, *America*, IV, pp. i-xxx, especially pp. xx-xxx ; B. A. Hinsdale, *Old Northwest*, 1-5 ; J. A. Doyle, *English in America, Virginia*, 5-8.

**Special.** — N. S. Shaler, *Nature and Man in America* ; J. D. Whitney, in *Encyclopædia Britannica*, ninth edition, article on the United States ; J. D. Whitney, *The United States* ; N. S. Shaler, editor, *The United States* ; Ratzel, *Vereinigten Staaten* ; Elisée Reclus, *The Earth and its Inhabitants, North America*, Vol. III ; Jedidiah Morse, *The American Universal Geography*, Vol. I ; B. A. Gould, *Investigations in the Military and Anthropological Statistics of American Soldiers*.

**Sources and Bibliography.** — See § 21 a.

##### § 78. Geography of North America, 1492-1775.

**Summary.** — Physiography (see § 77). — Claims of European Powers (see §§ 82, 86, 87, 89-93, 131, 132, 141). — Partitions in 1493 (see § 82), in 1632 (see § 89). — Exclusion of the Dutch and

the Swedes (see §§ 104, 105). — Disputes with the Spaniards. — Exclusion of the French (see §§ 131, 132). — Unoccupied territory. — Subdivisions of the English possessions, and intercolonial boundary controversies (see §§ 97, 100, 102, 103, 105-107, 113, 114, 116, 120, 121, 123, 130, 133). — Partition of 1763 (§§ 91, 132, 133). — Partition in 1783 (§ 141). — 1776-83, Claims of the states, and cessions (§ 142).

**General.** — The standard histories, *passim*, e.g., Hildreth, *United States*, I, II; G. Bancroft, *United States* (last revision); Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*; Doyle, *English in America*.

**Special.** — Winsor, in his *America, Columbus, Cartier, Mississippi Basin* (all these works are rich in cartography; they are analyzed in the sections noted above); Hinsdale, *Old Northwest*, Chs. ii-viii; Joseph Blunt, *Historical Sketch of the Confederacy*, Chs. i, ii; J. Fiske, *Discovery of America*; C. P. Lucas, *Historical Geography of the British Colonies, Introduction*; B. A. Hinsdale, *The Right by Discovery*, in Ohio Historical and Archæological Society, *Quarterly*, II.

MAPS: *Epochs of American History, The Colonies*, Nos. 1-4, *Formation of the Union*, Nos. 2, 3, the same maps are in *Epoch Maps*, Nos. 1-6; H. E. Scudder, *History*, p. 131; A. Johnston, *School History*, p. 67; G. P. Fisher, *Colonial Era*; MacCoun's *Historical Geography of the United States*; W. M. Sloane, *French War and Revolution*; H. C. Lodge, *English Colonies*; E. Channing, *The United States, 1765-1865*.

**Sources.** — The collections of treaties, statutes, decisions, etc., are noted in §§ 21 d, 29, 30. Some of the more important documents may be found as follows:

TREATIES: St. Germain, 1632: *Recueil des Traités de Paix* (Amsterdam, 1700), III, 328. — Ryswick, 1697: *Memorials of the English and French Commissaries concerning the Limits of Nova Scotia, or Acadia*; Dumont, *Corps Diplomatique*, VII, 399; Chalmers, *Collection of Treaties between Great Britain and Other Powers*. Extracts, containing the portions relating to America, are in Houston, *Constitutional Documents*, 265; Mills, *Boundaries of Ontario* (revised edition), 143. — Utrecht, 1713: Dumont, *Corps Diplomatique*, VIII, 339; Chalmers, *Collection of Treaties*, I, 378. Extracts in Houston, *Constitutional Documents*, 3; Mills, *Boundaries of Ontario* (revised edition), 158. — Aix-la-Chapelle, 1748: Chalmers, *Collection of Treaties*. Extracts in Houston, *Documents*, 265. — Peace of Paris, 1763: Martens et Cussy, *Recueil de Traités*, I, 30. The portions



relating to boundaries are in *American History Leaflets*, No. 5; Houston, *Constitutional Documents*, 61.—Royal Proclamation of 1763: *The Annual Register* for 1763, 208-213; Mills, *Boundaries of Ontario*, 192; Houston, *Documents*, 67; *American History Leaflets*, No. 5.—Quebec Act, 1774: *Statutes at Large of Great Britain* (London, 1776); Wm. Kingsford, *History of Canada*, V, 256; Houston, *Constitutional Documents*, 90.—Treaty of Peace, 1782-83: *Treaties and Conventions between the United States and Other Powers*. Appended to the "Preliminary Articles" in this publication will be found the "Separate Article" as to Florida. For the commissions of the Governors of West Florida, see Duane's *Laws of the United States*, I, 450; they are reprinted in *American History Leaflets*, No. 5.

THE CHARTERS: B. P. Poore, *Charters and Constitutions*; H. W. Preston, *Documents illustrative of American History*; Samuel Lucas, *Charters of the Old English Colonies in America*, London 1850; *Old South Leaflets*. Most of the important portions of the charters, from a geographical point of view, are in *American History Leaflets*, No. 15. The Maryland charter, in the Latin original, is in Poore's *Charters*. English translations are in Bacon, *Laws of Maryland*, and in Scharf, *History of Maryland*.

MAPS: FACSIMILES. Besides the facsimiles given by Winsor in his *America, Mississippi Basin*, and other works, and those contained in the collections of facsimiles and sketches noted below, there are several photographic reproductions of important maps on the scale of the original. There are also numerous facsimiles illustrative of particular points scattered through the descriptive works. Some of the more important of the collections are mentioned in the following list; they relate for the most part to the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. For reproductions of later maps Winsor's *Mississippi Basin* is the principal storehouse. The titles of single maps and important collections illustrating particular points will be found in the later sections of this *Guide*, especially §§ 81-84, 87, 89, 90, 92, 131, etc.

Theobald Fischer, editor, *Raccolta di Mappamondi e Carte nautiche del XIII al XVI secolo*, Venice, F. Ongania, 1886, and accompanying text; E. F. Jomard, *Les Monuments de la Géographie*, Paris, 1866; J. G. Kohl, *Discovery of Maine (Documentary History of Maine)*, I; K. Kretschmer, *Die Entdeckung Amerikas*, Berlin, 1892, and Atlas; F. Kunstmann, *Entdeckung Amerikas*, Munich, 1859, and Atlas; J. Lelewel, *Géographie du Moyen Age*, Bruxelles, 1852, and Atlas; G. Marcel, *Reproductions de Cartes et de Globes*, XVI-XVIII centuries, Atlas and text, Paris, 1893; [Frederick Muller & Co.], *Remarkable Maps of the XV-*

*XVII Centuries reproduced in their original size*, Amsterdam, 1891; A. E. Nordenskiöld, *Fac-simile Atlas to the Early History of Cartography, With reproductions of the most important maps printed in the XV and XVI Centuries*. Translated from the Swedish original by J. D. Ekelöf and C. R. Markham, Stockholm, 1889; Sophus Ruge, *Die Entwicklung der Kartographie von Amerika bis 1570* (Petermann's *Mitteilungen*, Ergänzungsheft, Nr. 106). This is the best compact collection of sketches for students. Published in 1892 for 8 Marks; Vicomte de Santarem, *Atlas composé de Mappemondes, de Portulans, et de Cartes hydrographiques et historiques depuis le VI jusqu'au XVII Siècle*, Paris, 1842-53; H. Stevens, *Historical and Geographical Notes of the Early Discoveries in America*, New Haven, 1869; Vivien de Saint-Martin, *Histoire de la Géographie et des Découvertes géographiques*, Paris, 1873-74 (Atlas of 32 maps).

MAPS, ORIGINALS: The collection in the Harvard University Library is the best in America so far as the cartography of the country as a whole is concerned; the collection in the library of the Wisconsin Historical Society is rich in maps of the interior and of the earlier history of the West.

Among the separate maps in the former collection may be mentioned: Sanson, 1656; Delisle, 1689; Coronelli, 1689; Delisle, 1700, 1703, and 1718; Jaillot, 1719; Moll, 1715, 1720; Map drawn for the *Compagnie François Occident*, 1701-1720; D'Anville, 1746, 1755; Bowen, 1747; Evans, 1749; Huske, 1755; Kitchin, 1755 (two copies of this map giving different boundaries); Jeffrey's D'Anville, 1755; de Rouge, 1755; Jeffrey's, 1755; Mitchell, 1755; Covens et Mortier, 1757; Evans, 1758-1771; Palairet, 1759; Jeffrey's, 1762 (?); Kitchin, 1763; Bowen, 1763; Quebec, 1763, after English and French surveys; Bell, 1772; Pownall, 1776; Pownall's D'Anville, 1777; Faden, 1777; Brion de la Tour, 1778, 1779; Maps in Fitzmaurice's *Life of Shelburne*, 3, 170, 294; Delisle, 1782; Wallis, 1783; Faden, 1783; Andrews, 1783; Bowles, 1783; Lothe, 1784; Janvier, 1784.

Many of the most important of the early maps are contained in the several editions of Ptolemy's *Geography*; in De Laet, *Nieuwe Wereldt*; in Montanus, *Nieuwe Weereld*; and in the accounts of the voyages of the Spanish, French, and English seamen, and of the early explorers, as Captain John Smith (see §§ 83-97).

**Bibliography.** — (See §§ 21-21 d); Thwaites, *Colonies*, § 1; A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union*, passim. Winsor's works are in great measure a bibliography of the subject. See also his *Kohl Collection of*

*Early Maps* (Harvard University Library, *Bibliographical Contributions*, No. 19) and his *Bibliography of Ptolemy's Geography* (Harvard University Library, *Bibliographical Contributions*, No. 18); G. Marcel, *Catalogue des Documents Géographiques, exposés à la Section des Cartes et Plans de la Bibliothèque National*, Paris, 1892.

### § 79. Archæology.

**Summary.** — Evidences of the antiquity of man in North America: the paleolithic implements of the Trenton gravel; other deposits of these implements; other remains of prehistoric man, the Calaveras skull, the Nampa image, etc. — Credibility of these evidences. — Paleolithic man, as he is pictured by the archæologists. — Attempts made to connect prehistoric man with the Red Men of North America at the time of the Columbian discovery: Neolithic man, the skrellings, etc.

**General.** — John Fiske, *Discovery of America*, I, 1–19; H. W. Haynes in Winsor, *America*, I, Ch. vi; G. F. Wright, *The Ice Age*; J. D. Baldwin, *Ancient America*; Nadaillac, *Prehistoric America*.

**Special.** — Charles C. Abbott, *Primitive Industry*, and see also his articles in *Reports of the Peabody Museum*, II, 30 and 235; J. W. Foster, *Prehistoric Races of America*; J. T. Short, *North Americans of Antiquity* (an old-time view); W. R. Moorehead, *Primitive Man in Ohio*; L. Carr, *Mounds of the Mississippi Valley* in *Report of Smithsonian Institution for 1891*; E. A. Allen, *The Prehistoric World*.

**Sources.** — E. G. Squier and E. H. Davis, *Ancient Monuments of the Mississippi Valley*; S. F. Haven, *Archæology of the United States* (Smithsonian Institution, *Contributions*, VIII); Sir Daniel Wilson, *Prehistoric Man . . . in the Old and New World*, and *The Lost Atlantis*; J. W. Powell, *Reports of the Bureau of Ethnology*, especially the *Report for 1890–91*; F. W. Putnam, editor, *Archæological and Ethnological Collections* (Wheeler's Survey, *Reports*, VII); E. T. Stevens, *Flint Chips: A Guide to Prehistoric Archæology*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, in his *America*, I, 369 and following, and the "Notes" to Prof. Haynes's chapter; P. B. Watson, *Pre-Columbian Bibliography*.

### § 80. The Aborigines.

**Summary.** — The opposing theories of Prescott and others who rely on the "Early American Chroniclers," and of Lewis H. Morgan and his followers. — The leading points in the latter theory. — Indian ideas as to landholding, inheritance, and communism. — Theories as to the origin of the Red Race of America. — Social condition of the Indians on the Atlantic seaboard of North America in 1500–1600. — Effects on the Indians of the coming of the Europeans. — Difference in the treatment of the Indian problem by the Spanish, French, and English colonists. — Reaction of these several Indian policies on the colonists of the respective nations.

**General.** — Higginson, *Larger History*, 1–26; L. H. Morgan, *Montezuma's Dinner*, in *North American Review* for 1876 (CXXII); W. H. Prescott, *Conquest of Mexico, Introduction*; Fiske, *America*, I, 21–147.

**Special.** — L. H. Morgan, *Houses and House-life*, p. 136, and following; A. F. Bandelier's papers in *Reports of Peabody Museum*, II, and in the *Papers of the Archaeological Institute of America*, especially his *Social Organization, Art of Warfare Among the Ancient Mexicans*, and *The Tribe of Zuni*; L. H. Morgan, *League of the Iroquois*; H. H. Bancroft, *Native Races of the Pacific Coast*, II, and *History of Mexico*, I.

**Sources.** — The early Spanish Chroniclers (§ 83), especially Oviedo, Herrera; the early explorers in *Documentos Inéditos*; Bernal Diaz del Castillo, *Historia Verdadera de la conquista de la Nueva España*, translated by Lockhart; Sahagun, *Historia general de las Cosas de Nueva España*; Castañeda, *Relacion de la Jornada de Cibola . . . la qual fué el año de 1560*, translated, with other accounts, by G. P. Winship, as *The Coronado Expedition to New Mexico and the Great Plains* (Bureau of Ethnology, *Annual Reports*, No. XIV); the French *mémoires* and early descriptions (§§ 87–91), especially Champlain, *Œuvres*; Cartier, *Narratives*; Laudonnière, *L'histoire notable de la Floride* — in English in Hakluyt's *Principall Navigations*, III; the *Jesuit Relations*; Sagard, *Histoire du Canada*, or his *Le Grand Voyage du Pays des Hurons*; Lafitau, *Mœurs des Sauvages*; Charlevoix, *Histoire de la Nouvelle France*, translated by J. G. Shea; Lescarbot, *Histoire de la Nouvelle France*; Perrot, *Mémoire sur les Mœurs . . . des Sauvages de l'Amérique*;

Du Monts, *La Louisiane*; Margry, *Mémoires et Documents, pour servir à l'histoire* — distrusted somewhat by scholars; French, *Historical Collections of Louisiana and Florida* (contains many extracts from these authorities, and many other important documents in English); the English explorers and colonists (§§ 95–97, 109), especially Hariot's *Narrative*, and Captain John Smith, *True Relation*; Bartram, *Travels in the Carolinas*; Carver, *Travels through North America*; Jn. Adair, *The History of the American Indians*; Thruston, *Antiquities of Tennessee*; C. C. Jones, *Antiquities of the Southern Indians*; Heckewelder, *Account of the Indian Nations who once inhabited Pennsylvania* (originally published in the American Philosophical Society, *Transactions*, 1819); G. H. Loskiel, *Mission of the United Brethren among the Indians*. Among the general collections, covering the whole field, may be mentioned De Bry, *Grands et petits voyages*; Purchas, *Pilgrimes*; Hakluyt, *Principall Navigations*. See, also, H. H. Bancroft, *Native Races*, IV; J. L. Stephen, *Incidents of Travel in Central America*, and *Incidents of Travel in Yucatan*; F. Catherwood, *Views of Ancient Monuments in Central America*; D. Charnay, *Cités et Ruines Américaines*, translated as *The Ancient Cities of the New World*; *Papers of the Archæological Institute of America*; J. W. Powell, *Reports of United States Bureau of Ethnology*, and *Contributions to North American Ethnology*; see, also, papers in *Annual Reports of the Smithsonian Institution*. The collections in the Peabody Museum of American Archæology and Ethnology, or in other museums, should also be studied.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, in *Narrative and Critical History*, I, Chs. iii and v, and the special works therein cited, especially H. H. Bancroft, *Native Races*; Winsor, *The New England Indians, a bibliographical survey, 1630–1700* (Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings* for November, 1895); J. C. Pilling's bibliographies of the Algonquin linguistic stocks in the publications of the Bureau of Ethnology; D. G. Brinton, *Aboriginal American Authors*, and the footnotes to Bandelier's essays and books noted elsewhere.

### § 81. Pre-Columbian Discoveries.

**Summary.** — Geographical knowledge of the ancients: theories of Eratosthenes, Strabo, and others. — The idea of the sphericity of the Earth during the Middle Ages. — The geographers of the fifteenth century: Toscanelli, Behaim, etc. — Stories of Western lands: Atlantis, St. Brandan's Island, Antillia. — Pre-Columbian explorers: Asiatic peoples, the Fusang story, Welsh and Irish legends. — A.D. 1000, The Norse Discovery, Leif the Lucky finds a western land. — Later voyages to Vinland. — The evidence on which our knowledge of these voyages rests: monuments, records, sagas. — Credibility of the sagas. — The story of the Zeni Brothers. — The French fishermen.

**General.** — Fiske, *Discovery of America*, I, 148-218; Higginson, *Larger History*, 27-52; Gay, *Bryan's Popular History*, I, 35-63; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 57.

**Special.** — A. M. Reeves, *Finding of Wineland the Good*; Torfæus, *Historiæ Vinlandiæ*; Rafn, *Antiquitates Americanae*; Kohl, *Discovery of Maine*, Ch. ii (a summary of Rafn's large work); Slafter, *Voyages of the Northmen*; W. H. Tillinghast, *Geographical Knowledge of the Ancients*, in Winsor, *America*, I, Ch. i; Winsor, "Pre-Columbian Explorations," in his *America*, I, Ch. ii; Vining, *An Inglorious Columbus* (gives the different theories as to the Fusang myth); B. F. De Costa, *Pre-Columbian Discovery of America by Northmen*; P. Gaffarel, *Histoire de la Découverte de l'Amérique jusqu'à la Mort de Christophe Colomb*, I, *Les Précurseurs de Colomb*; D. W. Prowse, *Newfoundland*, Chs. i, iii; Sir Daniel Wilson, *The Lost Atlantis*.

**Sources.** — Translations of the Sagas, with phototypic facsimiles, are in Reeves's *Wineland*. Other translations may be found in the works of Rafn, De Costa, and Slafter, above mentioned. The important portions are printed from Reeves in *American History Leaflets*, No. 3. See, also, the *Saga of Olaf Trygvason*, translated by J. Slepton. For the Zeno story, see Major's edition of Nicolò Zeno, *Voyages of the Venetian Brothers, Nicolò and Antonio Zeno*, in Hakluyt Society, *Publications*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, in *Narrative and Critical History*, I, 76-132; and P. B. Watson, *Bibliography of Pre-Columbian Discoveries of America*, in the third edition of Anderson, *America not Discovered by Columbus*.

## § 82. The Columbian Discoveries.

**Summary.** — Birth and early career of Christopher Columbus. — His ideas as to the shape and size of the earth; whence came these ideas? — Attempts to get assistance for a western voyage. — Contract with the Spanish monarchs. — 1492, The first voyage and discovery of Cuba, San Domingo, etc. — Theories as to the landfall. — 1493, The second voyage, Columbus as a colonizer. — 1498–1500, The third voyage, mouth of the Orinoco, Island of Trinidad. — 1502–1504, The fourth voyage, the east coast of Central America, Jamaica. — The character of Columbus, and his place in the world's history. — 1493, The Bull of Demarcation; its later history.

**General.** — Gay, *Bryan's Popular History*, I, 92–120; Winsor in his *America*, II, 1–23.

**Special.** — Winsor, *Christopher Columbus*; Clements R. Markham, *Columbus*; Irving, *Columbus*; Fiske, *America*, I, 335–518; Arthur Helps, *Spanish Conquest of America*; HARRISSE, *Christopher Columbus*; Kayserling, *Christopher Columbus*; P. Gaffarel, *Histoire de la Découverte*, II. On the landfall see Clements R. Markham, *Columbus*; Becher, *Landfall*; G. V. Fox, *Attempt to Solve the Problem*, etc., in *United States Coast Survey Report for 1880*, Ap. XVIII; J. B. Murdoch, in *Proceedings of the United States Naval Institute for 1884*.

**Sources.** — The letters and journal of Columbus in Major, *Select Letters of Columbus*, 2d edition (Hakluyt Society, *Publications*); *The Journal of Christopher Columbus* (during his first voyage), translated by Clements R. Markham in Hakluyt Society, *Publications*, 1893; Kettell, *A Personal Narrative* (gives a translation of the journal); *American History Leaflets*, No. 1 (contains a translation of the letter to Santangel and portions of the journal); Columbus, *Letter to Santangel* is also in French, *Historical Collections of Louisiana*, Second Series, II, 145–152. See also the reprints and translations published by the Boston Public Library, the Lenox Library, and by Quaritch. Extracts and abstracts from some of the documents may also be found in Mackie, *With the Admiral of the Ocean Sea*, and *Last Voyages of the Admiral*; and in Higginson, *American Explorers*. For the Bull of Pope Alexander see Fiske, *America*, I, Appendix; *Catholic Historical Researches*, III, 71; Navarrete, *Coleccion de los viages*, II; Peschel, *Die Theilung der Erde unter Papst Alexander VI und Julius II*, Appendix; E. G. Bourne, *The Demarcation Line of Alexander VI*, in *The Yale Review* for May, 1892, pp. 35–55.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, in his *America*, II, 46–69, and in his *Columbus*, Chs. i, ii.



### § 83. The Companions and Successors of Columbus.

**Summary.** — 1498–1512, Discovery and exploration along the northern coast of South America: 'Ojeda, Juan de la Cosa, Nicuesa, Bastidas. — 1510, Settlement on the Gulf of Darien. — 1513, Vasco Nuñez de Balboa discovers the Pacific. — Progress of discovery along the west coast; Peru, Nicaragua. — 1508, Circumnavigation of Cuba. — 1518, Grijalva discovers Mexico. — 1519, Pineda discovers the mouth of the Mississippi.

**General.** — S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I; C. R. Markham, *Christopher Columbus*, 238–247; Edward Channing, *The Companions of Columbus*, in Winsor, *America*, II, 181–204.

**Special.** — W. Irving, *Companions of Columbus*; Fiske, *America*, II; A. Helps, *Spanish Conquest of America*; H. H. Bancroft, *Central America*, I, especially Ch. ii; J. G. Shea, *Ancient Florida* in Winsor, *America*, II, Ch. iv; P. Gaffarel, *Histoire de la Découverte*, II, *Les Contemporains de Colomb*; Ruge, *Geschichte des Zeitalters der Entdeckungen*.

**Sources.** — Oviedo, *Historia General* (edition printed by the Real Academia); Herrera, *Historia General* (translated by John Stevens); Peter Martyr, *Decades*, translated by Eden (reprinted by Arber in *The First Three English Books on America*). See also the collections of documents published by the Spanish government, especially *Coleccion de Documentos Inéditos relativos al descubrimiento, conquista, y colonizacion de las posesiones Españolas en América y Oceanía*, edited by Pacheco, Cardenas and others and often cited as "Pacheco and Cardenas"; Navarrete *Viages Menores* forming Vol. III of his *Coleccion de los Viages*; Navarrete, *Biblioteca Maritima Española*; Bernal Diaz del Castillo, *Historia Verdadera*; Icazbalceta, *Coleccion de Documentos para la historia de México*; H. Ternaux-Compans, *Voyages, relations, et mémoires originaux pour servir à l'histoire de la découverte de l'Amérique*.

**MAPS:** Juan de la Cosa, 1500, — reproduced in the original size or in facsimile, in whole or in part, in many of the collections noted in § 78 especially Jomard, *Monuments*. Also see reduced sketches following the original in Winsor, *America*, II, 8 and in Weise, *Discoveries of America*; Humboldt, *Examen Critique*, V, and his essay in Ghillany's *Behaim*. Ruysch, 1508, facsimile in Winsor, III, 9, and in Weise. A



copy of the original is in Harvard University Library. For sketches of other early maps, see Winsor, *America*, II, especially pp. 211-230.

**Bibliography.**—Channing in Justin Winsor, *America*, II, 205 and following. See also the "Essays" and footnotes to the chapters on Mexico and Peru in the same volume.

### § 84. The Naming of America.

**Summary.**—Amerigo Vespucci, his voyages to America.—Evidence for and against these voyages.—The phrase "New World" as applied to South America.—Martin Waldseemüller (Hylacomylus), his *Cosmographiæ Introductio*.—1507, The proposal to name the "New World" America.—Did Amerigo Vespucci approve the design?—1507-1541, The spreading of the name. Other theories as to the origin of the word America.

**General.**—S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 123-128; Winsor, *Columbus*, 538-555; C. R. Markham, *Columbus*, 344-356.

**Special.**—S. H. Gay in Winsor, *America*, II, Gh. ii; J. Fiske, *Discovery of America*, II; Lester, *Life of Vespucci*; Santarem, *Researches respecting Americus Vespucci and his Voyages*, translated from the French by E. V. Childe; R. H. Major in his *Prince Henry the Navigator and Discoveries of Prince Henry*; Varnhagen's various works on Vespucci, especially his *Nouvelles Recherches*; Humboldt, *Examen Critique*, IV, V; Winsor, *Notes on Vespucci* in his *America*, II, 153 and following; D'Avezac, *Waltzeemüller, ses ouvrages, et ses collaborateurs*.

**Sources.**—Vespucci, *Letters* (describing the four voyages) reprinted with translations by Quaritch, 1893; Waldseemüller, *Cosmographiæ Introductio* (the titlepage and important passages given in facsimile in Winsor, *America*, II, 167, 168, 171); the Spanish chroniclers, especially Herrera and the collections of documents, particularly that by Navarrete.

**Bibliography.**—The footnotes to Gay's chapter and Winsor's very full "Notes" in his *America*, II, 153-179.

### § 85. The Spanish Conquerors.

**Summary.**—1515–27, Progress of discovery along the west coast of South America, the finding of Peru.—The Pizarros and their companions.—1531–34, The conquest, treatment of the natives.—Later careers of the leading men.

1511, Conquest of Cuba by the Spaniards under Velasquez.—1517, Córdoba's voyage to Yucatan.—1518, Grijalva discovers Mexico: Velasquez sends an expedition under Cortez to conquer it.—Hernando Cortez and his companions.—1519–21, The conquest of Mexico.—Later history of Nueva España.

**General.**—C. R. Markham, in Winsor, *America*, II, Ch. viii (Peru); Winsor, in his *America* II, Ch. vi (Mexico); J. Fiske *America*, II.

**Special.**—W. H. Prescott, *Conquest of Peru* and *Conquest of Mexico*; A. Helps, *Spanish Conquest of America*,—the bulk of this work is also printed in a different form as *Life of Pizarro* and *Life of Cortez*; H. H. Bancroft, *Mexico*, I; R. G. Watson, *Spanish and Portuguese South America during the Colonial Period*.

**Sources.**—For the conquest of Mexico: The collections of documents noted in § 83, especially Pacheco and Cardenas and Icazbalceta, and the *Documentos Inéditos para la historia España*; Motolinia, *Historia de los Indios de Nueva España*; *Documentos para la historia de México*; I. L. Rayon, editor, *Archivo Mexicano*; Lorenzana, *Historia de Nueva España*; Bernal Diaz, *Historia Verdadera*; Gomara, *La conquista de México*; Sahagun, *Historia de la conquista de México*; *Despatches of Cortes*, translated by George Folsom.

For the conquest of Peru: the standard collections, the early Chroniclers, and Cieza de Leon, *La Chronica del Peru*, Parts I and II, translated by C. R. Markham and printed in the publications of the Hakluyt Society for 1864 and 1883. See also Garcilasso de la Vega, *Commentarios Reales*, translated in part by Markham for the Hakluyt Society, 1869–71.

**Bibliography.**—Winsor, *America* (Peru) II, 573–578, (Mexico) II, 402–430.

### § 86. The Spaniards in the United States.

**Summary.** — 1513, Ponce de Leon discovers and names Florida, the exact date. — 1517, Córdoba on the Gulf coast. — 1519, Pineda discovers the Mississippi. — 1520, Gordillo on the Atlantic coast of Florida. — 1524-25, Gomez, in the service of Spain, on the Atlantic seaboard of the United States; extent of his voyage; arguments for and against the voyage having been made. — 1526, De Ayllon in Chesapeake Bay, the site of San Miguel de Guadape. — 1528, Narvaez, with a large force, lands on the Gulf coast of Florida; probable fate of the expedition. — 1528-36, The wanderings of Cabeza-de-Vaca and his comrades; their stories of buffaloes and pueblos. — 1520-40, Progress of discovery and settlement on the west coast of North America. — 1539, Fray Marcos's reconnoissance toward the pueblos. — 1540-42, Explorations of Coronado, identification of his route. — 1539-42, Explorations of De Soto, identification of his route. — 1542-1763, The Spaniards in New Mexico and Florida; meaning of these words.

**General.** — George Bancroft, *United States*, I, 34-68, 74-82; Doyle, *English in America, Virginia*, 75-81; J. G. Shea, in Winsor, *America*, II, 231-254; H. W. Haynes, in *ibid.*, II, 473-498; Parkman, *Pioneers of France*, Ch. i (on Florida only); Gay, *Bryan's Popular History*, I, 139-173; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 39, 43-44, 47-49.

**Special.** — Theodore Irving, *Conquest of Florida*; Bernard Shipp, *De Soto and Florida*; P. Gaffarel, *Histoire de la Floride Française*; C. C. Jones, *Georgia*, I; W. H. H. Davis, *Spanish Conquest of New Mexico*; Simpson in Smithsonian Institution, *Report*, 1869; H. H. Bancroft, *New Mexico*; Frank W. Blackmar, *Spanish Colonization in the Southwest*, in the Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, VIII, No. 4; the histories of the southwestern states and territories, of Kansas, and of Nebraska (§ 23). For the settlement of St. Augustine see § 88.

**Sources.** — Buckingham Smith, *Journey of Cabeza de Vaca*, especially the edition of 1871; A. F. Bandelier, *Papers of the Archæological Institute of America*, I, II, IV (Cabeza de Vaca and Fray Marcos); Buckingham Smith, *De Soto Letter and Memoir of Hernando de Escalante Fontaneda respecting Florida*; *The Discovery and Conquest of Terra Florida by Don Ferdinando de Soto*, written by "A Gentleman of Elvas" and translated by Hakluyt in Hakluyt Society, *Publications for*

1851 and in Force's *Tracts*, IV. Pedro de Castañeda de Nagera, *Relacion de la Jornada de Cibola, . . . la qual fué el año de 1540*, translated by G. P. Winship from a Spanish manuscript in the Lenox library, is in Bureau of Ethnology, *Reports*, No. XIV, in French in Ternaux-Compans, *Voyages*. Other original documents relating to Coronado's explorations are in *American History Leaflets*, No. 13, and in Bandelier, *Documentary History of the Tribe of Zuni*; see also the various collections noted in § 85 and the "Chroniclers" (§ 83). Many important documents will also be found in French, *Historical Collections of Louisiana and Florida*; *Historical Magazine*, X; and in Higginson, *American Explorers*; and in the *Old South Leaflets*.

**Bibliography.** — J. G. Shea in Winsor, *America*, II, 283 (Florida); H. W. Haynes in Winsor, *America*, II, 448 (Coronado).

### § 87. Early French Explorers.

**Summary.** — The French fishermen, were they on the American coast before Columbus? — 1524, Verrazano's voyage; evidence for and against its having been made. — The story of Norumbega and other similar tales. — 1534, Jacques Cartier's first voyage, the Gulf of St. Lawrence. — 1535, Cartier's second voyage, the St. Lawrence River to Montreal. — 1540, Cartier's third voyage and Roberval's Expedition.

**General.** — G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), I, 16-28; (last revision), I, 15-21; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 174-199; Parkman, *Pioneers of France*; Doyle, *English in America, Virginia*, I, 82-87; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 64-67; *Compendious History*, I, 2; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 42, 44-46.

**Special.** — Verrazano: Winsor, *Christopher Columbus*, Appendix; George Dexter, in Winsor, *America*, IV, 4-9; Brevoort, *Verrazano the Navigator*; Murphy, *Voyage of Verrazano*; De Costa, *Verrazano the Explorer*; Kohl, *Discovery of Maine*. — Cartier: Winsor, *Cartier to Frontenac*; De Costa, in Winsor, *America*, IV, 47-62; H. B. Stephens, *Jacques Cartier*; HARRISSE, *Discovery of America*; D. W. Prowse, *Newfoundland*, Ch. iii.

**Sources.** — Verrazano: The Verrazano Map, *Magazine of American History*, II, 449; Winsor, *America*, IV, 26; Murphy, *Verrazano*, 91. The Verrazano Letter, Murphy, *Verrazano*, 170; *Voyage of John de*

*Verazzanus*, in Hakluyt Society, *Publications*, 1850; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 60-69; *Old South Leaflets*. — Cartier: The "Narratives," Hakluyt, *Navigations*, III, 50, reprinted in Goldsmid's edition, XIII, 77; Higginson, *Explorers*, 91-117.

**Bibliography.** — Verrazano: Dexter, in Winsor, *America*, IV, 17-29. — Cartier: De Costa, in *ibid.*, IV, 62-68.

### § 88. The Huguenot Settlements.

**Summary.** — The Huguenots. — 1555-60, attempt to found a colony in Brazil; 1556, Thevet's alleged voyage along the coast of North America; 1562, Ribault's colony on Port Royal Sound. — 1563, Laudonnière builds Fort Caroline, sufferings of the colonists. — 1565, Menendez founds St. Augustine, massacres French colonists and most of the survivors of the shipwreck of Ribault's fleet. — 1567, Dominic de Gourges attacks the Spaniards.

**General.** — Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 189-223; Parkman, *Pioneers* (revised edition, 1887), 27-179; Doyle, *Virginia*, I, 88-100; George Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), I, 68-83; (last revision), I, 50-59; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 71-75.

**Special.** — J. G. Shea, in Winsor, *America*, II, 260-283; Parkman, *Pioneers*; J. Sparks, *Life of Ribault*; Baird, *Huguenot Emigration*; Fairbanks, *St. Augustine*; Paul Gaffarel, *Brésil Française*; Paul Gaffarel, *La Floride Française*.

**Sources.** — On the Brazil colony: Thevet, *Singularitez de la France Antarctique*, 1557, new edition by Paul Gaffarel, Paris, 1878; Paul Gaffarel's edition of De Lery, *Histoire d'un voyage fait en la terre du Brésil*; Ternaux-Compans, *Voyages*. — The Huguenots: Hakluyt, *Divers Voyages*, reprinted by the Hakluyt Society, 1850, and the part relating to Florida by French in his *Historical Collections of Louisiana and Florida*, which contains many other important documents; Laudonnière, in *L'histoire notable de la Floride*, in English, in Hakluyt, *Principal Navigations*, Goldsmid's edition, XIII, 407, and in French's *Historical Collections*. Many documents are also reprinted in whole or in part in the *Historical Magazine*, III, and in Higginson, *American Explorers*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, in his *America*, VIII, 391 (Brazil); J. G. Shea in Winsor, *America*, II, 292 (Florida).

### § 89. Champlain and French Colonization in the North.

**Summary.**—1603, De Monts and his patent.—1604, Settlements on the Bay of Fundy.—Champlain on the New England coast.—1608, Champlain founds Quebec.—1609, Champlain discovers Lake Champlain; 1615, Lake Huron.—1629, Sir Thomas Kerts captures Quebec.—1632, Treaty of St. Germain: New France, Acadia, and Canada confirmed to France.—1632-33, La Tour and D'Aulnay.—1613-1713, Progress of the French colonies.—1713, Treaty of Utrecht. Acadia ceded to England.—The boundaries of the French colonies.

**General.**—Slafter, in Winsor, *America*, IV, 103-122; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 312, 313, 321; Doyle, *Virginia*, I, 146; G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), I, 29-34; (last revision), I, 18-21; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 91, 92.

**Special.**—Parkman, *Pioneers of France* (edition of 1877), 187-443; Winsor, *Cartier to Frontenac*; Slafter's *Champlain*, Memoir prefixed to his edition of voyages (3 vols., in *Prince Society Publications*); Murdock's *Nova Scotia*; Hannay, *Acadia*; P. Palmer, *History of Lake Champlain*; *The Writings of O. H. Marshall relating to the West*; W. Kingsford, *History of Canada*, I.

**Sources.**—Champlain, *Œuvres* (edition of Laverdière, Quebec, 1870), translated in Slafter's *Champlain*. See also portions in O'Callaghan, *Documentary History of New York*, III; Higginson, *American Explorers*, 269-278; *Collectanea Adamantæa*, XXIII; see also Lescaḡbot, *Histoire de la Nouvelle France*, partly translated by Erondells in Purchas, *Pilgrimes*, IV, 1605-1645.—The De Monts Patent is in Williamson, *History of Maine*, I, 651.—For Sir William Alexander's Patent, see *ibid.*, p. 655.—There are translations of a few documents in French, *Historical Collections*, Second Series, II.

**Bibliography.**—Slafter, in Winsor, *America*, IV, 130; for Acadia, see also C. C. Smith, in *ibid.*, IV, 147.

## § 90. French Explorers in the Interior.

**Summary.**—1634–35, Nicollet discovers Lake Michigan and a tributary of the Mississippi. — 1673, Joliet and Marquette discover the Mississippi. — 1680, Hennepin discovers the Falls of St. Anthony. — 1681, La Salle explores the Mississippi to its mouth. — La Salle's attempt to found a colony on the lower Mississippi, and death. — 1699, Settlement of Louisiana and history to 1763. — The spirit of French colonization; the Jesuits and the traders. — The French in the Ohio Valley.

**General.**—Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, II, 499–553; Parkman, *Conspiracy of Pontiac*, Ch. ii; G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), III, 109–174; (last revision), II, 149–174; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 97–122.

**Special.**—Winsor, *Cartier to Frontenac*; E. D. Neill in Winsor, *America*, IV, Ch. v; Monette, *History of the Valley of the Mississippi*; J. G. Shea, *Exploration of the Mississippi Valley*; Parkman, *La Salle and the Discovery of the Great West* (revised edition, 1879); *A Half-Century of Conflict*, I, Ch. xiii; Gayarré, *Louisiana*; Scharf, *St. Louis*; Shea's *Hennepin*; Garneau, *Histoire de Canada*; Bryce, *History of the Canadian People*; McMullen, *The History of Canada* (edition of 1891), I; Wm. Kingsford, *History of Canada*, I.

**Sources.**—Margry, *Mémoires*, etc. (6 vols., contains the original documents); French, *Historical Collections of Louisiana*, Vols. I and IV, and Second Series, II; the more important papers relating to La Salle are translated by J. G. Shea in his *Early Voyages up and down the Mississippi*; Charlevoix, *Histoire Générale de la Nouvelle France*, translated by Shea as *History and General Description of New France*, in six volumes, to which is prefixed a "Memoir" of the author by the translator; *Relations des Jésuits*; *Publications of the Quebec Historical and Literary Society*; Leclerc, *Premier Etablissement de la Foy dans la Nouvelle France*, translated by Shea as *First Establishment of the Faith in New France*; Shea, *Hennepin's Description of Louisiana*.

**Bibliography.**—Winsor, in his *America*, IV, 190–202; Griffin in *Magazine of American History* for 1883.



### § 91. The Settlement of Louisiana.

**Summary.** — 1684–87, La Salle's attempt at colonization, his death. — 1699–1701, The French settlement of Louisiana, Iberville and Bienville. — 1712, License to Crozat. — 1717, Illinois joined to Louisiana. — 1717, John Law's Company of the West; the Mississippi Bubble. — 1714 and 1718, the French in Texas. — 1718, New Orleans founded. — The French and the Mississippi Indians. — 1763, Louisiana ceded by France to Spain and England; boundaries of Louisiana and of West Florida. — 1768–69, The Spaniards take possession of Louisiana; Don John O'Reilly's *Regulations*. — 1776–83, Louisiana during the Revolutionary War. — 1783, Louisiana ceded to Spain and to the United States. — Government of Louisiana by the French and the Spaniards. — Population, products, trade, and social condition in 1763 and 1783.

**General.** — Andrew McF. Davis, in Winsor, *America*, V, 13–55; G. Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), II, 187–191, 224–232, 237; III, 75, 316–318, 352–354.

**Special.** — F. X. Martin, *Louisiana*; C. Gayarré, *Histoire de la Louisiane*, in two volumes, or his *History of Louisiana*, in four volumes; Barbé-Marbois, *Histoire de la Louisiane*, translated as the *History of Louisiana* (especially valuable for the later period; J. Winsor, *The Mississippi Basin*; Stoddard, *Sketches of Louisiana*); J. W. Monette, *History of the Valley of the Mississippi*; B. M. Norman, *New Orleans*; M. Thompson, *Story of Louisiana*; Grace King, *Sieur de Bienville*; J. F. H. Claiborne, *Mississippi as a Province*, etc.; Pickett, *Alabama and Georgia*; the histories of Texas, Florida, Tennessee, Missouri, Kentucky, Indiana, Ohio, and Illinois (§ 23). For accounts of La Salle's attempted colonization, see § 90.

**Sources.** — Charlevoix, *Histoire*, translated by J. G. Shea; the portions relating to Louisiana are also in French, *Historical Collections*; La Harpe, *Journal Historique concernant . . . la Louisiane*; Le Page du Pratz, *Histoire de la Louisiane*, reprinted as *The History of Louisiana, or the Western Parts of Virginia and Carolina*; Dumont, *History of Louisiana*, in French's *Historical Collections*, V; Vergennes, *Mémoire historique*; Wait, *State Papers*; *American State Papers, Public Lands*,



V, *Miscellaneous*, and *Foreign Relations*, IV; "An Account of Louisiana compiled from documents in the State Department," in *American State Papers, Miscellaneous*, I, also printed separately; French, *Historical Collections*, V, contains documents relating to the cession by France to Spain, O'Reilly's "Ordinances," and many other papers.

Sketches and *fac-similes* of many of the important maps will be found in Winsor, *America*, V, 66-86, and in his *Mississippi Basin*. The "Pacte de Famille" is in Martens, *Recueil*, I, 16; the Treaty of 1763 is in Martens, *Recueil*, I, 104, and French, *Historical Collections*, the portions as to boundaries are reprinted in *American History Leaflets*, No. 5; the Treaty of 1783 is in Martens, *Recueil*, III, 511, 541, and in *Treaties and Conventions between the United States and other Powers*, 314.

**Bibliography.** — A. McF. Davis, in Winsor, *America*, V, 63-74; the "Notes" and the section on Cartography by Winsor in the same volume, pp. 75-86.

## X. ENGLISH EXPLORERS AND THE SOUTHERN ENGLISH COLONIES.

### § 92. The Cabots.

**Summary.** — 1497, John Cabot discovers North America. — The landfall: Cape Breton Island, Labrador. — Date of the voyage. — Evidence: the Cabot map, the official documents, contemporary letters. — History of the older accounts of the Cabot voyages. Sebastian Cabot, his later history. — Other Cabot voyages: possible limits of their explorations. — Title by discovery: what rights does it confer; extent of rights, how long do they continue. — 1493, Bull of Alexander. — Titles of England, France, and Spain to North America in 1500, 1550, 1600, 1650, 1700. — Effects of the Cabot voyages on English colonization.

**General.** — Charles Deane, in Winsor, *America*, III, 1-7; C. R. Markham, *Columbus*, 226-233; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 129-138; G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), I, 8-15; Higginson, *Larger History*, 78-84; Fiske, *America*, II, 2-15; Doyle, *Virginia*, 23-26, 37-39; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 60-63; *Compendious History*, I, 2; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 34-36.

**Special.** — Charles Deane, as above, pp. 7-38; Richard Biddle, *Sebastian Cabot*. As to the date see also R. H. Major, *True Date of the English Discovery*; H. HARRISSE, *Discovery of America*; HARRISSE, *Jean et Sebastian Cabot*, rewritten with changes, as HARRISSE, *John Cabot, the Discoverer of North America*; D. W. Prowse, *Newfoundland*, Ch. II; Kohl, *Discovery of Maine*.

**Sources.** — The Cabot Map: Winsor, *America*, III, 52; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 193; Kohl, *Discovery of Maine*, 358. A full-sized photograph of the map is in Harvard University Library, in the Library of the American Antiquarian Society, and in several other libraries; the reduced *facsimiles* give an inadequate idea of the map, especially of the legends; for other *facsimiles* see Winsor, *America*, III,

81, note 3. The inscriptions on the map are translated in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, Second Series, VI. — Letters from Raimondo de Socino, dated London, 1497, are in Winsor, *America*, III, 53-55. — The most important sources are reprinted in *American History Leaflets*, No. 9. See, also, *Documents relating to John and Sebastian Cabot*, translated by C. R. Markham in his *Columbus's Journal*, pp. 197-226 (Hakluyt Society, *Publications*, 1893). There is something in Higginson, *American Explorers*, 55-59.

**Bibliography.** — Charles Deane, in Winsor, *America*, III, Ch. i.

### § 93. The English Seamen.

**Summary.** — English trade and commerce in the first part of the sixteenth century. — The Hawkins's, father and son. — The English slave-trade. — 1567, The disaster at San Juan d'Ulloa. — Francis Drake, his reprisals. — 1577-80, Drake's voyage around the world, his exploration on the Pacific coast of the United States. — Drake's anchorage on the California coast. — The maritime awakenings of the English: Hawkins, Drake, Raleigh, Cavendish, Frobisher. — The Spanish colonial policy.

**General.** — Higginson, *Larger History*, 84-107; E. E. Hale in Winsor, *America*, Vol. III, Ch. ii; G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), I, 98-100; (last revision), I, 66; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 79, 81.

**Special.** — J. A. Froude, *English Seamen in the Sixteenth Century*; Froude, *History of England*, XI, 94, 369-403, 441; J. K. Laughton, *The Armada* (Navy Records Society series), Introduction — contains some severe strictures on Froude's methods; E. J. Payne, *Voyages of the Elizabethan Seamen*; Higginson, *American Explorers*; D. W. Prowse, *Newfoundland*, Ch. iv; J. Corbett, *Sir Francis Drake*; W. Stebbing, *Sir Walter Raleigh*; E. Edwards, *Life of Raleigh*; J. A. St. John, *Life of Sir Walter Raleigh*; E. Gosse, *Raleigh* (English Worthies series); Louise Creighton, *Sir Walter Raleigh* (Historical Biographies series).

**Sources.** — C. R. Markham, *The Hawkins' Voyages* (Hakluyt Society, *Publications*, 1878); Thomas Marquarde, *Sir Francis Drake, his Voyage*, reprinted by the Hakluyt Society in 1849; Fletcher, *The World Encom-*

passed by Sir Francis Drake, reprinted by the Hakluyt Society in 1855; Davidson, *Identification of Sir Francis Drake's Anchorage*; Hakluyt, *Discourse on Western Planting*, reprinted with notes by Leonard Woods and Charles Deane in Maine Historical Society, *Collections*, Vol. II; Richard Hakluyt, *Principall Navigations*, edited by Edmund Goldsmid, 16 vols., Edinburgh, 1885-90.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor in his *America*, III, 78-84.

### § 94. Other Early English Explorers.

**Summary.** — 1527, John Rut. — 1567, Ingram's supposed march. — 1578, Sir Humphrey Gilbert's expedition. — 1580, John Walker in Norumbega. — 1583, Gilbert on the Newfoundland coast, his death. — Value of the English claim to American lands in 1584.

**General.** — Doyle, *English in America, Virginia*, 43-51; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 226, 229-240; G. Bancroft, *United States*, (original edition), I, 86, 100-102; (last revision), I, 66-69; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 67-69; *Compendious History*, I, 3; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 76-80.

**Special.** — De Costa in Winsor, *America*, III, Ch. vi. — For Gilbert's voyage see Payne, *Voyages of the Elizabethan Seamen; Voyages towards the Northwest*, in Hakluyt Society, *Publications* for 1849. — Ingram's *Land Travels* is in Weston, *South Carolina Documents* and in *Magazine of American History*, IX.

**Sources** are enumerated in Winsor, *America*, III, 184-187. — Gilbert's Patent is in Hazard's *Historical Collections*, I, 24.

### § 95. The Raleigh Colonies.

**Summary.** — Raleigh, his early career. — 1584, Elizabeth grants Raleigh a charter; its form and significance. — 1584, Amadas and Barlow on the coast of North Carolina; reports as to the resources of the country; the naming of Virginia. — 1585, Raleigh's first colony, under Grenville and Lane. — 1586, The colonists rescued by Francis Drake. — 1586, Grenville leaves fifteen men to keep possession. — 1587, The "lost colony" under John White; his

return to England. — 1588, the coming of the Armada. — 1590, White again in Virginia. — Reports and conjectures as to the fate of the colonists. — 1588, Hariot's *Narrative* published.

**General.** — W. W. Henry in Winsor, *America*, III, 108-115; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 240-261; Doyle, *Virginia*, 56-74; G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), I, 102-126; (last revision), I, 69-79; Palfrey, *Compendious History*, I, 4; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 80-87.

**Special.** — Tarbox, *Sir Walter Raleigh* (Prince Society); Hawks, *North Carolina*; Payne, *Elizabethan Seamen*. For other references see § 93.

**Sources.** — The documents are in Hawks, *North Carolina*, I, and in the Prince Society's volume above noted. The Raleigh Patent is in *Charters and Constitutions*, II, 1379. See also *Archæologia Americana*, IV; Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, Third Series, VIII, 117; Strachey, *The History of Travail into Virginia Britannia*, edited by R. H. Major in Hakluyt Society, *Publications*, for 1849; Thomas Hariot, *Narrative of the First English Plantation of Virginia*, London, 1588, reprinted at Frankfort, 1590, by De Bry with illustrations, as: *A Brief and True Report of Virginia*. Facsimiles of the De Bry edition were printed by the Holbein Society, 1888, and by Quaritch, 1893. See also W. Noel Sainsbury, editor, *Calendar of State Papers, Colonial*, I, and other volumes of the "Rolls Series"; the *Reports* of the Royal Commission on Historical Manuscripts; Alexander Brown, *Genesis of the United States*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III, 121-126.

### § 96. Gosnold, Pring, and Weymouth.

**Summary.** — 1602, Bartholomew Gosnold on the New England coast, his route, objects of the voyage, return to England. — 1603, Martin Pring enters Plymouth harbor. — 1605, George Weymouth on the coast of Maine; disputes as to his exact route. — Results of his voyage.

**General.** — Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 262-267, 315-316; Doyle, *Virginia*, 105, 107, 108; G. Bancroft, *United States*, (original edition), I, 127-132; (last revision), I, 79-81; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 70-76; *Compendious History*, I, 4, 5; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 90.

**Special.** — B. F. De Costa, *Norumbega and its English Explorers*, in Winsor, *America*, III, 169-183; De Costa, in *New England Historical and Geneological Register* for 1878, p. 76.

**Sources.** — Gosnold: Breerton's and Archer's Narratives, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, Third Series, VIII. — Pring: Purchas, *Pilgrimes*, V, VI. — Weymouth: Rosier's account in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, Third Series, VIII, and in the Gorges Society volume for 1887; Hakluyt Society's volume entitled: *Voyages towards the Northwest*; Purchas, *Pilgrimes*, IV; Major's edition of Strachey, *Travail into Virginia*. Portions of these documents are given by Higginson in his *Explorers*, 85-92, 202, 213-221.

**Bibliography.** — De Costa in Winsor, *America*, III, 184-199 and the "Editorial Notes" in the same volume, pp. 199-218.

### § 97. Virginia to 1624.

**Summary.** — The Virginia charters of 1606, 1609, and 1612. — Limits of Virginia under these charters, powers of government conferred on the grantees, rights of the colonists. — 1607, Jamestown settled. — Captain John Smith, his place in the history of Virginia, his reputation as a writer and as a cartographer. — The early years of the colony. — 1611, "Dale's Laws." — 1618-19, The English Puritans gain control of the London Company. — 1619, Local self-government introduced into Virginia, the first representative assembly in America. — 1619, Negro slavery introduced. — 1621, The ordinance. — 1622, The massacre. — 1624, Charter annulled. — Character of the government of Virginia during the Puritan supremacy in the Company.

**General.** — Doyle, *Virginia*, 101-184; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 267-307; Lodge, *English Colonies*, 1-12; G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), I, 133-208; (last revision), I, 99-118; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 85-100; *Compendious History*, I, 8-16; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 94-96, 99-126.

**Special.** — Alexander Brown, *Genesis of the United States* (to 1616 only); Smith, *Virginia*; Burk, *Virginia*, I; Campbell, *Introduction to the History of Virginia*; Campbell, *History of Virginia* (the best compendious history of the colony); R. Beyerly, *History and Present State*

of Virginia, 1705; Chalmers, *Annals*; P. A. Bruce, *Economic History of Virginia in the Seventeenth Century*.

**Sources.** — John Smith, *A True Relation of Such Occurrences . . . as have happened in Virginia*, London, 1608, reprinted with valuable notes by Charles Deane; also in *Southern Literary Messenger*, Feb., 1845, in *Library of American Literature*, I, and in *American History Leaflets*, No. 27; J. Smith, *General Historie* (both of these are reprinted in Arber's "Student's Series"); John Smith, *Map of Virginia*, reprinted in Winsor, *America*, III, 166, and in Deane's edition of the *True Relation*. — As to the credibility of Captain John Smith, see Winsor in his *America*, III, 161, and note 4; Charles Deane in the Introduction to his edition of the *True Relation*; Henry Adams in *North American Review* for 1867 and in *Chapters in Erie and Other Essays*; C. D. Warner, *Life and Writings of Captain John Smith*; and Alexander Brown, *Genesis of the United States*. These are unfavorable to Smith: on the other side see W. W. Henry, in *Potter's American Monthly* and Virginia Historical Society, *Proceedings* for 1882, and John Fiske in the *Atlantic Monthly* for 1891. — See also Wingfield, *A Discourse of Virginia*, reprinted with notes by Deane in *Archæologia Americana*, IV, 67; Henry Spelman, *Relation of Virginia, 1609; A True Declaration of the estate of the Colonie in Virginia*. Published by the advise and direction of the Councill of Virginia (1610), reprinted by Force, *Tracts*, VIII; Ralph Hamor, *True Discourse of the Present State of Virginia, 1615*; Sainsbury, *Calendar of State Papers, Colonial*, I; Force's *Tracts*, I and III; Neill, *Virginia Company*; Neill, *Virginia Vetusta*; *Proceedings of the Virginia Company, 1619-1624*, compiled by Conway Robinson and printed in the Virginia Historical Society, *Collections*, VII, VIII. The records of the Assembly of 1619 are in Wynne and Gilman, *Colonial Records of Virginia*, Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections* for 1857, and in Hening, *Statutes at Large of Virginia*. The Virginia Charters are in *Charters and Constitutions*, II, 1888 and following, and in Sabin's edition of Stith, *Virginia*, Appendix I. Dale's Laws are in Force's *Tracts*, III, and in Sabin's Stith, Appendix IV. The "The Orders and Constitutions . . . for the better governing of the Company, Anno 1619 and 1620" are in Force's *Tracts*, III. The "Ordinance of 1621" is in Hening, *Statutes*, I, 110, and in Preston, *Documents*, p. 32. Extracts from some of the more important documents are in Higginson, *Explorers*.

**Bibliography.** — The footnotes to the chapter on Virginia in Winsor, *America*, III, and bibliographical essay following; also "Note on Smith's Publications" in *ibid.*, p. 211.

§ 98. **Virginia, 1624-1688.**

**Summary.** — 1624-29, Character of the government under the crown. — 1629-39, Governor Harvey's administrations; the opposition to him, was it justifiable? — 1642-52, Governor Berkeley's first administration. — Relations with the Commonwealth. — 1652, Surrender to the commissioners of the Commonwealth. — 1652-58, Self-government under the Protectorate. — 1658-77, Berkeley's second administration. — 1671, Report to the Lords of Trade. — 1676-77, Causes of Bacon's Rebellion; course of the rebellion. — Social and constitutional changes proposed. — Results of the rebellion.

**General.** — R. A. Brock, in Winsor, *America*, III, 146-153; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 482, 483; II, 200-228, 290-318; III, 51-58; Lodge, *English Colonies*, 12-24; Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), I, 209-252; II, 188-234, 246-256; (last revision), I, 135-153, 442-474; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 126-135, 209-215, 335-357, 509-566.

**Special.** — Doyle, *Virginia*, 185-256, and works (especially Charles Campbell's *History*) mentioned under § 97, except Chalmers. Also Meade, *Old Churches and Families of Virginia*, and Slaughter, *Bristol Parish, St. George's Parish, and St. Mark's Parish*; Neill, *Virginia Carolorum*; P. A. Bruce, *The Economic History of Virginia in the Seventeenth Century*.

**Sources.** — The Articles of Surrender to the forces of the Commonwealth are in Hening, *Statutes*, I, 363, and in *Virginia Historical Register*, II. The history of the period from 1652-1658 is best studied in Hening, *Statutes at Large*. Documents relating to this subject will be found in *Virginia Historical Register*; *Southern Literary Messenger*; Force, *Tracts*, II and III; and in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, Second Series, I. Berkeley's Report is in Hening, *Statutes*, II, 511, and in *Virginia Historical Register*, III. — For Bacon's Rebellion, see Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, IX, 299; Burk, *Virginia*, II, 247, and 250; Force, *Tracts*, I; *Virginia Magazine of History and Biography*, I, 55, and 167; *Virginia Historical Register*, III; *Library of American Literature*, I; Kercheval, *History of the Valley of Virginia*; Hening, *Statutes at Large*, II, 341-365, 543, and elsewhere.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III, 164.



### § 99. Provincial Virginia, 1688-1760.

**Summary.** — Character of the period. — 1692, William and Mary College founded. — Commissary Blair. — The "paper towns." — 1710-22, Spotswood, governor. — 1736, First number of the *Virginia Gazette*. — Settlement of the Shenandoah Valley. — The Dissenters, and their treatment. — Population, extent, commerce, social life, and government in 1760.

**General.** — Campbell, *Introduction*, 100-117; Winsor, in his *America*, V, 263-270; Doyle, *Virginia*, I, 256-274; Lodge, *English Colonies*, 24-40; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, III, 59-80; G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), III, 25-29; (last revision), II, 17-20, 341; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 173-182, 208-210, 233-240, 326-329, 414.

**Special.** — The histories of Virginia mentioned in §§ 97 and 98 (except Beverly), and Howison, *History of Virginia*; *Virginia Historical Register*; *Southern Literary Messenger*.

**Sources.** — Hening, *Statutes*; Sainsbury, *Calendar of State Papers, Colonial*, V; Maury, *Memoirs of a Huguenot Family*; Palmer, *Calendar of Virginia State Papers*; Hartwell, Blair, and Chilton, *Present State of Virginia*; Jones, *Present State of Virginia*, reprinted in *Library of American Literature*, II, 279; Peyton, *History of Augusta County*; W. H. Foote, *Sketches of Virginia*; *The Official Letters of Governor Spotswood, 1710-22*, are in Virginia Historical Society, *Collections*, I, II; *Virginia Magazine of History and Biography*; and *Huguenot Papers*, in Virginia Historical Society, *Collections*, V.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, in his *America*, V, 273-284.

### § 100. Settlement of Maryland.

**Summary.** — George Calvert, his career in England and early interest in American colonization; the Avalon colony; his visit to Virginia, and death. — 1632, Maryland granted to his son, Cecil, second Lord Baltimore. — The Maryland charter; jurisdiction conferred, the Bishop of Durham and his diocese; boundaries of the colony; disputes with Virginia and with the Pennsylvania authorities. — 1634, Maryland settled; religious prejudices of the early colonists. — Contentions with Clayborne. — The object of the

Calverts in founding a colony.—Land system; development of representative institutions; disputes with the proprietary.

**General.**—Doyle, *Virginia*, 275–313; Brantly, in Winsor, *America*, III, 517–543 (gives the Maryland version); Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 485–516; Lodge, *English Colonies*, 93–109; G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), I, 253–285; (last revision), I, 154–176; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 204–215.

**Special.**—Bozman, *History of Maryland* (to 1660); Burnap, *Life of Leonard Calvert*, in Sparks's *American Biography*, XIX; Scharf, *History of Maryland* (the best compendious history); McSherry, *Maryland*; McMahan, *History of Maryland* (from a constitutional standpoint); Neill, *Terra Mariæ*; Chalmers, *Annals*; W. H. Browne, *Georgius and Cecilius Calvert*; E. D. Mill, *The Founders of Maryland*. See, also, §§ 23, 25, 29.

**Sources.**—*The Calvert Papers*, in Maryland Historical Society, *Fund Publications*, Nos. 28, 34; *Maryland Archives*; *A Relation of Maryland*, London, 1635, reprinted 1865, in *Library of American Literature, Historical Magazine*, IX; White, *Relatio Itineris*, reprinted in translation in Force's *Tracts*, IV, and in Maryland Historical Society, *Fund Publications*, No. 7, and supplement; *Archives of Maryland*, edited by W. H. Browne; Bacon's *Laws of Maryland*. Cecil Calvert's *Instructions* are in Browne's *Calverts*, 46.—A translation of the Avalon charter is in Scharf's *Maryland*.—The Maryland charter in the original Latin is in *Charters and Constitutions*, I, 811; Hazard, *Historical Collections*, I, 327; and in English in Bacon's *Laws*; Preston, *Documents*, 62; Bozman, *Maryland*, II, 9; Scharf, *Maryland*, I, 53. For a discussion as to the southern boundary, see *Report and Accompanying Documents of the Virginia Commission*, 1893.

**Bibliography.**—Brantly, in Winsor, *America*, III, 553–562.

### § 101. The Puritans in Maryland.

**Summary.**—The charter and religion.—Was Maryland “a Roman Catholic colony”?—The coming of the Puritans.—1649, The Toleration Act.—Why and by whom was it passed?—Governor Stone.—1653–59, The Commonwealth and Maryland; Clayborne and Bennett.—Maryland and the Quakers.—Fendall's and Coode's Rebellions.—1692, Maryland a royal prov-

ince. — The Protestant Episcopal Church established by law. — 1715, The Baltimores restored. — Religion in Maryland in 1760. — Population, exports, etc.

**General.** — Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 510-516; Doyle, *Virginia*, 277-313; Lodge, *English Colonies*, 93-109; G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), I, 255-285; III, 30-34; (last revision), I, 155-176, 437-441; II, 20-23; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 353-367, 564-572; II, 92.

**Special.** — The histories of Maryland mentioned in § 100. On the Roman Catholic side see R. H. Clark in the *Catholic World*, December, 1875, and October 3, 1883, and *Mr. Gladstone and Maryland Toleration*; *Catholic Historical Researches*; B. T. Johnson, Maryland Historical Society, *Fund Publications*, No. 18. On the other side, see Streeter, *Maryland Two Hundred Years Ago*; G. L. Davis, *Day-Star of American Freedom*; Neill, in *Contemporary Review* for September, 1876, and *Maryland not a Roman Catholic Colony*; Gladstone, *Vaticanism*. See, also, George Petrie, *Church and State in Maryland*, in Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, X, No. 4.

**Sources.** — See § 100, especially the *Calvert Papers* and the *Maryland Archives*. The Toleration Act is in Bacon's *Laws of Maryland*, under the date; an extract is printed in Justin Winsor's *America*, III, 534. See, also, *Virginia and Maryland, or the Lord Baltimore's printed case, uncased and answered* in Force, *Tracts*, II; Letters of the Jesuit Fathers, in H. Soley, *Records of the English Province of the Society of Jesus*; J. Hammond, *Leah and Rachel*, reprinted in Force's *Tracts*, III.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III, 560, 561, especially the note by the editor on page 560. For further references as to the religious beliefs of the early settlers, see Lodge, *English Colonies*, 120, note 4.

## § 102. The Carolinas.

**Summary.** — 1629-31, Grant to Sir Robert Heath of Carolina. — Early attempts at colonization. — 1663, Grant to Clarendon and associates of Carolina. — 1665, Another charter to the same grantees. — 1669, The Fundamental Constitutions. — Early settlements under these grants. — 1680, Charleston founded. — Character of the proprietary government: society, religion, educa-

tion, industries.—1719–21, Overthrow of the proprietary government.—1729–31, Carolina divided and sold to the King.—The royal government.—Population, education, religion, slavery, and society in 1760.

**General.**—Wm. J. Rivers, in Winsor, *America*, V, 285–334; Doyle, *Virginia*, 328–380; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, II, 268–289; Lodge, *English Colonies*, 142–169; G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), I, 104–126; II, 128–187; III, 13–24; (last revision), I, 408–436; II, 9–13, 340; *Hildreth, United States*, II, 25–43, 211–215, 228–233, 267, 276, 285–293, 336–340.

**Special.**—Hewatt's *South Carolina and Georgia* in Carroll, *Historical Collections of South Carolina*, I; Rivers, *Sketch of the History of South Carolina*; Ramsay, *South Carolina*; Martin, *South Carolina*; Hawks, *North Carolina*, II; Moore, *North Carolina*; Bernheim, *German Settlements in North and South Carolina*; E. L. Whitney, *Government in the Colony of South Carolina*, in Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, XIII, Nos. 1, 2. See also §§ 23, 25, 29.

**Sources.**—Hewatt's *South Carolina*, and other documents in Carroll, *Historical Collections*; the documents printed by Hawks and Rivers in their histories; Weston, *Documents Connected with the History of South Carolina*; *Colonial Records of North Carolina*; *The Charleston Year-Books*; Chalmers, *Annals* (the portions relating to South Carolina are reprinted in Carroll, *Historical Collections*, II); Sainsbury, *Calendar of State Papers, Colonial*, V; Sainsbury, *ibid.*, VI (the "Shaftesbury Papers"). The Carolina patent to Heath is in *Colonial Records of North Carolina*, I, 5. The Carolina charters are in *Charters and Constitutions*, II, 1382 and 1390. The "Fundamental Constitutions," edition of 1669, is in *ibid.*, II, 1397, also in Martin, *North Carolina*, I, p. lxxiii. See also Yonge, *A Narrative of the Proceedings of the People of South Carolina in the Year 1719*, reprinted by Force, *Tracts*, II; Purry's *Description of the Province of South Carolina* is in the same volume.

**Bibliography.**—The footnotes to Rivers's chapter in Winsor, *America*, as above, and the editor's essay and notes in *ibid.*, V, 335–356; E. L. Whitney, *Government in the Colony of South Carolina*, in Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, XIII, Nos. 1, 2; S. B. Weeks, *Historical Literature of North Carolina*, in Harvard University Library, *Bibliographical Contributions*, No. 48.

## § 103. Georgia.

**Summary.** — J. E. Oglethorpe and the English philanthropists. — Reasons for founding the colony apart from philanthropy. — 1732, Charter of Georgia: general grant of power; peculiarities of the charter. — Boundaries under the charter; extended in 1763. — 1733, Savannah settled; character of the early colonists. — Military history. — Land system, slavery, government, and religion. — 1752, Charter surrendered to the crown. — 1752–60, Georgia as a royal province.

**General.** — Charles C. Jones, in Winsor, *America*, V, 357–392; Lodge, *English Colonies*, 186–196; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, III, 140–169; G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), III, 417–446; (last revision), II, 281–299; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 362–369, 374–385.

**Special.** — C. C. Jones, *Georgia*, I; Stevens, *Georgia*. Lives of Oglethorpe have been written by T. M. Harris, Robert Wright, Bruce, and others. See also §§ 23, 25, 29.

**Sources.** — Hewatt's *South Carolina and Georgia*, in Carroll, *Historical Collections*, as above; Hugh McCall, *History of Georgia*, I; Tailfer, and others, *A True and Historical Narrative of the Colony of Georgia*, 1741, reprinted with other documents in Force's *Tracts*, I and II. The Georgia charter is in *Charters and Constitutions*, I, 369. See also *Colonial Acts of Georgia*, 1755–74; C. C. Jones, editor, *A Journal of the Transactions of the Trustees of Georgia; Journal and Letters of Eliza Lucas*.

**Bibliography.** — C. C. Jones, in Winsor, *America*, V.

## XI. MIDDLE COLONIES.

### § 104. New Netherland.

**Summary.** — Early voyages. — 1609, Henry Hudson and his explorations. — 1614, The United Netherland Company. — 1621, The Dutch West India Company; its objects and government. — 1629, The Charter of Privileges to Patroons. — The Dutch and the Indians. — Internal affairs. — 1647-64, Governor Stuyvesant; relations with the Swedes and English. — 1664-74, The English conquest. — Population, mode of life, industries, etc., in 1664. — Influence of the Dutch on American history. — Later history of the patroonships.

**General.** — B. Fernow in Winsor, *America*, IV, 395-409; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 339-369, 429-449; II, 115-164; Lodge, *English Colonies*, 285-295; G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), II, 256-313; (last revision), I, 475-518; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 235-238; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 136-149, 413-445.

**Special.** — Wm. Smith, *History of New York to 1732*; E. B. O'Callaghan, *New Netherland* (3 vols. to 1647); Brodhead, *History of New York* (Vol. I covers the Dutch period). See also § 23.

**Sources.** — *Documents relating to the Colonial History of New York* (11 vols.). *Documents relating to the History of the Colony of New York* (8 vols.). Read, *Henry Hudson* (many important original documents in the Appendix); Arber, *Henry Hudson, the Navigator*; Asher, *Henry Hudson* (Hakluyt Society, *Publications*, 1860), also in New York Historical Society, *Collections*, I, 61-188); Rev. Father Isaac Jogues, S. J., *Novum Belgium*, 1634-35, reprinted with notes by J. G. Shea. Read's *Henry Hudson*, abridged and edited by J. Goldschmid is in Clarendon Historical Society, *Publications*, 1883. On the later history, see New York Historical Society, *Collections*. De Vries, *Korte Historiae*, translated in New York Historical Society, *Collections*, III, 1-136; De Laet, *Nieuwe Wereld*, translated in New York Historical Society, *Collections*, New Series, I, 281-315 and II, 373; Van der Donk, *Beschrijvinge van*

*Nieuw Nederland*, translated in New York Historical Society, *Collections*, New Series, I, 125; Meleyn(?), *Breeden Roldt Aende Vereenichde Nederlandsche Provintien*, translated in New York Historical Society, *Collections*, New Series, III, 237-283; Wassenaer, *Description and First Settlement of New Netherland*, reprinted in *Collectanea Adamantæa*, XXVII; Jasper Dankers and Peter Sluyter, *Journal of a Voyage to New York*, etc., 1679-80, translated by H. C. Murphy in *Memoirs of the Long Island Historical Society*; Denton, *A Brief Description of New York*, 1670, reprinted with notes by Gabriel Furman. The commission to Stuyvesant as governor is in the *Historical Magazine*, III. For some of these documents see Higginson, *American Explorers*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, IV, 409-432 and 439-442.

### § 105. The English in New York.

**Summary.** — 1664 and 1674, Grants to James, Duke of York. — Governor Nicoll and the Duke of York's Laws. — 1683-88, Governor Dongan and the Charter of Liberties. — 1689-91, "Leisler's Rebellion." — 1732, Zenger's case. — 1741, The Negro Plot. — Population, modes of life, trade, management of the Indians, and character of the royal government in 1760.

**General.** — Lodge, 295-311; J. A. Stevens, in Justin Winsor, *America*, III, 385-411; B. Fernow in *ibid.*, V, 189-207; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, II, 319-354; III, 222-253; G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), II, 320-326, 405, 415-426; III, 50-65, (last revision), I, 518-527; II, 36-46, 339; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 445-447; II, 44-57, 76-78, 87, 91, 130, 138-140, 182-187, 192, 200-201, 226, 246, 315, 357-361, 391, 408.

**Special.** — Smith, *New York*, I, 50-282, 413-506; Brodhead, *New York*, Vols. II and III (to 1691) and the works enumerated in §§ 23, 25, 29.

**Sources.** — The grants to James, Duke of York, are in *Charters*, pp. 783 and 786. The "Duke of York's Laws" have been reprinted under that title by the State of Pennsylvania, also in New York Historical Society, *Collections*, I, 307-428. See also on the English conquest Sainsbury, *Calendar of State Papers, Colonial*, V. For Leisler's Rebellion, see the "Leisler Papers" in the New York Historical Society, *Fund Collections*, I; Chandler, *Criminal Trials*, I, 255; *Letter from a Gentle-*



man of the City of New York, 1698, reprinted in *Collectanea Adamantæa*, XXIII; *Clarendon Papers* in New York Historical Society, *Collections*, 1869; *Catholic Historical Researches*, II and following; John Miller, *Description of the Province and City of New York in 1695*, reprinted in the *Library of American Literature*, II, 209. Many interesting papers will be found in the last-named collection, and extracts of some documents are in Higginson, *Explorers*.—For Zenger's trial, see *A Brief Narrative of the Case and Tryal of John Peter Zenger*, N.Y., 1738; Howell, *State Trials*, XVII; Chandler, *Criminal Trials*, I, 151.—For the Negro Plot of 1741, see Daniel Horsmanden, *The New York Conspiracy, or a History of the Negro Plot*, N.Y., 1810; Chandler, *Criminal Trials*, I, 211.—For the controversies over the boundaries of New York, see *Report of the Regents of the University on the Boundaries of the State of New York*, Albany, 1874; Daniel J. Pratt, compiler, *Report on the Boundaries* (a continuation of the above), Albany, 1884; *Report of the Commissioners to ascertain and settle the Boundary Line between the States of New York and Connecticut*, Albany, 1861; *Report of the Regents' Boundary Commission upon the New York and Pennsylvania Boundary*, Albany, 1886.

**Bibliography.**—Winsor, *America*, III, 410-415; V, 240-242.

### § 106. New Jersey.

**Summary.**—1664 and 1674, Grants to Berkeley and Carteret; was the jurisdiction also granted?—1664, The Nicoll colonists.—The "Concessions."—1665, Settlement under Philip Carteret.—1672, Insurrection.—Disputes with the governors of New York.—1673, Berkeley sells his share.—1675-1701, The Friends in West Jersey; form of government, etc.—1682-83, Penn and others acquire East Jersey from the Carteret estate.—1702, New Jersey a royal province under the same governor as New York.—1738, Separated from New York.—1702-60, Material development.

**General.**—Lodge, *English Colonies*, 263-272; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, II, 472-480; G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), II, 315-319, 359-363, 410-414; III, 47-50; (last revision), I, 520-524; II, 31-33, 342; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 51-61, 207, 357, 361.



**Special.** — Wm. A. Whitehead, in Winsor, *America*, III, 420-449, and Fernow, in *ibid.*, V, 217-222; Whitehead, *East Jersey under the Proprietary Government*, and *Contributions to East Jersey History*. See other works enumerated under New Jersey in §§ 23 and 29; the comprehensive histories of Pennsylvania, such as the work of Proud, contain material relating to New Jersey.

**Sources.** — Samuel Smith, *History of the Colony of Nova-Caesaria, or New Jersey to 1721*, reprinted in 1877; Leaming and Spicer, *Grants, concessions, etc.*, reprinted in 1884; the *New Jersey Archives*, edited by Whitehead. — Among separate documents may be noted George Scot, *The Model of the Government of East New Jersey*, 1685, reprinted in New Jersey Historical Society, *Collections*, I; Gabriel Thomas, *An Historical Description of East New Jersey*, 1698, reprinted in 1848. See also § 29.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III and V.

### § 107. Settlement of Pennsylvania.

**Summary.** — 1623-64, The Dutch and Swedes on the west side of Delaware Bay and River. — 1664-81, The Swedish-Dutch settlements under the English. — Population in 1664 and 1681. — Influence of the early Swedish colonists on the development of the English colonies. — George Fox, the Friends or Quakers and their opinions. — William Penn, his early life and conversion; his connection with the colonization of New Jersey. — 1681, The Pennsylvania Charter, and the releases of the counties on the Delaware. — Rights of jurisdiction conferred. — The clause as to religion. — Boundary disputes (1) with the proprietaries of Maryland, the agreement of 1732, Mason and Dixon Line; (2) disputes with Connecticut, the Susquehanna controversy; (3) disputes with New York; (4) the western boundary of Pennsylvania.

**General.** — Lodge, *English Colonies*, 211-213; George Bancroft, *United States*, II, 326-397; Gay, *Bryan's Popular History*, II, 480-498; F. D. Stone, in Winsor, *America*, III, 469-495; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 62-75.

**Special.** — The Swedes : C. B. Keen, in Winsor, *America*, IV, 443-488 ; Vincent, *History of Delaware*. — The Friends : S. M. Janney, *History of the Society of Friends* ; Evans, *History of the Friends*. — Wm. Penn : Janney, *Life of Penn* ; Clarkson, *Memoirs of Penn* ; Dixon, *Life of Penn* (issued by Society of Friends). — Macaulay's charges against Penn are contained in his *History of England*, Chs. v, vii, and viii. For a defense of Penn against these charges see Janney's and Dixon's biographies of Penn ; W. E. Foster, *William Penn and T. B. Macaulay* ; Paget, *Inquiry into the Evidence, etc.* ; and other works mentioned in Note 3 to Winsor, *America*, III, 506. — For a very hostile view of Penn, see a paper by Dr. Archer, in Maryland Historical Society, *Fund Publications*, No. XX. The history of the southern boundary is traced from a Pennsylvanian point of view in Graham's *Report on Mason and Dixon Line*, and by J. Veech in his essay on *Mason and Dixon's Line*.

Histories of Pennsylvania : Robert Proud, *Pennsylvania* ; Gordon, *Pennsylvania* ; Bowden, *History of Friends in America*, Vol. II ; Egle, *An Illustrated History of Pennsylvania* ; George Smith, *History of Delaware County*. See also §§ 23, 25, 29.

**Sources.** — *Votes of the Assembly* ; Hazard, *Pennsylvania Archives* ; *Minutes of the Council* ; *The Duke of York's Laws* ; Bioren, *Laws of Pennsylvania* ; Dallas, *Laws of Pennsylvania* ; the Charter of Pennsylvania and the "Concessions" are in *Charters and Constitutions*, II, 1509-1516. See also Armstrong's edition of Thomas Budd, *Good Order Established in Pennsylvania and New Jersey, 1685*. — For the Swedes, see Keen, in Winsor, *America*, IV, 489 and following ; Acrelius, *History of New Sweden*, translated by Reynolds and printed by the Pennsylvania Historical Society ; Du Ponceau's translation of Holm, *Description of the Province of New Sweden, now called Pennsylvania* ; *Records of the Court of Upland*. — The Friends : Besse, *Sufferings of the People called Quakers* ; Sewel, *History of the Quakers*. See also § 23 under Delaware and Pennsylvania.

**Bibliography.** — F. D. Stone, in Winsor, *America*, III, 495-516. The authorities on the southern boundary dispute are enumerated in *ibid.*, p. 513. See also Maryland Historical Society, *Fund Publications*, No. XV.

## § 108. Pennsylvania and Delaware, 1685-1760.

**Summary.** — 1692-94, The government of Pennsylvania administered by the crown. — 1694, Penn restored. — 1681-1700, The early frames of government and the constitutional history of Pennsylvania. — 1701, The Charter of Privileges, its leading provisions, and its history. — Contest with the proprietaries as to taxation. — 1685-1760, Constitutional history of Delaware.

**General.** — Lodge, *English Colonies*, 213-226; Fernow, in Winsor, *America*, V, 208-217; Gay, *Bryan's Popular History*, III, 170-191; G. Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), II, 397-404; III, 35-46; (last revision), II, 24-30, 341; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 171, 172, 183, 186, 205-207, 242-245, 260, 320, 321, 342-345.

**Special.** — The works noted in §§ 23 and 107; biographies and works of Franklin noted in §§ 25 and 32. For the contest with the Connecticut grantees, see [Anon.], *The Susquehanna Title*; the histories of Wyoming and Luzern County noted in § 23; and the comprehensive histories of Pennsylvania, § 23. — Interesting material on the general subject of the Pennsylvania land system will be found in W. J. Buck, *The Indian Walk*; S. W. Pennypacker, *Hendrich Pennebecker, Surveyor of Lands for the Penns*; and in the works noted in §§ 23 and 32.

**Sources.** — The Frames of Government and the charter of 1701 are in *Charters and Constitutions*, II, 1518, and following. See also the collections of laws and documents mentioned in § 28; the *Penn and Logan Correspondence*, in Pennsylvania Historical Society, *Memoirs*, IX and X; [Anon.], *A True and Impartial State of the Province of Pennsylvania*; W. Smith, *A Brief State of the Province of Pennsylvania*; Cross, *Answer to a Brief State*; Gabriel Thomas, *Account of the Province and Country of Pennsylvania*, 1698, reprinted in 1848, also in *Library of American Literature*, II, 210.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, in his *America*, V, 242-249.

## XII. NEW ENGLAND.

### § 109. New England before 1620.

**Summary.** — Identifications of the places described in the sagas. — The story of Norumbega. — 1602-14, English, Dutch, and French explorers. — 1607, The Popham colony, its influence on the history of America. — 1614, Captain John Smith's voyage along the coast ; his map.

**General.** — Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 262-268, 327; J. G. Palfrey, *History of New England*, I, 51-100; *Compendious History of New England*, I, 4-7, 16; Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 14-23; Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, 1-30; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 90.

**Special.** — B. F. DeCosta, in Winsor, *America*, III, 172-184; Winsor in *ibid.*, III, 209. — For the Dutch voyages, see § 104; for the French explorations, see §§ 87 and 89; for the early English explorers, see §§ 94 and 96. References to the voyages of the Northmen are noted in § 81. See also the comprehensive histories of the New England States noted in § 23.

**Sources.** — *A Voyage to Sagadahoc*, and other documents, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, First Series, XVIII, 82; [Anon.], *The Relation of a Voyage into New England*, 1607, printed by the Gorges Society, with other material, as *The Sagadahoc Colony*, Portland, Me., 1892. — For Smith's voyage, see Smith, *Description*, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, Third Series, VI, 95; Force, *Tracts*, II; Arber, *English Scholar's Library*, XVI, 175-232; Deane's edition of Smith, *New England's Trials*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III, 211, and *Memorial History of Boston*, I, 50.

### § 110. The English Puritans.

**Summary.** — The Reformation in England. — Acts of Supremacy and Uniformity as amended by subsequent acts. — The Church of England of Elizabeth and Whitgift. — The English Roman Catholics. — The Puritan Non-Conformists and Separatists. —

Episcopacy, Presbyterianism, and Congregationalism, the Independents. — Religious persecutions under James I. and Charles I. — Emigrations to the Netherlands and to America. — The Puritans as political reformers. — Church and State in 1600. — Religious toleration and intolerance in Christendom in the first half of the seventeenth century.

**General.** — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 23-34; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 101-132; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 370-374; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 153; G. Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 177-193.

**Special.** — Curteis, *Dissent in its Relation to the Church of England* (Bampton Lectures for 1871); G. E. Ellis, *The Puritan Age and Rule*, and his chapter on the "Religious Element in New England," in Winsor, *America*, III; D. Mountfield, *The Church and the Puritans*; Douglas Campbell, *The Puritan in Holland, England, and America*; S. R. Gardiner, *History of England from the Accession of James I*, I, 146-159; II, 487; IV, 142-160; Marsden, *The Early Puritans*; J. R. Green, *History of the English People*, II; Froude, *Calvinism*; Buckle, *Civilization*; J. Brown, *The Pilgrim Fathers*.

**Sources.** — Masson, *Life of John Milton*; H. M. Dexter, *Congregationalism as seen in its Literature*; W. Walker, *The Creeds and Platforms of Congregationalism*; A. F. Mitchell, *The Westminster Assembly; The Westminster Confession of Faith*; C. A. Briggs, *American Presbyterianism*; Scharf, *Creeds of Christendom*; Brook, *History of Religious Liberty*; T. Fuller, *Church History*; Neal, *History of the Puritans*; Strype, *Life of Whitgift*; McCrie, *Life of John Knox*; Calvin, *Institutes*; Strype, *Life of Grindal*; F. Makower, *Constitutional History of the Church of England*.

**Bibliography.** — Ellis, in Winsor, *America*, III, 244; and H. M. Dexter, *Congregationalism as seen in its Literature*.

### § 111. The Pilgrims.

**Summary.** — The English Separatists at Gainsborough, Austerfield, and Scrooby; the pilgrimage to the Netherlands. — 1608-1620, The Leyden Congregation: John Robinson, William Brewster, William Bradford; Bradford's *Plymouth Plantation* as an historical authority; comparison with Winthrop's *Journal* and

Smith's *True Relation*. — Life at Leyden. — Another removal determined on. — Reasons for the second removal. — 1620, Agreements with the Virginia Company and with the Merchants Adventurers of London. — Negotiations with the English government.

**General.** — F. B. Dexter, in Winsor, *America*, III, 264-269; Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 34-47; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 374-386; George Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 194-206; John Fiske, *Beginnings of New England*; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 150-160.

**Special.** — Palfrey, *New England*, I, 147-174; Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, 31-72; H. M. Dexter, in *Sabbath at Home*, March and April, 1867; also his *Notes to Mourt's Relation*, and *Boston Daily Advertiser*, Dec. 22, 1885; S. R. Gardiner, *England since James I*, IV, Ch. xxxvi; J. Brown, *The Pilgrim Fathers of New England*.

**Sources.** — *Mourt's Relation* (Dexter's edition); William Bradford, *History of Plymouth Plantation* (for the history of the manuscript itself see Winsor, *America*, III, 286, and Winsor, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, First Series, XIX); Bradford, *Letter-Book*, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, First Series, III; Young, *Chronicles of the Pilgrim Fathers*; Morton's *New England's Memorial* (Congregational Board's edition).

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III, 283.

## § 112. Plymouth, 1620-1629.

**Summary.** — 1620, The Voyage of the *Mayflower*. — The *Mayflower* Compact. — Composition of the colony. — Plymouth settled. — 1621, Treaty with Massasoit, and subsequent relations with the Indians. — 1621 and 1622, Patents from the Council for New England. — Relations with the London merchants, with the Dutch, and with the other early colonists in the neighborhood. — Experience with communism, form of government, etc.

**General.** — F. B. Dexter, in Winsor, *America*, III, 269-278; Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 47-81; G. Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 206-214; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 386-428; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 176-232; Fiske, *Beginnings of New England*; Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, 72-148; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 160-174.

**Special.** — Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, First Series, III, 68–266; Alexander Young, *Chronicles of the Pilgrim Fathers; Mourt's Relation* (H. M. Dexter's edition); *Morton's Memorial*; Young, *Chronicles of Massachusetts*; F. Baylies, *Historical Memoir of the Colony of New Plymouth*; J. Thacher, *History of the Town of Plymouth*; Wm. S. Russell, *Guide to Plymouth*, and *Pilgrim Memorial*; J. A. Goodwin, *The Pilgrim Republic*.

**Sources.** — Wm. Bradford, *Plymouth Plantation; Mourt's Relation* (Dexter's edition); *Plymouth Colony Records*, XI, contains the laws passed in 1623–82. The Compact is in Mourt and Bradford, and also in *Charters and Constitutions*, I, 931. Portions of many important documents are in *Library of American Literature*, I.

**Bibliography.** — F. B. Dexter, in Winsor, *America*, III, 285 *et seq.*

### § 113. New Plymouth Colony, 1629–1691.

**Summary.** — 1629, Patent to Bradford and associates, — assigned to the freemen of New Plymouth in 1640–41. — Relations with the merchants. — Growth of the colony. — Meaning of the name New Plymouth. — 1643, Joins the Confederation of New England. — Development of institutions. — Mode of life, education, and religion in the colony. — 1643–91, Later history of the colony. — 1691, United with Massachusetts. — Was the union advantageous to Plymouth? — Population and material resources in 1691.

**General.** — F. B. Dexter, in Justin Winsor, *America*, III, 279–283; Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 72, 73, 222; II, 17, 102, 107, 114, 143, 188, 189, 246, 271, 290; G. Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 244, 289–295, 606; Fiske, *Beginnings of New England*; Palfrey, *New England*, III, 331–344, 539–547, 596–599; *Compendious History*, I, 141–147; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 174, 175.

**Special Works, Sources, and Bibliography**, as above, with the exception of Bradford, which stops at 1647, and with the addition of Brigham's *Laws of New Plymouth Colony*. A collection of the laws also forms Vol. XII of the *Plymouth Colony Records*. See also *Records of the Town of Plymouth*.



### § 114. The Council for New England.

**Summary.** — 1606, The Plymouth Company and its colonies. — 1620, The Grand Council for New England, and its charter. — Aims of the new corporation; Sir Ferdinando Gorges. — Grants made by the Council, especially those made (1622) to Robert Gorges, (1628 and 1629) to the Plymouth colonists, (1628) to the Massachusetts Company, (1629) to Captain John Mason (New Hampshire), (1629) to Gorges (Maine). — 1635, The great division. — 1635, Surrender of the patent to the crown.

**General.** — Charles Deane, in Winsor, *America*, III, 295-310; Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, 14-28, 67, 105, 123-155, 285-290, 452-460, 510; Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 76-78, 87, 144, 206, 322, 323; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 267, 316-338.

**Special.** — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, App. B.; Samuel F. Haven, *History of Grants under the Council for New England*, in Massachusetts Historical Society, "Lowell Lectures," p. 152; *Sir Ferdinando Gorges and his Province of Maine*, in "Prince Society Publications" for 1890, 3 vols. (contains, besides a memoir, Gorges's *Brief Relation*, *Brief Narration*, etc.).

**Sources.** — The Charter is in *Charters and Constitutions*, I, 951; *Records of the Council for New England*, 1622-23, 1631-38, are in American Antiquarian Society, *Proceedings*, 1867-68, pp. 59-131.

**Bibliography.** — Charles Deane, in Winsor, *America*, III, 340.

### § 115. Early Settlements in Massachusetts, 1620-1628.

**Summary.** — 1622, Weston's attempt at Wessagusset. — 1623, Robert Gorges's Colony. — Wollaston and Morton at Merry Mount. — Other settlements; Blaxton, Maverick, etc.

**General.** — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 74-81; C. F. Adams, in *Memorial History of Boston*, I, 63-86; Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, 149-173; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 199, 222, 232, 233, 289-290; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 410-428; G. Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 215-229; Fiske, *New England*; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 176-183.



**Special.** — C. F. Adams, *Three Episodes of Massachusetts History*, I, 1-194, and *Old Planters*, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1878, 194. See also on this and later history S. A. Drake, *The Making of New England*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III, 347.

### § 116. Origin of the Massachusetts Bay Company.

**Summary.** — 1622-23, The Dorchester Fishing Company. — 1623, Settlement at Cape Ann. — 1626, First settlement at Naumkeag. — 1628, Grant of Massachusetts from the Council for New England.

**General.** — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 83-90; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 283-288; Fiske, *New England*; G. Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 221-224; Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, 149-173.

**Special.** — Massachusetts Historical Society, "Lowell Lectures," 231-239; *Memorial History of Boston*, I, 87-98; *Life of John Winthrop*, I; Charles F. Adams, *Three Episodes of Massachusetts History*.

**Sources.** — F. Higginson, *New England's Plantation* and *A True Relation of the Last Voyage* are reprinted in Young, *Chronicles of Massachusetts*, and in part in Higginson, *American Explorers*; John White, *The Planter's Plea*, is reprinted in Young, *Chronicles of Massachusetts*, and in Force, *Tracts*, II.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III, 242.

### § 117. The Massachusetts Bay Company.

**Summary.** — 1629, The Royal Charter: how obtained, boundaries, powers of jurisdiction conferred, peculiar features of this charter, probable intentions of the parties to the grant. — The aims and purposes of the Massachusetts colonists; why did the majority of them come to America? — 1629, August 26, The Agreement at Cambridge, England. — London's Plantation in New England. — John Endicott and Francis Higginson. — John Winthrop, his early life and services to Massachusetts, his *History of New England*. — 1630, The Great Emigration, settlement of Boston and the neighboring towns.

**General.** — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 90-102; Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 224-237; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 288-329; Gay, *Bryan's Popular History*, I, 517-533; John Fiske, *New England*; Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, 174-195.

**Special.** — Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, I, Ch. ii; *Life and Letters of John Winthrop*, II; G. E. Ellis, *Puritan Age and Rule*; C. F. Adams, *Three Episodes of Massachusetts History*, I; Alice M. Earle, *Margaret Winthrop*.

**Sources.** — John Winthrop, *History of New England* (edited by J. Savage); *Life and Letters of John Winthrop*; J. White, *The Planter's Plea*, 1630, reprinted by Force, *Tracts*, II; Edward Johnson, *Wonder Working Providence of Sion's Savior in New England* (edited by W. F. Poole); T. Morton, *New English Canaan* (edited by C. F. Adams in Prince Society, *Publications*); R. Clap, *Memoirs*, reprinted with many other valuable documents in Young, *Chronicles of Massachusetts*, and separately by the Dorchester Society of Antiquity; Dudley's *Letter to the Countess of Lincoln* is in Young, *Massachusetts*, in Force's *Tracts*, II, and in Farmer, *New Hampshire Historical Collection*, IV; Samuel Maverick, *Description of New England* is in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, Second Series, I, 231; Wood, *New England's Prospect*, reprinted in Young, *Chronicles of Massachusetts*. The Cambridge Agreement is in many places: as *Winthrop's Life and Letters*, I; Young, *Chronicles of Massachusetts*, etc.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III, 348; Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, I.

### § 118. Early Massachusetts, 1630-1650.

**Summary.** — Form of government established under the charter; the magistrates and their power.— Rise of representative government; the franchise.— The land system; corporate rights.— Church and State; church government, synods.— Economic conditions.— Local government, its origin and form, town meeting and selectmen.— Education and social conditions.

**General.** — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 102-112; Barry, *Massachusetts*; Palfrey, *Compendious History*, I, 113-134, 271-300; Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 237-248; Gay, *Bryan's Popular History*, I, 533-541.

**Special.** — Representation: W. B. Weeden, *Quality the prevailing Element in Representation*, in American Antiquarian Society, *Proceedings*, Second Series, IV, 339; G. H. Haynes, *Representation and Suffrage in Massachusetts, 1620-1691*, in Johns Hopkins University-Studies, XII, Nos. 8, 9; Bishop, *Colonial Suffrage*.

On the origin of the New England town system: Melville Egleston, *Land Systems of New England*, reprinted in Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*; papers by C. F. Adams and others on *The Genesis of Massachusetts Towns* in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, Second Series, VII; Channing, *Town and County Government*; Howard, *Local Constitutional History*; Hannis Taylor, *Development of the English Constitution*; Bryce, *American Commonwealth*; W. F. Allen, *Essays* ("The Town and Parish"); W. B. Weeden, *Economic and Social History of New England*; Buck, *Ecclesiastical History*; Felt, *Ecclesiastical History*; Washburn, *Judicial History*; C. F. Adams, *Three Episodes of Massachusetts History*, Vol. II; H. B. Adams, *Germanic Origin of New England Towns*; Joel Parker, *Origin of New England Towns*, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1866; P. E. Aldrich *Origin of New England Towns*, in American Antiquarian Society, *Proceedings*, 1884; A. Johnston, *Genesis of Connecticut Towns*; Andrews, *River Towns of Connecticut*. On the early church organization, see G. L. Walker, *Thomas Hooker*, and on the general question of ecclesiastical system and its influence on the state, see P. E. Lauer, *Church and State in New England*, in Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, X, Nos. 2, 3. See also §§ 23, 29.

**Sources.** — *Records of the Governor and Company of the Massachusetts Bay*, edited by N. B. Shurtleff, six volumes; Vol. I, 1628-41; II, 1642-49; III, 1644-57; IV, Pt. I, 1650-60; Pt. II, 1661-74; V, 1674-86. The *Body of Liberties*, 1641, is in W. H. Whitmore, *Bibliographical Sketch of the Laws of the Massachusetts Colony*, and in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, Third Series, VIII, 216, and, with the comparison with Magna Charta drawn up by Winthrop and others, forms *American History Leaflet*, No. 25; *Colonial Laws of 1660 with Supplements to 1672*, edited by Whitmore (contains facsimiles of every page of the original printed edition and also the "Body of Liberties" of 1641); *Colonial Laws of 1672 with supplements to 1686*, facsimile edition issued under the supervision of W. H. Whitmore. These four publications give a complete view of the legislation under the old charter. John Cotton, *An Abstract of the Lawes of New England*, is reprinted in Force, *Tracts*, III. Records of Boston, Dorchester,

Charlestown, and Roxbury are in the *Reports of the Boston Record Commissioners* (W. H. Whitmore and W. S. Appleton); *Watertown Records* and Bond, *History of Watertown*; *Life and Letters of John Winthrop*, II, and especially the documents in the Appendix; Lechford, *Plain Dealing*, edited by J. H. Trumbull; Lechford's *Journal* printed by the American Antiquarian Society; John Child, *New England's Jonas cast up at London*, reprinted by Force, *Tracts*, IV, and separately with notes by T. R. Marvin; Nathaniel Ward, *Simple Cobbler of Agawam*, reprinted with notes by D. Pulsifer; Increase Mather, *Remarkable Providences*, 1684; Josselyn, *Two Voyages to New England* (1628 and 1663); Banks's edition of *A True Relation of the Estate of New England*, 1634; Wm. Wood, *New England's Prospect*, 1634; Trask, *Suffolk Deeds*, especially Vol. I; S. A. Green, *Records of Groton*; Nourse, *Early Records of Lancaster*; Hill, *Dedham Records*; S. Bates, *Records of the Town of Braintree*.

**Bibliography.** — The footnotes to the books noted under the heading "Special" in this section will give the leading sources.

### § 119. Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, 1630-1640.

**Summary.** — 1633-36, Roger Williams; his sojourn at Boston, Plymouth, and Salem; his ideas as to the validity of royal grants of land; his contention as to veils, as to the oath of fidelity, as to the proposed increase of Salem's land, etc. — Why was Roger Williams banished from Massachusetts? — 1636, Providence founded. — 1633-38, Anne Hutchinson and her religious views. — The Antinomians. — The Synod at Cambridge. — Vane and Winthrop. — 1637-38, Trial and banishment of the Antinomians. — Effects of the thrusting out of Williams and the Antinomians on the mental development of Massachusetts; how far is it just to hold the Puritans responsible? — 1638-39, Founding of the Rhode Island towns. — Constitutional history of Providence Plantations and of Rhode Island.

**General.** — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 113-140, 181-190, 236-246; Palfrey, *Compendious History*, I, 148-168, 195-213, 339-351; Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 249-256, 260-264; Fiske, *Beginnings of New England*; G. W. Greene, *Short History of Rhode Island*; Barry,

*Massachusetts*, I, 235-266, 317, 340; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 533-537, 541-547, 553-556; II, 38-49, 51, 68-99.

**Special.** — H. M. Dexter, *As to Roger Williams*; Prof. Diman, in *Narragansett Club Publications*, Vol. II; G. E. Ellis, in "Lowell Lectures" and *Puritan Age and Rule*; Arnold, *Rhode Island*; Chandler, *Criminal Trials*, Vol. I; Hosmer, *Young Sir Harry Vane*; C. F. Adams, *Three Episodes*, Vol. I; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 406-510; C. F. Adams, *Massachusetts Historians*, "Review" by W. F. Poole, in *The Dial*, February, 1894; C. F. Adams, Introduction to his edition of Welde's *Short History*; Brooks Adams, *Emancipation of Massachusetts*; Oliver, *The Puritan Commonwealth*; T. M. Merriman, *Pilgrims, Puritans, and Roger Williams*.

**Sources.** — Winthrop, *New England*; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, Accounts of Anne Hutchinson's trial are in Hutchinson, Vol. II, Appendix, and Chandler, *Criminal Trials*. See also T. Welde, *A Short History of the Rise . . . of the Antinomians* (Prince Society, Publications, 1894); *Early Records of the Town of Providence*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III, 368-384; J. R. Bartlett, *Bibliography of Rhode Island*.

## § 120. Rhode Island to 1665.

**Summary.** — Samuel Gorton and his struggle with Massachusetts. — 1643, Incorporation of Providence Plantations. — Form of first government. — 1663, The Rhode Island charter. — Peculiar features of Rhode Island institutions. — The "Rhode Island spirit."

**General.** — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 236-244, 267-273, 308-319; II, 127-130; Greene, *Short History of Rhode Island*, 18-54; Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 296-298, 362-365; Fiske, *New England*; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 289-291, 304, 305, 322, 323, 394-398, 405, 456, 457; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, II, 99-114; Barry, *Massachusetts*; Palfrey, *Compendious History*, I, 381-391; II, 48-54.

**Special.** — Arnold, *Rhode Island*, I; Brayton, *Defence of Gorton*; Palfrey, *New England*, II; Greene, *History of East Greenwich*; Staples, *Annals of Providence*; Knowles, *Memoir of Roger Williams*. On the franchise in Rhode Island, see Rider, *Rhode Island Tracts New Series*, No. 1. See also on the general topic §§ 23, 25, 29, 32.

**Sources.** — *Colonial Records of Rhode Island.* The "Incorporation of Providence Plantations" is in *Charters and Constitutions*, II, 1594; the charter of 1663 in *ibid.*, II, 1595. For Gorton's *Simplicities Defence*, see Force, *Tracts*, IV.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III, 368-384.

### § 121. Connecticut, 1638-1662.

**Summary.** — The Dutch and the Pilgrims on the Connecticut River. — Lords Brook, and Say and Sele. — 1635, Saybrook founded. — 1635-36 Emigration from Massachusetts; motives of the emigrants. — Early constitutional history. — 1638-39, The Fundamental Orders. — 1637, The Pequod War. — 1662, The Connecticut charter and form of government established under it. — Extent of the Connecticut grant.

**General.** — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 149-178, 223, 286, 287; Palfrey, *Compendious History*, I, 170-193, 233-236, 395-398; II, 39-48; Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 265-270; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 216, 229, 230, 237-241, 247-252, 286, 371, 456; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, I, 547-553; II, 1-27, 31-38; Fiske, *New England*; Barry, *Massachusetts*, I, 204-234.

**Special.** — Trumbull, *History of Connecticut*; G. L. Walker, *Thomas Hooker*; Barber, *Historical Collections*; Caulkins, *History of Norwich*; Hollister, *History of Connecticut*; Larned, *History of Windham County*; Bowen, *Boundary Disputes of Connecticut*; Charles M. Andrews, *The River Towns of Connecticut*, in Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, VII, Nos. 7-9. See also §§ 23, 29.

**Sources.** — Winthrop, *New England*; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts; Massachusetts Colony Records; Colonial Records of Connecticut.* For the Pequod War, see Mason's "History" in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, Second Series, VIII, 120-153; and Underhill, "News from America," in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, Third Series, VI, 1-28; Connecticut Historical Society, *Collections*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III, 368-375.

### § 122. New Haven Colony, 1638-1662.

**Summary.** — John Davenport and Theophilus Eaton, their aims and purposes in emigrating to New England. — 1638, New Haven founded, title to the soil. — The "Fundamental Articles." — Form of government of New Haven town and of the "Plantations in Combination therewith." — Material development of the colony. — 1662, New Haven included in Connecticut.

**General.** — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 190-200; II, 116-125; Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 271, 272; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 260-262, 286, 460; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, II, 27-31; Fiske, *New England*; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 528-534; *Compendious History*, I, 225-233, 398, 399; II, 39, 42.

**Special.** — Atwater, *History of New Haven Colony*; Lambert, *Colony of New Haven*; Levermore, *New Haven*; Trumbull, *Connecticut*; Leonard Bacon, *Historical Discourses*; *New Haven Colony Historical Society Papers*. See also histories of Connecticut enumerated in § 23.

**Sources.** — *Colonial Records of New Haven*. On the so-called "blue-laws," see Hinman, *Blue Laws of New Haven Colony*; *New Haven Records*, II; Trumbull's edition of *The True-Blue Laws and False Blue Laws Invented by the Rev. Samuel Peters*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III, 371.

### § 123. Northern Settlements, 1620-1660.

**Summary.** — Grants from the Council for New England. — Early settlements on the Piscataqua. — The founding of Exeter and Hampton. — Settlements in Maine. — Relations of these various settlements to Massachusetts.

**General.** — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 201-219; Palfrey, *New England*, I, 516-527; *Compendious History*, I, 214-224; Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 257-262; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 200, 201, 265, 271; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, II, 419-449; Fiske, *New England*.

**Special.** — Belknap, *New Hampshire*; Williamson, *Maine*; George Folsom, *History of Saco and Biddeford*; Willis, *History of Portland*,



*Memorial Volume of the Popham Celebration.* See also histories of Maine, New Hampshire, and Vermont noted in §§ 23, 29.

**Sources.** — *Provincial and Town Papers of New Hampshire*; *Collections of the New Hampshire Historical Society*; Farmer and Moore, *Historical Collections of New Hampshire*; *Documentary History of Maine*; the *Collections* of the historical societies of Maine and Massachusetts, see § 31; *York Deeds*, I; J. S. Jenness, *Transcripts of Original Documents relating to New Hampshire*, and the publications of the Gorges Society. See also § 29, under Maine, New Hampshire, and Vermont.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III, 363.

### § 124. The New England Confederation.

**Summary.** — Formation of the Confederation. — 1643, The Articles of Confederation. — Administration of the Confederation. — Relations with Rhode Island, with the Indians, and with the Dutch and French. — Dispute between Massachusetts and Connecticut. — Later history to 1684.

**General.** — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, I, 220–319; II, 155; Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 289–310; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, II, 49, 50, 373–387; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 285–334, 360–412, 448–506.

**Special.** — Palfrey, *New England*, I and II; Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*; C. C. Smith, in *Memorial History of Boston*, I, Ch. vii; J. Q. Adams, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, Third Series, IX, 187; Hubbard's *Massachusetts*, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, Second Series, V–VI, Ch. liii; Barry, *Massachusetts*.

**Sources.** — Winthrop, *New England*; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*. The Records of the Commissioners are in *Plymouth Colony Records*, IX and X, and in *Colonial Records of Connecticut*. The Articles of Confederation are in the above and in Bradford, *New Plymouth Plantation*; Brigham's *Plymouth Laws*; also, with brief extracts from Winthrop, Bradford, and the records, in *American History Leaflets*, No. 7.

**Bibliography.** — Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*; Winsor, *America*, III, 354; Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, I, 299.



## § 125. The Quakers.

**Summary.** — A comparison of the ideas of the Puritans and the Quakers. — 1656, The first Quakers arrive at Boston. — 1656–59, Advice of the Commissioners of the United Colonies. — Legislation in regard to the Quakers in Massachusetts, New Plymouth, Connecticut, Maryland, and Virginia. — 1659–60, Four Quakers executed in Massachusetts. — 1661, Laws against them modified. — Treatment of the Quakers in England and in the other colonies.

**General.** — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, II, 98–114; Palfrey, *New England*, II, 461–484; *Compendious History*, II, 1–20; Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 528–551; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 380, 399, 400–408, 472, 473; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, II, 165–199.

**Special.** — Hallowell, *Quaker Invasion of Massachusetts*; Joel Parker, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Lowell Lectures*; G. E. Ellis, in *Memorial History of Boston*, I; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*; C. F. Adams, *Three Episodes*; Brooks Adams, *Emancipation of Massachusetts*; Barry, *Massachusetts*.

**Sources.** — *Massachusetts Colony Records*; *Plymouth Colony Records*; *Laws of Plymouth and Massachusetts*; Sainsbury, *Calendar of State Papers, Colonial*, V; Chandler, *Criminal Trials*; Bishop, *New England Judged*; Besse, *Sufferings of the People called Quakers*; Sewel, *History of the Friends*; John Rous, *New England a Degenerate Plant*; Janney, *History of the Friends*; Gough, *Quakers*; Mather, *Magnalia*, Pt. II, Ch. iv; Paine's edition of *A Call from Death to Life*. The Quaker's Petition is reprinted in *Library of American Literature*, I.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III, 358; Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, I, 187.

## § 126. King Philip's War.

**Summary.** — Causes of the war. — 1675, The war begun, — 1676, August, Death of Philip. — 1675–78, Continuation of the conflict against the Eastern Indians. — Results of the war for Massachusetts and New Plymouth.

**General.** — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, II, 153–188; Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 382–394; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 476–491; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, II, 401–418.

**Special.** — Palfrey, *New England*, III, Chs. iv and v ; Barry, *Massachusetts* ; E. E. Hale, in *Memorial History of Boston*, I, Ch. ix.

**Sources.** — Hubbard, *Narrative of the Troubles with the Indians* ; Drake's edition of Increase Mather's *Brief History* ; and Henry M. Dexter's edition of Church's *Entertaining Passages*, I ; Fisher's translation of a *Report of a French Protestant Refugee in Boston*, 1689.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III, 360, and Mr. Winsor's "Note" in his *Memorial History of Boston*, I, 367.

### § 127. The Overthrow of the Massachusetts Charter.

**Summary.** — Early attempts to annul the charter. — Relations of the colony to England during the Puritan Rebellion. — Relations with the government of the Restoration. — The Regicides in New England. — 1664, The Royal Commissioners in New England. — 1676, Edward Randolph. — 1684, The charter vacated.

**General.** — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, II, 190-228 ; Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 395-407 ; Hildreth, *United States*, I, 489, 502-504 ; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, II, 373-387.

**Special.** — Charles Deane, in Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, I, Ch. x ; Palfrey, *New England*, III, Chs. iii, vii, viii, ix ; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, I, Ch. ii ; Barry, *Massachusetts*.

**Sources.** — Documents in supplementary volume of Hutchinson's *Massachusetts* ; *Massachusetts Colonial Records*, IV ; Sainsbury, *Calendar of State Papers, Colonial*, V ; Randolph's *Report* of 1676 is reprinted in Perry's *Historical Collection of the American Church, Massachusetts*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III, 362 ; Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, I, 352.

### § 128. The Tyranny of Andros.

**Summary.** — 1685, Joseph Dudley appointed president. — 1686, December, Andros governor-general of the Dominion of New England. — His powers, instructions, and policy with regard to land titles, the assessment and collection of taxes, and local government. — Andros in Rhode Island, Connecticut, and New York. — 1688, Andros's government extended to include New York. —

1689, The "Revolution" in New England, Andros deposed. — The provisional government. — 1691, The Province Charter.

**General.** — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, II, 230-276; Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), I, 590-607; II, 49, 50, 54, 55, 57, 61; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, II, 387-400; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 105-122, 142-144.

**Special.** — Palfrey, *New England*, III, Chs. xii, xiii, and xiv; William H. Whitmore, in Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, II, Ch. i, and Introduction to the *Andros Tracts*; Barry, *Massachusetts*; J. R. Brodhead, *Address before the New York Historical Society*, 1866.

**Sources.** — Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, I, Ch. iii; *The Andros Tracts*, in Prince Society, *Publications*, especially Edward Rawson and Samuel Sewall, *The Revolution in New England Justified, and the People thus Vindicated* (1691), also reprinted in *Library of American Literature*, IV 9; Byfield, *An Account of the Late Revolution*, also reprinted in Force, *Tracts*, IV, and *Library of American Literature*, II, 723; "S. E.," *Further Quæries upon the State of the New English Affairs*; "A. B.," *An Account of the Late Revolutions in New England*. The Province Charter is in *Charters and Constitutions*, I, 942-954.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, III, 362.

### § 129. The Witchcraft Delusion.

**Summary.** — General belief in witchcraft throughout the world. — Early cases in New England. — 1691-93, The special court, trials and executions. — 1696, Sewall's acknowledgment of error. — The psychological explanation of the belief in witchcraft.

**General.** — Doyle, *Puritan Colonies*, II, 101, 298-311; Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), II, 51, 58-66; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 145-167; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, II, 450-471; W. F. Poole, in Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, II, Ch. vi; Lowell, *Among my Books*.

**Special.** — Upham, *Lecture on Salem Witchcraft*; J. S. Pike, *The New Puritan*; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, II, 12-66; Palfrey, *New England*; Ellis, *The Puritan Age*, 556; Drake, *Annals of Witchcraft*; Barry, *Massachusetts*; Wendell, *Cotton Mather*, and a paper in the *Historical Collections of the Essex Institute*, XXIX; *Encyclopædia Britannica*, ninth edition, article on Witchcraft.

**Sources.**—*Records of the Salem Witchcraft*; Chandler, *Criminal Trials*, I, 67; Upham, *Salem Witchcraft*; Cotton Mather, *The Wonders of the Invisible World*, reprinted in *Library of American Literature*, II, 114; Calef, *More Wonders of the Invisible World*, reprinted in *Library of American Literature*, II, 167; Sewall's *Diary*.

**Bibliography.**—Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*, notes to Poole's chapter in Vol. II, and in American Antiquarian Society, *Proceedings*, X, 351.

### § 130. Provincial New England.

**Summary.**—1700-60, Contests between the royal governors and the House of Representatives in Massachusetts. — Financial schemes: paper money and land banks. — Influence of the royal officials on social and political life. — Religion, education, and literature.

**General.**—Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, III, 109-139, 192-221; Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), II, 67-69, 245-253, 262, 334, 337, 341, 348, 353, 401-405, 412; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 249, 250, 293-302, 345, 348, 350-354, 379-381; Lodge, *English Colonies*, 363-372, 381-384, 393-396, 401-405; Winsor, in his *America*, V, 99-144.

**Special.**—Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, II, 121-448; III, 1-82; Palfrey, *New England*, II; Palfrey, *Compendious History*, III, 152-469, IV, 1-284; Brooks Adams, *Emancipation of Massachusetts*; Baird, *Huguenot Emigration*; Lowell, *Among my Books* ("New England Two Centuries Ago"); Weeden, *Economic and Social History*; Wendell, *Cotton Mather*; Anderson, *Colonial Church*; Charles Chauncy, *A Letter from a Gentleman in Boston . . . concerning the State of Religion in New England*, 1742, reprinted by the Clarendon Historical Society, Barry, *Massachusetts*, II; Haliburton, *Rule and Misrule of the English in America*. — Paper money and banking: Winsor, in his *America*, V, 170, where the sources are enumerated; Andrew McF. Davis, *Provincial Banks: Land and Silver* (Colonial Society of Massachusetts, *Publications*, III); Felt, *Massachusetts Currency*; Potter and Rider, *Paper Money of Rhode Island* (*Rhode Island Historical Tracts*, No. 8). See also § 23.

**Sources** are enumerated in Winsor, *America*, V. See also the records of the New England States in § 29.

### XIII. EXPULSION OF THE FRENCH.

#### § 131. Conflict with France on the Seaboard.

**Summary.** — Employment of Indians by the French. — 1690, Seizure of Port Royal by the English, restored to France in 1697. — 1710, Port Royal again captured; Annapolis founded. — 1713, Acadia ceded to England by Treaty of Utrecht. — 1745, Louisburg captured by the New Englanders; 1748, restored to France. — 1713-54, Relations of the Acadians to the English. 1755, The Acadians removed. — 1758, Louisburg taken. — England supreme on the seaboard.

**General.** — C. C. Smith, in Justin Winsor, *America*, V, 407, 408; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 182, 193, 258-262, 265, 276, 317, 330-332, 394-400; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, II, 314, 322, 327; III, 45, 125, 192-221; Lodge, *English Colonies*, 8, 118, 119, 234, 235, 303, 306, 361, 363, 364, 368, 394, 404; Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), II, 175-185, 305-311, 425-434; A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union*, Ch. ii; Wm. W. Sloane, *French War and Revolution*, Chs. iii-v.

**Special.** — Parkman, *Frontenac and New France*, 208-285 and 335-387; Parkman, *A Half-Century of Conflict*; Parkman, *Montcalm and Wolfe*; McMullen, *The History of Canada*, Vol. I; Wm. Kingsford, *History of Canada*, II-IV; J. Belknap, *History of New Hampshire*; Hannay, *Acadia*; Drake, *History of the Five Years' French and Indian War* (1744-49). — On the capture of Louisburg (1745), see Parkman, *Half-Century*, II, 78-161. — On the removal of the Acadians (1755), see Winsor, in his *America*, V, 452; Parkman, *Montcalm and Wolfe*, I, 234; Hannay, *Acadia*, 383; P. H. Smith, *Acadia, a Lost Chapter*; *Harper's Magazine*, November, 1884; *The Nation*, October 30, 1884, January 22, 1885. See also Edouard Richard, *Acadia, Missing Links of a Lost Chapter in American History*.

**Sources.** — Louisburg, 1745: James Gibson, *A Journal of the Siege* (reprinted in Johnson's *Life of Gibson*); *An Accurate Journal* (attested

by Pepperrell). — Louisburg, 1758: *A Journal extracted from Amherst's and Boscarwen's Letters to Pitt*; see also *Ninth Report of Royal Commission on Historical Manuscripts*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, V, "Notes" by the editor, to Mr. Smith's chapter, pp. 420 and following.

### § 132. Struggle for the Possession of the Great Valleys.

**Summary.** — Claims of France and England to the interior. — 1749–53, France seizes the upper Ohio Valley. — 1754, Washington's surrender at Fort Necessity. — 1754, Albany Congress, § 142. — 1755, Braddock's defeat, other disasters. — 1756, War declared (the "Seven Years' War" in Europe). — 1756–57, French successes. — 1757, William Pitt, War Minister. — 1758, Capture of Forts Du Quesne and Frontenac, and Louisburg. — 1759, Capture of Ticonderoga, Niagara, and Quebec. — 1760, Conquest of Canada completed. — 1763, Peace of Paris.

**General.** — Winsor, in his *America*, V, 490–559; Parkman, *Conspiracy of Pontiac*, Ch. v; Lodge, *English Colonies*, 30–35, 209, 222, 307, 370, 493, 496, 506, 518; Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), II, 343, 361–366, 367–388, 419–425, 435–443, 450–565; Hildreth, *United States*, II, 433–496; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, II, 499–526; A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union*, Ch. ii; Sloane, *French War and Revolution*, Chs. vi–ix.

**Special.** — Parkman, *Montcalm and Wolfe*, Chs. v–vii, and ix; Lodge, *Washington*; Hinsdale, *Old Northwest*; Hibberd, *Wisconsin*; Dunn, *Indiana*; Kingsford, *History of Canada*, III, IV; George Warburton, *The Conquest of Canada*; Robert Christie, *History of Lower Canada*; R. Wright, *Life of Wolfe*; W. L. Stone, *Life and Times of Sir William Johnson*; W. E. Griffis, *Sir William Johnson and the Six Nations*. See also histories of the original states, noted in § 23.

**Sources.** — Celoron de Bienville, *Journal of an Expedition down the Allegheny and Ohio Rivers, 1749*, is in *Catholic Historical Researches*, II, III; Washington's *Journal and Works*; Pouchot, *Memoir upon the Late War, 1755–60* (edited by Hough); Winthrop Sargeant's edition of *The History of an Expedition against Fort Du Quesne in 1755*. Documents relating to this expedition are in *Magazine of American History*,

VIII, *Virginia Historical Register*, V; see also the *Official Records of Robert Dinwiddie, 1751-58*, in Virginia Historical Society, *Collections*, II, III. — For the war in the St. Lawrence Valley, see Brymner, *Dominion Archives*, Montcalm's *Journal* and Knox's *Journal*; *Reports of the Royal Record Commission*, etc. — For the Albany Plan of Union, Stephen Hopkins, *True Representation* (reprinted in *Rhode Island Tracts*, No. 9); *American History Leaflets*, No. 14. See also § 142.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, V, 560-611.

## XIV. THE REVOLUTION.

### § 133. The Colonies in 1760.

**Summary.** — The underlying causes of the Revolution : social, political, constitutional, economic, religious. — Population of the colonies. — Material resources. — Foreign trade. — Manufactures. — Rise of the legal profession. — Growth of political parties. — Constitutional relations with Great Britain.

**General.** — Channing, *The United States, 1765-1865*, Ch. i ; Higginson, *Larger History*, Ch. ix ; E. Eggleston, papers in the *Century Magazine* ; H. E. Scudder, editor, *Men and Manners in America One Hundred Years Ago* (Sans Souci series).

**Special.** — Lodge, *English Colonies*, Chs. ii, iv, vi, viii, x, xiii, xv, xvii, xxii ; Winsor, in his *America*, V ; Parton, introductory portions of his lives of *Franklin* and *Jefferson* ; C. F. Adams, *Three Episodes*, II, Chs. v-xiv ; Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, Chs. i-iv.

For English views of the relations of the colonies to England, see Seeley, *Expansion of England* ; W. E. H. Lecky, *England in the Eighteenth Century*, Ch. xii ; Lord Mahon, *History of England*, Ch. xliii ; and the histories of England, by Massey (Whig), Adolphus (Tory), Bright, and S. R. Gardiner. See also T. E. May (Lord Farnborough), *Constitutional History*, Ch. xvii ; Sir G. C. Lewis, *Government of Dependencies*, Chs. v and vi ; Merivale, *Colonization*.

**Sources.**<sup>1</sup> — POPULATION : F. B. Dexter, *Estimates of Population* (American Antiquarian Society, *Proceedings*, 1887). For other estimates, follow Dexter's footnotes and the following references : Lodge, *English Colonies*, pp. 44, 113, 148, 172, 197, 227, 273, 312, 408.

THE COLONIES IN GENERAL (see Part III, §§ 145-148) : Burke, *European Settlements in America* (in his *Works* and also separately) ; Huske, *The Present State of North America* ; William Douglass, *Summary of the British Settlements* ; Warden, *Statistical, Political and His-*

<sup>1</sup> In this and succeeding sections of Part II (§§ 133-142) it has been found desirable to enumerate under the head of Sources many books which are not contemporary writings, but are, nevertheless, almost indispensable in the absence of better material.



*torical Account*; Pownall, *A Memorial to the Sovereigns of Europe on the Present State of Affairs between the Old and the New World*; M. C. Tyler, *History of American Literature*; Thomas, *History of Printing*; Brewer, *Agriculture*, in *Harper's Magazine*, 1875-76; McCulloch, *A Dictionary, Geographical, Statistical, etc.*; Adam Anderson, *An Historical and Statistical Deduction of the Origin of Commerce*; MacPherson, *Annals of Commerce*; Beer, *The Commercial Policy of England toward the American Colonies*; Bernard, *Letters on the Trade and Government of America*; Bishop, *History of American Manufactures*; Swank, *History of the Manufacture of Iron*; Adam Smith, *Wealth of Nations*; Cunningham, *Growth of English Industry and Commerce in Modern Times*; Gee, *Trade and Navigation of Great Britain*; Channing, *The Navigation Laws* (American Antiquarian Society, *Proceedings*, 1889); *American History Leaflets*, No. 19; C. F. Bishop, *History of Elections in the American Colonies*, in Columbia University, *Studies in History*, etc., III, No. 1.

On topics dealing with ecclesiastical matters, see Anderson, *Colonial Church*; Perry, *Protestant Episcopal Church*, and *Papers Relating to the History of the Church*; Briggs, *American Presbyterianism*; *Narrative of . . . Imprisonment of Two Presbyterian Ministers . . . at the City of New York, 1707*; Backus, *History of the Baptists*; R. A. Guild, *Chaplain Smith and the Baptists*; Baird, *Huguenot Emigration to America*; G. D. Bernheim, *History of the German Settlements and of the Lutheran Church in North and South Carolina*; *Catholic Historical Researches*; I. A. Cornelison, *Religion and Civil Government in the United States*; I. D. Rupp, *Religious Denominations*; John Brown, *British Churches*, II; Benedict, *History of the Baptists*; J. G. Shea, *The Catholic Church in the United States*, I, II; Hodges, *Constitutional History of the Presbyterian Church*; *American Church History Series*; and several papers in Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*.

For the daily life of the people, see Maury, *Huguenot Family in Virginia*; Franklin's "Autobiography" in any edition of Franklin's *Works*; Alexander Graydon, *Memoirs of a Life chiefly passed in Pennsylvania (1752-1818)*; John Adams's "Diary" in his *Works*; Elkanah Watson, *Memoirs*; Burnaby, *Travels through the Middle Colonies (1759-60)*; Kalm, *Travels in North America*; Rochefoucauld, *Travels through the United States (1795)*; Robin, *New Travels through North America (1781)*; Chastellux, *Travels*; Brissot, *New Travels in the United States of America (1788)*; Smyth, *A Tour in the United States (1784)*; Claude Blanchard, *Journal*; Martha J. Lamb, *The Homes of America*. See also §§ 24, 33.

For the separate colonies, see the following works, and others enumerated in §§ 23, 24, 29, 32, 33, 34 :

NEW ENGLAND: Hildreth, *United States*, II, 559; Weeden, *Economic History*, Chs. xii-xvii; Felt, *Customs of New England*; Drake, *Nooks and Corners of the New England Coast*.

NEW HAMPSHIRE: *Provincial Papers of New Hampshire*; Belknap, *History of New Hampshire*; Sanborn, *History of New Hampshire*; Bouton, *Rambles about Concord*; Brewster, *Rambles about Portsmouth*.

VERMONT: *State and Provincial Papers of Vermont*; Williams, *History of Vermont*; Vermont Historical Society, *Collections*.

MASSACHUSETTS: *Acts and Resolves of the Province of Massachusetts Bay*; Barry, *Massachusetts*, II; Washburn, *Judicial History of Massachusetts*; *Medicine in Massachusetts*, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, Second Series, I; Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, Index Volume (the contents of the *Collections* may be learned from the indexes in the tenth volume of each series); Nason, *Life of Frankland*; Upham, *Salem Witchcraft*, Introduction; Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*; S. A. Drake, *Old Landmarks of Boston*. The social conditions can be further studied in the town records, especially in the following: *Weston Town Records, 1746-1803*; Boston Record Commissioners' *Reports* (Nos. 14, 16, 17, and 19 contain the *Boston Town Records* and the *Selectmen's Minutes, 1742 to 1763*).

RHODE ISLAND: *Laws of Rhode Island*; *Rhode Island Colonial Records*; Historical Society, *Proceedings*; Arnold, *History of Rhode Island*; Staples, *Annals of Providence*; *Newport Historical Magazine*; G. W. Greene, *History of East Greenwich*; *Westerly and its Witnesses*; W. E. Foster, *Life of Stephen Hopkins*.

CONNECTICUT: Hinman, *Antiquities of Connecticut*; Hollister, *History of Connecticut*; Barber, *Historical Collections of Connecticut*; *History of New London*; Caulkins, *History of Norwich*; *New Haven Historical Collections*; Connecticut Historical Society, *Collections*.

NEW YORK: *Acts of the Assembly of New York*; New York Historical Society, *Collections*; Smith, *History of New York*; Jones, *History of New York during the Revolution*; *Documents relating to the Colonial History of New York*; Wood, *Long Island*; *Historical Collections of Long Island*; Furman, *Antiquities of Long Island*; Furman, *History of Brooklyn*; Thompson, *History of Long Island*; Mandeville, *History of Flushing*; Valentine, *History of New York [City]*; *Memorial*

*History of New York [City]*; Denton, *Account of New York [City]*; Munsell, *Annals of Albany*; *An Account of a Journey to Niagara and Quebec*, 1765.

NEW JERSEY: Allinson, *Laws of New Jersey*; *New Jersey Archives*; Barber, *Historical Collections of New Jersey*; Elmer, *Constitutional Government of New Jersey*; Murray, *Notes on Elizabeth*; Hatfield, *History of Elizabeth*; G. Thomas, *History of Salem, West New Jersey*; Wickes, *History of Medicine in New Jersey*.

PENNSYLVANIA: *The Charters and Acts of the Province of Pennsylvania*; *Votes of Pennsylvania*; Hazard, *Pennsylvania Archives and Colonial Records*; Pennsylvania Historical Society, *Collections*; *Pennsylvania Magazine of History and Biography*; *Penn and Logan Correspondence*; Proud, *History of Pennsylvania*; Egle, *Pennsylvania*; Scharf, *History of Philadelphia*; Watson, *Annals of Philadelphia*; Smith, *History of Delaware County*; *Life and Works of Benjamin Franklin*; Michaux, *Travels*; *History of the University of Pennsylvania*.

MARYLAND: Bacon, *Laws of Maryland*; Maryland Historical Society, *Proceedings and Fund Publications*; *Histories of Maryland*, by Scharf (Vol. II), McMahan, McSherry, and Browne; Neill, *Terra Maria*; Johnston, *History of Cecil County*; Jacob, *Life of Cresap*; Griffiths, *Annals of Baltimore*; Ridgely, *Annals of Annapolis*; Eddis, *Letters from America*; *Correspondence of Governor Sharpe, 1752-61*; T. C. Gambrall, *Church Life in Colonial Maryland*.

VIRGINIA: Hening, *Laws of Virginia*; Campbell, *History of Virginia*; Beverly, *Virginia*; Burk, *Virginia*, Vol. III; Jefferson, *Notes on Virginia*; Meade, *Old Churches and Families of Virginia*; Foote, *Sketches of Virginia*; Semple, *The Baptists in Virginia*; Kercheval, *History of the Valley of Virginia*; Peyton, *History of Augusta County*; Maury, *Huguenot Family*; R. A. Brock, *Huguenot Emigration to Virginia* (Virginia Historical Society, *Collections*, Vol. V); Hartwell, Blair, and Chilton, *Present State of Virginia*; Jones, *Present State of Virginia*; Dinwiddie's papers in Virginia Historical Society, *Collections*, New Series, Vols. II and III; E. Ingle, *Local Institutions of Virginia*; and Channing, *Town and County Government*. See also biographies and writings of Washington, Jefferson, Henry, Mason, and Madison.

NORTH CAROLINA: *Archives of North Carolina*, edited by Saunders; Iredell, *Laws of North Carolina*; Martin, *History of North Carolina*;

Williamson, *History of North Carolina*; Wheeler, *Historical Sketches of North Carolina*; Lawson, *Descriptions of North Carolina*; Bernheim, *German Settlements in North and South Carolina*.

SOUTH CAROLINA: Grimké, *Laws of South Carolina*; Cooper, *Laws of South Carolina* (contains the Statutes at Large arranged topically); Ramsay, *History of South Carolina*; Logan, *History of the Upper Country of South Carolina*; Mills, *Statistics of South Carolina*; Glen (governor of the colony), *Answers to the Lords of Trade* is in De Brahm, *Documents* [relating to] *South Carolina*; Glen, *Description of South Carolina* is in Carroll's *Historical Collections*, II (which also contain contemporary accounts by Purry, Milligan, Archdale, etc.). See also *The Charleston Year-Books*.

GEORGIA: Historical Society, *Collections*, the histories of the colony by C. C. Jones, McCall, and Stevens; White, *Statistics of the State of Georgia*; White, *Historical Collections of Georgia*; Lee, *History of Savannah*; Strobel, *The Salzburgers*; Miller, *Bar and Bench*; Moore, *Voyage to Georgia*.

**Bibliography.**—Winsor, *America*, Vol. V (the Index, under the names of the several colonies, indicates the portions of the volume devoted to bibliography); Lodge, *English Colonies* (footnotes to the chapters cited at the head of this section); Perkins, *Check-list of American Local History*. Convenient lists are appended to the several volumes of the *American Church History Series*.

### § 134. Passive Resistance, 1761-1766.

**Summary.**—1761, Writs of Assistance.—1763, The Parson's Cause.—1763, Pontiac's Conspiracy.—1764, Revision of the trade laws.—1765, Stamp Act passed.—Was it constitutional?—Reception in the colonies.—1765, The Stamp Act Congress, its importance as a precedent.—Condition of political parties in England.—The first Rockingham Ministry.—1766, The Act repealed.—The Declaratory Act.

**General.**—Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, Ch. v; Lecky, *England*, Ch. xii; Mellen Chamberlain, in Winsor, *America*, VI, 1-34; Channing, *The United States, 1765-1865*, Ch. ii; George Bancroft, *United States* (last revision); Hildreth, *United States*; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*.

**Special.** — ON THE SECTION AS WHOLE: Mahon, *England*, Chs. xliii–xlv (omitting portions relating to America in general and to English politics); Ramsay, *History of the American Revolution*; Grahame, *History of the United States*, IV; Gordon, *History of the American Revolution*; Holmes, *Annals*; Mrs. Warren, *History of the Rise*, etc.; Pitkin, *Political History of the United States*; Wm. Kingsford, *History of Canada*, V.

WRITS OF ASSISTANCE: Horace Gray in Appendix I (especially p. 540) to Quincy's *Reports of Massachusetts Bay, 1761–72*, and *ibid.*, p. 51; Weeden, *Economic and Social History of New England*, II, Ch. xviii; Tudor, *Life of James Otis*; Minot, *History of Massachusetts*, II; Hutchinson, *History of Massachusetts*, III; Barry, *Massachusetts*, III.

THE PARSON'S CAUSE: Lives of Patrick Henry, by William Wirt, M. C. Tyler, and W. W. Henry, especially the latter's work, Vol. I; Campbell, *Virginia*, 507; Hening, *Laws of Virginia*; Burk, *History of Virginia*; Maury, *Huguenot Family*.

THE STAMP ACT: Mahon, *England*, Chs. xliii and xlv; Massey's and Adolphus's *Histories of England*; *The Rockingham Papers*; *The Grenville Papers*, Vol. II; *Correspondence of William Pitt, Earl of Chatham*; *Bedford Correspondence*; Almon's *Papers*; Walpole, *Letters*; *Works of Edmund Burke*; Campbell, *Lives of the Lord Chancellors and Lives of the Lord Chief Justices* (Camden and Mansfield); *Parliamentary History*; Rogers, *Protests of the Lords*; Fitzmaurice, *Life of Shelburne*; Wells, *Life of Samuel Adams*; Hosmer, *S. Adams*; and lives of Otis, Hutchinson, John Adams, and Henry, especially W. W. Henry's *Patrick Henry*, Vol. I; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, III; P. O. Hutchinson, *Governor Hutchinson*, I. Franklin's examination is in his *Works*. For the Stamp Act Congress see *Account of the Proceedings of the Congress held in New York in 1765*, reprinted in Niles, *Principles and Acts*, and elsewhere.

**Sources.** — STATEMENTS OF THE AMERICAN THEORY: James Otis's speech on Writs of Assistance in Quincy, *Reports*, as above; Tudor, *Life of Otis*; Minot, *History of Massachusetts*; and see also S. A. Green in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, December 11, 1890; James Otis, *Vindication of the Massachusetts House of Representatives*; James Otis, *The Rights of the British Colonies Asserted and Proved*, 1764; Stephen Hopkins, *The Rights of Colonies Examined*, 1765; Richard Bland, *Enquiry into the Rights of the British Colonies*, 1769; S. Adams, or Otis, or both, *Vindication of the Town of Boston*,

1769; John Dickinson, *Letters of a Farmer in Pennsylvania*, 1767-68; *The Instructions of the Town of Boston*, adopted May, 1764 (usually ascribed to S. Adams); Patrick Henry, *Virginia Resolutions against the Stamp Act*, 1765, in Henry's *Henry* and many other places; *Resolves of the Stamp Act Congress*, October, 1765; *Resolves of the Massachusetts House of Representatives*, October, 1765; *Virginia Resolves*, 1769; Jefferson, *Summary View*, 1774, reprinted in *American History Leaflets*, No. 11; Alden Bradford, *Massachusetts State Papers*. See also J. B. Thayer, *Cases on Constitutional Law*, 1-47; Brinton Coxe, *An Essay on Judicial Power and Unconstitutional Legislation*; Charles Borgeaud, *The Rise of Modern Democracy in Old and New England*; Frederick Pollock, *The History of the Science of Politics*, reprinted in several editions, from the *Fortnightly Review*, August, 1882-January, 1883; Sir G. C. Lewis, *The Government of Dependencies and Methods of Observation in Politics*; Stevens, *The Sources of the Constitution of the United States*.

These writers frequently refer to the earlier English writers on the theory of government, especially to John Locke, *Two treatises on Civil Government*, Book II; Richard Hooker, *The Laws of Ecclesiastical Polity*, Books I and VI; Algernon Sidney, *Discourses on Government*; James Harrington, *The Commonwealth of Oceana*; Blackstone, *Commentaries*; Coke, *Institutes*. See also Hobbes, *Philosophical Rudiments concerning Government and Society* and *The Leviathan*; Machiavelli, *Discourses on the First Decade of Livy*; Filmer, *Patriarcha*; *The Works of King James*; and the *Agreement of the People, Instrument of Government* and *Petition and Advice*, in S. R. Gardiner, *Documents of the Puritan Revolution*, and in the *Old South Leaflets*. A more radical form of the *Agreement of the People* is in Borgeaud, *Democracy*, and Gardiner, *Great Civil War*, III, Appendix; Chapter ix of the latter volume contains a detailed narrative of the formation of the Agreement and a comparison of some of its leading features with American constitutions.

The French work which produced most influence on the formation of opinion at this early period (1760-76) is Montesquieu, *Esprit des Lois* (numerous translations under the title of *Spirit of Laws*).

The Stamp Act (5 George III, Ch. xii) is in many places, among others in *American History Leaflets*, No. 21. The copy in Lossing's *Field-Book of the Revolution*, II, 672, is imperfect.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VI, Ch. i, footnotes and "Editorial Notes." See also Winsor, *Hand-Book of the American Revolution*.



§ 135. **Active Resistance, 1767-1774.**

**Summary.** — 1767, The Chatham-Grafton ministry. — The Townshend Acts: (1) laying duties on certain imported commodities, (2) reorganizing the Colonial Customs Service, (3) providing for the quartering of troops, (4) instituting Courts of Admiralty. — 1768, Seizure of the sloop *Liberty*. — 1769, The Virginia Resolves. — 1770, "Boston Massacre." — 1771, Partial repeal of the act levying customs duties. — 1772, Burning of the *Gaspee*. — The Commission of Inquiry. — 1773, Virginia Resolves. — 1773, Destruction of the tea at Boston. — 1774, Four Acts of Parliament: (1) Boston Port Act, (2) Massachusetts Government Act, (3) Impartial Administration of Justice Act, (4) Quebec Act. — 1774, The First Continental Congress. — The American Association, its importance from a constitutional point of view.

**General.** — Lecky, *England*, Ch. xii; Mellen Chamberlain, in Winsor, *America*, VI, Ch. i; Channing, *The United States, 1765-1865*, Ch. ii; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*; Lodge, *English Colonies*, Ch. xxiii; George Bancroft, *United States*; Hildreth, *United States*; Wm. Kingsford, *History of Canada*, V.

**Special.** — Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, Chs. vi-viii; Mahon, *England*, Chs. xlv-l (omitting portions dealing with English politics); Massey, *England*; Adolphus, *England*; Barry, *Massachusetts*; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*.

The history of this time must be studied in the biographies and writings of the leading men, see §§ 25, 32, 33, 34. In the following paragraphs the most important of these works for the student of this period are brought together:

John Adams: *Life and Works* (10 vols.), edited by C. F. Adams (the *Life* by the editor forms Vol. I, the Diary and Autobiography are in Vols. II and III). Biography by J. T. Morse, Jr., in *American Statesmen Series*. See also *Familiar Letters of John Adams and his Wife during the Revolution* and *Letters of Mrs. Adams*, both edited by C. F. Adams.

Samuel Adams: *Life and Works* (3 vols.), edited by William V. Wells. Biography by J. K. Hosmer in *American Statesmen Series*.

John Dickinson: *Life and Letters* (2 vols.), by Stillé.

Benjamin Franklin: *Works* (10 vols.), edited by Jared Sparks; *Writings* (10 vols.), edited by John Bigelow; *Life and Writings* (4 vols. arranged topically), edited by W. T. Franklin—a very useful edition for the student; *Life of Benjamin Franklin written by himself* (2 vols.), edited by John Bigelow. Biographies by J. B. McMaster in *American Men of Letters Series*, and by J. T. Morse, Jr., in *American Statesmen Series*.

Alexander Hamilton: *Works* (9 vols.), edited by H. C. Lodge. Biographies by J. T. Morse, Jr., (2 vols.), and by H. C. Lodge in *American Statesmen Series*.

Patrick Henry: *Life and Speeches* (3 vols.), by W. W. Henry. See also biographies by William Wirt and M. C. Tyler, the latter in *American Statesmen Series*.

Stephen Hopkins: *Life* by W. E. Foster forming Nos. 19 and 20 of *Rhode Island Historical Tracts*.

John Jay: Biographies by William Jay and George Pellew, the latter in *American Statesmen Series*.

Thomas Jefferson: *Writings* (10 vols.), "Congress Edition"; new edition edited by Ford (Vols. I–III cover the Revolutionary period). Biographies by Randall (3 vols.), Tucker (2 vols.), Parton, and J. T. Morse, the last in *American Statesmen Series*.

R. H. Lee: *Life* by R. H. Lee.

George Mason: *Life* (2 vols.), by K. M. Rowland.

James Otis: *Life* by Tudor.

Timothy Pickering: *Life* (3 vols.), by O. Pickering and C. W. Upham.

Josiah Quincy, Jr.: *Life* by J. Quincy.

George Washington: *Writings* (12 vols.), edited by Jared Sparks; also an edition (12 vols.), edited by W. C. Ford; *Correspondence of the Revolution, being Letters to Washington* (4 vols.), edited by Sparks. Biographies by John Marshall (4 vols.), Irving (3 vols.), Sparks (forming the first volume of his edition of the *Writings*), and Lodge in *American Statesmen Series* (2 vols.).

Biographies of less prominent persons are in Sparks, *American Biography*; Sanderson, *Signers of the Declaration of Independence*; Elizabeth F. Ellet, *The Women of the American Revolution*; Charles C. Jones, Jr., *Biographical Sketches of the Delegates of Georgia to the Continental Congress*; Thomas Wyatt, *Memoirs of the Generals, Commodores . . . during the Wars of the Revolution and of 1812*. The *Southern Literary Messenger* contains many collections of letters and other material relating to this period.



For critical estimates of some of the leading men, see Theodore Parker, *Historic Americans*. Mason L. Weems's biographies of Washington and Franklin, are interesting as showing the origin of many of the stories connected with these men.

**Sources.**—THE TOWNSHEND ACTS, 1767: Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, 204; the leading histories of England, as above; *Parliamentary History*, XVI; Cavendish's *Debates*, 1768-1770. The Acts, technically known as 7 George III, Chs. 41, 46, etc., are in *Statutes at Large*, Vol. VIII. See also *Scots' Magazine*, XXX; *Gentlemen's Magazine*, XXXVIII; *Annual Register*; *Grenville Papers*; *Chatham Correspondence*; Fitzmaurice, *Life of Shelburne*; Albemarle, *Life of Rockingham*; Russell, *Life of C. J. Fox*; Edmund Burke, *Works*; Burke, *Two Speeches on Conciliation with America*; Almon, *Prior Documents*; Alden Bradford, *Massachusetts State Papers*; *Boston Town Records*; biographies of Otis, the Adamses, etc.; Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, Fifth Series, Vol. IX. For a notice of Townshend, see *Encyclopædia Britannica*, Vol. XXIII.

SEIZURE OF THE SLOOP LIBERTY, 1768: John Adams, *Works*, III; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, III, and the works mentioned under "Special."

"THE BOSTON MASSACRE," 1770: Frothingham, *Life of Warren and Rise of the Republic*; John Adams, *Works*; Kidder, *The Boston Massacre*; Chandler, *American State Trials*; Winsor, *Memorial History of Boston*. An account, from the American standpoint, is entitled: *Short Narrative of the Horrid Massacre in Boston*; Joseph Warren's oration on the 6th of March, 1775, is reprinted in *Library of American Literature*, III, 256. See also the standard works, as above.

VIRGINIA RESOLVES, 1769: Frothingham, *Republic*, 233; W. W. Henry, *Life of Patrick Henry*, I; the biographies and writings of the Virginia statesmen and the standard histories of Virginia. The Resolves are in Frothingham, *Republic*, 236, note.

THE GASPEE, 1772: Staples, *Documentary History of the Destruction of the Gaspee*; Bartlett, *History of the Destruction*, etc. (most of the material found in this volume is also in *Rhode Island Colonial Records*, VII); Rhode Island Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1890-91; Arnold, *Rhode Island*, II; Parton, *Life of Jefferson*; Lossing, *Field-Book of the Revolution*, II.

VIRGINIA RESOLVES, 1773: Frothingham, *Republic*, 279; Staples, *History of the Destruction of the Gaspee*; Greene, *Life of Nathanael Greene*, I; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, III; Wells, *Life of S. Adams*. Lives of Jefferson by Parton, Randall, and see also either of the editions of the *Works of Jefferson*. The Resolves are in Frothingham, *Republic*, 280.

THE TEA ACT, 1773: Frothingham, *Republic*, 296; Frothingham, *Life of Warren*; Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, 1864-65; and *Collections*, Fourth Series, Vol. III; *Works of Franklin*; *Life of Arthur Lee*; *Parliamentary History*; Donne, *Correspondence of George III*; *Annual Register*; the standard histories.

THE ACTS OF 1774: Frothingham, *Republic*, 344; Mahon's and Lecky's *Histories*; *Parliamentary History*; *Protests of the Lords*; Donne, *Correspondence of George III*; Russell, *Life of C. J. Fox*.

THE QUEBEC ACT: Wm. Kingsford, *History of Canada*, V, Ch. vii. The Act itself is in *ibid.*, V, p. 256; Cavendish, *Debates on the Canada Bill in 1774* (London, 1839); Lecky, *England*; and the writings of the leading American statesmen of the time. See also Burke's *Works*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VI, footnotes to Chapter i and the "Editorial Notes" to that chapter. See also Winsor, *Hand-Book of the American Revolution*.

### § 136. Revolution Precipitated, 1772-1776.

**Summary.** — 1772-73, Committees of correspondence. — 1773, "The Hutchinson Letters." — 1774-75, Affairs in Massachusetts. — 1775, April 19, Lexington and Concord. — 1775, May, Capture of Ticonderoga. — 1775, June 17, Bunker Hill. — 1775, June, Congress assumes control of the army before Boston and appoints Washington commander-in-chief. — April, 1775 to March, 1776, Siege of Boston. — 1775-76, Invasion of Canada. — 1776, Clinton's attack on Charleston, S. C.

**General.** — Higginson, *Larger History*, Ch. x; Winsor, in his *America*, VI, Ch. ii; Lecky, *England*, Ch. xii; Lodge, *English Colonies*; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*.

**Special.** — George Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), Vols. VII and VIII; Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, Chs. ix and x;

Mahon, *England*, Chs. li-liii; and the other standard works mentioned under § 134, especially those of Grahame, Gordon, and Ramsay; Moore, *Diary of the American Revolution*; Jones, *New York in the Revolutionary War* (gives the views of an American Loyalist—with valuable notes by the editor, E. F. DeLancey); Niles, *Principles and Acts* (contains a mass of information); Wm. Kingsford, *History of Canada*, V, VI. See also §§ 23, 24, 25, 32, 33.

MILITARY HISTORIES covering the whole field: Lossing, *Field-Book of the Revolution* (2 vols., arranged topically with no regard to sequence of events); Dawson, *Battles of the United States* (2 vols., gives many important documents); Carrington, *Battles of the American Revolution* (1 vol., a good compendious account from a military point of view); Beatson, *Naval and Military Memoirs of Great Britain*; Stedman, *History of the American War*.

**Sources.**—THE HUTCHINSON LETTERS: *Copy of Letters sent to Great Britain by Thomas Hutchinson*, etc., reprinted in *Franklin before the Privy Council*. Franklin's statement of the matter is in his *Works* (Sparks's edition, Vol. IV). See also P. O. Hutchinson, *Life and Letters of Thomas Hutchinson*; J. K. Hosmer, *Life of Thomas Hutchinson*; biographies of Franklin; and the standard histories, both American and English.

LEXINGTON AND CONCORD, 1775: The official account compiled for the Provincial Congress of Massachusetts is in *Journals of the Provincial Congresses*, pp. 661 and following. See also Force, *American Archives*, II, where several English accounts are also given; Frothingham, *Siege of Boston*; Hudson, *History of Lexington*; Phinnéy, *Battle of Lexington*; Shattuck, *History of Concord*. S. A. Drake, *Historic Fields of Middlesex*, is useful in the identification of localities.

SIEGE OF BOSTON, 1775-76: Frothingham, *Siege of Boston* and *Life of Joseph Warren*; *Centennial Celebration* printed by the city of Boston; *Memorial History of Boston*; Barry, *Massachusetts*, III; Paige, *History of Cambridge*; Drake, *History of Roxbury*; *Washington's Writings*; biographies of Washington, Nathanael Greene, William Heath, John Warren, George Read, Joseph Reed, John Knox; Thacher, *Military Journal*; Force, *American Archives*, V and VI.

BUNKER HILL, 1775: Frothingham, *Siege of Boston*, *Life of Warren*, and *Battle-Field of Bunker Hill*; *Historical Magazine* (edited by H. B. Dawson), June, 1868; Thacher, *Military Journal*; Barry, *Massachu-*

sets; Stark, *Memoir of General Stark*; Daniel Putnam, *Account of the Battle of Bunker Hill . . . with a Letter to Major-General Dearborn repelling his unprovoked Attack on . . . Israel Putnam*; Humphreys, *Life of Putnam*; G. E. Ellis, *Sketches of Bunker Hill Battle*; Force, *American Archives*, IV; Fonblanque, *Life of Burgoyne*; the standard histories, especially Gordon and Mahon, and the military histories, especially Dawson, *Battles of the United States*.

TICONDEROGA, 1775: Barry, *Massachusetts*; Holland, *Western Massachusetts*; Smith, *History of Pittsfield*; Jones, *New York in the Revolutionary War*; Lossing, *Life of Schuyler*; Hollister, *History of Connecticut*; *Connecticut Historical Collections*, Vol. I; Dawson, *Battles of the United States*; Ethan Allen, *Narrative*, etc.; Arnold, *Life of Benedict Arnold*.

INVASION OF CANADA, 1775-76: Armstrong, *Life of Montgomery* (in Sparks, *American Biography*); Arnold, *Life of Benedict Arnold*; Graham, *Life of Daniel Morgan*; Sparks, *Correspondence of the Revolution* (for Arnold's letters to Washington); Parton, *Life of Aaron Burr*; J. J. Henry, *Accurate Account*, etc.; Meigs's *Journal* in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, Second Series, Vol. II; Wild's *Journal* in *ibid.*, *Proceedings*, April, 1886 (edited with bibliographical notes by J. Winsor). See also the standard works, as above, especially Ramsay, Lossing, and Dawson; Lossing, *Life of Schuyler*; Hollister, *Connecticut*; Force, *American Archives*, III.

ATTACK ON CHARLESTON, 1776: Sparks, *Correspondence of the Revolution*; Moultrie, *Memoirs*; Ramsay, *Revolution of South Carolina*; Gibbes, *Documentary History*; Drayton, *Memoirs*; Clinton, *Observations on Stedman's History*. See also the standard works, as above, especially Dawson, Lossing, Jones, and Adolphus.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor in his *America*, VI; Winsor, *Hand-Book of the American Revolution*; Frothingham, *Siege of Boston* (footnotes).

### § 137. The Declaration of Independence, 1774-1776.

**Summary.** — The Continental Congresses, their powers and constitutional positions. — 1775-76, Growth of the desire for separation. — 1775-76, May and June, Organization of state governments. — 1776, May, Virginia Resolves. — June, R. H. Lee's resolutions. — July 2, Resolution declaring the United

Colonies independent. — July 4, Adoption of the great Declaration. — July 5, The Declaration published, and August 2, signed. — Constitutional position of the Declaration. — The political theories set forth therein.

**General.** — Higginson, *Larger History*, Ch. xi; Lecky, *England*, Ch. xiv; Higginson, in *Scribner's Magazine*, July, 1876; John Fiske, *American Revolution*.

**Special.** — Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*; George Bancroft, *United States*; G. T. Curtis, *History of the Constitution*; Story, *Commentaries on the Constitution*; George Tucker, *History of the United States*; Pitkin, *United States*; George Chalmers, *Introduction to the History of the Revolt* (especially the Introduction by Mr. Sparks); G. W. Greene, *Historical View*; the standard histories, especially Gordon; and the biographies and writings of Jefferson, R. H. Lee, the Adamses, Franklin, Dickinson, and other leading men.

**Sources.** — *Journals of Congress*; *Secret Journals of Congress* (both sets printed by authority of the Congresses and containing less information than the titles indicate); *Works of John Adams*, passim; Force, *American Archives*. Lee's Resolutions are given in facsimile in Force, *Archives*, Fourth Series, VI. The original draft of the *Declaration of Independence* is printed in facsimile in the Congress edition of Jefferson's *Writings*, I, 19, and in Ford's edition, II, 42. The Declaration as adopted may be found in facsimile in the *Declaration of Independence* (issued by the city of Boston in 1876); and in Force, *Archives*, Fifth Series, I. Various texts are given by Ford in his *Jefferson's Writings*, I, 30, and II, 42. For the facts as to the signing of the Declaration, see Mellen Chamberlain, *Authentication of the Declaration of Independence*, in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, Second Series, I, 273 (also printed separately) and Winsor, in his *America*, VI, 262-269. See also Thomas Paine, *Common Sense*; and Diary of Richard Smith in *American Historical Review*, I.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, in his *America*, VI, pp. 100, 101, and "Editorial Notes" to Chapter iii; Winsor, *Hand-Book of the Revolution*.

### § 138. The War in the Middle States.

**Summary.** — 1776, July, Strength of the combatants. — The Hessians. — 1776, August–December, The campaign from Long Island to the Delaware. — December 26, Surprise at Trenton. — Importance of this battle. — 1777, Burgoyne's campaign. — The Saratoga convention. — Howe's campaign in Pennsylvania. — 1778, Monmouth. — 1778–81, Other campaigns in the North. — 1780, Treason of Benedict Arnold.

**General.** — Lecky, *England*, Ch. xiv; General Cullom, in Justin Winsor, *America*, VI, 275–314, and F. D. Stone, in *ibid.*, 367–403; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*.

**Special.** — Mahon, *England*; Carrington, *Battles*; Wm. Kingsford, *History of Canada*, VI; J. W. Wallace, *Sketch of Col. William Bradford*; and the standard histories.

**Sources.** — THE HESSIANS: E. J. Lowell, *The Hessians in the Revolution*; G. W. Greene, *German Element in the War*; Fonblanque, *Life of Burgoyne*; Baroness Riedesel, *Letters and Memoirs relating to the War*.

LONG ISLAND TO THE DELAWARE, 1776: H. P. Johnston, *Campaign of 1776*; biographies and writings of Washington, Greene, Joseph Reed, Franklin, John Adams; T. W. Field, in *Memoirs of the Long Island Historical Society*; Amory, *General Sullivan*; Heath's *Memoirs*; Parton, *Life of Aaron Burr*; Jones, *New York in the Revolution*; Dunlap, *New York*; Force, *Archives*, Fifth Series; Stiles, *Brooklyn*; General Howe, *Narrative of his Conduct*.

TRENTON AND PRINCETON: Force, *American Archives*, Fifth Series, III; *Pennsylvania Magazine of History and Biography*, VII, 45; Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, Fifth Series, IV, 32; biographies and writings of Washington, Greene, Sullivan, and Knox; Lowell, *Hessians*; Raum, *History of Trenton*; Haven, *Annals of Trenton*; Hagerman, *History of Princeton*.

BURGOYNE'S CAMPAIGN, 1777: Force, *American Archives*, Fifth Series, Vols. I, II, and III; Fonblanque, *Burgoyne*; Burgoyne, *State of the Expedition*; W. L. Stone, *Campaign of Burgoyne*; J. M. Hadden, *Journal and Orderly Books, 1776–1778*; Arnold, *Life of Arnold*; Los-

sing, *Life of Schuyler*; Charles Neilson, *An Account of Burgoyne's Campaign*; Graham, *Life of Daniel Morgan*; Thacher, *Military Journal*; E. J. Lowell, *Hessians*; Baroness Riedesel, *Memoirs*; the military histories, especially Dawson, *Battles*. For St. Leger's campaign, see especially Stone, *Life of Brant*; Stone, *Campaign of Burgoyne*; and E. H. Roberts, *Battle of Oriskany*.

For the Battle of Bennington, see especially Stone, *Campaign of Burgoyne*; Smith, *History of Pittsfield*; Holland, *Western Massachusetts*; Chipman, *Life of Seth Warner*; Vermont Historical Society, *Collections*; Stark, *Memoir of Stark*; *New Hampshire State Papers*; Coburn, *Centennial of the Battle of Bennington*.

For the Convention, see especially "Note by General Cullom" in Winsor, *America*, VI, 317; Charles Deane, in American Antiquarian Society, *Proceedings*, 1877; George Bancroft, *United States*; Mahon, *England*, VI.

WYOMING: Pearce, *Annals of Luzerne County*; Miner, *Wyoming*; Chapman, *Wyoming*; Stone, *Poetry and History of Wyoming*; Peck, *Wyoming*; Hoyt, *Luzerne Seventeen Townships*.

HOWE'S CAMPAIGN, 1777: *Pennsylvania Magazine of History*; Scharf and Wescott, *Philadelphia*; Egle, *History of Pennsylvania*; Lewis, *Chester County*; Smith, *Delaware County*; *Memoirs of the Marquis de Lafayette*; General James Wilkinson, *Memoirs*; Muhlenberg, *Life of Muhlenberg*; Amory, *General Sullivan*; Ross, *Life of Cornwallis*; the standard histories and military histories, especially Gordon and Dawson; Sparks, *Correspondence of the Revolution*; biographies and writings of Washington (especially that by Marshall), Greene, Knox, Wayne, and Pickering; Lowell, *Hessians*; *Pennsylvania Archives*.

THE MONMOUTH CAMPAIGN, 1778: Dawson, *Battles*, and the other special works; *Works of Alexander Hamilton* (any edition); Kapp, *Life of Steuben*; biographies and writings of Washington, Greene, Lafayette, Morgan, Pickering, Knox, and Wayne; Bean, *Washington and Valley Forge*; Sparks, *Correspondence of the Revolution*; Simcoe, *Queen's Rangers*; Almon, *Remembrancer*.

For Charles Lee, see especially *Proceedings of the Court Martial held at Brunswick*; G. H. Moore, *Treason of Charles Lee*; Langworthy, *Memoirs of Lee*; Papers of Lee in New York Historical Society, *Collections*; Sparks, *Life of Lee*; Marshall, *Life of Washington*; *Works of Hamilton*.



ARNOLD'S TREASON, 1780: Dawson, *Papers concerning the Capture of André*; *Proceedings of a Board, September 29, 1780* (reprints in Sargent's *André* and Boynton's *West Point*); I. N. Arnold, *Life of Arnold*; Lossing, *Two Spies*; Dawson, *Trial of J. H. Smith*; Smith, *Narrative*; Chandler, *American Criminal Trials*; Sparks, *Life and Treason of Arnold*; Parton, *Life of Burr*; Greene, *Nathanael Greene*; Jones, *New York in the Revolution*; Sargent, *Life of André*; Leake, *Life of General Lamb*; *Memoirs of B. Tallmadge*; Lafayette, *Memoirs*; Marbois, *Complot d'Arnold et de Sir Henry Clinton*; Rush, *Washington in Domestic Life*; Baker's edition of Halleck, *International Law*; Adolphus and Mahon, histories of England; *English Historical Review*, January, 1890. The best concise account is by Winsor, in his *America*, VI, 447-468.

**Bibliography.**—Winsor, *America*, VI, and Winsor, *Hand-Book of the Revolution*, using the index in each case.

### § 139. The French Alliance.

**Summary.**—1775, Silas Deane in France; Deane and Beaumarchais.—1776, Franklin, Arthur Lee, and Deane appointed commissioners.—Franklin's career in France.—Effect of Burgoyne's surrender.—1778, The treaties: (1) eventual alliance, (2) commerce.—Lord North's conciliatory propositions.—Results of the alliance.—D'Estaing at Newport and Savannah.

**General.**—E. J. Lowell, in Justin Winsor, *America*, VII, 24-72; Parton, *Life of Franklin*; Greene, *Historical View*.

**Special.**—George Bancroft, *United States* (original edition), Vol. X; Lyman, *Diplomacy of the United States*; Trescot, *Diplomacy of the American Revolution*; E. E. Hale, *Franklin in France*.

**Sources.**—On the negotiations with France, see especially: Sparks, *Diplomatic Correspondence of the Revolution*; Wharton, *Digest of International Law*; Wharton, *Diplomacy of the American Revolution*; Force, *American Archives*; *Secret Journals of Congress*; Charles Isham, *Silas Deane* in New York Historical Society, *Collections*; Charles Isham, in American Historical Association, *Proceedings*, 1887 (article on Deane); *Papers in the Case of Silas Deane*; Stillé, *Beaumarchais and the Lost Million*; Lomenie, *Beaumarchais*; biographies and writings of Franklin; R. H. Lee, *Life of Arthur Lee*; Wm. Jay,



*Life of John Jay; Works of John Adams; Lafayette, Memoirs; Circourt, in Massachusetts Historical Society, Proceedings, XV; Circourt, Action Commune de la France et de l'Amerique; Doniol, Participation de la France à l'Établissement des États-Unis d'Amérique; J. Durand, Documents on the American Revolution.*

The treaties are in *Treaties and Convention between the United States and Other Powers; Secret Journals, etc.*

For the attempts at conciliation and the condition of English politics, 1776-79, see especially the standard English histories (§ 133); *Parliamentary History; Rogers, Protests of the Lords; Annual Register; Donne, Correspondence of George III and Lord North; Chatham Correspondence; Fitzmaurice, Life of Shelburne; Albemarle, Memoirs of Rockingham; Bedford Papers; Grenville Papers; Russell, Memoirs of C. J. Fox; Morley, Life of Edmund Burke; Burke, Works; Horace Walpole, Journals; Walpole, Memoirs of George III; Jesse, George Selwyn; Auckland Correspondence; P. O. Hutchinson, Thomas Hutchinson; Campbell, Lord Chancellors (Camden, Loughborough, and Thurlow); Campbell, Lord Chief Justices (Mansfield); Sir G. C. Lewis, Administrations of Great Britain; Earle, Prime Ministers; D. Adams, English Party Leaders.*

**Bibliography.**—Winsor, *America*, VII, footnotes to Chapter i and "Critical Essay"; Winsor, *Hand-Book of the Revolution*.

### § 140. The War in the Southern Department.

**Summary.**—1778, Seizure of Savannah by the British.—1779, D'Estaing and Lincoln attempt its recovery.—1780, Charleston captured by Clinton.—The British occupy South Carolina and Georgia.—1780, August, Battle of Camden.—1780, October, King's Mountain.—1781, Greene's campaign from Cowpens to Guilford.—His later campaigns.—Lafayette and Cornwallis in Virginia.—1780-81, Rochambeau at Newport.—1781, August-October, The Yorktown campaign.

**General.**—Lecky, *England*, Ch. xiv; Channing, in Winsor, *America*, VI, 469-507; Greene, *Nathanael Greene*, III, Ch. ii (a summary of the earlier campaigns); Parton, *Andrew Jackson*, Chs. v and vi; Carrington, *Battles; Gay, Bryant's Popular History; Parton, Thomas Jefferson; Simms, Francis Marion; Greene, Historical View.*

**Special.** — Ramsay, *History of the American Revolution*, and the other standard works enumerated in §§ 134, 136, especially Dawson, *Battles*; Gordon, *Revolution*, and Stedman, *American War*; H. P. Johnston, *Yorktown Campaign*; Lowell, *Hessians*.

**Sources.** — THE WAR TO SEPTEMBER, 1781: Ramsay, *Revolution of South Carolina from a British Province to an Independent State*; Moultrie, *Memoirs of the American Revolution*; McCall's, Jones's, and Stevens's histories of Georgia; Tarleton, *Campaigns of 1780 and 1781*; Mackenzie, *Strictures on Tarleton's History*; Hough, *Siege of Savannah*; Almon, *Remembrancer*; Bowen, *Life of Lincoln*; Hough, *Siege of Charleston*; *Charleston Year-Books*; Kapp, *Life of John Kalb*; O. H. Williams, *Narrative*, in appendix to Johnson, *Life of Greene*; J. A. Stevens, *The Southern Campaign*, in *Magazine of American History*, V; and H. P. Johnston, in *ibid.*, VIII; McRee, *Life of Iredell*. There are many articles on these Southern campaigns in the *Southern Literary Messenger* and in the *University of North Carolina Magazine*.

GREENE'S CAMPAIGNS, 1781-83: Greene, *Nathanael Greene*, III; Johnson, *Life and Services of Nathanael Greene*; Henry Lee, *Memoirs of the War in the Southern Department*; Graham, *Life of Daniel Morgan*; Horry, *Life of Francis Marion*; Gibbes, *Documentary History*; Armstrong, *Life of Anthony Wayne*; Tarleton, *Campaigns*; Hamilton, *Grenadier Guards*; Almon, *Remembrancer*; Draper, *King's Mountain*; McSherry, *Maryland*; Sparks, *Correspondence of the Revolution*.

THE YORKTOWN CAMPAIGN, 1781: *Washington's Writings* (either edition); biographies of Washington, especially that by Marshall; Girardin, *Continuation of Burk's Virginia* (written under Jeffersonian auspices); *Calendar of Virginia State Papers*; Rochambeau, *Memoirs*; Lafayette, *Memoirs*; Ross, *Correspondence of Cornwallis*; Tarleton, *Campaigns*; Kapp, *Steuben*; Almon, *Remembrancer*; *Magazine of American History*, VII; B. F. Stevens, compiler, *Clinton-Cornwallis Controversy*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VI, 507-555; Winsor, *Hand-Book of the American Revolution*.

### § 141. The Treaty of Peace.

**Summary.** — Policy of France and Spain during the American war. — English politics. — 1782, The second Rockingham ministry; Shelburne and Fox. — 1782, Negotiations opened at Paris. Oswald and Franklin. — Jay's suspicions of France; were they well founded? — The points in dispute. — 1782, November 30, The preliminary articles. — The "Separate Article." — 1783, September 3, Definitive treaty signed at Paris. — Provisions as to boundaries, debts, fisheries, and loyalists.

**General.** — Lecky, *England*, Ch. xv (especially pp. 255–288 of the American edition, Vol. IV); Parton, *Franklin*; E. E. Hale, *Franklin in France*; Higginson, *Larger History*.

**Special.** — The general works on American diplomatic history enumerated under § 139; John Jay, in Winsor, *America*, VII, Ch. ii; John Jay, *The Peace Negotiations of 1782 and 1783*; Wharton, *Diplomatic Correspondence*, Introduction under Franklin, Jay, Marbois, etc.; biographies of Franklin, by Bigelow, Sparks, and Parton; of John Jay, by William Jay and George Pellet; of John Adams, by C. F. Adams and J. T. Morse; of Shelburne, by Fitzmaurice; and of C. J. Fox, by Russell; Freeman Snow, *Treaties and Topics in American Diplomacy*; Eugene Schuyler, *American Diplomacy*.

**Sources.** — The Instructions to the American Commissioners, dated June 15, 1781, are in Sparks, *Diplomatic Correspondence*, X; Wharton, *Diplomatic Correspondence*, IV, 471, 503, 504, 523; see also Index at end of Vol. VI, under Instructions, Peace Commissioners, etc. See especially the above, and *Works* of Franklin, John Adams (Vols. I, VII, and VIII), and John Jay; *Secret Journals of Congress*; *Parliamentary History*; *Annual Register*. The treaties are in *Treaties and Conventions*, and numerous other places.

STATE OF POLITICAL PARTIES IN ENGLAND, 1782: The works on English political history enumerated under § 61; Russell, *Life of C. J. Fox*; J. Wright, editor, *The Speeches of the Right Honorable Charles James Fox*; Stanhope (Mahon) *Life of William Pitt*; Rosebery, *William Pitt (Twelve English Statesmen)*; Buckingham, *Courts and Cabinets*. See especially Fitzmaurice, *Life of Shelburne*, III, and Mahon, *England*, Ch. lxvi.

THE LOYALISTS: G. E. Ellis, in Justin Winsor, *America*, VII, 185; Sabine, *American Loyalists*, issued in a revised edition as *Biographical Sketches of Adherents to the British Crown*; A. E. Ryerson, *Loyalists of America and their Times*; G. A. Ward, editor, *Journal . . . of Samuel Curwen, 1775-1784*; P. O. Hutchinson, *Thomas Hutchinson*; Jones, *New York in the Revolutionary War*; *Laws of the State of New York in force against the Loyalists*, London, 1786; Joseph Galloway, *Candid Examination; Cool Thoughts on the Consequences to Great Britain of American Independence*, 1780, reprinted in *Library of American Literature*, III, 126; histories of Canada, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, etc.; and the standard works, American and English. See also M. C. Tyler, in *American Historical Review*, I.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 165-184.

#### § 142. Formation of the Confederation, 1775-1783.

**Summary.** — Early colonial federations: 1638-40, The Connecticut Towns (§ 121), the New Haven Towns (§ 122), the Rhode Island Towns (§ 119). — 1647, Government established in Rhode Island under "The Incorporation of Providence Plantations" of 1643 (§ 120). — 1643, The United Colonies of New England and the Articles of Confederation (§ 124). — 1684-1756, Colonial congresses and plans of union. — 1765, The Stamp Act Congress. — 1760-76, Growth of the union sentiment. — 1775-81, The Articles of Confederation: 1775, Franklin's draft, 1776, Dickinson's draft; 1777, Articles as agreed to by Congress. — 1776-77, Growth of a particularist sentiment. — Claims of Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, Virginia, the Carolinas, and Georgia to western lands and their value. — Effect of these claims on non-claimant states. — Maryland's opposition to the ratification of the Articles of Confederation. — The land cessions. — 1781, The Articles ratified by all the states. — Their place in the constitutional history of the United States. — Form of government under the Articles. — Early attempts to amend. — 1776-83, Finances of the Revolution.

**General.** — Greene, *Historical View*; John Fiske, *The Critical Period*; Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*.

**Special.** — Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, Ch. xii; H. B. Adams, *Maryland's Influence upon the Land Cessions*; Pitkin, *United States*; Tucker, *United States*; Curtis, *History of the Constitution*; Story, *Commentaries*; McMaster, *United States*, I; George Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), VI; G. Bancroft, *History of the Constitution*, I.

**Sources.** — COLONIAL CONGRESSES AND PLANS OF UNION: *American History Leaflets*, No. 14; Frothingham, *Republic*, Appendix; Carson, *Hundredth Anniversary of the Constitution*, II, Appendix (edited by F. D. Stone); *Documents Relating to the Colonial History of New York* (using the index at end of last volume); S. Hopkins, *A True Representation of the Plan formed at Albany in 1754*, reprinted in *Rhode Island Historical Tracts*, No. 9; W. E. Foster, *Life of Stephen Hopkins*, I, 155; biographies and works of Franklin; Hutchinson, *Massachusetts*, III. See also § 132.

ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION: *Secret Journals*, I, 283, 290, 387; *Journals of Congress, 1776-77*; *Works of John Adams*; biographies and works of Franklin, Dickinson, Madison, and Hamilton. The "Articles" are in *Charters and Constitutions, American History Leaflets*, No. 20, and many other places.

THE LAND CESSIONS: The claims of the several states to western lands and the cessions can be best studied in the official publications; *Charters and Constitutions*; *American History Leaflet*, No. 16, 22 (contain extracts from the Charters, etc.); Hening, *Statutes at Large of Virginia*, and the collections of other states, *cf.* § 55; *Journals of Congress*; *Secret Journals of Congress*; Winsor, *America*, VII, Appendix I, entitled *Territorial Acquisitions and Divisions*; Donaldson, *Public Domain* (to be used with great caution); Shosuke Sato, *Land Question*; Herbert B. Adams, *Maryland's Influence*. Duane's collection of the *Laws of the United States* contains many things not printed elsewhere; biographies and writings of Madison, Henry, Jefferson, Mason, Washington, Mannasseh Cutler, Pickering, St. Clair; histories of the several states (§ 23), especially of Virginia, Maryland, Pennsylvania, and Connecticut; J. P. Hale, *Trans-Allegheny Pioneers*; Roosevelt, *The Winning of the West*; Garrett, *South Carolina Land Cession*; Gannett, *Boundaries of the United States*, forming *Bulletin of the Geological Survey*, No. 13, contains matter relating more especially to state boundaries.

THE FINANCES OF THE REVOLUTION: *Journals of Congress*; *Secret Journals of Congress*; Force, *American Archives*; Bayley, *National*

*Loans of the United States*; A. S. Bolles, *Financial History of the United States, 1774-1789*; Phillips, *Paper Currency of the Revolution*; Phillips, *Continental Paper Money*; Sumner, *Financier and Financés*; Sparks, *Gouverneur Morris*.

**Bibliography.** — PLANS OF UNION: Winsor, in his *America*, V, 611; W. E. Foster, *Life of Stephen Hopkins*, II, Appendix G.

ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION: Winsor, *America*, VI, 274 and 654, VII, Ch. iii, footnotes.

LAND CESSIONS: Winsor, *America*, VII, Appendix I; Sato, *Land Question*, p. 27.

FINANCES OF THE REVOLUTION: Winsor, *America*, VII, 81, and Winsor, *Hand-Book of the Revolution*, 242.

### § 143. The State Constitutions, 1775-1781.

**Summary.** — 1775, The colonial governments. — 1776, Advice of Congress. — 1776-77, Formation of the early state constitutions, especially those of New Hampshire, Virginia, South Carolina, Delaware, Pennsylvania, and (1780) Massachusetts. — Modes of formation and ratification; history of the ideas of constitutional conventions and popular ratification. — Leading principles set forth in these constitutions. — Relations of Congress to the states. — Were the states sovereign? — Is the Union older than the states? — Later state constitutions.

**General.** — Frothingham, *Republic*, 441-444, 447-451, 481, 482, 491-493, 561-568; Fiske, *Critical Period*, Ch. ii; G. Bancroft, *United States*, IX, 142, 143, 194-196, 315, 345, 391-367, 419, 428-434; R. Hildreth, *United States*, III, 69-76, 89-95, 113-118, 126-131, 135, 161, 183-185, 374-395.

**Special.** — Curtis, *History of the Constitution*, I, 117; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional Law*; Hitchcock, *State Constitutions*; Horace Davis, *American Constitutions*; J. F. Jameson, *Introduction to the History of the States*; P. C. Centz, *Republic of Republics*; Tucker, *Lectures on Constitutional Law*; J. A. Jameson, *Constitutional Conventions*; Charles Borgeaud, *Premiers Constitutions de la Democratie Américaine*, in *Annuaire de l'École des Sciences Politiques*; C. Borgeaud, *Adoption and*

*Amendment of Constitutions in Europe and America*; C. Borgeaud, *Rise of Modern Democracy*; J. F. Jameson, *Introduction to the Study of the Constitutional and Political History of the United States* in Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, IV, No. 5; W. C. Morey, *Genesis of a Written Constitution* and *The First State Constitutions* in the *Annals of the American Academy of Political Science*; A. W. Small, *Beginnings of American Nationality*; J. H. Dougherty, *Constitutions of the State of New York*, in *Political Science Quarterly*, III.

**Sources.** — *Charters and Constitutions* (for the constitutions); *Journals of Congress*; *Secret Journals of Congress*; Force, *American Archives*; J. B. Thayer, *Cases in Constitutional Law*; standard histories of the several states (including Vermont). The principal sources of information in regard to the formation of the several state constitutions are as follows :

NEW HAMPSHIRE: Belknap, *New Hampshire*; *Provincial Papers of New Hampshire*; Massachusetts Historical Society, *Collections*, Fifth Series ("Belknap Papers") and *Proceedings*, First Series, I.

MASSACHUSETTS: Alden Bradford, *Massachusetts* (especially valuable for the account of the proposed constitution of 1778, a copy of which is printed in the Appendix); *Journal of the Convention [of 1779-1780]*; *Report of a Constitution . . . to be laid before the Convention . . . 1779*; *John Adams's Works*, IV and IX; John Adams, *Defence of the Constitutions of the United States*; Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, First Series, V.

NEW YORK: Dunlap, *New York*; *Debates in the New York Conventions*; biographies of John Jay and Gouverneur Morris; Jones, *New York in the Revolutionary War*; J. H. Dougherty, *Constitutions of the State of New York*, in *Political Science Quarterly*, III.

NEW JERSEY: *Journal of the Convention*; Elmer, *History of the Constitution adopted in 1776*.

PENNSYLVANIA: *Proceedings relative to the Conventions*; *Pennsylvania Magazine of History and Biography*, III and IV; biographies and works of Franklin and Joseph Reed.

VIRGINIA: Rowland, *Life of George Mason*; biographies and writings of Jefferson, Henry, and Madison; Hening, *Statutes*; Braxton, *Address*, in Force, *American Archives*, Fourth Series, VI.

VERMONT: Wm. Slade, compiler, *Vermont State Papers*, Middlebury, Vt. — Contains the Journal of the Council of Safety, the early journals of the General Assembly, the first constitution, and the laws from 1779 to 1786; E. P. Walter, *Records of the Governor and Council of the State of Vermont*, 8 vols., Montpelier, 1873-80. — Vol. I contains also the records of the General Conventions, 1775-77, and of the Council of Safety, 1777-78.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VI, 272; W. E. Foster, *References to the Constitution*, 21



## PART III.

# TOPICS AND REFERENCES IN UNITED STATES HISTORY.

---

### XV. GENESIS OF THE UNION.

#### § 144. Political Geography of the United States, 1775-1895.

**Summary.** — 1775, English colonies in North America; colonies adherent to the Revolution. — 1778, Rogers Clark's invasion of the Northwest. — Boundaries by the Treaty of 1783: disputes under the Treaty to 1871. — Annexations: 1803, Louisiana; 1792-1846, Oregon; 1810-19, Florida; 1845, Texas; 1848, California; 1853, Gadsden Purchase; 1867, Alaska. — Boundary disputes, especially: Southern (1783-95); Louisiana (1803-19); West Florida (1803-12); Maine (1783-1842); Oregon (1805-71). — Subdivision into states and territories. — Present map. — Possible annexations: Hawaii; Canada; Cuba; Nicaragua; Mexico; San Domingo.

**General.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 527-562; A. de Tocqueville, *Democracy in America*, I, Ch. i; the standard histories passim, especially Hildreth, Bancroft, McMaster, Schouler, Henry Adams (see § 20). — See also §§ 79, 142, 161, 168, 178, 194, 201.

**Special.** — Geographical authorities enumerated in §§ 21, 142; H. Gannett, *Boundaries of the United States*; J. Morse, *American Universal Geography*; Winsor, *America*, VIII; Shosuke Sato, *History of the Land Question in the United States* in Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, IV, Nos. 7-9; F. Wharton, *Digest of the International Law of the United States*, passim; B. A. Hinsdale, *Old Northwest*, Chs. vii-xi.

HISTORICAL MAPS (see § 21): E. Channing, *The United States*; A. B. Hart, *Epoch Maps*, Nos. 6-14 (same maps in *Epochs of American*

*History*, II, III); T. MacCoun, *Historical Geography*; Scribner's *Statistical Atlas*; Scribner's *Citizen's Atlas*. Many histories have historical maps, especially those by Winsor, Parkman, McMaster, and Henry Adams.

**Sources.** — Travels and contemporary descriptions (see § 24). Texts of boundary and cession treaties, in *Treaties and Conventions of the United States*. Text of acts creating and admitting States, in *Statutes at Large*. — Claims and negotiations in *American State Papers, Foreign Affairs*, and appendices to *Annals of Congress*; later papers, in *Executive Documents*, especially *Diplomatic Correspondence* ("Foreign Affairs"). — Many reprints in Donaldson's *Public Domain*, and in *American History Leaflets*, Nos. 6, 16, 22.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, passim; Henry Gannett, *Mother Maps of the United States*; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 1; lists of maps in library catalogues (see § 16).

### § 145. People of the United States, 1606-1895.

**Summary.** — Race elements: aborigines (§ 81); predominance of Anglo-Saxons; Germans; Dutch; Scotch and Scotch-Irish; French; miscellaneous; Negroes. — Foreign born: number; children of foreign-born. — Immigration: numbers; causes; principal races; distribution. — Population: numbers; distribution. — Legal term, "People of the United States." — Occupations. — Proportions by age and sex. — Character: energy; resourcefulness; fairness; love of "big things"; contempt for expert opinion.

**General.** — James Bryce, *American Commonwealth*, especially II, Pts. iv, vi; J. D. Whitney, *The United States*, Pt. vi; H. C. Lodge, *English Colonies in North America*, especially Chs. ii, xviii; J. B. McMaster, *People of the United States*, I, Ch. i; N. S. Shaler, *The United States* (especially Chs. x-xv); A. de Tocqueville, *Democracy in the United States*, passim; *Epochs of American History*, I, Chs. v, viii, x; II, Ch. i; III, Ch. i; H. Everett, *America* (1827); George Tucker, *Progress of the United States* (1841); Edward Eggleston, articles in the *Century* (1882-85). — See Part II, §§ 92, 130, 133, 167, 181, 296.

**Special.** — Race elements: A. Carlier, *République Américaine*, I, Livre v; Friedrich Ratzel, *Vereinigten Staaten*, II; E. Channing, *History of the United States*, Ch. i. — Immigration: Richmond Smith, *Emigra-*

*tion and Immigration*; J. D. Whitney, *The United States*, I, Pt. vi, and Supplement I, pp. 1-24. — Population: F. B. Dexter, *Estimates of Population of the American Colonies*; Henry Gannett, in *Compendium of the Eleventh Census*; *Tenth Census*, I (*Population*). — Distribution: Maps showing density of population at decennial periods, in *Tenth Census*, I; Scribner's *Statistical Atlas*; T. Roosevelt, *Winning of the West*; N. S. Shaler, *Nature and Man in the United States*. — Constitutional "People of the United States": H. Von Holst, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 9, 15, 20; T. M. Cooley, *Constitutional Limitations*, 36-39; W. O. Bateman, *Political and Constitutional Law*, §§ 90-95 (see also § 156).

**Sources.** — Travels and descriptions of the country (see § 24). Publications of the United States Census Bureau, especially *Tenth Census, Population* (with maps); *Eleventh Census*, Bulletins Nos. 194, 201, 202, 357, and *Compendium*, I, Tables 1 a-b. Population: *Statistical Abstract of the United States* (Tables on Immigration).

**Bibliography.** — Bowker and Iles, *Reader's Guide*, 81-85; *Epochs of American History*, I, §§ 39, 74, 90; II, § 1; III, § 1.

### § 146. English Political Institutions to 1775.

**Summary.** — Conventional view of separation into three departments. — Actual government: monarchy, parliament; judges. — Underlying rights of Englishmen: no arbitrary arrest; speedy trial; jury; no taxation except by vote of parliament. — Representative institutions: two houses; parliamentary privilege; voting taxes; examining accounts; impeachment. — Local self-government: county system; select vestry; parish meeting; relations with central government. — Colonies: charters; control by Crown. — Legislation by parliament: commercial system and navigation acts. — Social: ruling classes; material for colonization.

**General.** — G. Bancroft, *History of the United States* (last revision), II, 70-85, 238-251; Lecky, *England in the Eighteenth Century*, II, 1-12, 272-279; III, 5-11; E. Channing, *The United States*, Ch. ii; J. R. Seeley, *Expansion of England*, 62-72; S. R. Gardiner, *Students' History of England*, Pt. viii; Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, 1-32; T. W. Higginson and E. Channing, *English' History for American Readers*; H. Baldwin, *General View*, 51-55; John Ordronaux, *Consti-*

*tutional Legislation*, Ch. i; E. C. Mason, *Veto Power*, §§ 1-7; Eben G. Scott, *Development of Constitutional Liberty*, Ch. i.—See Part II, especially §§ 93, 114, 133, 134-136.

**Special.**—Blackstone, *Commentaries on the Laws of England* (1765), Book I, Chs. i-x; Joseph Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 146-188; E. T. Boutmy, *English Constitution*, Pts. ii, iii; Hannis Taylor, *Origin and Growth of the English Constitution*, I, 588-616; T. P. Taswell-Langmead, *English Constitutional History*, Chs. xvi, xvii; Montesquieu, *Esprit des Lois*, Livre XI, Chs. i-vi; R. Gneist, *History of the English Constitution*, II, Chs. xlv-lviii, and *History of the English Parliament*, Ch. vi; E. A. Freeman, *Growth of the English Constitution*, Ch. iii; J. L. De Lolme, *Rise and Progress of the English Constitution* (1784), II; James B. Thayer, *Cases in Constitutional Law*, I, 1-47; W. R. Anson, *Law and Custom of the Constitution*, I, Chs. ii, iii; II, Ch. 1, § 4, Ch. iii, § 3; R. C. Hurd, *Treatise on Habeas Corpus*, 65-95; G. C. Beer, *Commercial Policy of England toward the American Colonies*; Edward Channing, *Navigation Laws* (in *American Antiquarian Society, Proceedings*, 1890); C. Ellis Stevens, *Sources of the Constitution of the United States*, Chs. iii, iv, vii.

**Sources.**—The great constitutional documents printed in Taswell-Langmead's *English Constitutional History*; in G. W. Prothero, *Select Statutes and other Constitutional Documents*; and in Gardiner's *Constitutional Documents*. Many of them also in *Old South Leaflets*, Nos. 5, 6, 23-28.—English Laws to 1715, in *Statutes of the Realm* (large folio, very rare).—Laws since 1715, see § 29.—Extracts from the Navigation Acts, and the Stamp Act, *American History Leaflets*, Nos. 19, 21.—Colonial charters (see §§ 29, 147).

**Bibliography.**—Footnotes to the general and special works mentioned above; C. F. Allen, *History Topics*, 80-95; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 11-13.

## § 147. Colonial Political Institutions.

**Summary.**—Roots in English institutions.—Three types of colonial government: charter; proprietary; and provincial.—Governments: governors, councils; assemblies; courts.—Local government: town; parish; county; mixed systems.—Free institutions: personal freedom; jury trial; self-taxation; suffrage;

privileges and immunities of Englishmen (see § 146). — Effect of new conditions on old constitutions.

**General.** — W. E. H. Lecky, *England in the Eighteenth Century*, II, 1–21; R. Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, 13–28; Crane and Moses, *Politics*, Chs. viii, ix; C. Ellis Stevens, *Sources of the Constitution*, Chs. i, iv; Woodrow Wilson, *The State*, §§ 832–861; William Rawle, *View of the Constitution*, Introduction. E. Channing, *The United States*, Ch. i; B. A. Hinsdale, *American Government*, Ch. ii. — See §§ 98, 99, 105, 108, 117, 124, 130, 133.

**Special.** — COLONIAL GOVERNMENT: Joseph Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 152–178; Hannis Taylor, *Origin and Growth of the English Constitution*, I, Introduction; H. L. Osgood, *England and the Colonies*, and *Political Ideas of the Puritans* (*Political Science Quarterly*, II, 440–460; VI, 1–28, 201–331); G. E. Howard, *Local Constitutional History*; C. Borgeaud, *Rise of Modern Democracy*; A. de Tocqueville, *Democracy in America*, I, Chs. iv, v; Douglass Campbell, *Origin of American Institutions* (American Historical Association, *Papers*, V, 165–185), and *Puritan in Holland, England, and America*, Chs. xxii, xxiii; C. Bishop, *History of Elections in the American Colonies*; W. C. Morey, *Genesis of a Written Constitution*, and *First State Constitutions*, and *Sources of American Federalism* (American Academy of Political and Social Science, *Annals*, I, 529–557; IV, 201–232; VI, 197–226); John Fiske, *Critical Period of American History*, Ch. ii; William Hill, *Colonial Tariffs* (*Quarterly Journal of Economics*, VII, 78–100) and *First Stages of the Tariff Policy* (American Economic Association, *Publications*, VIII). Several monographs in the Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, as follows: P. E. Lauer, *Church and State in New England* (X, Nos. 2, 3); G. Petrie, *Church and State in Maryland* (X, No. 4); J. S. Bassett, *Constitutional Beginnings in North Carolina* (XII, No. 3); G. H. Haynes, *Representative and Free Government in Massachusetts* (XII, Nos. 8–10); E. L. Whitney, *Government of the Colony of South Carolina* (XIII, Nos. 1, 2); J. F. Moran, *Bi-cameral System* (XIII, No. 5).

LOCAL GOVERNMENT: G. E. Howard, *Local Constitutional History*; Hopkins University, *Studies*, as follows: Edward Channing, *Town and County Government* (II, No. 10); E. Ingle, *Parish Institutions of Maryland* (I, No. 6), and *Virginia Local Institutions* (III, Nos. 2, 3); J. H. Johnson, *Old Maryland Manors* (I, No. 7); L. W. Wilhelm, *Maryland Local Institutions* (III, Nos. 5, 7); I. Elting, *Dutch Village Communities*

(IV, No. 1); W. E. Foster, *Town Government in Rhode Island* (IV, Nos. 2, 3); C. M. Andrews, *River Towns of Connecticut* (VII, Nos. 8-10); A. B. Hart, *Practical Essays*, Nos. 6, 7, and *Puritan Politics* (New England Society of Orange, *Quarter Century*).

**Sources.** — Records of the colonies (see § 29), especially Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, and Maryland. Transactions of learned societies, especially Massachusetts Historical Society, New York Historical Society, Rhode Island Historical Society. — Charters in Poore, *Charters and Constitutions* (see § 31). Extracts in J. B. Thayer, *Cases on Constitutional Law*, I, Appendix 5; select charters in *Old South Leaflets*; H. E. Preston, *Documents Illustrative of American History*; Wm. Houston, *Documents illustrative of the Canadian Constitution*; Chalmers, *Opinions*.

**Bibliography.** — G. E. Howard, *Local Constitutional History*, I, 495-497, and notes; R. G. Thwaites, *Colonies*, § 1; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 2-5; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, §§ 33b, 42; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 109-117.

### § 148. Colonial Social Institutions and Slavery.

**Summary.** — Race elements: numbers; classes of society. — Intellectual life: education; literature; the press. — Religious life: churches; theology. — Industries: agriculture; commerce; fisheries; manufactures. — Recreations: social gatherings; amusements; fights. — Slavery: whence derived; Indian slave trade; white indentured servants; character of slavery by sections; manumission; sale; fugitives; insurrections.

**General.** — (See Part II, especially §§ 99, 101, 105, 107, 110, 111, 125, 129, 130, 133, 143; Part III, §§ 152, 161.) — SOCIAL: H. C. Lodge, *English Colonies in North America*, Chs. ii, iv, vi, viii, x, xiii, xv, xvii, xxii; A. de Tocqueville, *Democracy in America*, Chs. ii, iii; J. B. McMaster, *History of the People of the United States*, I, Ch. i; Douglass Campbell, *Puritan in England, Holland, and America*, I, Introduction; Edward Eggleston, *Household History of the United States*; C. C. Coffin, *Old Times in the Colonies*; Earle, *Sabbath in Puritan New England*; H. E. Scudder, *Men and Manners in America a Hundred Years ago*. — SLAVERY: Henry Wilson, *Rise and Fall of the Slave Power in America*, I, Ch. i; William Chambers, *American Slavery*, 17-32; Wm. Goodell, *Slavery and Anti-slavery*, Chs. i-vi (see § 152).

**Special.** — William B. Weedon, *Economic and Social History of New England*, II, Chs. xii, xv, xxi; R. A. Bruce, *Economic History of Virginia*; Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, as follows: S. B. Weeks, *Religious Development in North Carolina*, and *Church and State in North Carolina* (X, Nos. 5, 6 and XI, Nos. 5, 6); A. C. Appelgarth, *Quakers in Pennsylvania* (X, Nos. 8, 9). — SLAVERY: J. C. Hurd, *Law of Freedom and Bondage*, §§ 180-230; William Poole, *Anti-slavery Opinions before 1800*; G. W. Williams, *History of the Negro Race*, I, Chs. xii-xxv; W. E. B. DuBois, *Suppression of the Slave Trade* (Harvard Historical Studies, No. 1); Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves* (Radcliffe Monographs, No. 3), Ch. i; S. M. Janney, *History of the Religious Society of Friends*, III, Chs. vii, ix, xi; T. R. R. Cobb, *Historical Sketch of Slavery*, Ch. ix; Monographs in the Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, as follows: B. C. Steiner, *History of Slavery in Connecticut* (XI, Nos. 9, 10, pp. 7-23); J. C. Ballagh, *White Servitude in Virginia* (XIII, Nos. 6, 7); Jeffrey R. Brackett, *Negro in Maryland* (Extra Vol. VI); E. V. Morgan, *Slavery in New York* (American Historical Association, *Papers*, V, No. 4); Needles, *Slavery in Pennsylvania*; [P. L. Ford], *Washington as an Employer and Importer of Labor*; Charles Deane, *Letters and Documents relating to Slavery in Massachusetts*; G. H. Moore, *History of Slavery in Massachusetts*, Chs. i-vii.

**Sources.** — *Statutes*, in the various colonial collections, see § 29. — Extracts from the colonial slave laws in McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, Appendix A, and W. E. B. DuBois, *Slave-Trade*, Apps. — Contemporary account of life in the colonies: Samuel Sewall, *Diary and Letter Books*. — On Slavery: John Woolman's *Journal* (edited by J. G. Whittier); Benjamin Fay, *Treatise on Slave-keeping*; Samuel Sewall, *Joseph Sold by his Brethren*.

**Bibliography.** — Footnotes to H. C. Lodge, *English Colonies; Epochs of American History*, I, §§ 17, 39, 74, 90; II, § 1; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 2, 62; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 105-109; M. G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, Appendix E; W. E. B. DuBois, *Suppression of the Slave Trade*, Appendix E.



## XVI. CONFEDERATION AND CONSTITUTION.

### § 149. Government of the Confederation, 1781-1788.

**Summary.** — The states : constitutional government (§ 143); relations with the Union (§§ 150, 151, 153). — Congress : places of meeting ; length of service ; procedure ; president. — Executive department : board system ; superintendents of finance and foreign affairs ; boards resumed. — Courts : arbitration ; piracies and felonies ; Court of Appeals in Cases of Capture. — Inefficiency of the system : lack of attendance ; nine states rule ; insufficient powers ; too much concentration in Congress.

**General.** — H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, I, 26-46 ; S. F. Miller, *Lectures on the Constitution*, 35-48 ; G. Bancroft, *History* (last revision), VI, 1-23 (*History of the Constitution*, I, 1-28) ; Winsor, *America*, VII, Ch. iii ; J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, Ch. ii ; James Kent, *Commentaries on American Law*, I, 201-219 ; J. Sparks, *Life of George Washington*, Ch. xv ; George Tucker, *History*, I, 291-347 ; J. Schouler, *History*, I, Ch. i, Sect. i ; E. Channing, *The United States*, Ch. iv ; W. A. Duer, *Constitutional Jurisprudence*, 1-25 ; John T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson*, Ch. vi, and *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, I, Ch. iv ; J. K. Hosmer, *Samuel Adams*, Ch. xxii ; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, Ch. iii ; John Fiske, *Critical Period*, Ch. iii ; William Sullivan, *Familiar Letters*, 1-18 ; B. A. Hinsdale, *American Government*, Ch. vi ; O. W. B. Peabody, *Life of John Sullivan*, Ch. ix ; Abiel Holmes, *Annals of America*, 349-371 ; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, V, 3280, 3289-3296. — See §§ 124, 134-137, 142, 150-154.

**Special.** — G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History of the United States*, Chs. vi, xii (*History of the Constitution*, I, 142-151, 260-274) ; J. F. Jameson, *Essays on the Constitutional History of the United States*, Nos. i, iii ; J. C. Hamilton, *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, II, Ch. xxxvi ; H. L. Carson, *The Supreme Court*, I, Chs. iii-vii ; Henry Flanders, *Life and Times of the Chief Justices*, I, Rutledge, Ch. xii ; James T. Austin, *Life of Elbridge Gerry*, I, Chs. xxii-xxvii.



**Sources.** — *Journals of Congress*, VII–XIII; *Secret Journals of Congress*, IV; Alexander Hamilton, *Works* (J. C. Hamilton, editor), I, (Lodge edition), I, 203–315; George Washington, *Writings* (Sparks edition), VIII, IX, passim; James Madison, *Papers*, I, II (especially notes of debates in I, 187–467; II, 581–614); J. Elliot, *Debates*, I; W. Hickey, *Constitution of the United States*, 129–150; W. H. Henry, *Patrick Henry*, III, 245–385; John Adams, *Defence of the Constitutions of Government*. For lives and writings of other public men, see §§ 25, 32, 33.

**Bibliography.** — Bureau of Rolls and Library, *Bulletin*, No. 1 (Catalogue of the papers of Congress); Footnotes to Curtis, Bancroft, and McMaster; Winsor, *America*; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, § 44; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 117–119.

### § 150. Territorial Questions under the Confederation, 1781–1787.

**Summary.** — 1783, Exterior boundaries (see § 152): controversies with England and Spain; question of frontier posts. — Acquisitions of territory: Northwest cessions by New York (1781), Virginia (1784), Massachusetts (1784), Connecticut (1786, 1800); Southwest cessions by South Carolina (1787), North Carolina (1790), and Georgia (1802). — Administration: resolution of 1780; Jefferson's ordinance of 1784; question of slavery (see § 152); Grayson's ordinance of 1785. — Northwest ordinance of 1787: authors; occasion; slavery clause (see § 152). — Western settlements to 1782: proposed new states.

**General.** — R. Hildreth, *History*, III, Chs. xlv, xlvi, xlviii; G. Bancroft, *History* (last revision), VI, 14–16, 81, 96, 104, 115–118, 125–135, 165, 166, 277–291; (*History of the Constitution*, I, 16–18, 83, 154–159, 168–183, 291–299; II, 98–118, 225–227); G. T. Curtis, *History of the Constitution*, I, 124–141, 291–311 (*Constitutional History*, I, Chs. v, xiv); J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, 151–167, 260, 504; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 191; III, 31–34, 914, 918; T. Pitkin, *History*, II, 19–36; J. Story, *Commentaries*, 221–228; John Fiske, *Critical Period*, Ch. v; H. Gannett, *Boundaries of the United States*, 24–38; S. F. Miller, *Lectures on the Constitution*, 55–58. — See §§ 142, 143, 161, 168.

**Special.** — LAND CESSIONS: Joseph Blunt, *Historical Sketch*, Ch. iii; H. B. Adams, *Maryland's Influence in Founding a National Com-*

*monwealth* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, III, No. 1); B. A. Hinsdale, *Old Northwest*, Chs. ix-xiv; J. C. Welling, *State Rights Conflict over the Public Lands* (American Historical Association, *Papers*, III, 411, 434); Kate M. Rowland, *Life of George Mason*, I, Chs. ix, x; J. C. Hamilton, *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, II, Ch. xxx; R. R. Howison, *History of Virginia*, II, Ch. v; Shosuke Sato, *History of the Land Question*, 22-70 (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, IV, Nos. 7-9); J. C. Scharf, *History of Maryland*, II, Ch. xxvii. — NORTHWEST ORDINANCE: W. P. Cutler, *Ordinance of 1787*; C. R. King, *Life and Correspondence of Rufus King*, I, Chs. ii, v, viii, xv; Edward Coles, *History of the Ordinance* (Pennsylvania Historical Society); John M. Merriam, *Legislative History of the Ordinance* (American Antiquarian Society); S. Dunn, *Indiana, 177-218*; B. A. Hinsdale, *Old Northwest*, Chs. xv, xvi; Shosuke Sato, *Land Questions in the United States*, 88-120 (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, IV, Nos. 7-9); H. B. Adams, *Maryland's Influence, 152-159*. — PROPOSED NEW STATES: Theodore Roosevelt, *Winning of the West*, III; W. L. Stone, *Poetry and History of Wyoming*; E. D. Warfield, *Constitutional Aspects of Kentucky's Struggle for Autonomy* (American Historical Association, *Papers*, IV, 349-368); J. M. Ramsay, *Annals of Tennessee*; F. J. Turner in *American Historical Review*, I, 70-87, 251-269.

**Sources.** — ACTS OF CESSION AND ORDINANCES OF CONGRESS: Bioren and Duane, *Land Laws of the United States*, I; *Journals of Congress and Secret Journals*; Donaldson's *Public Domain*, 87 et seq.; Hickey, *United States Constitution*, 418; *American History Leaflets*, Nos. 5, 16, 22; Poore, *Charters and Constitutions: Old South Leaflets*, No. 13; H. W. Preston, *Documents Illustrative of American History*. — CONTEMPORARY DISCUSSIONS: James Madison, *Papers*, I; George Washington, *Writings* (Sparks edition), VIII, IX; Cutlers, *Life and Journals of Manasseh Cutler*; "Connecticut Farmer," *Remarks on a Pamphlet*; Thomas Paine, *Public Good*; W. T. Smith, *St. Clair Papers*, I, Ch. i; George Bancroft, *History of the Constitution*, I, II, Appendices, passim.

**Bibliography.** — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 528-539; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, III, 34, 920; G. E. Howard, *Local Constitutional History*, I, 141, 410; J. B. McMaster, *History*, III, 117; H. B. Adams, *Maryland's Influence*, 48; Thomson, *Bibliography of Ohio*, No. 933; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 41. Notes to Bancroft, Curtis, McMaster, etc., and also to special authorities.

## § 151. Finances of the Confederation, 1781-1788.

**Summary.** — System : boards (see § 149); 1781-84, Morris's administration ; 1781, May 26, Bank of North America. — Currency : paper money ; 1784, Jefferson's plan of coinage ; ordinance of 1786. — Resources : post-office ; requisitions ; failure of the system. — Loans : outstanding in 1783 ; foreign ; Dutch ; domestic ; depreciation. — Expenditures : half pay ; 1783, March 17, Newburg addresses ; running expenses. — Financial amendments (see § 154) : 1781, five-per-cent scheme ; 1783, revenue scheme ; 1786, revenue scheme revived.

**General.** — R. Hildreth, *History*, III, Chs. xlv, xlvi ; J. Pitkin, *History*, II, Chs. xvi, xvii ; W. G. Sumner, *Alexander Hamilton*, Ch. viii, and *History of American Currency*, 43-57 ; Jared Sparks, *Life of Gouverneur Morris*, I, Chs. xvi, xvii ; Theodore Roosevelt, *Gouverneur Morris*, 99-108 ; J. Story, *Commentaries*, § 254 ; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, 35-49 ; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopadia*, II, 189-208. — See §§ 139, 141, 158.

**Special.** — W. G. Sumner, *Financier and Finances of the American Revolution*, I, Chs. xiii-xv ; II, Chs. i-xxv ; G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History of the United States*, I, Chs. vii-x (*History of the Constitution*, I, 155-248) ; J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, Chs. ii-iv ; J. C. Hamilton, *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, I, Chs. xi, xiii, xv ; G. Bancroft, *History of the United States* (last revision), VI, 24-30, 59-86, 192 ; (*History of the Constitution*, I, 21-45, 76-113, 263) ; Chas. R. King, *Life and Correspondence of Rufus King*, I, Chs. vi, vii ; J. Elliot, *Funding System*, 59-61, 91, 92 ; W. C. Rives, *Life and Times of James Madison*, II, Ch. xxiv ; A. S. Bolles, *Financial History of the United States*, I, 267-359 ; Wm. Hill, *First Stages of the Tariff Policy of the United States* ; C. H. J. Douglass, *Financial History of Massachusetts* ; W. Z. Ripley, *Financial History of Virginia* ; T. K. Worthington, *Historical Sketch of the Finances of Pennsylvania* ; W. E. H. Lecky, *England in the Eighteenth Century*, IV, 95-250.

**Sources.** — *American State Papers, Finance*, I ; *Journals of Congress*, VII-XIII, passim ; Alexander Hamilton, *Works* (J. C. Hamilton edition), I ; James Madison, *Papers*, I ; George Washington, *Writings*, (Sparks edition), VIII, IX, passim ; James V. Varnum, *Case of Trevett against Weeden* ; Samuel Osgood in Massachusetts Historical Society, *Proceedings*, V, 470 ; Dickeson, *American Numismatic Manual*, Pl. xi.

**Bibliography.**—Winsor, *America*, VII, 223, 235, 236, 483, and *Reader's Hand-Book*, 41, 242, 243, 274; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, No. 37; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 199. Notes to Curtis, Bancroft, and in special authorities above.

### § 152. Slavery Questions under the Confederation, 1774-1787.

• **Summary.**—National questions: slaves as prizes; fugitives; Indian treaties; clause in Northwest ordinance (§ 150).—Taxation: 1776, debate; 1777; unsettled by the Articles.—Negro troops.—Trade: "Association" of 1774; Jefferson's draft of 1776: state prohibitions.—Territorial: 1784, Jefferson's proposition; 1785, King's proposition; 1787, Northwest ordinance (see § 150).—Emancipation movement: societies; Southern sentiment; European sentiment.—Emancipation accomplished: 1777, Vermont; 1780, Massachusetts and Pennsylvania; 1783, New Hampshire; 1784, Rhode Island and Connecticut; 1799, New York; 1804, New Jersey.

**General.**—Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, I, 273-301; J. F. Jameson, *Essays on the Constitutional History of the United States*, No. V; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 3; III, 727, 973; Henry Wilson, *Rise and Fall of the Slave Power*, I, Chs. ii-iv; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Chs. iii, iv; T. R. R. Cobb, *Historical Sketch of Slavery*, Ch. xi; G. Bancroft, *History* (last revision), VI, 116-118 (*History of the Constitution*, I, 192); J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, Chs. xiv, xvii; W. Goodell, *Slavery and Anti-slavery*, Chs. vii-xi; James Schouler, *Life of Thomas Jefferson*, Ch. viii; Van Santvoord, *Chief Justices*, 179-195; R. Hildreth, *United States*, III, 390-395, 509; IV, 174-177.—See §§ 148, 161, 178.

**Special.**—T. M. Cooley, *Story's Commentaries*, § 1916; C. R. King, *Life and Correspondence of Rufus King*, I, Chs. vi, xv; William F. Poole, *Anti-slavery Opinions before 1800*; Samuel M. Janney, *History of the Society of Friends*, III, Ch. xv; W. E. B. DuBois, *Slave Trade* (Harvard Historical Studies, No. 1); G. W. Williams, *History of the Negro Race*, I, Chs. xxvi-xxx1; B. A. Hinsdale, *Old Northwest*, Ch. xviii; Shosuke Sato, *Public Land Questions*, 88-99 (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, IV, Nos. 7-9); Cutlers, *Life of Manasseh Cutler*;

G. H. Moore, *Notes on Slavery in Massachusetts*, Chs. viii-x; B. C. Steiner, *Slavery in Connecticut*, 24-45; Jeffrey R. Brackett, *Status of the Slave in Maryland*; M. G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, §§ 13, 14; J. F. Jameson, *Essays*. — See § 148.

**Sources.** — Ordinances of Congress in *Journals of Congress*; State Statutes in collections enumerated in § 29; early state constitutions in Poore, *Charters and Constitutions*; George Livermore, *Historical Research respecting the Opinions of the Founders of the Republic*. — See § 148.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 325, 326; Goodell, *Slavery and Anti-slavery*, 90-97; T. M. Cooley, *Story's Commentaries*, § 1916; Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, Appendix E; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 62, 63; W. E. B. DuBois, *Suppression of the Slave Trade*, Appendix F.

### § 153. Foreign and Commercial Relations of the Confederation. 1783-1789.

**Summary.** — Great Britain: Western posts; negroes; loyalists; debts; navigation laws; West Indian trade; discriminations; Adams's mission. — Spain: boundary; Mississippi navigation; negotiations of 1786; threats of the West. — France: 1778, treaties (§ 139); 1788, consular convention. — Minor treaties. — Status of states: irregular action; interstate obstacles; 1784, commerce amendment (§ 154); 1785, Monroe's proposition.

**General.** — (See §§ 138, 141, 162.) HISTORIES: McMaster, *United States*, I, Chs. iii, iv; T. Pitkin, *United States*, II, Ch. xvii; R. Hildreth, *History*, III, Ch. xlvi; W. E. H. Lecky, *England* (English edition), IV, 266. — BIOGRAPHIES: William Whitelock, *John Jay*, Ch. xiv; George Pellew, *John Jay*, Ch. ix; John T. Morse, Jr., *John Adams*, Ch. ix, and *Thomas Jefferson*, Ch. vii; J. T. Austin, *Elbridge Gerry*, I, Ch. xxv; M. C. Tyler, *Patrick Henry*, Ch. xvii; Kate M. Rowland, *George Mason*, II, Ch. iii; S. F. Miller, *Lectures on the Constitution*, 48-55; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 207, 574.

**Special.** — HISTORIES: G. Bancroft, *History* (last revision), VI, 27-166, passim (*History of the Constitution*, I, 33-227, passim); J. C. Hamilton, *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, II, Chs. xx-xxiii; G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, I, Chs. xi, xiii (*History of the Constitution*,

I, 249-290); John Fiske, *Critical Period*, Ch. iv. — DIPLOMATIC AUTHORITIES: F. Lyman, *Diplomacy of the United States*, II, Ch. vi; W. C. Fisher, *American Trade Regulations before 1789* (American Historical Association, *Papers*, III, 467-496); F. Wharton, *Digest of the International Law of the United States*, passim; Eugene Schuyler, *American Diplomacy*, 265-281. — ECONOMIC AUTHORITIES: W. B. Weedon, *Economic and Social History of New England*, II, Chs. xxii, xxiii; William Hill, *First Stages of the Tariff Policy* (American Economic Association, *Publications*, VIII, No. 6, Chs. i-iii. — BIOGRAPHIES: Henry Flanders, *Chief Justices (Jay)*, I, Ch. xiii; William Jay, *John Jay*, I, 183-254; W. C. Rives, *James Madison*, II, Chs. xxi-xxiv, xxvi; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, Chs. iii, iv, ix, x; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, I, Chs. xi, xii; C. F. Adams, *John Adams*, II, Ch. viii; George Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, I, Chs. viii-xi; J. Schouler, *Thomas Jefferson*, Ch. ix; W. W. Henry, *Patrick Henry*, II, Chs. xxxiii, xxxiv.

**Sources.** — Instructions and ordinances of Congress in *Journals of Congress and Secret Journals; Treaties and Conventions* (1778-1788); John Jay, *Correspondence and Public Papers*, III, 167-224; Alexander Hamilton, *Works* (J. C. Hamilton edition), I, (Lodge edition) I, 203-315; Thomas Jefferson, *Writings*, I, 338-607, II; James Madison, *Writings*, I, passim, and *Papers*, I; George Washington, *Writings* (Sparks edition), VIII, IX, passim (especially IX, 501-510); John Adams, *Works*, III, 353-406 (Diary, 1783-87), VIII (correspondence); Benjamin Franklin, *Works* (Bigelow edition), VII-IX, passim; G. Bancroft, *History of the Constitution*, Appendices to I, II, passim; Noah Webster, *Sketches of American Policy*; Pelatiah Webster, *Dissertation on the Political Union*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 199-235, passim; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 38, 39.

### § 154. The Federal Convention of 1787.

**Summary.** — Proposed amendments of the Confederation: 1781, five per cent (§ 151); 1783, revenue (§ 151); 1784, commerce (§ 153); 1785-86, minor schemes. Call: 1785, Massachusetts proposition; 1786, Annapolis Convention; 1787, February 21, call by Congress. — Choice of delegates: principal members. — Convention: place; 1787, May 25, organizes; plans submitted;

May 30 to June 13, first general debate; June 19 to July 26, second general debate; August 7 to September 8, debate on detail. — September 12 to 15, Committee on style; September 17, signatures. — Difficulties: authority; sources; first compromise (representation in Congress); second compromise (slave representation); third compromise (slave trade).

**General.** — HISTORIES: R. Hildreth, *History*, III, Ch. xlvi; T. Pitkin, *United States*, II, Ch. xviii; T. W. Higginson, *Larger History*, 293-308; G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, I, 234-256 (*History of the Constitution*, I, 347-379); Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 86-103; J. K. Hosmer, *Anglo-Saxon Freedom*, Ch. xv; J. Schouler, *History*, I, Ch. i, Sect. ii; J. S. Landon, *Constitutional History*, 59-96; F. A. Walker, *Making of the Nation*, Chs. ii, iii; Justin Winsor, *America*, VII, Ch. iv; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 637-640. — BIOGRAPHIES: John T. Morse, Jr., *Alexander Hamilton*, I, Ch. vi, and *Benjamin Franklin*, Ch. xv; W. G. Sumner, *Financier and Finances of the Revolution*, II, Ch. xxviii; Kate M. Rowland, *George Mason*, II, Chs. iv, v; Wm. Jay, *John Jay*, I, 254-270; H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, II, Ch. i; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, Ch. iv-viii; T. Roosevelt, *Gouverneur Morris*, Ch. vi; Van Santvoord, *Chief Justices*, 179-195, 252-262; W. W. Henry, *Patrick Henry*, II, Ch. xxxv. — STATE HISTORIES (see also § 23): J. S. Barry, *Massachusetts*, II, Chs. vi, vii; J. T. Scharf, *Maryland*, II, Ch. xxxi; R. R. Howison, *Virginia*, II, Ch. v. — CONSTITUTIONAL TREATISES: J. A. Jameson, *Constitutional Conventions*; John Ordronaux, *Constitutional Legislation*, Ch. ii; J. I. C. Hare, *American Constitutional Law*, I, Lects. i, ii; J. N. Pomeroy, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 79-81; W. O. Bateman, *Political and Constitutional Law*, §§ 80, 81; J. W. Burgess, *Political Science*, I, 98-108; T. Farrar, *Manual of the Constitution*, §§ 5-23; B. A. Hinsdale, *American Government*, Pt. i, Chs. vii-ix; R. Frothingham, *Rise of the Republic*, Ch. xii; J. P. Thompson, *Lectures on the Centennial of American Independence*, Lect. iii; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, V, 3296-3301. — See also §§ 142, 155-157.

**Special.** — H. L. Carson, *History of the Celebration of the One Hundredth Anniversary of the Promulgation of the Constitution* (2 vols.); J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 272-276; J. C. Hamilton, *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, [or *Republic*], III, Chs. xlv-xlvi; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, Chs. xi-xiv; G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, I, Chs. xv-xxxii (*History of the Constitution*, I, 328-488; II, 1-488); W. C. Rives, *James*



*Madison*, II, Chs. xxv-xxxii; James H. Robinson, *Original and Derived Features of the Constitution* (American Academy of Political and Social Science, *Annals*, I, 203-243); O. G. Libby, *Geographical Distribution of the Vote of the Thirteen States* (University of Wisconsin, *Bulletin*, I, No. 1); G. Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), VI, 177-276, 292-367 (*History of the Constitution*, I, 242-278; II, 1-97, 119-222); J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, Ch. iv, and *Pennsylvania and the Federal Constitution*; John Fiske, *Critical Period*, Chs. v, vi; J. T. Austin, *Life of Elbridge Gerry*, II, Ch. i; C. Ellis Stevens, *Sources of the Constitution*, Chs. ii-iv, vi; Henry Sumner Maine, *Popular Government*, Essay iv; Charles Ingersoll, *Fears for Democracy*, Ch. ii.

**Sources.**—*Journal of the Convention*, in several editions, also in J. Elliot, *Debates*, I, 120-508, official reprints in Bureau of Rolls and Library, *Bulletin*, No. 3 (Journal), Nos. 1, 3, 5 (Papers).—Madison's Notes in *Madison Papers*, II, 685-1242; J. Madison, *Letters and Other Writings*, I, 278-342, passim; George Washington, *Writings* (Sparks edition), IX, 219-265, 510-558; Alex. Hamilton, *Works* (J. C. Hamilton edition), I, 393-456, (Lodge edition), I, 319-409; John Jay, *Correspondence and Public Papers*, III, 221-259; Benjamin Franklin, *Works* (Bigelow edition), IX, 395-484; Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), I, 78-82; G. Bancroft, *History of the Constitution*, II, Appendix.—REPRINTS in Joel Tiffany, *Treatise on Government*, Appendix, Nos. 5-12; W. Hickey, *Constitution of the United States* (1854), 153-189; P. L. Ford, *Essays on the Constitution, and Pamphlets on the Constitution*.—TEXT OF THE CONSTITUTION: Original engrossed copy in Department of State; verbatim reprints from the MS. in *The Constitution of the United States with the Amendments* (Washington, Government Printing Office, 1891), and in *American History Leaflets*, No. 8.

**Bibliography.**—P. L. Ford, *Bibliography and Reference List of the Constitution*; Winsor, *America*, VII, 226, 256-263; W. E. Foster, *References to the Constitution*, 14-21; J. G. Barnwell, *Reading Notes on the Constitution*; John Fiske, *Critical Period*, 351-356; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 42-46; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 128, 129; Bureau of Rolls and Library, *Bulletins* (Calendars of Jefferson and Madison Papers); A. B. Hart, *Introduction to Federal Government*, §§ 38, 469, and *Revised Suggestions*, § 45.



## § 155. Ratification of the Constitution, 1787-1790.

**Summary.** — Action of Congress : September 18, 1787, Constitution transmitted. — Popular feeling : objections ; arguments in favor ; arguments against ; Federalists organize ; Anti-Federalists organize ; the "Foederalist." — Stages of ratification : (1) calling conventions ; (2) choosing delegates ; (3) debates in conventions ; (4) acts of ratification. — Progress of ratification : 1787, December 7, to 1788, January 9, Delaware, Pennsylvania, New Jersey, Georgia, Connecticut (five states) ; 1788, February 7 to June 21, Massachusetts, Maryland, South Carolina, New Hampshire (nine states) ; June 26, Virginia (tenth) ; July 26, New York (eleventh) ; 1789, November 21, North Carolina (twelfth) ; 1790, May 29, Rhode Island (thirteenth). — Proposed amendments : 1789, amendments submitted by Congress.

**General.** — T. Pitkin, *History*, II, 264-291 ; R. Hildreth, *History*, III, Ch. xlviii ; S. F. Miller, *Lectures on the Constitution*, Lect. i ; J. I. C. Hare, *American Constitutional Law*, I, Lect. iii ; M. C. Tyler, *Patrick Henry*, Chs. xviii, xix ; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, Ch. ix ; John T. Morse, Jr., *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, I, 238-275 ; George Van Santvoord, *Chief Justices*, I, 37-50, 195-198, 262-264 ; William Sullivan, *Familiar Letters*, 19-35 ; A. H. Everett, *Patrick Henry* (Library of American Biography, Second Series, I), Ch. vii ; B. A. Hinsdale, *American Government*, Pt. i, Chs. x, xi ; F. A. Walker, *Making of the Nation*, Ch. iv. — See §§ 142, 154, 156, 157.

**Special.** — H. B. Dawson, *The Federalist*, Introduction ; G. T. Curtis, *Constitutional History*, I, Chs. xxxiii-xxxvi (*History of the Constitution*, II, 491-604) ; George Bancroft, *History* (last revision), VI, 371-462 (*History of the Constitution*, II, 225-350) ; Joseph Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 277-279 ; J. C. Hamilton, *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, III, Chs. xlix-liv ; C. J. Stillé, *John Dickinson*, Ch. vii ; J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, Ch. v ; W. C. Rives, *James Madison*, II, Chs. xxxiii-xxxvi ; Kate M. Rowland, *George Mason*, II, Chs. vi-viii ; Charles Borgeaud, *Adoption and Amendment of Constitutions*, 15-20, 131-136, 175-191 ; John Fiske, *Critical Period*, Ch. vii ; P. C. Centz (pseud.), *Republic of Republics*, 74-156 ; J. A. Jameson, *Constitutional Conventions* ; J. F. Jameson, *Essays*, No. 2. — PARTICULAR STATES : J. B. McMaster, and F. D. Stone, *Pennsylvania and the Federal Constitution* ; J. B.

Walker, *Birth of the Federal Constitution, A History of the New Hampshire Convention*; B. K. Peirce and C. Hale, *Debates in the Convention of Massachusetts* (1856); S. B. Harding, *Ratification of the Federal Constitution by the State of Massachusetts* (Harvard Historical Studies, II); *Debates and Proceedings of the Convention of Virginia*; J. Elliot, *Debates*, II-IV; G. H. Hollister, *History of Connecticut*, II, Ch. xix (see also § 23); A. W. Clason, *Seven Conventions*; J. T. Austin, *Elbridge Gerry*, II, Chs. ii, iii; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, Chs. xvi, xix; H. C. Lodge, *George Cabot*, 24-33; W. V. Wells, *Samuel Adams*, III, 248-282; J. D. Hammond, *History of Political Parties in the State of New York*, I, Ch. i; W. W. Henry, *Patrick Henry*, II, Chs. xxxvi-xxxix.

**Sources.** — TEXT OF RATIFICATION ORDINANCES: Originals in Department of State; Official reprints in Bureau of Rolls and Library, *Bulletin*, No. 5; Unofficial reprints in J. Elliot, *Debates*, I, 319-339; H. Niles, *Weekly Register*, XLIII, Supplement, p. 44; P. C. Centz (pseud.), *Republic of Republics*, App. C, No. 2; W. O. Bateman, *Political and Constitutional Law*, §§ 85, 86. — DEBATES: See special authorities above, and J. Elliot, *Debates*, II-IV; George Washington, *Writings* (Sparks edition), IX, 265-492; James Madison, *Writings*, I, 342-409, and *Papers*, II, 615-682; John Jay, *Correspondence and Public Papers*, III, 260, 362; A. Hamilton, *Works* (J. C. Hamilton edition), I, 428-491, (H. C. Lodge edition), I, 413-535; G. Bancroft, *History of the Constitution*, II, Appendix, passim; W. W. Henry, *Patrick Henry*, III, 432-600; P. C. Centz (pseud.), *Republic of Republics*, Appendices A, C; Joel Tiffany, *Treatise on Government*, Appendix, Nos. 13-17; E. B. Williston, *Eloquence of the United States*, I; H. Niles, *Weekly Register*, XLIII, Supplement.

**Bibliography.** — P. L. Ford, *Bibliography and Reference List*, and *Pamphlets*, 437-441; Winsor, *America*, VII, 257-260; W. E. Foster, *References to the Constitution*, 17, 18; J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 278, 279; J. G. Barnwell, *Reading Notes on the Constitution*, p. vi; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 53, 54; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopadia*, I, 610.

## § 156. Theories of the Constitution.

**Summary.** — Theories of origin: is the Union older than the states? (§§ 136, 143); were the states sovereign under the confederation? (§§ 143, 149); did the states surrender sovereignty in

ratification? (§ 155).—Theories of ratification: (1) by states; (2) by the people in independent communities; (3) by the people in each of the states; (4) by the people of the United States; (5) by general assent; (6) by the people in their constitution-making capacity.—Theories of federal relations: (1) a league; (2) a compact; (3) an instrument of government; (4) an indissoluble league of indestructible states.—Theories of dissolution: (1) interposition (§ 165); (2) nullification (§ 184); (3) secession (§ 207); (4) revolution (§§ 209, 210).

**General.**—T. M. Cooley, *Constitutional Law*, Ch. ii; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, I, 47-63, and *Constitutional Law*, §§ 1-5; Joel Tiffany, *Treatise on Government*, Ch. vi; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, Ch. xv; G. Bancroft, *History* (last revision), VI, 441-451 (*History of the Constitution*, II, 321-335); James Bryce, *American Commonwealth*, I, Ch. ii-iv; E. Boutmy, *Studies in Constitutional Law*, Pt. ii; J. W. Burgess, *Political Science*, I, 49-89, 98-108, 142-154; II, 17-21; James Bayard, *Brief Exposition of the Constitution*, 159-165; Henry Baldwin, *General View*, passim; W. O. Bateman, *Political and Constitutional Law*, §§ 90-153; Crane and Moses, *Politics*, Ch. xi; T. M. Cooley, *Treatise on Constitutional Limitations*, Ch. ii; T. Farrar, *Manual of the Constitution*, §§ 48-63; C. W. Loring, *Nullification, Secession*, Chs. ii, iii; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, III, 788-802; J. F. Baker, *Federal Constitution*, Chs. iv, v; J. N. Pomeroy, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 93-95; F. Wharton, *Commentaries*, § 371.—See §§ 154, 155, 157, 159, 165, 184, 208.

**Special.**—J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 306-372, 463; J. I. C. Hare, *American Constitutional Law*, I, Lects. iv-vii; J. C. Hurd, *Theory of our National Existence*, Ch. iv; John Quincy Adams, *Jubilee of the Constitution*, 1-70, 116-120; Jefferson Davis, *Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government*, I, Pt. ii; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, I, Chs. iii-ix; P. C. Centz (pseud.), *Republic of Republics*, 41-69, 159-270.—QUESTION OF RATIFICATION: State theories: P. C. Centz (pseud.), *Republic of Republics*, 137-156; W. O. Bateman, *Political and Constitutional Law*, §§ 86a, 102-114, 134; H. Baldwin, *General View*, 18-26.—"People" theories: *The Federalist* (Dawson edition), No. 38; Webster, in Elliot's *Debates*, IV, 496-509.—STATUS OF NON-RATIFYING STATES: J. Story, *Commentaries*, § 479, 1849; W. O. Bateman, *Political and Constitutional Law*, § 81-86; F. Wharton, *Commentaries*, § 368; W. R. Staples, *Rhode Island in the Continental Congress*; H. Von Holst,

*Constitutional Law*, § 4; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, III, 695, 792, 793. — LEAGUE AND COMPACT THEORIES: J. Story, *Commentaries*, § 321-330, 349-372; Webster, in Benton's *Abridgment*, XII, 103; Tucker, in Story's *Commentaries*, §§ 310-319; P. C. Centz (pseud.), *Republic of Republics*, 59-69, 561-571; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, I, 116-120, 477-485; Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 134-140; E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, 38-41. — INSTRUMENT OF GOVERNMENT THEORY: J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 339, 340; J. Kent, *Commentaries*, I, 201; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, I, 17-21; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, 285, 286. — STATE SOVEREIGNTY THEORY: J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, III, 788-800; P. C. Centz (pseud.), *Republic of Republics*, 325-339; St. George Tucker, *Blackstone's Commentaries*, Appendix, note D; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, I, 116-147, 465-496; II, 21-24; Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 141-156; J. C. Hurd, *Theory of our National Existence*, 116-141; H. Baldwin, *General View*. — NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY THEORY: J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 350-363, 380-383; J. A. Jameson, *National Sovereignty (Political Science Quarterly)*, V, 193-213; Daniel Webster, *Works* (see below).

**Sources.** — Illustrative cases in J. B. Thayer, *Cases on Constitutional Law*, I, especially Ch. iii; J. Marshall, *Writings*, passim. — Discussions, in J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, II, 262-309; Webster, in Elliot, *Debates*, IV, 496-509, 516-518, and in Johnston, *Representative American Orations*, I, 228; Hayne, in J. Elliot, *Debates*, IV, 509-516; P. C. Centz (pseud.), *Republic of Republics*, 524-527.

**Bibliography.** — Justin Winsor, *America*, VII, 261-266; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 47; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, III, 800; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, §§ 45, 46, 49, 50, 57, 62, 66, 68. — See §§ 183, 205.

## XVII. ORGANIZATION OF THE GOVERNMENT.

### § 157. Organization of the three Departments of Government, 1789-1793.

**Summary.** — Precedents : English (§ 146); colonial governments (§ 147); state governments (§ 143); Continental Congress (§ 137); Confederation (§ 149). — Preliminaries : 1788, expiration of the Confederation ; 1788-89, first national elections ; place of meeting. — The legislative department : 1789, April 1, 6, two houses organized ; June 1, first Act ; question of instructions ; salaries ; relations with the president ; relations with the cabinet ; speaker ; committees ; leaders. — Executive department : 1789, April 30, inauguration of Washington ; novelty of the office ; question of title ; ceremonies ; appointments ; question of removal of officers ; 1792, April 5, first veto ; 1795, question of submitting papers. — Executive heads : practice of the confederation ; creation of heads of departments ; Washington's cabinet ; questions of patronage. — Judiciary department : previous federal courts ; 1789, September 24, judiciary act ; supreme court ; inferior courts ; attorney general ; appointments of judges ; question of appeal jurisdiction ; extra judicial opinions ; 1793, first great decision.

**General.** — H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, II, 40-81 ; J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, 525-568 ; C. F. Adams, *John Adams*, 438-458 ; T. Pitkin, *History*, II, Ch. xx ; R. Hildreth, *History*, IV, Chs. i, ii, iv, vi ; John T. Morse, Jr., *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, I, Ch. vii, and *John Adams*, Ch. x ; J. Schouler, *Thomas Jefferson*, Ch. x, and *History*, I, 74-130 ; G. Bancroft, *United States* (last revision), VI, 463-474 (*History of the Constitution*, II, 351-367) ; J. Sparks, *George Washington*, I, Ch. xvi ; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 587, 804 ; II, 132, 192, 474, 527, 567, 648, 660, 663, 992 ; III, 310, 702, 933, 1087 ; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, Ch. x ; T. W. Higginson, *Larger History*, Ch. xiii ; George

Tucker, *History*, Chs. v, vi; Alden Bradford, *Federal Government*, Ch. i; A. W. Young, *The American Statesman*, Ch. v; J. Q. Adams, *Jubilee of the Constitution*; H. E. Scudder, *George Washington*, Chs. xxiii, xxiv.

**Special.** — DETAILED ACCOUNTS: H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, I, Chs. xiv, xv; W. C. Rives, *James Madison*, III, Chs. xxxvii, xxxviii; J. Sparks, *George Washington*, Ch. xv; William Whitelock, *John Jay*, Chs. xv-xvii; J. C. Hamilton, *Republic*, IV, Chs. lvi-lviii; C. W. Upham, *Timothy Pickering*, II, Ch. vii; III, Chs. i, ii; J. T. Austin, *Elbridge Gerry*, II, Ch. iv; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, Ch. xix; H. C. Lodge, *George Cabot*, Chs. iii, iv. — LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT: Samuel Oppenheim, *Early Congressional Debates and Reporters*; J. W. Moore, *American Congress*, Chs. viii-x; A. Lawrence Lowell, *Essays on Government*, No. 1; Mary P. Follett, *The Speaker*; Clara H. Kerr, *Origin and Development of the United States Senate*. — EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT: Lives of Washington, Hamilton, Jefferson, Edmund Randolph, Knox, (see § 25); R. W. Griswold, *Republican Court*; Eugene Schuyler, *American Diplomacy*, Nos. 1-3; C. A. O'Neil, *American Electoral System*, Chs. iv, v; Lucy M. Salmon, *Appointing Power of the President* (American Historical Association, *Papers*, I, 299-419). — JUDICIARY DEPARTMENT: Henry Flanders, *Lives and Times of the Chief Justices*, I, Ch. xiv (*Jay*), Chs. xv, xvi (*Rutledge*); George Van Santvoord, *Lives of the Chief Justices* (*Jay*); H. L. Carson, *Supreme Court of the United States*, I, Chs. xi, xii; E. P. Wheeler, *The Supreme Court*; William Jay, *Life of John Jay*, I, Ch. viii; W. W. Willoughby, *Supreme Court* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, Extra Vol. VII).

**Sources.** — DEBATES (House): *Annals of Congress*, I-III; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment of Debates*, I; J. Elliot, *Debates*, IV, 343-443; Thomas Lloyd, *Register of Debates* (1789-90); *History of Congress from 1789 to 1791*. — SENATE TO 1791: William Maclay, *Journal*; John Adams, *Works* (Diary), III, 407-414. — DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, I; *Annals of Congress*, Appendices to I-III; *American State Papers, Miscellaneous*, I; Williams, *Statesman's Manual*, I. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: Washington, *Writings* (Sparks edition), X, XII; (W. C. Ford edition), XI, XII; Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), III, (P. L. Ford edition), V; Hamilton, *Works* (H. C. Lodge edition), II; John Marshall, *Life of George Washington*, V, Ch. iii; James Madison, *Writings*, I; Fisher Ames, *Works*, I, and *Speeches in Congress*; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, Chs. xix, xx; William Sullivan, *Familiar Letters*, Nos. 10, 11; J. Sparks, *Gouverneur Morris*, III, No. 3; A.

Johnston, *Representative American Orations*, I; John Jay, *Correspondence and Public Papers*, III, 363-489; W. W. Henry, *Patrick Henry*, III, 385-422.

**Bibliography.**— Winsor, *America*, VII, 299-309, 323-333; W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 1-5; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 27; Indexes to the *Journals of Congress*, 1789-1805 (see § 16e); E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 48-52, 57; A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union*, § 69, and *Revised Suggestions*, §§ 33f-33h, 47.

### § 158. Organization of a Financial System, 1789-1793.

**Summary.**— Financial situation in 1789 (§§ 151, 153): revenue; expenditure; loans; deficit; lost credit.— Revenue: 1789, first tariff act; question of protection; system of collection; tonnage duties; excise; proceeds of lands and post-office; amount of revenue.— Debt: 1790, January 14, Hamilton's report on public credit; question of funding; foreign debt; domestic debt; original holders; funding system.— Assumption of state debts: reasons for; 1790, March and April, Congress uncertain; question of site of national seat of government; July, Jefferson's compromise; violent protests; amounts assumed.— Expenditure: ordinary expenses; interest; military and naval.— Bank of the United States: bank of North America (§ 151); 1790, December 14, Hamilton's report; draft of a bill; 1791, February, question of constitutionality (§ 166); cabinet opinions; February 21, act approved; successful operation of the bank; 1811, expires by limitation (§ 172); 1816, revived (§ 174).— Financial progress (§§ 166, 167, 174).

**General.**— H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, I, 80-107; J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, 542-561, 568-593; II, 25-41, 57-82; T. Pitkin, *History*, II, Ch. xx; R. Hildreth, *History*, IV, Chs. i-v, vii; George Tucker, *History*, I, 390-394, 413-431, 436-441, 448-458; H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, II, 103-128; J. Sparks, *George Washington*, Ch. xvii; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, Chs. xix-xxii; J. Schouler, *History*, I, 86-93, 130-142, 158-165, 186; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, 151-159; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 316, 351, 714; II, 127, 190, 573; III, 856-859; Alden Bradford, *Federal Government*, Ch. ii; A. W. Young, *American*



*Statesman*, Chs. v, vi; W. A. Cocke, *Constitutional History*, I, Ch. iii; Judson S. Landon, *Constitutional History*, Lect. v.

**Special.** — DETAILED ACCOUNTS: John T. Morse, Jr., *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, I, Chs. vii–xii; II, Chs. i, ii; H. C. Lodge, *Alexander Hamilton*, Chs. v, vi; Henry Adams, *Albert Gallatin*, Book II; George Gibbs, *Memoirs of the Administrations of Washington and Adams*, I, Chs. ii, iii, vii, x, xiii; A. S. Bolles, *Financial History*, II, Book I; J. C. Hamilton, *Republic*, IV, V; William Sullivan, *Familiar Letters*, Nos. 11–14; George Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, I, Chs. xiii–xvi; Martin Van Buren, *Inquiry into Political Parties*, Chs. iii, iv; Henry C. Adams, *Taxation in the United States*, 14–30; (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, II, No. 5); J. W. Kearny, *Sketch of American Finances*, Chs. i, ii. — TARIFF: William Hill, *First Stages of the Tariff Policy of the United States* (American Economic Association, *Publications*, VIII, No. 6), Ch. iv; F. W. Taussig, *Tariff History of the United States*, 8–17; W. G. Sumner, *Financier and Finances of the Revolution*, II, Chs. xxxi, xxxii; George S. White, *Memoir of Samuel Slater*, Chs. i–iv; J. D. Goss, *History of Tariff Administration* (Columbia College, *Publications*, I), 81–161; J. Leander Bishop, *History of American Manufactures*, II, 13–17. — DEBT: J. Elliot, *Report of the Funding System*; Henry C. Adams, *Public Debts*, Pt. ii, Chs. iii, v; Pt. iii, Ch. ii; J. A. Porter, *City of Washington* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, III, Nos. 11, 12). — BANK: W. G. Sumner, *History of American Currency*, 55–61, and *Alexander Hamilton*, Chs. x, xi; R. Hildreth, *Banks, Banking, and Paper Currencies*, Ch. xv; Clark and Hall, *Legislative and Documentary History of the Bank of the United States*, Ch. ii.

**Sources.** — DEBATES (House): *Annals of Congress*, I–III; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment of Debates*, I; *History of Congress from 1789 to 1791*. — Senate to 1791: William Maclay, *Journal*. — DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, I; *Annals of Congress*, Appendices to II, III; *American State Papers*, Finance, I, Post-Office Department, I, Claims, I, Commerce and Navigation, I; Williams, *Statesman's Manual*, I; C. F. Dunbar, *Laws Relating to Finance*. — Hamilton's Reports: *Works* (see below); *Annals of Congress*, Appendices to II, III; F. W. Taussig, *State Papers and Speeches on the Tariff*; *American State Papers*, Finance, I. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: A. Hamilton, *Works* (J. C. Hamilton edition), III, IV, VI, 632–651, (H. C. Lodge edition), II, III; Albert Gallatin, *Writings*, III (*Sketch of the Finances of the United States*); William Maclay, *Journal*, Chs. ii, v–xi, xiv; James Madison,



*Writings*, I; Fisher Ames, *Works*; Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), III (Letters), VII (Official Papers), IX (Anas); George Washington, *Writings* (Sparks edition), X, XII; (W. C. Ford edition), XI, XII; John Marshall, *Life of George Washington*, V, Chs. iii-v; J. Sparks, *Gouverneur Morris*, III, No. 5.

**Bibliography.**—P. L. Ford, *Bibliotheca Hamiltoniana*; Winsor, *America*, VII, 308, 328; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 204; II, 435 (Hamilton); W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 2; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 58-61, 65; Allibone, *American Authors*, I, 773 (Hamilton); A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, § 33k.

### § 159. Doctrine of Implied Powers.

**Summary.**—Before 1789: under the Continental Congress, all implied (§ 136); under the Confederation none implied (§ 142).—The Constitution (§§ 154-156): general clauses; “necessary and proper” clause; “general welfare” clause.—Bank question: 1791, February, question of constitutionality; first discussed; opinion of the cabinet.—Doctrines of powers of Congress: “implied powers”; “resulting powers”; “sovereignty of Congress.”—Applications: 1789, protection (§ 158); 1791, bank (§ 158); 1798, alien and sedition acts (§ 165); 1803, annexation of Louisiana (§ 168); 1807, embargo (§ 171); 1816, bank and internal improvements (§ 174); 1846-54, territorial slavery (§§ 196, 199); 1861, war (§§ 210, 215); 1863, legal tenders (§ 211); aid to the distressed; “general welfare.”

**General.**—T. M. Cooley, *Constitutional Law*, Ch. iv, § 15; John T. Morse, Jr., *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, I, Ch. xii; A. V. Dicey, *Lectures Introductory to the Study of the Law of the Constitution*, Lect. iii; John Ordronaux, *Constitutional Legislation*, 537-561; James Bryce, *American Commonwealth*, I, Chs. xxxiii-xxxv; W. A. Duer, *Constitutional Jurisprudence*, 309-401; James Bayard, *Brief Exposition of the Constitution*, 39-44.

**Special.**—J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 430, 497-506, 637-660, 907-930, 1236-1279, 1329; J. Kent, *Commentaries*, I, Lect. xii; S. F. Miller, *Lectures on the Constitution*, Notes to Lect. ii; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional Law*, § 16; F. Wharton, *Commentaries*, §§ 380, 404, 411, 468, 596; J. N. Pomeroy, *Constitutional Law*, § 259-269; C. S. Patter-

son, *The United States and the States under the Constitution*, Ch. ii; G. Bancroft, *Plea for the Constitution*.

**Sources.** — **CASES.** Anderson *vs.* Dunn: 6 *Wheaton*, 204; 5 *Curtis*, 61; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 603-610. — M'Culloch *vs.* Maryland: 4 *Wheaton*, 316; 4 *Curtis*, 415; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 271-285; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 160-187. — Martin *vs.* Hunter's Lessee: 1 *Wheaton*, 304; 3 *Curtis*, 562; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 123-132; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 525-554. — Gibbons *vs.* Ogden: 9 *Wheaton*, 1; 6 *Curtis*, 1; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 1799-1819; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 287-314. — Legal Tender Cases: 12 *Wallace*, 457; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 2237-2254. — United States *vs.* Fisher: 2 *Cranch*, 358; 1 *Curtis*, 496. — Osborn *vs.* Bank of the United States: 9 *Wheaton*, 738; 6 *Curtis*, 251; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 1346n.; J. Marshall, *Writings*, 315-342. — Logan *vs.* the United States: 144 *United States*, 263; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 343-348. — In re Neagle: 135 *United States*, 1; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 335-343. — Juilliard *vs.* Greenman: 110 *United States*, 421; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 2255-2267. (See also § 175.) — **CONTEMPORARY DISCUSSIONS:** A. Hamilton, *Works* (J. C. Hamilton edition), IV, 103-138, (H. C. Lodge edition), III, 179-227; Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), VII, 555-561, (P. L. Ford edition), V, 284; John Marshall, *Writings* (especially 164-178, 295-307, 313, 314); John Marshall, *Life of George Washington*, V, Ch. iv; Clark and Hall, *Legislative and Documentary History of the Bank of the United States*, 85-114.

**Bibliography.** — Robert Desty, *Federal Constitution*, 106-109, 278, 301, 302; notes to the commentaries, especially Story; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, §§ 48, 49, 51, 53, 58.

### § 160. Political Parties, 1789-1793.

**Summary.** — Origin of parties: colonial (§ 147); pre-revolutionary; revolutionary patriots and tories (§ 136); 1783-88, factions in Congress (§ 147); 1787-89, Federalists and Anti-Federalists (§ 155); state parties. — 1788-89, First national elections; 1789-92, genesis of parties in Congress; in the cabinet; on financial measures (§ 151). — 1793, Republican and Federal parties formed; leaders; Jefferson and Hamilton; 1792, second election of Washington; effect of the French revolution; "Democrats"; "British party"; "monarchical faction"; "corrupt treasury squadron."

**General.** — F. Wharton, *State Trials*, 1-7; H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, II, Ch. v; J. Sparks, *Life of George Washington*, Ch. xviii; W. G. Sumner, *Alexander Hamilton*, Chs. ix, xii; H. C. Lodge, *Alexander Hamilton*, 80-83, 136-152; J. Schouler, *Thomas Jefferson*, Chs. x, xi; John T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson*, Chs. viii-x; J. T. Austin, *Life of Elbridge Gerry*, II, Ch. iv; J. Schouler, *History*, I, 70-85, 165-179, 199-244; J. B. McMaster, *History*, II, 47-58, 85-88; George Tucker, *History*, I, 445-448, 480-498; R. Hildreth, *History*, IV, 39-46, 287-301, 331-373, 389-409; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, Ch. xii; T. Pitkin, *History*, II, 352-366; E. Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Chs. i-iii; Alden Bradford, *History of the Federal Government*, Ch. iii; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Ch. vii; Thomas V. Cooper, *American Politics*, Book I; J. Parton, *Life of Thomas Jefferson*, Chs. xliv, xlvi-xlviii; G. W. Lawton, *American Caucus System*, Ch. iv; F. W. Dalinger, *Nominations for Elective Office in the United States* (Harvard Historical Studies, IV).

**Special.** — PARTY HISTORIES: R. McK. Ormsby, *History of the Whig Party*, Chs. iii-vi; Martin Van Buren, *Inquiry into Political Parties*, Chs. i, ii, iv; Alexis de Tocqueville, *Democracy in America*, I, Chs. x-xiii; Anson D. Morse, *Our Two Great Parties* (*Political Science Quarterly*, VI, VII); Arthur Holmes, *Parties and their Principles*, Ch. iii; Winsor, *America*, VII, Ch. v. — DETAILED ACCOUNTS: John T. Morse, Jr., *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, II, Ch. i; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, I, Ch. xv; II, Chs. i-iii; George Gibbs, *Memoirs of the Administrations of Washington and Adams*, I, Chs. i-iv; George Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, I, Chs. xiv-xvi; W. C. Rives, *James Madison*, III; G. M. Dallas, *A. J. Dallas*, 48-59; Hugh A. Garland, *John Randolph*, I, Chs. ix-xv; Matthew L. Davis, *Aaron Burr*, I, Chs. xvi; II, Chs. ii, iii.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress* and T. H. Benton's *Abridgment*, passim. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: A. Hamilton, *Works* (J. C. Hamilton edition), IV, V, VII (*An American Catullus*), (H. C. Lodge edition), VI, VIII; Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), III, especially 359-365; IX, 87-185, (P. L. Ford edition), V VI; John Adams, *Works*, VI, (*Discourses on Davila*), XII; William Maclay, *Journal*; George Washington, *Writings* (Sparks edition), X, especially Appendices to XII, XIII, XVI, (W. C. Ford edition), XII, XIII; James Madison, *Writings*, I; W. W. Henry, *Patrick Henry*, III, 387-428 (Letters); C. R. King, *Rufus King*, Chs. xxiii, xxiv; J. C.

Hamilton, *Republic*, IV, Chs. lx, lxxi-lxxvi (especially 525); James Sullivan, *Familiar Letters*; Abigail Adams, *Letters* (2 vols.).

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 294-333; W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 3-4; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 56, 57; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, § 33c.

### § 161. Territorial and Slavery Questions, 1789-1802.

**Summary.** — New state constitutions (§ 143): questions under the confederation (§ 161). — New states: 1791, Vermont; 1792, Kentucky; 1796, Tennessee; 1802, Ohio. — Land questions: 1790, North Carolina cession; 1794, Yazoo grants; 1800, Western Reserve; 1802, Georgia cession. — Territories: 1789, Northwest ordinance (§ 161) confirmed; 1790, "territory south of the Ohio"; 1798, Mississippi territory; 1800, Northwest territory divided. — Slavery under the Confederation (§ 161). — Slavery question revived: 1789, question of a tax on the trade; 1790, memorials; 1793, fugitive slave act; 1794, regulation of the trade. — 1793, The cotton gin. — Seat of government: 1790, site fixed by compromise (§ 158); selected by Washington; 1800, first occupied; laws of the District of Columbia. — Progress of territorial questions (§§ 168, 176, 178). — Progress of slavery questions (§§ 177, 186).

**General.** — H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, I, 302-325; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, II, 315, 671; III, 461-469, 735, 891, 1061; J. Schouler, *History*, I, 98-101, 142-150, 179-199; George Tucker, *History*, I, 407, 431-434, 447, 459, 499-501; J. B. McMaster, *History*, II, 15-22, 144-165, 284-286, 476-489; III, Ch. xvi; R. Hildreth, *History*, IV, 174-206, 225-240, 267-272, 326-330, 384-387, 622-644; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, I, Chs. v-vii; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, 159-171; Winsor, *America*, VII, Appendix 1; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Ch. vi; R. McK. Ormsby, *Whig Party*, Ch. viii; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, Ch. xvi; St. George Tucker, *Blackstone's Commentaries*, II, Note E.

**Special.** — SLAVERY: William Goodell, *Slavery and Anti-Slavery*, Chs. xix, xxii; T. R. R. Cobb, *Historical Sketch of Slavery*, Ch. x; Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, §§ 16-35; George W. Williams, *History of the Negro Race in America*, I, Ch. xxxi; II, Ch. i; Mary

Tremain, *Slavery in the District of Columbia* (University of Nebraska, Publications); W. E. B. DuBois, *Suppression of the Slave Trade* (Harvard Historical Studies, I).—For slavery in the states, see § 152.—TERRITORIAL QUESTIONS: Shosuke Sato, *Public Land Question*, 121-143; C. H. Haskins, *Yazoo Land Companies* (American Historical Association, *Papers*, V, 395-437); Thomas Donaldson, *Public Domain*, Chs. iii-v; G. E. Howard, *Local Constitutional History*, I, 408-425; B. A. Hinsdale, *The Old Northwest*, Chs. xvi-xix.—For state histories, see § 23.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, I-XI; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment of Debates*, I, II. — DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, I; *Annals of Congress*, Appendices to I-XI; Thomas Donaldson, *Public Domain*; *American History Leaflets*, No. 22; *American State Papers*, *Public Lands*, I, *Miscellaneous*, I; B. P. Poore, *Charters and Constitutions*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: W. Winterbotham, *Historical, Geographical, Commercial, and Philosophical View of the American United States* (4 vols.); W. H. Smith, *St. Clair Papers*, II; Jedidiah Morse, *American Geography*; John Pope, *Tour through the Southern and Western Territories*; La Rochefoucauld, *Travels through the United States*. — For other travels, see § 24.

**Bibliography.** — T. M. Cooley, *Story's Commentaries*, § 1916, Note 1; Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, Appendix E; Mary Tremain, *Slavery in the District of Columbia*, 98-100; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 61, 64; W. E. B. DuBois, *Suppression of the Slave Trade*, Appendix D.

### § 162. Foreign Relations, 1793-1797.

**Summary.** — France: 1778, treaties (§ 139); 1788, consular convention (§ 162); 1789, revolution; 1793, neutrality declared; 1793, Genet episode; 1794, Monroe episode; 1796, Pinckney episode. — Spain: 1786, Mississippi question (§ 163); 1795, treaty of the Escurial. — England: 1789, outstanding questions under the treaty of 1783 (§ 162); 1793, outbreak of war with France; 1794, aggressions on neutral trade; impressments; war threatened; 1794, Jay's treaty; 1795, Jay's treaty opposed; "Despatch No. 10"; 1796, treaty accepted by the House; posts surrendered. — Barbary powers: treaties of tribute (§ 167). — Later controversies (§§ 168, 170-172).

**General.**—H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, II, Ch. iv; George Pellew, *John Jay*, Ch. x; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, I, 107–137; J. B. McMaster, *History*, II, 89–144, 165–188, 212–289; R. Hildreth, *History*, IV, 132–137, 411–443, 451–497, 516–520, 539–615; J. Schouler, *History*, I, Ch. iii; J. Sparks, *George Washington*, Chs. xviii, xix; T. Pitkin, *History*, II, Ch. xxi–xxv; George Tucker, *History*, I, Chs. vii, viii; Henry Adams, *Albert Gallatin*, 151–189; J. A. Stevens, *Albert Gallatin*, 104–125, 153–175; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, II, 327–331; Hugh A. Garland, *John Randolph*, I, Chs. xvi–xviii; T. Roosevelt, *Gouverneur Morris*, Chs. vii–x; D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe*, Ch. iii; Appendix II; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, Chs. xiii, xiv; H. C. Lodge, *Alexander Hamilton*, 153–175, 188–194; Justin Winsor, *America*, VII, Ch. vii; Alden Bradford, *History of the Federal Government*, Chs. iii, iv; W. A. Cocke, *Constitutional History of the United States*, Chs. iii; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Chs. viii–x; J. Parton, *Thomas Jefferson*, Chs. xlv, xlvi, xlix, l.

**Special.**—W. H. Trescot, *Diplomatic History of the Administrations of Washington and Adams*, Chs. ii–iv; Theodore Lyman, *Diplomacy of the United States*, I, Ch. vi, vii; George Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, I, Chs. xvii–xxi; Henry Flanders, *Chief Justices*, I, Chs. xiv, xv (*Jay*); II, Ch. x (*Ellsworth*); William Whitelock, *John Jay*, Chs. xviii–xx; William Jay, *John Jay*, I, Chs. viii–x; John T. Morse, Jr., *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, II, Chs. iii, v; William Sullivan, *Familiar Letters*, Nos. 12–22; C. F. Adams, *John Adams*, II, Ch. ix; George Gibbs, *Washington and Adams*, I, Chs. iv, v, viii–xii; J. C. Hamilton, *Republic*, V, VI; W. Irving, *Life of Washington*, V, Chs. xix–xxx; C. W. Upham, *Timothy Pickering*, III, Chs. v–vii; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, I, Chs. xxiv–xxxii; II, Chs. ix–xi; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, Chs. iii–vi; M. D. Conway, *Edmund Randolph*; Matthew L. Davis, *Memoirs of Aaron Burr*, I, Ch. xviii; C. D. Hazen, *Contemporary American Opinion of the French Revolution* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, XIII).

**Sources.**—DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, III–VI; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment of Debates*, I.—DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, I; *Annals of Congress*, III–VI, Appendices; *American State Papers, Foreign Relations*, I; *Annals of Congress*, VI, Appendix; Williams, *Statesman's Manual*, I; *Treaties and Conventions*; F. Wharton, *Digest of the International Law of the United States*, §§ 78, 79, 84, 131a, 137, 150a; Matthew Carey, *Remembrancer*.—CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: George Washington, *Writings* (Sparks edition), X–XII; (W. C. Ford edition),

XII, XIII; Fisher Ames, *Works*, I, II; *Speeches in Congress*; A. Johnston, *Representative American Orations*, I, 64 (Fisher Ames); E. B. Williston, *Eloquence of the United States*, I; Gouverneur Morris, *Diary and Letters*, I, Chs. xxiii-xxvi; II, Chs. xxvii-xxx; John Jay, *Correspondence and Public Papers*, IV; A. Hamilton, *Works* (J. C. Hamilton edition), IV, especially 355-406; V, VII (*Pacificus and Camillus*), *Works* (H. C. Lodge edition), IV; Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), III, IV, IX, (P. L. Ford edition), VI; James Monroe, *View of the Conduct of the Executive*; John Trumbull, *Autobiography*, Chs. xii-xiv; William Cobbett, *Porcupine's Works*, II; William Jay, *John Jay*, I, Chs. viii, x; II, 197-281; John Marshall, *George Washington*, V, Chs. vi-viii; James Madison, *Writings*, I (*Helvidius*), II; J. Sparks, *Gouverneur Morris*, II, III; Edmund Randolph, *Vindication of Mr. Randolph's Resignation*; F. Wharton, *State Trials*, 49-89 (Henfield Case); G. M. Dallas, *A. J. Dallas*, 160-210. \*

**Bibliography.** — J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 361, 467-471, 514-517; W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 4; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopaedia*, II, 638; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*. §§ 66-69; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 129-131.

### § 163. Internal Disturbances, 1790-1794.

**Summary.** — Causes: Indian lands; spread of democracy (§ 160); frontier life (§ 161); French example; "democratic clubs" (§ 163). — Indian wars: 1790, Miami expedition; 1791, St. Clair defeated; 1793, 1794, Wayne's campaign; 1795, Georgia wars. — Whiskey Rebellion: 1790, first excise; 1792, revision; violence; act for summoning militia; 1794, July, armed outbreak; August 7, President's proclamation; October, military expedition; 1795, treason trials; pardons; Washington on "self-constituted societies"; 1795, second act for summoning militia. — Troubles with Georgia: 1793, Chisholm case; 1795, Indians; Yazoo repeal (§ 161). — Later controversies (§§ 165, 169, 171, 173, 175, 183, 198, 202, 208, 213).

**General.** — H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, II, 81-103, 119-128, and *Alexander Hamilton*, 175-187; R. Hildreth, *History*, IV, 137-147, 244-249, 281-287, 304, 310, 373-384, 443-446, 498-531, 565; J. B. McMaster, *History*, I, 593-604; II, 42-47, 67-72, 189-206; T. Pitkin, *History*,



II, Ch. xxiii; J. Schouler, *History*, I, 151-157, 275-285; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's History*, IV, 112-122; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, I, 99-104; George Gibbs, *Washington and Adams*, I, Ch. vi; George Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, I, Ch. xx, and *History*, I, 446, 472, 481, 482, 551-564; W. G. Sumner, *Alexander Hamilton*, Ch. xiii; J. A. Stevens, *Albert Gallatin*, 50-57, 69-99.

**Special.** — Henry Adams, *Life of Albert Gallatin*, 86-151; Henry M. Brackinridge, *History of the Western Insurrection*; John T. Morse, Jr., *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, II, Ch. iv; Neville B. Craig, *Exposure of Misstatement*; W. H. Egle, *History of Pennsylvania*, Ch. xiv; J. C. Hamilton, *Republic*, VI, Chs. cx, cxi; W. C. Rives, *James Madison*, III, 447-461.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, II-IV; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment of Debates*, I. — DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, I; *American State Papers*, *Indian Affairs*, I, *Miscellaneous*, I; *Annals of Congress*, Appendices to II-IV; Williams, *Statesman's Manual*, I. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: William Findley, *History of the Insurrection in the Four Western Counties of Pennsylvania*; Hugh H. Brackenridge, *Incidents of the Insurrection in the Western Parts of Pennsylvania*; Albert Gallatin, *Writings*, I, III, No. 1; A. Hamilton, *Works* (J. C. Hamilton edition), IV (especially 575-604); V (especially 1-55); George Washington, *Writings* (Sparks edition), X-XII; John Marshall, *George Washington*, V, Chs. v, vii; F. Wharton, *State Trials* (Treason Cases); Wm. H. Smith, *St. Clair Papers*, II; G. M. Dallas, *A. J. Dallas*, 29-48, 149-159.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 330-341, 451, 452; A. Johnston, in Lalor's *Cyclopædia*, III, 1108; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 65.

### § 164. Breach with France, 1797-1800.

**Summary.** — Previous relations (§ 163). — Change of administration: 1796, Washington's farewell address; election of John Adams; trouble with the cabinet. — X. Y. Z. episode; 1796, Pinckney not received (§ 162); 1797, demand for a bribe; 1798, June 21, Adams on the crisis. — War with France: 1798, authorization to capture French vessels; 1798-99, naval battles; captures by privateers; question of Hamilton's command. —



1798, the Miranda project. — Peace: 1799, French overtures; 1800, convention negotiated; "French spoliation claims." — Effect on Adams (§ 166). — Subsequent relations (§§ 168, 170, 171, 181).

**General.** — John T. Morse, Jr., *John Adams*, 265–287, and *Thomas Jefferson*, 173–193; R. Hildreth, *History*, IV, 685–704; V, Chs. x, xi, xiii, xiv; J. B. McMaster, *History*, II, 209–416, 429–476; A. Johnston, in Lalor's *Cyclopædia*, III, 1122–1127; George Tucker, *History*, II, Ch. ix; H. C. Lodge, *George Washington*, II, Ch. vi; J. Schouler, *History*, I, Ch. iv; C. A. O'Neil, *American Electoral System*, Ch. vii; E. Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Ch. iv; H. C. Lodge, *Alexander Hamilton*, 194–221; S. II. Gay, *Bryan's History*, IV, Ch. vi; Winsor, *America*, VII, Ch. vii; W. G. Sumner, *Alexander Hamilton*, Ch. xv; Arthur Holmes, *Parties and their Principles*, Ch. iv; Alden Bradford, *Federal Government*, Chs. iv, v; George Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, Chs. i–iii; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Chs. xi–xiii; Samuel Eliot, *Manual*, 296–325.

**Special.** — C. F. Adams, *John Adams*, II, Ch. x; Hugh A. Garland, *John Randolph*, I, Chs. xviii–xxiii; George Gibbs, *Washington and Adams*, I, Chs. xiii–xv; II, Chs. i–vi; John T. Morse, Jr., *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, II, Chs. vi, vii; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, Chs. vi–x; Henry Flanders, *Chief Justices*, II (*Marshall*), Ch. viii; John C. Hamilton, *Republic*, VI, Chs. cxxxii–cxxxv; VII, Chs. cxxxvi–cxlvii; J. T. Austin, *Elbridge Gerry*, II, Chs. v–viii; C. W. Upham, *Timothy Pickering*, III, Chs. viii–xii; William Cranch, *John Adams*; W. H. Trescot, *Diplomatic History of the Administrations of Washington and Adams*, Ch. iii; C. W. Goldsborough, *United States Naval Chronicle*, Chs. iii–ix; David D. Porter, *Memoir of Commodore David Porter*; E. S. Maclay, *History of the United States Navy*, I, 155–213.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, VII–X; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment of Debates*, II. — DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, I; *American State Papers*, *Foreign Relations*, II, *Military Affairs*, I, *Naval Affairs*, I, *Commerce and Navigation*, I; *Annals of Congress*, Appendices to IX, X; T. B. Waite, *State Papers*, III, IV; Williams, *Statesman's Manual*, I; F. Wharton, *Digest of the International Law of the United States*, §§ 148a, 335. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: John Adams, *Works*, VIII, IX (*Correspondence with Mercy Warren*); John Marshall, *Life of George Washington*, V, Ch. ix; George Washington, *Works* (Sparks edition), XI, XII, (W. C. Ford edition), XIII, XIV; A. Hamilton,

*Works* (J. C. Hamilton edition), VI; Lewis Goldsmith, *Exposition of the Conduct of France toward America*; C. R. King, *Rufus King*, II; William Sullivan, *Familiar Letters*, Nos. 21-28; Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), IV; C. W. Upham, *Timothy Pickering*, III, Chs. ix-xi.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 332-337, 417, 418, 475, 518, 519; W. E. Foster, *Presidential Administrations*, 5-8; A. Johnston, in Lalor's *Cyclopædia*, III, 1127; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 70; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 134; A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union*, § 81.

### § 165. Alien and Sedition Acts, and Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions, 1798-1800.

**Summary.** — The states previous to 1798 (§§ 143, 161). — The statutes: 1798, June 18, naturalization act; June 21, alien act; June 27, bank fraud act; July 6, alien enemies act; July 14, sedition act. — Principles involved: freedom of speech and the press; common-law jurisdiction; truth a defense; personal liberty; the president's powers; rightful powers of the states. — State resolutions: 1798, November 19, first Kentucky resolutions; 1798, December 21, Virginia resolutions; 1799, November 22, second Kentucky resolutions; 1799, replies of other states; 1800, Madison's report. — Principles involved: powers of Congress; arbiter in disputes; "interposition"; "nullification"; ultimate use of force. — Cases under the acts: no aliens expelled; 1798-1800, Cooper, Callender, and other sedition cases. — Subsequent controversies (§§ 173, 175, 183, 206).

**General.** — A. Johnston, in Lalor's *Cyclopædia*, I, 56-58; II, 672-677, 720; III, 319-321; J. B. McMaster, *History*, II, 389-403, 417-427, 464-474, 495; J. Schouler, *History*, I, 393-427; George Tucker, *History*, II, 73-85; R. Hildreth, *History*, V, Ch. xii; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, Ch. xv; J. A. Stevens, *Albert Gallatin*, 152-160; Henry Adams, *John Randolph*, Ch. ii; Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 185-192.

**Special.** — H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, I, Ch. iv; Henry Adams, *Albert Gallatin*, 189-228; E. D. Warfield, *Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions* (?); George Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, Chs. ii, iii; H. S.

Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, Chs. ix, x; Griffith McRee, *Life and Correspondence of James Iredell*, II; J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 158, 1288, 1289, 1885, 1886; N. S. Shaler, *Kentucky*, Ch. x, Appendix A; J. C. Hamilton, *Republic*, VII, Chs. cxlvii, cxlviii; R. R. Howison, *History of Virginia*, II, Ch. vi; C. W. Loring, *Nullification, Secession*, Ch. iv.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, VIII, IX; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment of Debates*, II. — DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, I; *Annals of Congress*, Appendix to IX; *American History Leaflets*, No. 15; H. W. Preston, *Documents*, 277-298; J. Elliot, *Debates*, IV, 528-582; Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), IX, Nos. 39, 47; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, V, 3316-3323. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), IX; James Madison, *Writings*, II; A. Hamilton, *Works* (J. C. Hamilton edition), VI; William Sullivan, *Familiar Letters*, No. 29; A. Johnston, *Representative American Orations*, I, 83 (Nicholas); F. Wharton, *State Trials*, 322-344, 659-721; W. W. Henry, *Patrick Henry*, III, 425-428.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 319-334; A. Johnston, in Lalor's *Cyclopædia*, I, 58; II, 677; J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 1288, 1289, 1886; W. E. Foster, *Presidential Administrations*, 6; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 71, 72; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, § 50.

### § 166. Fall of the Federalists, 1799-1801

**Summary.** — Earlier party relations (§§ 160, 164, 165). — Unpopularity: French war; taxes; Robbins's case; 1799, Fries's insurrection; 1800, judiciary act; 1801, judicial appointments. — Internal quarrels: 1799, Cabinet breaks up; 1800, Hamilton's attack on Adams. — Election of 1800: Adams and Jefferson; New York Republican; no electoral choice. — Election of 1801: Burr and Jefferson; deadlock; Jefferson elected. — Subsequent history of the Federalists (§§ 168, 169, 173, 176).

**General.** — John T. Morse, Jr., *John Adams*, 287-330; H. C. Lodge, *Alexander Hamilton*, 221-236, and *Thomas Jefferson*, 193-208; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, I, 168-183; George Tucker, *History*, II, Ch. x; R. Hildreth, *History*, V, Ch. xv; J. B. McMaster, *History*, II, 489-537; J. Schouler, *History*, I, 426-501; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I,

807; II, 165-169; III, 1125; W. G. Sumner, *Alexander Hamilton*, Ch. xvi; J. Schouler, *Thomas Jefferson*, Ch. xi; J. A. Stevens, *Albert Gallatin*, 160-175; E. Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Ch. v; Alden Bradford, *Federal Government*, Ch. v; W. A. Cocke, *Constitutional History* I, Ch. iv; Hugh A. Garland, *John Randolph*, I, Ch. xxvi; Henry A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, Ch. i; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Ch. xiii; C. A. O'Neil, *American Electoral System*, Ch. viii; J. Parton, *Thomas Jefferson*, Chs. lvii-lx.

**Special.** — F. Wharton, *State Trials*, 7-48; C. F. Adams, *Life of John Adams*, II, Ch. x; Henry Adams, *Albert Gallatin*, 228-266; George Gibbs, *Washington and Adams*, II, Chs. vi, vii; John T. Morse, Jr., *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, II, Ch. vii; George Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, Ch. iii; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, Chs. xi, xii; Henry Flanders, *Chief Justices*, II (*Ellsworth*) Chs. xii-xiv, (*Marshall*) Chs. ix, x; J. C. Hamilton, *Republic*, VII, Chs. cxlix-clvii; Theodore Lyman, *Diplomacy of the United States*, I, Ch. viii; William Whitelock, *John Jay*, Ch. xxii.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, IX-X; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment of Debates*, II. — DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, II; *American State Papers*, *Foreign Relations*, II, *Finance*, I, *Naval Affairs*, I; *Annals of Congress*, Appendix to X; Williams, *Statesman's Manual*, I; *Treaties and Conventions*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: John Adams, *Works*, VIII, IX; Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), IV; A. Hamilton, *Works* (J. C. Hamilton edition), V, VII (especially *Public Conduct of John Adams*); James Madison, *Writings*, II; William Sullivan, *Familiar Letters*, Nos. 30, 37; H. C. Lodge, *George Cabot*, Chs. v-viii; Matthew L. Davis, *Aaron Burr*, II, Chs. iv, v; DeWitt Clinton, *Vindication of Thomas Jefferson*; John Jay, *Correspondence and Public Papers*, IV; F. Wharton, *State Trials*, 392-648; J. Sparks, *Gouverneur Morris*, III, No. 2; Fisher Ames, *Works*, I. — ELECTION OF 1801: P. Linn, *Serious Considerations on the Election of a President*; R. H. and J. A. Bayard, *Documents Relating to the Presidential Election of 1801*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 335-337; W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 7, 8; A. Johnston, in *Lalor's Cyclopædia*, I, 809; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 73, 74.

## XVIII. FOREIGN COMPLICATIONS.

### § 167. Thomas Jefferson and his Party.

**Summary.**—Jefferson's history: in Virginia; in the Continental Congress (§ 137); as a diplomat (§ 153); 1790-93, secretary of state (§§ 157-160); 1797-1801, vice-president.—Jefferson's principles: "Republican simplicity"; reduction of expenses; reduction of the debt; opposition to coercion; faith in popular government; reduction of national functions; conciliation of the Federalists.—Civil service: cabinet; Gallatin; "midnight appointments" disavowed; removals; principle of equalization.—Contest with the judges: 1802, March 8, judiciary act repealed; 1803, case of *Marbury vs. Madison*; 1804, Judge Pickering impeached; 1805, impeachment of Judge Chase fails; Jefferson's judicial appointments.—Foreign policy: question of withdrawing ministers; Tripolitan war; gunboat system.—Broad spirit: Jefferson on internal improvements; education and colonization; effect of a surplus.—Subsequent career (§§ 168-171).

**General.**—John T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, 24-37, 57-68, and *Thomas Jefferson*, Chs. xiii, xv; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, I, Ch. v; J. B. McMaster, *History*, II, 583-620; III, 146-215; Henry Adams, *John Randolph*, Chs. iii, v-vii; R. Hildreth, *History*, V, Chs. xvi-xviii; J. Schouler, *History*, II, Ch. v, and *Thomas Jefferson*, Ch. xii; George Tucker, *History*, II, Chs. xi, xii; J. A. Stevens, *Albert Gallatin*, 176-205, 289-311; T. Roosevelt, *Gouverneur Morris*, Chs. xii, xiii; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, Ch. xvi; T. W. Higginson, *Larger History*, Ch. xiv; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's History*, IV, Chs. vi, vii; Alden Bradford, *Federal Government*, Ch. vi; Henry A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, Ch. ii; J. A. Spencer, *History*, III, Book V, Chs. i, iii, iv; R. H. Gillet, *Democracy in the United States*, §§ 1-17; J. W. Moore, *American Congress*, Ch. xiv; W. A. Cocke, *Constitutional History*, I, Ch. v; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Chs. xiv, xv; Arthur Holmes, *Parties and their Principles*, Ch. v; J. Parton, *Thomas Jefferson*, Chs. lxi-lxv; Samuel Eliot, *Manual*, 329-352.

**Special.** — Henry Adams, *History of the Administrations of Jefferson and Madison*, I, Chs. i–xii; II, Chs. vii, ix–xviii; III, Chs. i–ix, and *Albert Gallatin*, Book III; Hugh A. Garland, *John Randolph*, I, Chs. xxvii–xxxii; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, Chs. xii, xiii; III, Chs. i–iii; Cornelis DeWitt, *Jefferson and the American Democracy*; George Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, Chs. iv, v; Josiah Quincy, *John Quincy Adams*, Ch. ii; J. C. Hamilton, *Republic*, VII, Chs. clviii–clxvii; J. T. Austin, *Elbridge Gerry*, II, Chs. ix, x; Lucy M. Salmon, *Appointing Power of the President* (American Historical Association, *Papers*, I, 299–419); E. Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Chs. v, vi; Wm. Plumer, Jr., *William Plumer*, Chs. vii, viii; Edmund Quincy, *Josiah Quincy*, Ch. v; Henry C. Adams, *Taxation in the United States*; Martin Van Buren, *Inquiry into Political Parties*, Ch. vi; C. A. O’Neil, *American Electoral System*, Chs. ix, x; E. S. Maclay, *United States Navy*, I, 214–302.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, XI–XV; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment of Debates*, II, III. — DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, II; *Annals of Congress*, Appendices to XI–XIV; *American State Papers, Finance*, II; Williams, *Statesman’s Manual*, I. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, I; Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), IV, VIII (Inaugural Addresses and Messages); William Sullivan, *Familiar Letters*, Nos. 14, 32, 34–44, 53–55; Sarah N. Randolph, *Domestic Life of Thomas Jefferson*; T. Dwight, *Character of Thomas Jefferson as Exhibited in his Writings*; James Madison, *Letters and Other Writings*, II; Albert Gallatin, *Writings*, I; Henry Adams, *Documents relating to New England Federalism*; Matthew L. Davis, *Memoirs of Aaron Burr*, II, Chs. vi–xvii; A. Hamilton, *Works* (J. C. Hamilton edition), VI (Correspondence), VII (*Examination of Jefferson’s Message*); E. B. Williston, *Eloquence of the United States*, II, 76–370; IV, 261–373; S. G. Goodrich, *Recollections of a Lifetime*, I, Letters 9, 10, 17, 19; J. Sparks, *Gouverneur Morris*, III, No. 2; Gouverneur Morris, *Diary and Letters*, II, Chs. xli–xlv; J. M. Merriam on removals, in American Historical Association, *Papers*, II, 47–52; Isaac Weld, Jr., *Travels Through the States of North America*; Adam Seybert, *Statistical Annals*; Thomas Ashe, *Travels in America in 1806*; John Bradbury, *Travels in the Interior of America*; John Davis, *Travels of Four Years and a Half*; T. Dwight, *Travels*; R. Parkinson, *A Tour in America*. — For other travels, see § 24.

**Bibliography.** — H. B. Tompkins, *Bibliotheca Jeffersoniana*; W. E. Foster, *Presidential Administrations*, 8-12; Winsor, *America*, VII, 300-307, 337, 338, 418; A. Johnston, in Lalor's *Cyclopædia*, I, 788; II, 639; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 75, 76; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 135-137; A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union*, § 93.

## § 168. Annexation of Louisiana, West Florida, and Oregon, 1800-1812.

**Summary.** — Previous territorial history (see §§ 91, 141, 153, 161): 1512-41, Spanish claims; 1699, French settlement; 1712, Crozat's grant; 1762, West side to Spain; 1763, East side to England; 1800, October, transfer to France. — American negotiations: 1802, October, "deposit" withdrawn; 1803, Monroe sent out; Napoleon's offer of the whole. — The treaty: 1803, April 10, treaty signed; October 9, ratified; boundaries; payment; claims; expediency; objection of New England. — Constitutional questions: implied powers (§ 159); Federalist partnership theory; Jefferson's amendment. — Boundary questions: Southeastern; Southwestern; Northern; later adjustments (§ 176). — Organization: 1803, December 20, the territory transferred; 1804, territory of Orleans; 1805, territorial government; 1812, state of Louisiana. — West Florida question: French refuse a definition; difficulties with Spain; 1808, revolution; 1810, western part annexed; 1812, remainder annexed. — Oregon question: 1792, discovery of River Columbia; 1803-06, Lewis and Clark's expedition; 1811, Astoria founded; 1812, taken by the British. — Later adjustment (§ 192).

**General.** — J. B. McMaster, *History*, II, 620-633; R. Hildreth, *History*, V, 448, 478-498, 506, 536, 546, 568-576; VI, 143-148, 223-228; J. Schouler, *History*, II, 36-52, 72, 117, 130, 198, 224, 266; John T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson*, Ch. xiv; D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe*, 74-93; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, I, 183-199; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 93; III, 1045; George Tucker, *History*, II, 177-218, 235, 256, 267-275, 389, 416; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's History*, IV, 145-149; Winsor, *America*, VII, Ch. vii, Appendix I; J. A. Stevens, *Albert Gallatin*, 201-205, 294-296; Henry Adams, *John Randolph*, Ch. iv;



Alden Bradford, *Federal Government*, Ch. vi; J. A. Spencer, *History*, III, Book V, Ch. ii.

**Special.** — Henry Adams, *Administrations of Jefferson and Madison*, I, Chs. xiii–xvii; II, Chs. v–vii, ix; III, Chs. i, v–vii; V, Ch. xv, and *Albert Gallatin*, Book III; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, III, Ch. ii; J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 1277–1283, 1317–1321; Theodore Lyman, *Diplomacy of the United States*, Ch. ix; C. F. Robertson, *Louisiana Purchase* (American Historical Association, *Papers*, I, 253–290); T. M. Cooley, *Acquisition of Louisiana*; George Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, Ch. vi; J. W. Monette, *History of the Valley of the Mississippi*; Thomas Donaldson, *Public Domain*, Ch. iv; Henry Gannett, *Boundaries of the United States*; H. H. Bancroft, *History of Northwest Coast*; William Barrows, *Oregon*, Chs. i–viii. — Histories of Louisiana, Arkansas, Missouri, Oregon, Washington (see § 23).

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, XII–XIII; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment of Debates*, II, III. — DOCUMENTS: *American State Papers, Foreign Relations*, II, *Public Lands*, I; *Annals of Congress*, Appendix to XII; *Treaties and Conventions*; F. Wharton, *Digest of the International Law of the United States*, § 148b; Thomas Donaldson, *Public Domain*, 89–105; Williams, *Statesman's Manual*, I. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), IV, VIII (Inaugural Addresses and Messages); Albert Gallatin, *Writings*, I, passim; Barbé-Marbois, *Histoire de la Louisiane*, and *History of Louisiana Cession*; Paul Allen, editor, *History of the Expedition of Lewis and Clark*; Edwin James, *Account of an Expedition under Major Long*; Z. M. Pike, *Account of Expeditions*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 546–562; W. E. Foster, *Monthly Reference Lists*, IV, No. 103, and *Presidential Administrations*, II, 12; D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe*, 262–264; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 77; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, §§ 33i, 51.

### § 169. The Burr Conspiracy, 1803–1807.

**Summary.** — Burr's previous history (§ 160); 1801, vice-president (§ 166); 1804, read out of the party; murder of Hamilton. — Plans: 1805, trip to the west; intrigues in Washington. — The expedition: 1806, December, descent of the Ohio; in Kentucky; connection with Jackson and Clay; Wilkinson at New



Orleans ; Jefferson's proclamation ; 1807, January, Burr captured. — Treason trial : 1806, December, arrest of Bollman and Swartwout ; *habeas corpus* denied ; 1807, January, Jefferson asks suspension of *habeas corpus* ; 1807, February, Bollman and Swartwout released ; October, Burr's treason trial ; definition of legal proof of treason ; Jefferson's part in the trial ; Burr released. — Effect on the Federalists (§ 173).

**General.** — J. B. McMaster, *History*, III, Ch. xv ; George Tucker, *History*, II, 221-223, 272-280, 294-297 ; R. Hildreth, *History*, V, 517-529, 594-627, 668-674 ; J. Schouler, *History*, II, 59-66, 118-124 ; John T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson*, Ch. xvi ; S. H. Gay, *Bryan's History*, IV, 149-153 ; Hugh A. Garland, *Life of John Randolph*, I, Ch. xxxii ; Allan B. Magruder, *John Marshall*, Ch. xi ; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, Ch. i ; H. C. Lodge, *Alexander Hamilton*, 237-271.

**Special.** — Henry Adams, *Administrations of Jefferson and Madison*, II, Chs. viii-xvii ; III, Chs. x-xiv, xix ; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, III, Chs. iv, v ; George Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, Chs. ix, x ; John C. Hamilton, *Republic*, VII, Chs. clxvii, clxviii ; John T. Morse, Jr., *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, II, Chs. vii, ix ; W. G. Sumner, *Alexander Hamilton*, Ch. xvii ; Henry Flanders, *Chief Justices*, II (*Marshall*), Ch. xi ; W. H. Safford, *Life of Harman Blennerhassett* ; J. Parton, *Andrew Jackson*, I, Chs. xxviii-xxx, and *Aaron Burr*. J

**Sources.** — DOCUMENTS : *American State Papers, Miscellaneous*, I ; John Marshall, *Writings*, 33-111 ; William Wirt, *Two Principal Arguments in the Trial of A. Burr* ; T. Carpenter, *Trial of Aaron Burr* ; E. B. Williston, *Eloquence of the United States*, IV, 384-441. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS : Matthew L. Davis, *Memoirs of Aaron Burr*, II, Chs. xviii, xix ; William Sullivan, *Familiar Letters*, Nos. xlv-xlix ; Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), IV, V ; William Coleman, *Collection of Facts and Documents Relative to the Death of General Hamilton* ; A. Hamilton, *Works* (J. C. Hamilton edition), VI, VII, 851-853 ; James Wilkinson, *Memoirs of My Own Times* ; *Annals of Congress*, Appendices to XVI, XVII ; W. H. Safford, *Blennerhassett Papers*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 220, 338-340 ; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 78.

### § 170. Neutral Trade, 1789-1807.

**Summary.** — Previous difficulties (§§ 162, 164). — Four limitations on neutral trade, viz., blockade, contraband, free ships, and free goods; "Rule of 1756." — Early difficulties: 1793, English and French aggression (§ 162); 1794, Jay treaty (§ 162); 1800, 1803, treaties with France (§§ 164, 168); value of the neutral trade; impressments; aggressions renewed; 1803, war between England and France; partisan decisions of English admiralty courts; 1806, Jay treaty expires. — British orders in council and French decrees: Napoleon's "continental system"; 1805, Trafalgar; 1806, May 16, British blockade order; November 21, Berlin Decree; 1807, January, March, both sides prohibit coasting trade; November 11, general blockade order; December 17, Milan Decree. — Jefferson's policy: "gunboat system"; 1806, April 18, conditional non-importation act; 1807, Pinckney treaty with England withheld; June, Leopard-Chesapeake affair; negotiations for West Florida. — Damage done to the United States: number of impressments; English captures; French captures. — Subsequent difficulties (§ 171).

**General.** — J. B. McMaster, *History*, III, 215-278; R. Hildreth, *History*, V, 546-548, 562-594, 645-665, 674-686; J. Schouler, *History*, II, Ch. vi, § 1; John T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson*, Ch. xvii; A. Johnston, in Lalor's *Cyclopædia*, II, 80; George Tucker, *History*, II, 209, 282, 301-307; W. A. Coker, *Constitutional History*, I, Ch. vi.

**Special.** — Henry Adams, *Administrations of Jefferson and Madison*, III, Chs. xv-xviii; IV, Chs. i-vi; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, III, Chs. iv, v; George Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, Chs. viii-x; C. W. Upham, *Timothy Pickering*, IV, Ch. iii; Eugene Schuyler, *American Diplomacy*, No. 7; Theodore Lyman, *Diplomacy of the United States*, I, Ch. x; T. H. Dyer, *History of Modern Europe*, V; J. Stephen, *War in Disguise, or the Frauds of the Neutral Flags*; Henry C. Adams, *Taxation in the United States*, 70-75.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, XIV-XVI; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment of Debates*, II, III. — DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, II; *American State Papers, Foreign Relations*, II, III, *Commerce and Navigation*, I; *Annals of Congress*, Appendices to XV, XVI; Wil-

liams, *Statesman's Manual*, I; Tench Coxe, *An Examination of the Conduct of Great Britain*; T. Dwight, *Hartford Convention*; M. Carey, *The Olive Branch*; F. Wharton, *Digest of the International Law of the United States*, §§ 325-331, 359-363, 368-375, 388-394, 405. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), IV (see Index); Albert Gallatin, *Writings*, I; James Madison, *Letters and Other Writings*, II (see Contents); J. Sparks, *Life of Gouverneur Morris*, III, No. 2; J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, I; Basil Hall, *Voyages and Travels*, Ch. xi.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 457, 519, 520; J. B. McMaster, *United States*, III, 235; A. Johnston, in Lalor's *Cyclopædia*, II, 428; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 79.

### § 171. The Embargo and Non-Intercourse, 1807-1811.

**Summary.** — Previous difficulties (§§ 162, 164, 170). — Embargo act: 1807, December, Jefferson's recommendation; December 22, act passed; 1808, supplementary acts; question of constitutionality. — Enforcement: evasions by New England ship owners; overland trade; collisions with troops; treason trials; 1809, January, Giles's enforcement acts. — Repeal of the embargo: ruinous effects; 1809, Henry's mission; question of New England loyalty; 1809, February 3, repeal act. — Non-intercourse: 1809, February 26, first act; March 4, Madison becomes president; April, Erskine treaty (disavowed by England); June 10, intercourse with England renewed (withdrawn); 1810, French decrees of Rambouillet and Trianon; May 1, "Macon Bill No. 2"; unsuccessful missions of Jackson and Rose; 1811, March 2, non-intercourse renewed. — Pinckney mission to England: question whether the French decrees were withdrawn; 1811, February, Pinckney demands passports; Foster's mission to Washington.

**General.** — J. B. McMaster, *History*, III, Chs. xix, xx; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, I, 200-224; R. Hildreth, *History*, VI, Chs. xx-xxiii; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, Chs. xvii, xviii; John T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, 37-57; J. Schouler, *History*, II, Ch. vi, § 2; Ch. viii, § 1; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, Ch. iv; George Tucker, *History*, II, 307-420; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, II, 79-85; Alden Bradford, *History of the Federal Government*, Chs. vii, viii; R. McK. Ormsby, *History*

of the Whig Party, Chs. vii, ix, x; A. W. Young, *The American Statesman*, Ch. xvi; J. A. Spencer, *History*, III, Book V, Chs. v, vi; Arthur Holmes, *Parties and their Principles*, Chs. v, vi.

**Special.** — Henry Adams, *Administrations of Jefferson and Madison*, IV, Chs. vii–xx; V, Chs. i–ix; J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 516, 1064, 1075, 1289–1292; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, III, Chs. vi–ix; George Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, Chs. x–xiii; Henry Adams, *Albert Gallatin*, 355–443; Edmund Quincy, *Josiah Quincy*, Chs. vi–viii; Hugh A. Garland, *John Randolph*, I, Chs. xxxiii, xxxiv; C. W. Upham, *Timothy Pickering*, IV, Chs. iv, v; E. Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Ch. viii.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, XVII–XXII; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment of Debates*, III, IV. — DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, II; *American State Papers, Foreign Relations*, III, *Commerce and Navigation*, I; *Annals of Congress*, Appendices to XVIII–XXII; Williams, *Statesman's Manual*, I; M. Carey, *The Olive Branch*; F. Wharton, *Digest of the International Law of the United States*, 131, 150a, 150b, 319, 320, 331, 359–363. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: William Sullivan, *Familiar Letters*, Nos. 51–59; Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), V, VIII (Inaugural Addresses and Messages); J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, I, 491–535; Albert Gallatin, *Writings*, I; James Madison, *Letters and Other Writings*, II; W. W. Story, *Life and Letters of Joseph Story*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 340–342, 520–522; W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 10–15; A. Johnston, in Lalor's *Cyclopædia*, II, 85; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 80, 81; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, § 52.

### § 172. The War of 1812.

**Summary.** — Causes: neutral trade (§ 170); impressments (§ 171); supposed intrigues with Indians; indemnity refused; party advantage; hope of conquest of Canada; "young republicans"; Henry Clay. — 1812, "Orders" withdrawn; war continues on impressments. — Strength of parties: population; military strength; naval strength; unity (§ 173); finances; theatre of war. — Land war: 1811, Indian war. — 1812, Detroit taken; fiasco at Niagara; 1813, failure at Niagara; success on Lake Erie; invasion of

Canada fails. — 1814, Brown at Niagara ; Plattsburg ; Washington burned ; Eastern Maine taken ; 1815, January 8, New Orleans. — War at sea : 1812, capture of Guerriere, Macedonian, Java ; 1813, capture of Peacock, Argus, Boxer ; Chesapeake taken ; Essex in the Pacific ; blockade ; prowess of the privateers. — Peace : 1812, Russian mediation ; 1813, commissioners sent ; 1814, meeting at Ghent ; impressment question not pressed. December 24, treaty signed. — Later diplomacy (§§ 174, 175).

**General.** — J. B. McMaster, *History*, III, Chs. xxi, xxiii ; IV, Chs. xxiv-xxvii, xxix ; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, Chs. v, vi ; R. Hildreth, *History*, VI, Chs. xxiv-xxix ; J. Schouler, *History*, Ch. viii, Sect. ii ; Ch. ix ; S. H. Gay, *James Madison*, Chs. xix, xx ; J. A. Stevens, *Albert Gallatin*, 211-224, 238-245, 260-274, 312-337 ; George Tucker, *History*, II, Ch. xvi ; III, Chs. xvii, xviii ; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's History*, IV, Chs. viii, ix ; John T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, 68-101 ; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, Ch. ii ; D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe*, Ch. v ; A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, Ch. iii ; Alden Bradford, *Federal Government*, Chs. viii, ix ; T. W. Higginson, *Larger History*, Ch. xv ; R. H. Gillet, *Democracy in the United States*, §§ 20-41, 48-50 ; W. A. Cocke, *Constitutional History*, I, Chs. vii-ix ; J. A. Spencer, *History of the United States*, III, Book V, Chs. vii-xiii ; A. W. Young, *The American Statesman*, Chs. xvii, xviii ; Arthur Holmes, *Parties and their Principles*, Ch. vi ; George Bryce, *Short History of the Canadian People*, Ch. viii, Sect. v ; J. Parton, *Life of Andrew Jackson*, I, II ; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, III, 961-965 ; Samuel Eliot, *Manual*, 353-378.

**Special.** — DETAILED ACCOUNTS : Henry Adams, *Administrations of Jefferson and Madison*, VI, Chs. vi-xvii, VII, VIII, IX, Chs. i-iii, and *Albert Gallatin*, 443-555 ; George Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, Chs. xiv, xv ; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, III, Chs. ix, x ; Winsor, *America*, VII, Ch. vi ; J. Q. Adams, *Life of James Madison* ; John Armstrong, *Notices of the War of 1812* (2 vols.). — MILITARY HISTORY : B. J. Lossing, *The Empire State*, Chs. xxvii-xxxI, and *Pictorial Field-Book of the War of 1812* ; P. M. Davis, *Authentic History of the Late War* ; Charles J. Ingersoll, *Historical Sketch of the Second War* (two series, 4 vols.) ; William James, *Full and Correct Account of the Military Occurrences*. — NAVAL HISTORY : T. Roosevelt, *Naval War of 1812* ; E. S. Maclay, *History of the United States Navy*, I, 305-577 ; II, 1-52 ; George Coggeshall, *History of the American Privateers* ; J. Fenimore Cooper, *History of the Navy of the United States*, Chs. xiii-xlix ; William James,

*Naval History of Great Britain*, VI, and *Full and Correct Account of the Naval Occurrences*. — FINANCES: Henry C. Adams, *Public Debts*, Pt. ii, Ch. i, and *Taxation in the United States*; G. M. Dallas, *Life and Writings of A. J. Dallas*; A. S. Bolles, *Financial History*, II, Book II; J. W. Kearny, *Sketch of American Finances*, Ch. iii. — PEACE: Theodore Lyman, *Diplomacy of the United States*, II, Chs. i, ii; Josiah Quincy, *Memoir of John Quincy Adams*, Chs. iii, iv; W. H. Seward, *Life of John Quincy Adams*, Ch. v; Charles Isham, *The Fishery Question*.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, XXIII–XXVIII; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment of Debates*, IV, V. — DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, II, III; *American State Papers*, *Foreign Relations*, III, *Finance*, II, *Commerce and Navigation*, I, *Military Affairs*, I, *Naval Affairs*, I; *Annals of Congress*, Appendices to XXIV–XXVIII; F. Wharton, *Digest of the International Law of the United States*, §§ 150d, 303, 304; Williams, *Statesman's Manual*, I; *Treaties and Conventions*; John Brannan, *Official Letters of the Military and Naval Officers*, and *The War*; T. H. Palmer, *Historical Register of the United States*; H. Niles, *Weekly Register*, I–VIII. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, II, III (on the Peace); Albert Gallatin, *Writings*, I; Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), VI; James Madison, *Letters and Other Writings*, II; G. M. Dallas, *Life and Writings of A. J. Dallas*, 234–400; Calvin Colton, *Life, Correspondence and Speeches of Henry Clay*, I, Ch. ix, and *Private Correspondence of Henry Clay*, Ch. i; Henry Clay, *Works*, IV, Ch. i; D. Mallory, *Life and Speeches of Henry Clay*, I; A. Johnston, *Representative American Orations* (Clay) I, 170; E. B. Williston, *Eloquence of the United States*, II; John C. Calhoun, *Works*, II; V, 1–7; M. Carey, *The Olive Branch*.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 420–437, 457–459, 485, 486, 521–524; W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 15; A. Johnston, in Lalor's *Cyclopadia*, III, 1092; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 82–85; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 138–146; A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union*, § 106.

### § 173. Opposition to the War, 1811–1815.

**Summary.** — Party opposition (§§ 160, 166, 171): John Randolph (§ 168); Federalists; New England; peace Republicans; election of 1812; DeWitt Clinton bolts. — Militia question: 1812, detachment refused; service out of the United States forbidden;

claim of the New England States to decide the exigency. — Trade: British at first respect New England trade ; West India trade cut off ; blockade ; overland trade from North to South ; dealings with the enemy. — Hartford convention : 1814, October, called by Massachusetts ; delegates ; December 15, assembles ; 1815, January 5, "Report" of the convention ; demand to retain Federal taxes. — Collapse on news of the peace (§ 172).

**General.** — H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, I, 235-272 ; R. Hildreth, *History*, VI, 464-477, 544-554 ; J. B. McMaster, *History*, IV, Ch. xxviii ; H. C. Lodge, *Daniel Webster*, 45-71 ; J. Schouler, *History*, II, 417-430 ; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 624 ; George Tucker, *History*, II, 466, 513 ; III, 36-42, 128-132 ; Alden Bradford, *Federal Government*, Ch. ix ; R. A. Gillet, *Democracy in the United States*, §§ 42-47.

**Special.** — Henry Adams, *Administrations of Jefferson and Madison*, VI, Chs. vii, xviii-xx ; VII, Chs. viii-xi ; Hugh A. Garland, *John Randolph*, I, Chs. xxxv-xxxvii ; Edmund Quincy, *Josiah Quincy*, Chs. ix-xiv ; C. W. Upham, *Timothy Pickering*, IV, Ch. vi ; H. C. Lodge, *George Cabot*, Chs. x-xiii ; G. T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, Chs. iv-vi ; R. McK. Ormsby, *Whig Party*, Chs. xi-xiii ; J. S. Barry, *Massachusetts*, III, Ch. ix ; G. H. Hollister, *Connecticut*, II, Ch. xxi. For other histories of New England States, see § 23.

**Sources.** — DOCUMENTS : *Annals of Congress*, Appendices to XXIV, XXV, XXVIII ; H. Niles, *Weekly Register*, II-VIII ; T. Dwight, *Hartford Convention* ; Henry Adams, *Documents relating to New England Federalism* ; M. Carey, *The Olive Branch*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS : James Madison, *Letters and Other Writings*, II ; J. Sparks, *Life of Gouverneur Morris*, III, No. 2 ; William Sullivan, *Familiar Letters*, lx-lxx ; S. G. Goodrich, *Recollections of a Lifetime*, I, Letters 27-30 ; II, Letter 31 ; A. Johnston, *Representative American Orations*, I, 129 (Randolph), 145 (Quincy).

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 320-322, 343, 522 ; A. Johnston, in Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 626 ; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 83.



## XIX. REORGANIZATION.

### § 174. Financial and Commercial Organization, 1816-1820.

**Summary.**— Condition of the country : territory ; finances ; state banking ; roads ; shipping ; foreign trade ; manufactures ; parties dissolving ; Supreme Court emancipated ; the West ; national spirit.— The United States Bank : 1811, recharter lost (§ 158) ; 1814, Calhoun's bill ; 1815, January, Madison's veto ; 1816, April 10, bank chartered ; 1817, specie payment restored ; 1819, commercial crisis ; later history (§ 182).— The tariff : 1812, early tariff bills (§§ 153, 158) ; 1812, July 1, tariff rates doubled ; manufactures spring up ; 1815, deluge of British goods ; December, Madison's recommendation ; 1816, April, protective tariff act ; 1818, iron act ; 1820, tariff bill fails ; later history (§ 183).— Internal improvements : 1806, Cumberland Road ; 1808, Gallatin's report ; 1817, March 3, Madison's veto of the Bonus bill ; 1817-18, House claims the constitutional power ; 1822, May 4, Monroe's veto of the Cumberland Road act ; later history (§ 185).— Foreign commerce : 1815, Algerine war ; commercial convention with England ; 1818, fishery convention ; question of West India trade ; retaliatory legislation ; later relations (§§ 189, 182).

**General.**— H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, Ch. x ; J. B. McMaster, *History*, IV, Chs. xxx, xxxi ; R. Hildreth, *History*, VI, Ch. xxx ; J. Schouler, *History*, II, Ch. ix, sect. ii ; III, Ch. x, sect. i ; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, 126-146 ; J. A. Stevens, *Albert Gallatin*, 205-288 ; T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, Chs. i-xiv ; H. Von Holst, *John C. Calhoun*, Ch. ii ; George Tucker, *History*, III, Ch. xix ; Alden Bradford, *History of the Federal Government*, Chs. ix, x ; D. Mallory, *Life of Henry Clay*, 87-105 ; W. A. Cocke, *Constitutional History*, I, Ch. ix ; A. W. Young, *The American Statesman*, Ch. xix ; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 55, 201, 711 ; II, 568 ; III, 889, 942 ; E. Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Chs. ix, x.



**Special.**— Henry Adams, *Administrations of Jefferson and Madison*, IX, Chs. iv-x; A. S. Bolles, *Financial History of the United States*, II, Book III, Chs. i-iii; E. C. Mason, *Veto Power*, §§ 56, 84, 85; J. W. Kearny, *Sketch of American Finances*, Ch. iv; F. W. Taussig, *Tariff History of the United States*, 17-67; R. Hildreth, *Banks, Banking, and Paper Currencies*, Chs. xvi-xix; W. G. Sumner, *History of American Currency*, 61-94; John Jay Knox, *United States Notes*, Ch. v; H. V. Poor, *Sketch of the Rise and Progress of the Internal Improvements*; E. H. Roberts, *Government Revenue*; J. Leander Bishop, *History of American Manufactures*, II, 117-298; N. M. Butler, *Influence of the War of 1812* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, V, No. 7); Calvin Colton, *Life, Correspondence, and Speeches of Henry Clay*, II, Chs. i, vi.

**Sources.**— **DEBATES:** *Annals of Congress*, XXIX-XXXVI; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment of Debates*, V, VI.— **DOCUMENTS:** In *Statutes at Large*, III; C. F. Dunbar, *Laws Relating to Finance; American State Papers, Finance, III, Commerce and Navigation, II, Naval Affairs, I, Public Lands, II, III, (Accessions); Annals of Congress, Appendices to XXIX-XXXVI; Williams, Statesman's Manual, I; H. Niles, Weekly Register, I-X.— **CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS:** E. B. Williston, *Eloquence of the United States*, III; Calvin Colton, *Life, Correspondence, and Public Speeches of Henry Clay*, I, Ch. xix; Henry Clay, *Works*, IV, Ch. ii; J. C. Calhoun, *Works*, II; Albert Gallatin, *Writings*, I, 690; II; James Madison, *Letters and Other Writings*, III; D. Mallory, *Life and Speeches of Henry Clay*, I; Clark and Hall, *Legislative and Documentary History of the Bank of the United States*, Chs. iii-vi; Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, I, 17-56; Adam Seybert, *Statistical Annals*; G. T. Curtis, *Life of Daniel Webster*, I, Ch. vii; John Bristed, *Resources of the United States*; Edward Young, *Customs Tariff Legislation in the United States*; Supreme Court Cases (§ 175); [W. N. Blane], *Excursion through the United States*; Wm. Cobbett, *A Year's Residence in the United States*.*

**Bibliography.**— Winsor, *America*, VII, 278; W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 19; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 86-89; A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union*, § 118.

### § 175. The Great Constitutional Decisions.

**Summary.** — The Supreme Court : under Washington and Adams (§ 157) ; under Jefferson (§ 167) ; federalization of the new judges. — Declaring acts of Congress void : 1792, Hayburn's Case ; 1794, Yale Todd case ; 1803, Marbury *vs.* Madison. — Limiting the states : 1793, Chisholm *vs.* Georgia ; 1794, eleventh amendment forbids suits against states ; 1809, United States *vs.* Judge Peters ; 1810, Fletcher *vs.* Peck (Yazoo Land Case) ; 1816, Martin *vs.* Hunter's Lessee (state act unconstitutional) ; 1819, Sturges *vs.* Crowninshield ; 1819, Dartmouth College Case (impairment of contracts) ; 1821, Cohens *vs.* Virginia (appeals sustained) ; 1827, Brown *et al.* *vs.* Maryland (commerce) ; 1832, Worcester *vs.* Georgia. — Implied powers of Congress asserted (§ 159) : 1796, Hylton *vs.* The United States (carriage tax) ; 1819, M'Culloch *vs.* Maryland (bank) ; 1820, Houston *vs.* Moore (militia) ; 1821, Anderson *vs.* Dunn ; 1824, Gibbons *vs.* Ogden (commerce) ; 1824, Osborn *vs.* The Bank of the United States (bank) ; 1827, Martin *vs.* Mott (militia). — Later cases (§§ 181, 202, 213).

**General.** — H. W. Rogers (editor), *Constitutional History of the United States as seen in the Development of American Law*, Lects. i, ii ; R. Hildreth, *History*, VI, 155-164 ; A. B. Magruder, *John Marshall*, Ch. x ; John T. Morse, Jr., *Thomas Jefferson*, Ch. xviii ; George Pellew, *John Jay*, Ch. x ; H. C. Lodge, *Daniel Webster*, Ch. iii ; Martin Van Buren, *Inquiry into Political Parties*, Ch. vi ; W. W. Willoughby, *The Supreme Court of the United States* ; Judson S. Landon, *Constitutional History*, Lects. x, xi, 264-271 ; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, Ch. vi.

**Special.** — Henry Flanders, *Lives and Times of the Chief Justices*, I (*Jay*), Ch. xiv ; (*Rutledge*) Chs. xv, xvi ; II (*Ellsworth*) Ch. xi ; (*Marshall*) Ch. xi ; George Van Santvoord, *Sketches of the Chief Justices* ; H. L. Carson, *Supreme Court of the United States*, I, Chs. xii-xiv ; II (addresses of Butler, Hitchcock, Phelps) ; J. Story, *Commentaries*, 1033-1044, 1259-1281, 1374-1397, 1685-1688 ; W. W. Story, *Life and Letters of Joseph Story*, I, Chs. vii-xv ; John Jay, *Correspondence and Public Papers*, III ; G. J. McRee, *Life and Correspondence of James Iredell*, II, Chs. xxvi-xxix ; John Taylor, *Construction Construed* ; Thomas Sergeant, *Constitutional Law*, Chs. i-xi ; J. P. Kennedy, *Life of William Wirt*, II, Chs. v, ix, xv ; G. T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, Ch. viii ;

Hugh A. Garland, *John Randolph*, II, Ch. xxiv; Amos Kendall, *Autobiography*, Ch. vii.

**Sources.** — Daniel Webster, *Works*, V, 462-501; VI; G. M. Dallas, *Life of A. J. Dallas*, 59-146. — Hayburn's Case (1792): 2 *Dallas*, 409. — Chisholm *vs.* Georgia (1793): 2 *Dallas*, 419; 1 *Curtis*, 16. — Yale Todd Case (1794), note to 13 *Howard*, 52. — Marbury *vs.* Madison (1803): 1 *Cranch*, 137; 1 *Curtis*, 368; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 107-114; John Marshall, *Writings*, 1-28. — United States *vs.* Judge Peters (1809): 5 *Cranch*, 115; John Marshall, *Writings*, 119-125. — Fletcher *vs.* Peck (1810): 6 *Cranch*, 87; 2 *Curtis*, 328; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 114-123; John Marshall, *Writings*, 126-141. — Martin *vs.* Hunter's Lessee (1816): 1 *Wheaton*, 304; 3 *Curtis*, 562; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 123-132; John Marshall, *Writings*, 525-555. — Sturges *vs.* Crowninshield (1819): 4 *Wheaton*, 122; 4 *Curtis*, 362; John Marshall, *Writings*, 147-159. — Dartmouth College *vs.* Woodward (1819): 4 *Wheaton*, 518; 4 *Curtis*, 463; John Marshall, *Writings*, 188-210. — M'Culloch *vs.* Maryland (1819): 4 *Wheaton*, 316; 4 *Curtis*, 415; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 271-285, 1340-1346; John Marshall, *Writings*, 160-187. — Cohens *vs.* Virginia (1821): 6 *Wheaton*, 264; 5 *Curtis*, 82; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 285-292; John Marshall, *Writings*, 221-261. — Anderson *vs.* Dunn (1821): 6 *Wheaton*, 204; 5 *Curtis*, 61; John Marshall, *Writings*, 603-610. — Gibbons *vs.* Ogden (1824): 9 *Wheaton*, 1; 6 *Curtis*, 1; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 1799-1819; John Marshall, *Writings*, 287-314. — Osborn *et al.* *vs.* The Bank of the United States (1824): 9 *Wheaton*, 738; 6 *Curtis*, 251; John Marshall, *Writings*, 315-342. — Martin *vs.* Mott (1827): 12 *Wheaton*, 19; 7 *Curtis*, 10; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 2290-2294; John Marshall, *Writings*, 611-623.

**Bibliography.** — E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 90-93; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, §§ 331, 52, 54, 58.

### § 176. Era of Good Feeling, 1817-1825.

**Summary.** — Previous political conditions (§§ 167, 173, 174). — Monroe's presidency: election of 1816; cabinet; civil service; opposition of Clay; disappearance of Federalists; 1820, unopposed reelection; four years' tenure act. — East Florida question: 1810, 1812, annexation of West Florida; 1814, Jackson in Pensacola; 1816, Seminole war; 1818, Jackson in St. Marks and Pensacola; Arbuthnot affair; Jackson exonerated. — Negotiations

with Spain : West Florida ; East Florida ; Texas ; 1819, February 22, treaty signed ; line to the Pacific ; Floridas ceded ; ratification delayed ; Jackson governor of Florida. — New states : 1802, Ohio (§ 161) ; 1812, Louisiana (§ 168) ; 1816, Indiana ; 1817, Mississippi ; 1818, Illinois ; 1819, Alabama ; balance between free and slave states (§ 177).

**General.** — J. B. McMaster, *History*, IV, Chs. xxxii–xxxviii ; D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe*, Ch. vi, and Appendix iii ; John T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, 102–164 ; R. Hildreth, *History*, VI, Ch. xxxi ; J. Schouler, *History*, III, 1–133, 189–270 ; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, 146–171 ; H. Von Holst, *John C. Calhoun*, Ch. iii ; George Tucker, *History*, III, Chs. xx, xxii ; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, IV, Chs. x, xi ; Henry Adams, *John Randolph*, Ch. xi ; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, Ch. iii ; Edward M. Shepard, *Martin Van Buren*, 75–84 ; T. W. Higginson, *Larger History of the United States*, Chs. xvi, xvii ; Winsor, *America*, VII, Ch. v ; Alden Bradford, *History of the Federal Government*, Chs. x, xi ; D. Mallory, *Life of Henry Clay*, 93–128 ; R. H. Gillet, *Democracy in the United States*, §§ 51–59 ; J. A. Spencer, *History of the United States*, III, Book VI, Chs. i–iv ; Henry A. Wise, *Seven Decades of the Union*, Chs. iii, iv ; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Chs. xx–xxii ; Arthur Holmes, *Parties and their Principles*, Ch. vii ; James Parton, *Life of Andrew Jackson*, ii.

**Special.** — Josiah Quincy, *John Quincy Adams*, Chs. v, vi ; W. H. Seward, *John Quincy Adams*, Ch. vi ; George Tucker, *Thomas Jefferson*, II, Chs. xvi–xxi ; H. S. Randall, *Thomas Jefferson*, III, Chs. xi–xiii ; Hugh A. Garland, *John Randolph*, II, Chs. xxii–xxv ; Theodore Lyman, *Diplomacy of the United States*, I, Ch. ix ; II, Chs. i–viii. — DEVELOPMENT OF THE WEST : A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, Chs. ii, iv ; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, 47–59 ; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, Ch. ix to p. 221 ; S. A. Drake, *Making of the Great West*.

**Sources.** — DEBATES : *Annals of Congress*, XXXI–XLII ; *Register of Debates*, I ; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment of Debates*, VI. — DOCUMENTS : *Statutes at Large*, III, IV ; *American State Papers* ; *Annals of Congress*, Appendices to XXXII, XXXIV, XXXVI, XXXVII ; Williams, *Statesman's Manual*, I ; H. Niles, *Weekly Register*, passim ; *Treaties and Conventions*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS : John Quincy Adams, *Memoirs*, IV–VI ; Henry Adams, *Albert Gallatin*, Book IV ; John Quincy Adams, *James Monroe* ; Calvin Colton, *Life, Correspondence, and Speeches of Henry Clay*, I, Ch. xii, and *Private Correspondence of*

*Henry Clay*, Ch. ii; Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), VII; John C. Calhoun, *Works*, V; James Madison, *Letters and Other Writings*, III, and *Selections from the Private Correspondence*; S. G. Goodrich, *Recollections of a Lifetime*, II, Letter iv.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 344, 524, 438; W. E. Foster, *Presidential Administrations*, 15-19; A. Johnston, in Lalor's *Cyclopaedia*, II, 108; J. F. Jameson, Appendix to D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe*; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 94-96; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 146, 147.

### § 177. The Missouri Compromise.

**Summary.** — Questions before 1800 (§ 161). — Slavery since 1800: 1803, slavery in Louisiana; 1807, slave trade prohibited; 1815, slaves carried away by the British; 1818, movement for new fugitive act; 1820, piracy act. — Anti-slavery: old societies decay; 1816, Colonization Society; 1819, government aid; 1820, Liberia. — First Missouri debate: 1805-18, status of Missouri territory; 1818, March, Missouri applies for admission; 1819, February, Tallmadge amendment; deadlock; November 2, Arkansas territorial act. — Second Missouri debate: 1820, December 30, House Maine bill; 1820, February 1, Senate couples with Missouri; March 1, House votes for free Missouri; March 3, great compromise; cabinet discussion; March 15, enabling act approved. — Third Missouri debate: 1820, state constitution; December, House refuses to accept it; 1821, February, Clay compromise. — Questions raised: constitutionality of restriction; danger to the Union; expediency; unchallenged operation till 1854 (§ 199).

**General.** — H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, I, 324-381; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, Ch. viii; J. B. McMaster, *History*, IV, Ch. xxxix; J. Schouler, *History*, III, 133-189; R. Hildreth, *History*, V, 498-506, 627-644; VI, 613-686; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, Chs. i, ii; George Tucker, *History*, III, Ch. xxi; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's History*, IV, Ch. xi; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Ch. vii, and *Struggle for Slavery Extension*, Chs. v-ix; J. W. Draper, *American Civil War*, I, Chs. xvii, xix; George W. Williams, *Negro Race in America*, II, Ch. i; T. R. R. Cobb, *Historical Sketch of Slavery*, Chs.

xvii, xviii; John T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, 120-126; A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, Ch. iv; R. McK. Ormsby, *History of the Whig Party*, Chs. xv, xvi; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Ch. xxiii; Charles Ingersoll, *Fears for Democracy*, 148-171; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Ch. i; William Chambers, *American Slavery*, 33-46.

**Special.** — John Taylor, *Construction construed and Constitutions vindicated*, § 15; A. C. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, Colloquy 15; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, I, Chs. viii-xi; J. Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 1318-1321 (Cooley's edition, also § 1917); Hugh A. Garland, *Life of John Randolph*, II, Chs. xi-xiii; William Jay, *Miscellaneous Writings on Slavery* (American Colonization Society); J. H. T. McPherson, *Liberia* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, IX), 487-539; state histories of Maine and Missouri (see § 23).

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, XXXVI, XXXVII; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment of Debates*, VI; E. B. Williston, *Eloquence of the United States*, III. — DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, III; *Annals of Congress*, Appendices to XXXVI, XXXVII; H. Niles, *Weekly Register*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, V, VI, XII (see Index); Calvin Colton, *Life, Correspondence, and Public Speeches of Henry Clay*, I, Chs. x, xiii; Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition), VII.

**Bibliography.** — T. M. Cooley, *Story's Commentaries* (fourth edition), § 1917; Winsor, *America*, VII, 325; W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 17, 18; A. Johnston, in *Lalor's Cyclopædia*, I, 6, 554; III, 737; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 97.

### § 178. The Monroe Doctrine.

**Summary.** — The Spanish colonies; previous status (§§ 153, 162, 176); 1809, first revolts; 1814, Bourbons restored; 1818, second series of revolts. — "European system": tradition of non-interference of the United States; 1815, Holy Alliance; 1820, Congress of Verona. — "Intervention": Spain asks for it; Clay's interest; commercial interest; 1823, Spain asks for a Congress; August, September, English proposition of a joint declaration. — "Colonization": 1790, Nootka Sound convention; 1821, Russia claims the Northwest coast and sea; 1823, J. Q. Adams's protest.

— 1823, November, Monroe's message: "colonization"; "intervention"; "political system." — Effects: 1824, intervention abandoned; recognition of the Latin American states; 1824, treaty with Russia. — Later applications: 1824, December 7, Monroe's second message; 1826, Panama Congress (§ 179); 1845, Oregon (§ 192); 1850, the Isthmus; 1854, Cuba (§ 199); 1865, Mexico (§ 000); 1881, Peru; 1895, Venezuela.

**General.** — D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe*, Ch. vii; J. Schouler, *History*, III, 277–293; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, I, 409–421, 532; Winsor, *America*, VII, Ch. vii; John T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, 126–138; Alden Bradford, *Federal Government*, Ch. xi.

**Special.** — George F. Tucker, *Monroe Doctrine*; R. H. Dana, *Wheaton's International Law*, Notes to §§ 67, 76; F. Wharton, *Commentaries*, §§ 174, 175; Winsor, *America*, VIII, Ch. v (*Spanish Colonies*); A Citizen of the United States [Alex. H. Everett], *America, or a General Survey of the Western Continent*; "A South American," *Outline of the Revolution in Spanish America*; Theodore Lyman, *Diplomacy of the United States*, II, Chs. ix–xiv; Anonymous, *The Inter-oceanic Canal and the Monroe Doctrine*; Joshua Leavitt, *Monroe Doctrine*; Freeman Snow, *Treaties and Topics in American Diplomacy*, Pt. ii; *Political Science Quarterly*, XI (March, 1896). — Periodicals and newspapers of 1895–96.

**Sources.** — DOCUMENTS: *American State Papers, Foreign Relations*, IV, V; *American History Leaflets*, Nos. 4, 5; *Annals of Congress*, Appendices to XXXII, XXXIX; Francis Wharton, *Digest of the International Law of the United States*, passim, § 57; Williams, *Statesman's Manual*, I, II; H. Niles, *Weekly Register*; *Treaties and Conventions*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, IV, V, VI (see Index); D. Mallory, *Life and Speeches of Henry Clay*, I; Calvin Colton, *Life, Correspondence, and Public Speeches of Henry Clay*, I, Ch. xi; Richard Rush, *Narrative of a Residence at the Court of London*; Thomas Jefferson, *Writings* (H. A. Washington edition) VII (especially 315); James Madison, *Letters and Other Writings*, III; Daniel Webster, *Works*, III.

**Bibliography.** — D. C. Gilman, *James Monroe*, Appendix, 269–272; Dana's *Wheaton*, Note 36; Providence Public Library, *Bulletin*, II, No. 1; Winsor, *America*, VII, 524, 525; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 98; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, § 55; Poole, *Index* (Supplement for 1896).



### § 179. Administration of John Quincy Adams.

**Summary.** — Previous history (§§ 167, 176). — Election of 1824: candidates; personal followings; no electoral choice. — Election of 1825: Adams chosen by the House over Jackson; charges of a "corrupt bargain." — Adams's presidency: personal character; cabinet; civil service; opposition in Congress; Jackson's opposition. — Panama Congress (§ 178): 1823, invitation; 1825, special envoys nominated; 1826, opposition in the House; June, the Congress fails. — Internal improvements: previous attempts (§ 174); Adams's policy; 1824, survey act; 1825, subscription to canal stock; later developments (§ 185). — Indian question: previous status (§§ 161, 168); 1825, fraudulent treaty of Indian Springs; July, conflict of authority between the United States and Georgia; 1826, new Indian treaty; 1827, Georgia defies the United States; Adams obliged to yield; 1829, Jackson sides with Georgia (§ 181). — Tariff: previous status (§ 174); 1824, revised act; 1827, January, Mallery's woolens bill; 1828, tariff bill; Southern opposition; "tariff of abominations"; May 20, act passes.

**General.** — H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, I, 421-458; II, 1-10, and J. C. Calhoun, Ch. iii; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, Chs. ix-xi; H. C. Lodge, *Daniel Webster*, 129-171; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, Chs. iv, v; John T. Morse, Jr., *John Quincy Adams*, 164-225; J. Schouler, *History*, III, 293-450; Edward M. Shepard, *Martin Van Buren*, 84-130; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, Ch. iii; George Tucker, *History*, III, Chs. xxiii-xxv; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's History*, IV, 283-292; D. Mallory, *Life of Henry Clay*, 128-154; Alden Bradford, *Federal Government*, Ch. xii; R. McK. Ormsby, *Whig Party*, Ch. xvii; J. W. Moore, *American Congress*, Chs. xvii-xix; J. A. Spencer, *History*, III, Book VI, Ch. v; Henry A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, Chs. iv, v; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Chs. xxiv-xxix; J. Parton, *Andrew Jackson*, III, Chs. i-viii.

**Special.** — Josiah Quincy, *John Quincy Adams*, Ch. vii; W. H. Seward, *John Quincy Adams*, Chs. vii-x; G. T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, Chs. x-xiv, and *James Buchanan*, I, Chs. ii-v; C. H. Hunt, *Edward Livingston*, Ch. xiv; Hugh A. Garland, *John Randolph*, II, Chs. xxvii,



xxix ; A. S. Bolles, *Financial History of the United States*, II, Book III, Ch. iv ; F. W. Taussig, *Tariff History of the United States*, 68-108 ; C. A. O'Neill, *American Electoral System*, Ch. xii ; E. Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Ch. xi.

**Sources.** — DEBATES : *Register of Debates*, I-V ; Benton's *Abridgment of Debates*, VIII, IX. — DOCUMENTS : *Statutes at Large*, IV ; *American State Papers*, especially *Foreign Relations*, VI (Panama), *Finance*, V (Tariff of 1828), *Indian Affairs*, II ; *Register of Debates*, Appendices to I-V ; Williams, *Statesman's Manual*, II ; *Executive Proceedings of the Senate on the Mission to the Congress of Panama* ; H. Niles, *Weekly Register*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS : J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, VI, VII ; T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, Chs. xvii-xxxvii ; Calvin Colton, *Private Correspondence of Henry Clay*, Chs. iii-v, and *Life, Correspondence, and Public Speeches of Henry Clay*, Chs. xiv-xviii ; Henry Adams, *Life of Albert Gallatin*, Book IV ; F. W. Taussig, *State Papers and Speeches on the Tariff*, 252-385 (Clay and Webster) ; E. B. Williston, *Eloquence of the United States*, IV ; B. P. Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, I, Chs. i-v ; Josiah Quincy, *Figures of the Past*, 188-301 ; Daniel Webster, *Works*, III ; Levi Woodbury, *Writings*, I ; Basil Hall, *Travels in North America* ; Albert Gallatin, *Writings*, II.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 346-348, 503, 525 ; W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 20-26 ; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 99-101 ; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 148-150 ; A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union*, § 130.

## XX. JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

### § 180. The United States in 1830.

**Summary.** — Geography : accessions since 1789 ; status of Oregon ; status of Maine boundary ; 1818, northern boundary treaty ; status of Texas ; new states since 1789 (see §§ 161, 177) ; existing territories. — People : population in 1830 ; immigration ; western movement ; cities. — Means of transportation : turnpikes ; canals ; Erie Canal ; steam river navigation ; beginnings of railroads. — Intellectual life : education ; colleges ; beginnings of literature ; newspapers. — Social life : Tocqueville's view ; Mrs. Trollope's view ; Dickens's view. — Religious life : national churches ; sects ; intemperance ; duelling ; philanthropic movement. — Slavery (see § 188). — Political life : parties ; caucuses ; conventions ; city government ; democratization ; elements of reorganization.

**General.** — John T. Morse, Jr., *Abraham Lincoln*, I, Chs. i–iii ; Theodore Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, Chs. i–iii ; Ellis H. Roberts, *New York*, II, Chs. xxx–xxxvi ; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History* IV, 311–315 ; T. W. Higginson, *Larger History*, 398–422 ; J. W. Draper, *History of the Civil War*, I, 174–183.

**Special.** — James Bryce, *Predictions of Hamilton and De Tocqueville* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, V, No. 9) ; W. W. Story, *Joseph Story*, II ; Edmund Quincy, *Josiah Quincy*, Ch. xvii ; Edward L. Pierce, *Charles Sumner*, I, Chs. iv–viii ; Hay and Nicolay, *Abraham Lincoln*, I, Chs. i–xii ; Charles H. Hunt, *Edward Livingston*, Chs. xiv, xv ; James Schouler, *History*, III, 507–531 ; IV, Ch. xiii, Sect. ii ; Calvin Colton, *Life and Times of Henry Clay*, I, Ch. xxi ; George Van Santvoord, *Chief Justices*, 490–520 ; R. Hildreth, *Banks, Banking, and Paper Currency*, Pt. i, Ch. xx ; John McGregor, *Progress of America*, II, 613–670 ; W. G. Sumner, *History of American Currency*, 84–94 ; Charles Francis Adams, *Railroads*, Pt. i ; T. M. Cooley, *Michigan*, Chs. viii–xiv ; Jabez D. Hammond, *History of Political Parties in the State of*

*New York*, II, Chs. xxxiii-xlii; Lewis Tappan, *Arthur Tappan*, Chs. i-vii; George Tucker, *History*, IV, Ch. xxxii; James Grant Wilson, *Memorial History of the City of New York*, III, Chs. ix, x; J. T. Scharf, *Maryland*, III, Ch. xxxvii. See also biographies (§ 25), state histories (§ 23). — HISTORICAL MAPS: Alex. Johnston, *History of the United States for Schools*, 218; T. MacCoun, *Historical Geography of the United States*; A. B. Hart, *Formation of the Union*, No. 5 (*Epoch Maps* No. 10); Tenth Census, *Population*.

**Sources.** — Tenth Census, *Population*; Josiah Quincy, *Figures of the Past*; John Quincy Adams, *Memoirs*, VIII, Ch. xv; Henry Clay, *Private Correspondence*, Chs. vi-viii; Alexis de Tocqueville, *Democracy in America*; George Tucker, *Progress of the United States in Fifty Years*; John Trumbull, *Autobiography*, Chs. xix-xxi; Mrs. Chapman Coleman, *Life of John J. Crittenden*, Chs. iv-xi; Basil Hall, *Travels in North America*; [James Fenimore Cooper], *Notions of the Americans*; J. Finch, *Travels in the United States* (1833); S. G. Goodrich, *Recollections of a Lifetime*, Letters 46-63; Frances A. Kemble, *Recollections of a Girlhood*, 533-590, and *Records of Later Days*, I; E. D. Keyes, *Fifty Years' Observations*, Chs. i-x; Hugh McCullough, *Men and Measures of Half a Century*, Chs. i-vi; Achille Murat, *America and the Americans*; Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, I, Chs. iii, iv; Amos Kendall, *Autobiography*; James Stuart, *Three Years in North America*; Mrs. Trollope, *Domestic Manners of the Americans*. — See autobiographies (§ 33); works of statesmen (§ 32).

**Bibliography.** — J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 46; II, 788; III, 1108; Winsor, *America*, VIII, 489; W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 26.

### § 181. Andrew Jackson and his Policy.

**Summary.** — Life: 1790-1804, public offices; 1797-98, U. S. senator; 1804-14, Indian fighter; 1815, battle of New Orleans (§ 172); 1818, Seminole War (§ 174); 1824-25, defeated for presidency (§ 179); 1828, elected. — Character: self-confidence; insubordination; uprightness; hatred of opponents; "task of reform"; "retrenchment." — Friends: Major Lewis; Van Buren; cabinet; "kitchen cabinet"; Eaton episode; popularity; Eastern journey. — Enemies: Clay; Adams; Calhoun; Webster; coalition. — Civil service: inaugural; "task of reform"; condi-

tion of the service (§§ 167, 179); dismissals; appointments; number of changes. — Foreign policy: French spoliation claims; Maine and Oregon boundaries (§ 192); Texas (§ 193). — Judiciary: previous status (§ 175); 1831, Peck impeachment; Worcester *vs.* Georgia; new appointments; 1834, Taney, chief justice; 1837, Bristol case. — Parties: "Democratic"; "Whig"; "Anti-Masonic."

**General.** — E. M. Shepard, *Martin Van Buren*, Chs. vi, vii; H. C. Lodge, *Daniel Webster*, Ch. vii; H. Von Holst, *John C. Calhoun*, Ch. v; Josiah Quincy, *J. Q. Adams*, Chs. viii, ix; Justin Winsor, *America*, VII, 281-290; T. W. Higginson, *Larger History*, 431-455; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, IV, 296-311, Ch. xii; Theodore Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, Ch. iv; A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, Chs. v, vi; James Schouler, *History III*, Ch. xiii, Sect. i; George Tucker, *History*, IV, Ch. xxvi; C. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Chs. xxxviii, xlii-xlv; Alden Bradford, *Federal Government*, Chs. xiii, xiv; R. McK. Ormsby, *Whig Party*, Chs. xvii, xviii; R. H. Gillet, *Democracy in the United States*, §§ 62-80; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 45, 100, 312; II, 625, 781; III, 996, 1061, 1101; Henry A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, 97-118.

**Special.** — W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, Chs. vii, viii, xv, xvi; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, Chs. xii, xiii; George T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, Chs. xv-xvii, and *James Buchanan*, I, Chs. v, vi, ix, xii; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, II, 11-31; Calvin Colton, *Henry Clay*, II, Chs. vii-x; Lucy M. Salmon, *Appointing Power*, 54-66; James Parton, *Andrew Jackson*; A. D. Morse, *Political Influence of Andrew Jackson* (*Political Science Quarterly*, I, 153-162); Jabez D. Hammond, *Political History of the State of New York*, II.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Register of Debates in Congress*, VI-XIV; *Congressional Globe*, I-III (1833-37); T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, X-XIII. — DOCUMENTS: Appendices to *Register of Debates*; *Statesman's Manual*, II; *Congressional Documents* (1829-1837). — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: John Quincy Adams, *Memoirs*; J. A. Hamilton, *Reminiscences*; Thomas H. Benton, *Thirty Years View*, Chs. xxxviii-lxviii; Daniel Webster, *Works*, IV, 148, 179; John C. Calhoun, *Works*, II, III, V; Calvin Colton, *Private Correspondence of Henry Clay*, (*Henry Clay, Works*, IV), Chs. vii-xi, and *Life and Times of Henry Clay*, I, II; Martin Van Buren, *Inquiry into Political Parties*, Ch. vii; Amos

Kendall, *Autobiography*, Chs. x–xiv; Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, I, 162–169, 277–293; Ben. Perley Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, Chs. vi, vii, x–xiii; Seba Smith, *Letters of Major Jack Downing*; Josiah Quincy, *Figures of the Past*, 352–375.

**Bibliography.** — W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 22–26; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 46, 101; II, 626, 627, 677, 782, 788; III, 1061, 1108; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 104–106; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 150–152; James Parton, *Life of Andrew Jackson*, I, Introduction; Justin Winsor, *America*, VII, 287–289, 348–351; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, 387–392.

### § 182. Jackson's War on the Bank, 1829–1833.

**Summary.** — Status of the bank: previous history (§ 174); President Biddle; amount of government deposits. — Jackson's prejudice; 1829, June, Portsmouth Branch affair; Hill's influence; Ingham's correspondence; December, Jackson's attack. — Recharter controversy: 1829–30, report; 1832, January, petition of the bank; July 2, recharter bill passes. — Jackson's veto: 1832, July 10, message; question of constitutionality; expediency; management. — Election of 1832: 1831, December, Clay nominated; 1832, May, first national convention; bank an issue; November, Jackson reëlected. — Doctrine of a popular mandate.

**General.** — Edward Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Ch. xiii; James Schouler, *History*, IV, Ch. xiii, § 3; Theodore Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, Ch. vi; H. A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, Ch. vii; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Chs. xl, xlvi; Samuel Tyler, *Memoir of Roger B. Taney*, I, Ch. iii; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 201.

**Special.** — H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, II, 31–52; George T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, Ch. xviii, and *James Buchanan*, I, Chs. x, xi; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, Chs. xi–xiii; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, I, Ch. xiii; George Tucker, *History*, IV, Ch. xxvi; Calvin Colton, *Henry Clay*, II, Ch. i; James Parton, *Andrew Jackson*, III, Chs. xxix–xxxi; C. H. Hunt, *Edward Livingston*, Ch. xvi; E. C. Mason, *Veto Power*, §§ 55–59; A. S. Bolles, *Financial History*, II, 317–335; Wm. M. Gouge, *Short History of Paper Money*; Wm. L. Royall, *Andrew Jackson and the Bank*; Joseph Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 1374–1399.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Register of Debates*, VI, VII; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, X, XI. — DOCUMENTS: Appendices to *Register of Debates*; *Statesman's Manual*, II; Niles, *Register*, XXXV–XLIV; *Congressional Documents*, especially *House Reports*, 22 Cong. 1 sess. No. 460; *House Executive Documents*, 23 Cong. 1 sess. No. 523; *American History Leaflets*, No. 24; C. F. Dunbar, *Laws Relating to Finance*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: John Quincy Adams, *Memoirs*, VIII; Thomas H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, Chs. xl, xli, lxvi–lxviii; D. Mallory, *Life and Speeches of Henry Clay*, II; Henry Clay, *Works*, II (IV), and *Private Correspondence* (IV), Chs. vii, viii; Daniel Webster, *Works*, III, 391–447; Clark and Hall, *Legislative and Documentary History of the United States Bank*, Ch. vi. — REMINISCENCES: J. A. Hamilton, *Reminiscences*, Chs. vi–viii; Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, I, 185–205, 213–229; Martin Van Buren, *Political Parties*, 311–362.

**Bibliography.** — C. F. Dunbar, *Topics and References*, § v; Justin Winsor, *America*, VII, 348–351; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 113, 114; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 204; W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 25; footnotes to Von Holst.

### § 183. Tariff and Nullification, 1828–1832.

**Summary.** — Previous status: tariff of 1824 (§ 179). — Early threats of nullification (§§ 153, 165, 179); 1825–28, South Carolina protest. — Nullification stated: 1828, tariff act (§ 179); 1828, Calhoun's "Exposition"; Madison's opposition; 1828, 1829, act declared unconstitutional by Georgia and South Carolina. — Nullification developed: 1830, January, Webster-Hayne debate; Andrew Jackson's Union toast; May, breach with Calhoun. — 1831, July, "Address" of South Carolina legislature. — Tariff of 1832: June, Gallatin's memorial; debates; July 14, act passed. — Nullification accomplished: 1832, October, convention summoned in South Carolina; November 24, ordinance of nullification; "Exposition" and "Address"; December, Calhoun resigns. — Coercion: 1832, December 11, Jackson's proclamation; December 20, South Carolina statutes: military preparation; 1833, January 6, nullification message; January–February, force bill; Webster-Calhoun debate. — Compromise of 1833: February 12,

Clay's proposition; March 2, force act passed and compromise tariff passed; March 16, Nullification Ordinance repealed; later development: fate of the tariff (§§ 191, 195); secession (§ 206).

**General.** — Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, II, Ch. xiv; A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, 139-149; Theodore Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, Ch. v; James Schouler, *History*, IV, Ch. xiii, Sect. iii; J. W. Draper, *History of the Civil War*, I, Ch. xxi; H. A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, Ch. vi; Samuel Eliot, *Manual*, Pt. iv, Ch. v; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Chs. xxxi, xlvi, xlvii; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, III, 861.

**Special.** — H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, I, Ch. xii, and *John C. Calhoun*, Ch. iv; H. C. Lodge, *Daniel Webster*, Chs. vi, vii; Caleb W. Loring, *Nullification, Secession, Webster's Argument*; D. F. Houston, *Critical Study of Nullification (Harvard Historical Studies, III)*; Geo. T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, Chs. xvi-xix, and *James Buchanan*, I, Ch. ix; W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, Chs. x, xiii; Calvin Colton, *Henry Clay*, II, Chs. v-xii; Charles H. Hunt, *Edward Livingston*, Ch. xvi; James Parton, *Andrew Jackson*, III, Chs. xxxii-xxxiv; Alexander H. Stephens, *Constitutional View of the War between the States*, I, Colloquies vii-x; George Tucker, *History*, IV, Chs. xxvi, xxvii; R. McK. Ormsby, *Whig Party*, Chs. xix-xxiii; J. Leander Bishop, *History of American Manufactures*, II, 298-381; Edward Young, *Special Report on Customs, Tariff Legislation*, 1-xciii (*House Executive Documents*, 42 Cong. 2 sess. No. 109); A. S. Bolles, *Financial History*, II, 282-433; J. D. Goss, *History of Tariff Administration (Columbia College, Studies, I)*, Ch. iii; F. W. Taussig, *History of the Tariff*, 68-112; see also § 184.

**Sources.** — DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Register of Debates*, VI-IX (especially IX, Pt. ii, Appendix); T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XI, XII; *Statesman's Manual*, II; Niles, *Register*, XXXV-XLIV; *Congressional Documents* (especially *Senate Documents*, 22 Cong. 2 sess. Vol. I); General Court of Massachusetts, *State Papers on Nullification*; Alexander Johnston, *Representative American Orations*, I, Pt. iv, 196; Albert Gallatin, *Memorial*; F. W. Taussig, *State Papers and Speeches on the Tariff*; P. C. Centz, *Republic of Republics*, Appendix F. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: John Quincy Adams, *Memoirs*, VIII; John C. Calhoun, *Works*, II, VI; Daniel Webster, *Works*, III, 248-355, 448-505; Henry Clay, *Private Correspondence*, Chs. viii, ix, and *Works*, I, II (V, VI); Thomas H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, Chs. xlvi, lxix, lxxviii; Levi Woodbury, *Writings*, I, 85-125; D. Mallory, *Life*



and *Speeches of Henry Clay*, I, II; James Madison, *Selections from Private Correspondence*. — REMINISCENCES: Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, I, 169–185, 229–243; Ben. Perley Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, I, Chs. vii–ix.

**Bibliography.** — D. F. Houston, *Critical Study of Nullification*, Appendix G; W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 23, 24; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, II, 1055; C. F. Dunbar, *Topics and References*; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 102, 103, 107–111; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, § 57; footnotes to Von Holst.

### § 184. Removal of the Deposits, 1833–1834.

**Summary.**—Status: 1816, clause in the Bank Act (§ 174); 1832, bank recharter vetoed (§ 182); House resolution affirming safety. — Removal accomplished: 1833, July, plan for deposit in state banks; September 18, paper read to the cabinet; September 23, Secretary Duane removed; September 26, Secretary Taney gives the order. — The issue: question of a contract; secretary's discretion; presidential responsibility. — Controversy with the Senate: 1833, December 3, Jackson's defence; December 10, 26, Clay's resolution of censure; 1834, March 28, modified resolution passed; April 15, Jackson's protest; May 12, Senate's counter protest; 1837, January 16, expunging resolutions. — Fate of the bank: 1836, charter expires; Pennsylvania charter; 1837, 1839, failure (§ 179). — Currency questions: state banks; government deposits; 1834, June 28, 16 to 1 ratio act; "hard money"; 1836, July 11, "Specie Circular."

**General.** — Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, II, Chs. xv, xviii; James Schouler, *History*, IV, Ch. xiv, Sect. i; Theodore Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, Ch. vi; H. A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, Ch. vii; Samuel Eliot, *Manual*, Pt. iv, Ch. vi; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Chs. xlviii, xlix; R. Hildreth, *Banks, Banking, and Paper Currency*, Ch. xxi; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 199, 798.

**Special.** — W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, Chs. xiii, xiv; George T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, Chs. xx–xxiii, and *James Buchanan*, I, Chs. xii, xiii; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, II, 52–79; George Tucker, *History*, IV, Chs. xxviii, xxix; Calvin Colton, *Henry Clay*, II,



Chs. iii-v; James Parton, *Andrew Jackson*, III, Chs. xxxvi-xxxix; Samuel Tyler, *R. B. Taney*; George Van Santvoord, *Chief Justices*, 552, 566; A. S. Bolles, *Financial History*, II, 335-358; R. Hildreth, *Banks and Banking*; Goddard, *Bank of the United States*; W. M. Gouge, *Short History of Money and Banking*.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Register of Debates*, IX-XII (1833-39); *Congressional Globe*, I (1833-35); T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XII, XIII. — DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Documents* (especially *Senate Documents*, 23 Cong. I sess. Vol. V); *Statesman's Manual*, II; *American History Leaflets*, No. 24; Niles, *Register*, XLVI-L; Appendices to *Register of Debates*; John Quincy Adams, *Memoirs*; Thomas H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, Chs. xcii-cxi; John C. Calhoun, *Works*, II, III; Henry Clay, *Private Correspondence*, Chs. ix, x, and *Works*, II (IV); D. Mallory, *Life and Speeches of Henry Clay*, II; Daniel Webster, *Works*, III, 506-551; IV, 3-147, 200, 235, 297-300. — REMINISCENCES: Amos Kendall, *Autobiography*, Ch. xiv; Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, I, 253-277, 332-349.

**Bibliography.** — J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 799; C. F. Dunbar, *Topics and References*, § v; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference List*, § 115; footnotes to Von Holst.

### § 185. Territorial Questions and Surplus Revenue, 1829-1841.

**Summary.** — Indians: Creek conflict (§ 179); 1826-29, Cherokee conflict; 1830, December, Tassel's case; 1831, March, Cherokee Nation *vs.* Georgia; 1832, March, Worcester *vs.* Georgia; Black Hawk war; 1834, Indian Territory created; 1835, removal; Seminole war begins. — Internal improvements: previous status (§ 179); 1830, May 27, Jackson's Maysville Road veto; 1831-32, increased expenditure. — Territorial boundaries: 1836, Arkansas admitted; Texas independent (§ 193). — Public lands: previous status (§ 179); 1830, Foot resolution (§ 183); 1832-36, great speculative sales; connection with wild-cat banks; 1836, specie circular (§ 184); 1841, pre-emption act. — Surplus: of 1806 (§ 167); of 1819 (§ 176); of 1836-37; connection with the tariff (§ 183); 1833, pocket veto of Clay's act. — Distribution: Clay's policy; Calhoun's status;

1836, June, "deposit act"; 1837, Calhoun's bill; payment of three installments; financial crisis (§ 192).

**General.** — T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, Ch. vii; G. T. Curtis, *Life of Daniel Webster*, I, Ch. xxiv; James Schouler, *History*, IV, Ch. xiv, Sect. ii; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, IV, 291-296, 311-313; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Chs. xli, xlv, liii; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 390; II, 570; III, 471, 1032.

**Special.** — W. G. Sumner, *Andrew Jackson*, Chs. ix, xiv; George Tucker, *History*, IV, 40-69, 105, 215, Ch. xxix; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, II, 177-194; J. W. Kearny, *Sketch of American Finances*, Ch. IV; E. G. Bourne, *Surplus Revenue of 1837*; W. G. Sumner, *American Currency*, 115-131; Calvin Colton, *Life and Times of Henry Clay*, I, Chs. xix, xx; Emory R. Johnson, *River and Harbor Bills* (American Academy of Political and Social Science, *Annals*, II, 782); E. C. Mason, *Veto Power*, §§ 83-94; Shosuke Sato, *Land Question* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, IV, Nos. 7-9).

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Register of Debates*, VI-XIV (1829-1837); *Congressional Globe*, I-VIII (1833-1841); T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, X-XIV. — DOCUMENTS: *Statesman's Manual*, I-III (especially I, 492; II, 719); *American State Papers, Indian Affairs*, II; *Public Lands*, VI-VIII; *Congressional Documents*; Niles, *Register*; Appendices to *Register of Debates*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: Thomas H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, Chs. xliv, li, lxx, lxxi, xc, cxxii-cxxviii, cxxxvi-cxliii, cxlvi, cliv-clxi; John C. Calhoun, *Works*, II, III, V; Henry Clay, *Works*, II, VI, and *Private Correspondence*; Daniel Webster, *Works*, IV, 238-258; John Quincy Adams, *Memoirs*, VIII-X; D. Malloy, *Life and Speeches of Henry Clay*, II; Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, I, 177, 188, 205-250.

**Bibliography.** — W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 24; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 394; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 112, 118-120; Winsor, *America*, VII, 322; E. G. Bourne, *Surplus Revenue*, 151-161; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*; § 59.

## XXI. SLAVERY AND TEXAS.

### § 186. Negro Slavery from 1830 to 1860.

**Summary.** — The masters : large slaveholders ; small slaveholders ; non-slaveholders ; poor whites ; immigrant laborers. — The negro : races ; physical, intellectual, religious ; character ; associations with whites. — Free negroes : status in the North ; status in the South ; political and social discriminations. — Slave life : appearance ; clothing ; houses ; food ; cost of maintenance ; families ; recreations ; old age ; sickness and death ; slave codes ; slaves at work ; variety of employment ; hiring out ; supervision ; tasks ; punishments ; privileges. — Sale : private ; auction ; hardships ; for jail fees ; market value. — Freedom : laws regulating ; for services ; by will ; buying freedom. — Fugitives (§§ 189, 198). — Trade (see § 189). — Insurrections : colonial (§ 148) ; 1800, Gabriel's ; 1822, Denmark Vesey's ; 1831, Nat Turner's ; 1859, John Brown (§ 202) ; terror produced by fear of insurrections.

**General.** — Comte de Paris, *Civil War*, I, 76–89 ; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, Chs. xvi, xxv ; Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, Ch. i ; A. G. de Gurowski, *America and Europe*, Ch. v ; Sidney G. Fisher, *Trial of the Constitution*, Ch. iv ; Friedrich Kapp, *Die Sklavenfrage in den Vereinigten Staaten* ; James Spence, *American Union*, Ch. iv ; R. McK. Ormsby, *Whig Party*, Chs. xv, xvi ; J. F. Scharf, *Maryland*, III, Ch. xli. — See also pp. 204, 214.

**Special.** — J. F. Rhodes, *History of the United States*, I, Ch. iv ; Samuel Seabury, *American Slavery Justified* ; William Jay, *Miscellaneous Writings on Slavery*, 7–206, 371–395 ; William Goodell, *American Slave Code* ; Richard Hildreth, *Despotism in America* ; Thomas R. R. Cobb, *Inquiry into the Law of Negro Slavery*, I ; H. Sherman, *Slavery in the United States* ; Jeffrey R. Brackett, *The Negro in Maryland* ; Albert T. Bledsoe, *Essay on Liberty and Slavery* ; William Chambers, *American Slavery and Labor*, 115–181, and Appendix I ; Albert Barnes, *Inquiry into the Scriptural Views of Slavery* ; George B. Cheever, *The*

*Guilt of Slavery*; Lydia Maria Child, *The Oasis*; Augustus Cochin, *Results of Slavery*; George Fitzhugh, *Cannibals all, or Slaves without Masters*; Daniel R. Goodwin, *Southern Slavery in its Present Aspects*; John Henry Hopkins, *Views of Slavery*; Luther R. Marsh, *Writings and Speeches of Abram Stewart*; Samuel Nott, *Slavery and the Remedy*; Henry Shannon, *Slavery in the United States*; Joshua Coffin, *Account of Some of the Principal Slave Insurrections*.

**Sources.** — Frederick Law Olmsted, *Journey in the Seaboard Slave States, and Texas Journey, and Back Country* (extracts from the above three books republished as *Cotton Kingdom*); Frederick Douglass, *My Bondage and my Freedom, and Life and Times, Written by Himself*; Hinton R. Helper, *The Impending Crisis*; Frances Anne Kemble, *Journal of a Residence on a Georgia Plantation*; William Birney, *James G. Birney and his Times*, Chs. i-xi; Nehemiah Adams, *South Side View of Slavery*; F. C. Adams, *Uncle Tom at Home*; Thomas H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, II, Chs. xxxii; John C. Calhoun, *Works*, II-VI; William Lloyd Garrison, *Selections from Writings and Speeches*; James Stuart, *Three Years in North America*, II, Chs. iii-ix; William Harper, *The Pro-Slavery Argument*; Mrs. K. E. R. Pickard, *The Kidnapped and the Ransomed* [Peter Still]; Solomon Northrup, *Twelve Years a Slave*; E. H. Botume, *First Days among the Contrabands*; Susan D. Smedes, *Memorials of a Southern Planter*.

**Bibliography.** — Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, Appendix E; W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 28, 30, 33, 36, 39, 42; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, § 60; S. May, Jr., *Catalogue of Anti-Slavery Publications, 1756-1830*.

### § 187. The Abolition Movement, 1830-1840.

**Summary.** — Argument for slavery: scripture; ancient precedents; inferiority of the negro; good of the negro; good of the whites; good of mankind; economic advantages. — Argument against slavery: unproductive; limited to agriculture; exhausted land; against improvements; degrading; hard for the masters; inhuman; political oligarchies; sectional. — Rise of abolitionists: colonial (§ 148); before 1808 (§ 161); after 1808 (§ 177); foreign movement; Benjamin Lundy; 1831, Wm. Lloyd Garrison, *Liberator*; 1837, Wendell Phillips; 1843, Oberlin and the Western movement; 1830, Southern abolitionists, James G. Birney. —

Organization: 1832, societies organized; 1840, breach in the national society; "Liberty Party." — Northern opposition: 1831–34, negro schools destroyed; 1834–38, riots, especially Garrison mob (1835); Lovejoy (1837); Pennsylvania Hall (1838); public meetings. — Southern sentiment: abolitionists; legislation; demands on the North for restrictions.

**General.** — J. F. Rhodes, *United States*, I, 38–75; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Chs. ix–xi; J. W. Draper, *American Civil War*, I, Ch. xvii; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, IV, Ch. xiii; R. McK. Ormsby, *History of the Whig Party*, Ch. xxiv; Goldwin Smith, *United States*, 221–233. — See also pp. 204, 214.

**Special.** — H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, II, 80–120, 219–235; Thomas R. R. Cobb, *Inquiry into the Law of Negro Slavery, Historical Sketch of Slavery*, Chs. xv, xvii; Wm. Birney, *James G. Birney and his Times*, Chs. xii–xviii; George W. Julian, *Joshua R. Giddings*, Chs. i–iii; Lewis Toppan, *Arthur Toppan*, Chs. viii–xx; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, I, Chs. xiii–xxi, xxii, xxix, xl; Oliver Johnson, *William Lloyd Garrison and his Times*; William Goodell, *Slavery and Anti-Slavery*; Augustus Cochin, *Results of Emancipation*; James W. Massie, *America, the Origin of her Present Conflict*; John Weiss, *Life and Correspondence of Theodore Parker*; O. B. Frothingham, *Theodore Parker, and Gerrit Smith*; W. W. Story, *Joseph Story*, I, Ch. xi.

**Sources.** — DOCUMENTS: *The Liberator*; *The Anti-Slavery Standard*; *The Emancipator*; *Annual Reports* of the American Anti-Slavery Society, American and Foreign Anti-Slavery Society, and the State Societies; Anti-Slavery Conventions, *Reports*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: Garrisons, *William Lloyd Garrison*; Catherine H. Birney, *The Grimké Sisters*; John Quincy Adams, *Memoirs*, IX, X; F. B. Sanborn, *Life and Letters of John Brown*, Chs. i–vi; Henry Clay, *Works*, II (VI); D. Mallory, *Henry Clay*, II; Joshua R. Giddings, *Speeches in Congress*; Lydia M. Child, *Isaac T. Hopper*; Anna Davis Hallowell, *James and Lucretia Mott*; Wendell Phillips, in Alexander Johnston, *Representative American Orators*, I, 228–282. — REMINISCENCES: Ben. Perley Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, I, Ch. xv; George Thompson, *Prison Life and Reflections*; Levi Coffin, *Reminiscences*; James Freeman Clarke, *Anti-Slavery Days*; Samuel J. May, *Recollections of Our Anti-Slavery Conflict*; Parker Pillsbury, *Acts of the Anti-Slavery Apostles*; Cassius M. Clay, *Life Written by Himself*, I, Chs. i–iv.

**Bibliography.** — Winsor, *America*, VII, 325, and *Memorial History of Boston*, III, 395; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 6; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 121; Library of Cornell University, *Bulletins*, I, 229-231 (January, 1884); Henry Matson, *References*, 87.

### § 188. Public Controversy as to Slavery, 1835-1844.

**Summary.** — Abolition movement (§ 187). — Anti-slavery men in Congress: Miner, Slade, J. Q. Adams, Giddings. — District of Columbia: status of slavery; 1801-25, movements for emancipation; fugitives (§ 189); sales for jail fees; interstate trade (§ 189). — Question of the mails: "incendiary publications"; 1835, August, Postmaster-General Kendall's letter; 1836, Calhoun's bill; "freedom of the press." — Abolition petitions: former objections (§ 161); 1820-30, on District of Columbia; J. Q. Adams's attitude; 1836, Calhoun's proposition; Buchanan's compromise. — "Gag resolutions" in the House: 1836, May, Pinckney's; 1837, January, Hawes's; 1837, December, Patton's; 1838, December, Atherton's; 1840, Johnson's; 1844, repeal. — Attempted censures: 1837, February, John Quincy Adams; 1842, January, Adams; 1842, March, Giddings.

**General.** — Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, II, Chs. xvii, xxi; George Tucker, *History of the United States*, IV, Ch. xxix; James Schouler, *History of the United States*, IV, Ch. xiv, Lect. ii; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, Ch. viii; W. Whiting, *War Powers*, Ch. viii; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Chs. lii, lxii; Alexander Harris, *Review of the Political Conflict in America*, Chs. v-vii.

**Special.** — H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History of the United States*, II, 120-146; Henry Wilson, *History of the Rise and Fall of the Slave Power*, I, Chs. xxii-xxvi, xxx, xxxvi; Mary Tremain, *Slavery in the District of Columbia* (University of Nebraska, *Seminary Papers*, No. 2); William Goodell, *Slavery and Anti-Slavery*, Chs. x-xviii, xxii-xxxvi, and *Views of American Constitutional Law*; William Jay, *Miscellaneous Writings on Slavery*, 217, 369, 397-400; George T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, Ch. xxii, and *Life of James Buchanan*, I, Ch. xiii; Wm. H. Seward, *Life of John Quincy Adams*, Chs. xii-xiv; Josiah Quincy, *Memoirs of the Life of John Quincy Adams*, Chs.

ix-xii; Adam Gurowski, *Slavery in History*; Charles Elliott, *Sinfulness of American Slavery*; E. L. Pierce, *Memoir and Letters of Charles Sumner*, III, Ch. xxx.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Register of Debates*, XII-XIV (1835-37); *Congressional Globe* (especially), II-XII (1835-44), XXI (1849-50), and LIV-LVI (1860-61); T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XIII-XVI (1835-50). — DOCUMENTS: *Appendices to Register of Debates*; newspapers of the day (8), especially Niles, *Register*, XLIII-LXVI; *National Era*, *New York Tribune*, *Liberator*, *Richmond Whig*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: John Quincy Adams, *Memoirs*, IX, X; Thomas H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, Chs. cxxix-cxxxi; II, Chs. xxxiii, xxxvi, xxxvii; Martin Van Buren, *Inquiry into Political Parties*; John C. Calhoun, *Works*, II-VI; Daniel Webster, *Works*, IV, 230; James Buchanan, *Mr. Buchanan's Administration*, Ch. i; Henry Clay, *Works*, II (VI), 355, 595), and *Private Correspondence*; Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, I, 294, 306, 323-332; Charles Sumner, *Works*; L. G. Tyler, *Letters and Times of the Tylers*; Joseph Hodgson, *Cradle of the Confederacy*, Chs. ix, x.

**Bibliography.** — Justin Winsor, *America*, VII, 322-324; Joseph Story, *Commentaries* (Cooley's edition), §§ 1915-1923; J. E. Cairnes, *Slave Power*, 21, 22; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, III, 169, 737; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 122-124; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, § 61.

### § 189. International and Interstate Status of Slavery, 1830-1860.

**Summary.** — The national government involved: District of Columbia (§ 188); fugitives; extradition; interstate commerce; foreign relations. — Fugitives (§ 186): usual methods; advertisements; "underground railroad"; important cases (1842, Van Zandt; 1842, Prigg; 1847, Kennedy); "personal liberty" bills; question of Mexico and Canada. — Interstate extradition: 1835, Williams; 1840, Isaac Gansey; Schooner Boston; 1859, Kentucky *vs.* Denison. — Free negroes: South Carolina negro seaman act; 1844, Hoar's mission; question of transit of slaves over free states (§ 202). — Foreign relations: Hayti; Liberia (§ 176); negroes carried away by troops (§ 173); fugitives to Mexico and



Canada ; slave-trade regulations ; 1841, Quintuple treaty. — Slave vessel cases: 1830, Comet ; 1834, Encomium and Enterprise ; 1839, L'Amistad ; 1840, British indemnity ; 1841, Creole.

**General.** — T. R. R. Cobb, *Historical Sketch of Slavery*. Ch. x ; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Ch. xiii ; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, IV, 340-349 ; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Ch. lix ; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia* I, 87, 709 ; Lawrence's *Wheaton*, Note 42 ; E. Schuyler, *American Diplomacy*, 234-264.

**Special.** — H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, II, 312-329 ; John C. Hurd, *Law of Freedom and Bondage*, Chs. ii, vii-xiii ; E. L. Pierce, *Charles Sumner*, II, xxiv ; Alexander H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, *Colloquy* xiv ; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, I, Chs. xxviii, xxx-xxxv, xli ; William Jay, *Miscellaneous Writings on Slavery*, 207-363 ; George W. Julian, *Joshua R. Giddings*, Chs. iv-vi ; Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, Ch. ii ; W. E. B. DuBois, *Suppression of the African Slave Trade*, Chs. ix-xi ; H. C. Carey, *The Slave Trade* ; Francis Wharton, *Commentaries*, §§ 181, 182, 194.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Register of Debates*, XII-XIV (1835-37) ; *Congressional Globe* (especially 1835-37, 1841-43, 1847-50, 1859-60). — DOCUMENTS: Appendices to *Register of Debates* ; Wharton, *Digest of the International Law of the United States*, §§ 327, 350 ; *Congressional Documents*, especially *Senate Docs.*, 27 Cong. 3 sess. I ; *House Exec. Docs.*, 27 Cong. 2 sess. II, No. 116 ; V, No. 242 ; 28 Cong. 1 sess. IV, No. 83 ; *Senate Reports*, 35 Cong. 1 sess. III, No. 36 ; Niles, *Register* ; contemporary newspapers (§ 27) ; *Opinions of the Attorneys-General*, I, 659 ; II, 426. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: John Quincy Adams, *Memoirs*, VIII-X ; Thomas H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, II, xlix, xcvi ; John C. Calhoun, *Works*, III-V ; Daniel Webster, *Works*, VI, 290, 303-318, 391-405 ; Levi Woodbury, *Writings*, II, 400-413 ; William Still, *The Underground Railroad*.

**Bibliography.** — Justin Winsor, *America*, VII, 494 ; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 88, 710 ; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 129-131 ; W. E. B. DuBois, *Suppression of the Slave Trade*, Appendix C ; Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, Appendix D.



### § 190. Van Buren's Administration.

**Summary.** — Election of 1836: no Whig nomination; Jackson's influence. — Parties: Whig opposition; 1839, November, Jersey contested elections. — Foreign policy: 1836, question of Texas; 1837, Carolina affair. — Finances: 1837, panic; 1837, October, "deposit act" suspended (§ 185); 1839, second crisis; 1840, independent treasury established; 1841, August 17, repealed; 1846, reestablished (§ 195). — Slavery questions (§§ 187-189). — State finances: internal improvements; repudiations.

**General.** — Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, II, Chs. xix, xx; E. Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Chs. xiv, xv; H. A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, Ch. viii; H. Von Holst, *John C. Calhoun*, Ch. vii; Theodore Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, Chs. ix, x; Alden Bradford, *Federal Government*, Ch. xv; R. McK. Ormsby, *Whig Party*, Ch. xxv; J. A. Spencer, *United States*, III, Book VII, Ch. iii; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Chs. lv-lvi; R. H. Gillet, *Democracy*, §§ 81, 82; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, II, 493-496.

**Special.** — Edward M. Shepard, *Martin Van Buren*, Chs. viii-x; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, II, 146-177, 194-217; James Schouler, *History*, IV, Ch. xv; George Tucker, *History*, IV, Chs. xxx, xxxi; W. G. Sumner, *American Currency*, 131-161; R. Hildreth, *Banks, Banking, and Paper Currency*, Chs. xxii-xxv; George T. Curtis, *James Buchanan*, I, Chs. xiii-xv; W. L. Mackenzie, *Martin Van Buren*; Jabez D. Hammond, *Political Parties in New York*, II, Chs. xl, xli.

**Sources.** — DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Globe*, 25 Cong., 26 Cong. (1837-41); T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XIII, XIV; *Congressional Documents* (Indexes, § 16e): Niles, *Register*, LI-LVIII; contemporary newspapers (§ 27); Williams, *Statesman's Manual*, III. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: John Quincy Adams, *Memoirs*, IX, X; Martin Van Buren, *Inquiry into Political Parties*, Ch. ix; Thomas H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, II, Chs. i-l ix; John C. Calhoun, *Works*, III; Henry Clay, *Works*, II (VI) and *Private Correspondence*, Chs. x, xi; D. Mallory, *Life and Speeches of Henry Clay*, II; Daniel Webster, *Works*, V, 3-54; Levi Woodbury, *Writings*, I, 126-211, 425-453; Ben. Perley Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, I, Chs. xiv, xvi; Nathan Sargent,

*Public Men and Events*, II, Ch. v ; Amos Kendall, *Autobiography* ; James A. Hamilton, *Reminiscences*, Ch. viii.

**Bibliography.** — W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 26, 27 ; Justin Winsor, *America*, VII, 352, 353 ; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 116, 117 ; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 155 ; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, II, 496.

### § 191. The Whigs and Tyler, 1840–1844.

**Summary.** — Election of 1840: Van Buren ; “Tippecanoe and Tyler too.” — 1841, Harrison administration ; 1841, April 4, death. — 1841, Breach with the Whigs ; Clay’s schemes ; August 17, sub-treasury repeal (§ 190) ; August 16, “Fiscal Bank” veto ; September 9, “Fiscal Corporation” veto ; resignation of the Cabinet ; Webster remains. — Tyler’s policy ; Cabinet changes : 1843, Webster retires. — Tariff of 1842 ; 1833–41, effect of the Compromise of 1833 (§ 183) ; lack of revenue ; 1841, temporary tariff ; 1842, June, first tariff veto ; August, second veto ; August 20, tariff act passed ; effect (§ 195). — Slavery questions (§§ 187–189). — Foreign affairs (§ 192). — State questions : 1842, Dorr rebellion in Rhode Island ; 1839–46, anti-rent agitation in New York.

**General.** — S. H. Gay, *Bryant’s Popular History*, IV, Ch. xiv ; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 290–294 ; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, Ch. xi ; R. McK. Ormsby, *Whig Party*, Ch. xxvi ; J. A. Spencer, *United States*, III, Book VII, Ch. iv ; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Chs. lviii, lx, lxi, lxiii ; R. H. Gillet, *Democracy in the United States*, pp. 83–90 ; Geo. T. Curtis, *James Buchanan I*, Ch. xvi ; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia I*, 203, 776 ; III, 1105.

**Special.** — H. A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, Chs. viii–xii ; Lyon G. Tyler, *Tylers*, I, Ch. xx ; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, II, Chs. xxii, xxiii ; George T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, II, Chs. xxvi, xxvii ; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, II, Chs. v, vi ; James Schouler, *History*, IV, Chs. xvi, xvii ; Calvin Colton, *Henry Clay*, II, Chs. xiv–xvi ; Jenkins, *Silas Wright*, 179–226 ; D. King, *Thomas W. Dorr* ; E. R. Potter, *Considerations on Questions on Rhode Island* ; E. P. Cheyney, *Anti-Rent Agitation in New York* ; Jay Gould, *History of Delaware County*.

**Sources.** — DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Globe*, 26–28 Cong. (1836–45); T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XIV, XV; *Congressional Documents*, especially *Senate Documents*, 27 Cong. 1 sess.; Niles, *Register*; *Case of Luther vs. Borden*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: Daniel Webster, *Works*, II, VI, 247–269; Henry Clay, *Works*, II (VI), and *Private Correspondence*, Ch. xi; D. Mallory, *Henry Clay*, II., 384–436, 482–562; John C. Calhoun, *Works*, III, IV; Thomas H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, II, Chs. lviii–cxxxiv; J. Q. Adams, *Memoirs*, X, XI; Levi Woodbury, *Writings*, I, 212–353; Mrs. Chapman Coleman, *John J. Crittenden*, Chs. xii–xvii; Ben Perley Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, I, Chs. xvii–xxiii; Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, II, Chs. v, vi; Peter Harvey, *Reminiscences of Webster*, 160–163.

**Bibliography.** — Justin Winsor, *America*, VII, 353–355; W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 28–31; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 125–128; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 156; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 835.

### § 192. Northeastern and Northwestern Boundaries, 1783–1846.

**Summary.** — Northern boundary: 1783, in the treaty (§ 141); "Northwest angle"; "St. Croix"; "Source"; "Highlands"; 1794, in the Jay treaty (§ 162); 1798, St. Croix established; 1814, boundary in the treaty (§ 173); 1818, boundary west of the Lake of the Woods; 1813, lower lake boundary completed; 1827–31, arbitration by the King of the Netherlands; 1838–39, hostile attitude on the border. — Ashburton treaty: 1842, special British mission; Webster negotiations (§ 191); November 10, treaty proclaimed; slave-trade; extradition; impressment; "battle of the maps." — Oregon controversy: claims to Oregon (§ 168); 1818, joint occupation; 1829, Spanish claims extinguished; 1824, Russian claims extinguished; 1832, Willamette settlement; 1842, question in Ashburton negotiation; 1843, overland emigration; 1844, "fifty-four forty or fight" (§ 193); 1845, arbitration declined; 1846, treaty negotiated; connection with Mexican war (§ 194).

**General.** — S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, IV, 77–90, 364–366; Justin Winsor, *America*, VII, 510, 511, 550–561; H. C. Lodge, *Daniel*

*Webster*, Ch. viii; Theodore Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, Ch. xii; A. W. Young, *American Statesmen*, Chs. lxiii, lxviii; J. Donaldson, *Public Domain*, 3-10; Henry Gannett, *Boundaries of the United States*, 10, 19, 128; Schuyler, *American Diplomacy*, 292-304; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, II, 1045-1048.

**Special.** — NORTHEASTERN: Albert Gallatin, *Right of the United States of America to the North Eastern Boundary*; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 553-562; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, III, Ch. ii, vi; W. P. Preble, *Decision of the King of the Netherlands*; George T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, II, Chs. xxviii, xxix, xxxii, and *James Buchanan*, I, Ch. xx; L. G. Tyler, *Tylers*, II, Ch. xv; Scribner's *Statistical Atlas of the United States*; J. C. Dent, *Last Forty Years of Canada*; Sir Francis Hincks, *The Boundaries formerly in Dispute*; Israel Washburn, *The Northern Boundary*; A. Stuart, *Succinct Account*; Histories of Maine (§ 23). — NORTHWESTERN: H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, III, Ch. ii; William Barrows, *Oregon*, Chs. ix, xxi-xxiii, xxvii-xxx; H. H. Bancroft, *Oregon*, I, II, and *Northwest Coast*, I, II, and *British Columbia*, and *Washington, Idaho, and Montana*; R. Greenhow, *Oregon and California*; Wyndham Robertson, *Oregon, Right and Title*; W. H. Gray, *History of Oregon*; Travers Twiss, *The Oregon Territory*; Thomas Falconer, *Oregon Question*; Wm. Sturgis, *The Oregon Question*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: Daniel Webster, *Works*, II, 141-154; V, 60-150; V, 270-390, and *Private Correspondence*, II, 148; Thomas H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, II, Chs. ci-civ, cxliii; John C. Calhoun *Works*, IV, V; John Quincy Adams, *Memoirs*, XII; Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, II, Ch. vii; Lewis and Clark, *Travels* (1809), and *Expedition to the Pacific* (Coues's ed., 1893); John A. Dix, *Speeches and Addresses*, I; Rufus Choate, *Works*, II; Histories of Oregon (§ 23).

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Annals of Congress*, 1817-1823; *Register of Debates*, IV, V (1827-1829); *Congressional Globe*, especially 26, 27, 28 Congs. (1839-1843, 1845-1847); T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XV. — DOCUMENTS: Appendices to *Annals of Congress*, and *Register of Debates*. — CONGRESSIONAL DOCUMENTS: *Statutes at Large*, VIII; *Northeastern Treaties and Controversies*; Niles, *Register*, LXIV-LXVI; *Statesman's Manual*; *Senate Documents*, 20 Cong. 1 sess. No. 171, 25 Cong. 2 sess. VI, 502, 26 Cong. 1 sess. Nos. 107, 174, 382, 26 Cong. 2 sess. No. 237, 27 Cong. 2 sess. No. 84, 27 Cong. 2 sess. II, IV, 27 Cong. 3 sess. No. 2, 29 Cong. 1 sess. No. 274, 44 Cong. 1 sess. No. 41; *House Executive Documents*, 26 Cong. 1 sess. III, Nos. 189,

223, 245, 27 Cong. 3 sess. III, IV, VII, No. 134; Massachusetts, *Documents relating to the Northeastern Boundary*; *American State Papers, Foreign Relations*, I, 91-99; III, 89, 97, 162, 700-734; VI, 643, 676.—ENGLISH STATEMENTS: *Remarks upon the Disputed Points* (1838); *Parliamentary Blue Books (Accounts and Papers)*, 1837-38, XXXIX, *North American Boundary*; 1840, XXXII, *North American Boundary*, 1845, LII, *North American Boundary*. — NORTHWESTERN QUESTION: *Senate Executive Documents*, 35 Cong. 1 sess. No. 29; *House Executive Documents*, 42 Cong. 3 sess. V; *Parliamentary Blue Books*, 1846, LII, *Oregon Territory*; 1873, LXXIV, *North West Water Boundary*.

**Bibliography.** — Justin Winsor, *America*, VII, 172-182, 525, 555, 562; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, II, 1048; W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 31, 34; *Magazine of Western History*, September, 1885, p. 423; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 131, 135, 136. — See also indexes to public documents (§ 16).

MAPS: Albert Gallatin, *Right of the United States to the Northeast Boundary*, *Senate Documents*, 25 Cong. 2 sess. VI, No. 502; *Parliamentary Blue Book*, 1843, LXI, 170; *Dominion Atlas*, Plates 28, 42, 48, 50; *Epoch Maps*, No. 11; reprints in Winsor, *America*, VII, 172-183; *Mitchel's Map* (1705).

### § 193. Annexation of Texas, 1836-1846.

**Summary.** — Territorial history: French claim; Spanish claim; Louisiana cession (§ 168); 1819, treaty with Spain (§ 176); 1825-29, attempts to purchase; 1832, confirmatory treaty with Mexico. — Independence: 1827, Texas united with Coahuila; 1829, slavery abolished in Mexico; 1836, March, Lone Star republic; Mexico protests; Texas asks admission into the Union; 1837, Texas recognized. — Agitation for annexation: reasons; 1838, resolutions; 1842, October, occupation of Monterey; 1843, March, Adams's address of warning. — Annexation treaty. 1843, October, proposed to Texas; 1844, promise of military aid; March 29, Calhoun secretary of state; Pakenham correspondence on England's position; April 12, treaty signed; June 8, treaty rejected; June 10, Benton's bill. — Election of 1844: Tyler's hopes; Liberty party; Oregon question (§ 192); annexation questions; Clay committed; Van Buren set aside. — Annexation

resolution : 1844, December, Tyler plan ; 1845, March 1, joint resolution passes ; March 3, Tyler offers annexation ; December 3, annexation act. — Effect on Mexico (§ 194).

**General.** — J. F. Rhodes, *History*, I, 75-87 ; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Ch. xii ; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, Ch. xxii ; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, IV, 367-371 ; James Schouler, *History*, IV, Ch. xvii, Sect. ii ; Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, I, Ch. xiii ; George T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, I, Ch. xxiv ; II, Chs. xxx-xxxii ; Edward M. Shepard, *Martin Van Buren*, Ch. xi ; Theodore Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, Ch. xiii ; H. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, Ch. vii ; R. McK. Ormsby, *Whig Party*, Ch. xxvii ; R. S. Ripley, *War with Mexico*, I, Ch. i ; E. Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Ch. xvi ; George W. Julian, *Joshua R. Giddings*, Chs. vi, vii ; James C. Blaine, *Twenty Years*, I, Ch. ii ; Samuel Eliot, *Manual*, Pt. iv, Ch. vii ; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Chs. lvii, lxiv-lxvi ; William Chambers, *American Slavery*, 47-61.

**Special.** — H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, II, 513-714, and *John C. Calhoun*, Ch. viii ; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, II, Chs. xxiv, xxv ; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, I, Chs. xlii-xlv ; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 550-553 ; H. H. Bancroft, *Texas, and Mexico*, V, Ch. vii ; C. E. Lester, *Houston and His Republic* ; P. K. Bruce, *General Houston* ; William Jay, *Review of the Mexican War* ; L. G. Tyler, *Tylers*, II, 250-364 ; Calvin Colton, *Henry Clay*, II, Chs. xviii, xix, III, Chs. i, ii ; Garrisons, *William Lloyd Garrison*, III, Ch. v ; Josiah Quincy, *J. Q. Adams*, Chs. xiii, xiv ; A. M. Williams, *Sam Houston*, Chs. i-xv ; George T. Curtis, *James Buchanan*, I, Chs. xvii, xix ; H. Yoakum, *History of Texas*. — See § 23.

**Sources.** — DEBATES : *Register of Debates*, XII-XIV (1835-37) ; *Congressional Globe*, 27 Cong., 28 Cong. (1841-45) ; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XIV, XV ; contemporary newspapers. — DOCUMENTS : Appendices to *Register of Debates*, XIV, 176-250 ; *Congressional Documents*, especially *Senate Documents* and *House Executive Documents*, 24 Cong. 2 sess., 28 Cong. 1 sess., 28 Cong. 2 sess., 29 Cong. 1 sess. No. 2 ; Niles, *Register*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS : John Quincy Adams, *Memoirs*, XI, XII ; Thomas H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, I, Chs. cxliv, cxlv, II, Chs. xxiv, cxxxv-cxlii, cxlviii ; John C. Calhoun, *Works*, IV, V ; Henry Clay, *Private Correspondence*, Chs. xi, xii ; Daniel Webster, *Works*, I, Ch. ix, II, 422-462 ; Levi Woodbury, *Writings*, I, 355-421 ; Horace Greeley, *History of the Struggle for*

*Slavery Extension*, Ch. x ; Ben Perley Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, I, Ch. xxiv ; Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, II, Ch. vi ; David Crockett, *Life and Adventures* ; H. S. Foote, *Texas and the Texans* ; W. Kennedy, *Rise and Prospects of Texas* ; W. C. Crane, *Life and Select Literary Remains of Sam. Houston*.

**Bibliography.** — Justin Winsor, *America*, VII, 550-552 ; W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 30 ; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 99 ; II, 289 ; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 132, 133 ; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, § 51.

### § 194. The Mexican War, 1846-1848.

**Summary.** — Causes : 1826-44, claims ; 1836-44, encouragement to Texas ; 1845, annexation of Texas (§ 193) ; 1846, boundaries ; 1846, designs on California ; extension of slave-territory. — Outbreak : 1845, July, Taylor's advance to Corpus Christi ; September to December, Slidell mission ; 1846, January, Taylor ordered forward ; March, Slidell not recognized ; Polk determines on war ; Oregon question settled (§ 192) ; May 11, Polk's war message ; May 13, war declared. — Campaigns : 1846-47, Taylor's northern campaign ; 1846-47, California taken ; 1846, New Mexico taken ; March, August, Scott's central campaign ; August 27, City of Mexico taken. — Treaty of peace : 1846, March, "Two million bill" ; 1848, February 2, treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo (Texas, California, New Mexico, indemnity to Mexico). — 1853, Gadsden purchase.

**General.** — Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, II, Ch. xxv ; H. Von Holst, *John C. Calhoun*, Ch. ix ; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, IV, 371-385 ; J. Winsor, *America*, VII, 408-412, 505-507 ; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Ch. iv ; Samuel Eliot, *Manual*, Pt. iv, Ch. viii ; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Chs. lxvi, lxvii ; J. A. Spencer, *History*, III, Book VII, Chs. v, vi.

**Special.** — William Jay, *Mexican War* ; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, III, Chs. iii-xii ; R. S. Ripley, *War with Mexico* ; Comte de Paris, *Civil War*, I, 30-58 ; James Schouler, *History*, IV, V, Ch. xviii ; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, II, Chs. ii, iii ; H. H. Bancroft, *Pacific States*, VIII (*Mexico*, V) ; Theodore H. Hittell, *History*



of California, II, 435-468, 569-681; Calvin Colton, *Henry Clay*, III, Ch. iii; George T. Curtis, *James Buchanan*, I, Chs. xx-xxii.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Congressional Globe*, 29 Cong., 30 Cong. (1845-49); T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XV, XVI; contemporary newspapers. — DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Documents*, especially *Senate Documents*, 29 Cong. 1 sess., 29 Cong. 2 sess. III, No. 107, 30 Cong. 1 sess. VII, Nos. 52, 60; *House Executive Docs.*, 29 Cong. 1 sess. VI, No. 196, 29 Cong. 2 sess. III, No. 19, 30 Cong. 1 sess. II, No. 8, VIII, No. 69; *Treaties and Conventions*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: John C. Calhoun, *Works*, IV; Daniel Webster, *Works*, V, 151, 253-301; E. L. Pierce, *Charles Sumner*, III, Ch. xxxii; Thomas H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, II, Chs. cxlix, clxi; John Quincy Adams, *Memoirs*, XII; U. S. Grant, *Personal Memoirs*, I, Chs. iii-xiii; Chapman Coleman, *John J. Crittenden*, Chs. xix-xxii; Ben Perley Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, I, Ch. xxv; Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, II, Ch. vii.

**Bibliography.** — E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 134; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 157.

### § 195. Financial and Commercial Questions, 1845-1849.

**Summary.** — Financial conditions in 1845: revenue; currency; banks; tariff; commercial prosperity. — Treasury: 1846, August 6, independent treasury (§ 181) revived. — Tariff: 1845, December 3, Walker's report; specific and ad valorem duties; question of revenue; 1846, July 31, act passed; August 6, warehouse act. — Internal improvements: earlier status (§ 174); 1829-37, Jackson's opposition; 1837-45, poverty of the Treasury; 1829-45, Jackson's and Tyler's vetoes; 1846-47, Polk's vetoes; 1847, December 21, House resolutions affirming the right. — State finances: debts and repudiations; canals; railroads; state banks; 1844, anti-rent agitation in New York.

**General.** — A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Ch. lxix; James Schouler, *History*, III, IV, passim; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, II, 529-535, III, 277-280.

**Special.** — Calvin Colton, *Henry Clay*, III, Ch. xi; Chapman Coleman, *John J. Crittenden*, 2 vols. (in one), I, Ch. xix; W. G. Sumner,



*History of Banking, and American Currency*, I, 161-169; John Jay Knox, *United States Notes*, Chs. vi, vii; J. L. Bishop, *American Manufactures*, II, 381-482; A. S. Bolles, *Financial History*, II, 434-466; J. D. Goss, *Tariff Administration*; Edward Young, *Special Report on Customs-Tariff Legislation (House Exec. Docs., 42 Cong. 2 sess. No. 109)*, pp. xciii-cxiv; W. M. Grosvenor, *Does Protection Protect?*; David Kinley, *Independent Treasury System*; William A. Scott, *Repudiation of State Debts*.

**Sources.** — DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Globe*, 29 Cong., 30 Cong. (1845-49); T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XV, XVI; DeBow's *Review*; *Congressional Documents*, especially *Senate Documents*, 29 Cong. 1 sess. II, Nos. 2, 6, III, No. 5, VIII, No. 437, IX, No. 444, 29 Cong. 2 sess. I, No. 2, III, No. 105; [*House Exec.*] *Docs.*, 29 Cong. 1 sess. No. 5, 29 Cong. 2 sess. III, No. 25; Niles, *Register*, LXIX, 233; F. W. Taussig, *State Papers and Speeches on the Tariff*, 214 (Walker's Report). — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: John C. Calhoun, *Works*, IV; John Quincy Adams, *Memoirs*, XII; Daniel Webster, *Works*, V, 161-252; Amos Kendall, *Autobiography*, Chs. xv, xvi; John McGregor, *Progress of America*; B. R. Curtis, *Works*, II, 93.

**Bibliography.** — [F. W. Taussig], *Topics and References*, Nos. xvii, xviii; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopaedia*, II, 571.

## XXII. THE SLAVERY CRISIS.

### § 196. The Territorial Crisis, 1846-1849.

**Summary.** — Wilmot proviso : 1846, August 8, fails in Senate; 1847, February 13, added to the "three million bill"; advocated by Northern legislatures; 1847, December, Robert C. Winthrop chosen Speaker; 1848, February 28, tabled by the House. — Abolition activity; Giddings in the House (§ 188); John P. Hale in the Senate; 1848, resolution against slave trade in the District of Columbia; 1849, Abraham Lincoln's emancipation bill; fugitive-slave cases (§ 198). — Election of 1848: "Barnburner" split in New York; May, Cass nominated; June, Taylor nominated; August, Van Buren nominated by Free Soilers; November, Taylor chosen. — 1848-49, theories of control of the territories: (1) complete power of Congress; (2) "popular sovereignty"; (3) application of the constitution; (4) decision by the Supreme Court. — Specific questions: Oregon, New Mexico, California, Texan claims; deadlock between Taylor and Whigs. — California organizes itself: 1848, January, gold discovered; 1849, "Forty-niners"; September, constitutional convention (anti-slavery); December, provisional state government.

**General.** — Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Ch. xiv; A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, Chs. viii, ix; Theodore Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, Ch. xiv; Henry Wise, *Seven Decades*, Ch. xii; J. C. Nicolay and John Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, I, Chs. xiii-xviii; E. Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Ch. xvii; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years*, I, Ch. iv; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopadia*, III, 1114-1118; George Lunt, *Origin of the Late War*, Ch. vi; George W. Julian, *Joshua R. Giddings*, Chs. viii, ix; Andrew Young, *American Statesman*, Chs. lxx, lxxi.

**Special.** — H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, III, Chs. xi-xiv; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, Ch. xxv; William Jay, *Miscellaneous Writings on Slavery*, 491-620; H. H. Bancroft, *Works*, XXIII (*California*, VI); and *Pacific States*, XI, and *Texas*, II, and *Arizona and New*

*Mexico*; James Schouler, *History*, V, Ch. xviii, Sect. iii; George T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, II, Chs. xxxiii-xxxv; Theodore H. Hittell, *California*, II, 682-790; R. D. Hunt, *Genesis of California's First Constitution* (Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, XIII, No. 8); Alexander H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, Colloquy xiv; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, II, Chs. ii-xvii; John C. Hurd, *Freedom and Bondage*, I, Ch. xvi; Josiah Royce, *California*; Mary P. Follett, *The Speaker*, §§ 34, 51.

**Sources.** — DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Globe*, 29 Cong., 30 Cong. (1845-49); T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XVI; *Congressional Documents*, 29 Cong., 30 Cong., especially *Senate Documents*, 29 Cong. 1 sess. III, No. 25; [*House*] *Exec. Docs.*, 30 Cong. 1 sess. VIII, No. 70, 30 Cong. 2 sess. I, No. 1. — CONTEMPORARY NEWSPAPERS, especially *National Era* (Washington), *New York Tribune*, *New York Times*, *New York Evening Post*, *Liberator*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: John C. Calhoun, *Works*, IV, 303-541; T. H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, II, Chs. clxvi-clxxxii; E. L. Pierce, *Charles Sumner*, III, Ch. xxxiii; Horace Greeley, *Slavery Extension*, Chs. xi, xii; Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, II, Ch. vii; Mrs. Chapman Coleman, *John J. Crittenden*, Chs. xxi, xxiv-xxviii.

**Bibliography.** — W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 33; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, III, 1118; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 139; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, §§ 62, 63.

### § 197. Compromise of 1850.

**Summary.** — The administration: 1849, March 5, President Taylor; 1850, July 20, President Fillmore; influence of Clay, Webster, Calhoun. — The issue: demands of the South; demands of the North; attempt to settle by separate bills. — Compromise proposed: 1849-50, speakership contest, 1850; January 29, Clay's plan and speech; Jefferson Davis's speech; March 4, Calhoun's speech; March 7, Webster's speech; March 11, Seward's speech; February 4, the House yields; May 8, the "Omnibus Bill"; Taylor holds out. — Compromise accepted: 1850, July 19, death of Taylor; (1) August 9, Texas bill; (2) August 15, New Mexico bill; (3) September 7, California bill; (4) September 9, Utah bill; (5) September 12, fugitive-slave bill; (6) September 14, Dis-

trict of Columbia slave-trade bill. — Compromise discussed : Southern friends ; Northern friends ; "question of sentiment" and "question of principle". — Question of danger to the Union : Calhoun's attitude ; Southern legislatures ; 1850, Nashville convention ; threats in the debate ; Northern apprehensions.

**General.** — H. Von Holst, *John C. Calhoun*, Ch. ix ; A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, Chs. viii, ix ; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Ch. xv ; George T. Curtis, *James Buchanan*, II, Ch. i ; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years*, I, Ch. v ; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, IV, Ch. xv ; George Lunt, *Origin of the Late War*, Chs. vii, viii ; Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Ch. xviii ; Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, I, Chs. xiii-xviii ; H. A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, Ch. xiii ; J. A. Spencer, *History*, III, Book VII, Ch. vii ; Samuel Eliot, *Manual*, Pt. iv, Ch. ix ; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, Ch. xxiii.

**Special.** — J. F. Rhodes, *History*, I, Chs. ii, iii ; John C. Hurd, *Freedom and Bondage*, I, Ch. xvi ; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, III, Chs. xv, xvi ; George T. Curtis, *Daniel Webster*, II, Chs. xxxvi, xxxvii ; H. C. Lodge, *Daniel Webster*, Ch. ix ; Alexander H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, Colloquies, xv, xvi ; Carl Schurz, *Henry Clay*, Ch. xxvi ; James Schouler, *History*, V, Chs. xix, xx ; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, II, Chs. xviii-xxiv ; Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, §§ 29-32. Lives of Clay, Webster, Calhoun, Jefferson Davis, Seward, Chase (see § 25).

**Sources.** — DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS : *Congressional Globe*, 31 Cong. 1 sess. ; T. H. Benton, *Abridgment*, XVI ; *Senate Documents*, 31 Cong. 1 sess. IX, No. 18, XIII, Nos. 55, 56, 60, XIV, Nos. 67, 74, 76 ; *Senate Miscellaneous*, 31 Cong. 1 sess. (resolutions of state legislatures, etc.) ; *Senate Reports*, 31 Cong. 1 sess. I, No. 123 ; [*House*] *Exec. Docs.*, 31 Cong. 1 sess. Pt. 1, Vol. III, No. 5, Vol. V, No. 17, Vol. VII, No. 39. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS : Thomas H. Benton, *Thirty Years' View*, II, Chs. clxxxiii-cxcvii ; John C. Calhoun, *Works*, IV, 542-577 ; Henry Clay, *Private Correspondence*, Chs. xiii, xiv ; Daniel Webster, *Works*, V, 302-438 ; Henry Clay, *Works*, II (VI), 601-634 ; Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, Chs. ii, iii ; James S. Pike, *First Blows of the Civil War*, 1-120 ; Horace Greeley, *Slavery Extension*, Ch. XIII ; Alexander Johnston, *American Orations*, II, 46-134 ; E. D. Keyes, *Fifty Years' Observation*, Ch. xiii ; E. L. Pierce, *Charles Sumner*, III, Chs. xxxiv, xxxv ; Charles Sumner, *Speeches*, III ; Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, II, Ch. viii ; Peter Harvey,

*Reminiscences of Webster*; Ben Perley Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, Chs. xxvii-xxx; U. S. Grant, *Personal Memoirs*, I, Chs. xiv, xv; G. W. Julian, *Political Recollections*; Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, Appendix B.

**Bibliography.** — W. E. Foster, *Presidential Administrations*, 34-38; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 554; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 137-143; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Part ii, 159-161.

### § 198. Fugitive Slaves, 1850-1860.

**Summary.** — Legal status of runaway slaves: causes (§ 186); in slave states (§ 182); in free states (§ 182); in territories (§ 196); in foreign countries (§ 196). — National action: act of 1793 (§ 161); negotiations of 1825 (§ 129); act of 1850 (§ 197); question of constitutionality. — Personal liberty acts: state statutes before 1850; statutes from 1850 to 1854; statutes after 1854; Southern complaints. — "Underground Railroad": southern termini; colored agents; white agents; crossing to Canada; prosecutions; "the Higher Law"; number aided. — Famous cases: before 1850 (§§ 189, 196); 1850, Hamlet; 1851, Shadrach rescue, Sims, Christiana (Castner Hanway trial), Jerry McHenry rescue; 1854, Burns; 1855, Passmore Williamson; 1856, Garner; 1858, Oberlin-Wellington rescue; 1858, John Brown in Kansas (§ 200). — 1855-59, Wisconsin decision (*Ableman vs. Booth*); 1861, "Contrabands" (§ 214).

**General.** — Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Ch. xvi; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, IV, 389-401; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, II, 315-317, III, 162, 163; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, 44-53; J. Schouler, *History*, V, Ch. xx.

**Special.** — J. F. Rhodes, *History since 1850*, I, 192-227, 294; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, II, Chs. v-viii, xxv-xxviii, xxxiii, xxxiv; Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, Chs. iii-vi; W. H. Siebert, *Light on the Underground Railroad* (*American Historical Review*, I, 455-63); H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, IV, Ch. i; T. R. R. Cobb, *Inquiry into the Laws of Slavery*, Chs. vii-xi; William Still, *The Underground Railroad*; S. G. Howe, *Refugees from Slavery in Canada*; A. Wilcox, *Powers of the Federal Government over Slavery*; Joel Parker, *Personal Liberty Laws*; J. C. Hurd, *Law of Freedom and*

*Bondage*; R. C. Hurd, *Treatise on Personal Liberty and Habeas Corpus*; Charles Francis Adams, *Richard H. Dana*, II; G. W. Williams, *Negro Race*, II, Chs. x, xi; J. W. Schuckers, *Salmon P. Chase*, Chs. ix, xv, xxi; R. B. Warden, *Salmon P. Chase*, Chs. xx, xxi. — See biographies of anti-slavery men in §§ 25, 187.

**Sources.** — DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Globe*, 31 Cong. 2 sess., 32 Cong., 33 Cong.; especially 31 Cong. 2 sess. App. pp. 292-326, 33 Cong. 1 sess. 1472, 1513-1518, 1552-1559; contemporary newspapers, especially the *Liberator*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: Frederick Douglass, *Life and Times*, II, Chs. i, vii, ix, and *My Bondage and Freedom*; Garrisons, *William Lloyd Garrison*, III, Ch. xv; James S. Pike, *First Blows of the Civil War*, 241-260; Levi Woodbury, *Writings*, I, 533; II, 345-367; Benjamin Drew, *The Refugee*; Mrs. Chapman Coleman, *Life of John J. Crittenden*, I, Ch. xxv; Samuel J. May, *Recollections of the Anti-Slavery Conflict*; Levi Coffin, *Reminiscences*; Stevens, *History of Anthony Burns*; Parker Pillsbury, *Acts of the Anti-Slavery Apostles*; W. G. Eliot, *Story of Archer Alexander*; Charles Stearns, *Narrative of Henry Box Brown*; W. G. Hawkins, *Lunsford Lane*; *Narrative of Solomon Northrup*. — CASES: *Prigg vs. Pennsylvania*, 16 *Peters*, 539; *Ableman vs. Booth*, 21 *Howard*, 506; *Kentucky vs. Denison*, 24 *Howard*, 66; *United States vs. Castner Hanway*, 2 *Wallace, Jr.*; *Trial of Castner Hanway, by a Member of the Philadelphia Bar*. — See §§ 187, 188.

**Bibliography.** — Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, footnotes and App. E; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, II, 317; III, 163; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 144; W. H. Siebert, *Underground Railroad* (in preparation, 1896).

### § 199. Cuba and the Kansas-Nebraska Act, 1854.

**Summary.** — Cuba: 1807, Jefferson suggests annexation; 1814-22, revolt of the Spanish colonies (§ 178); 1826, Panama Congress (§ 179); 1849-51, filibustering expeditions; 1850, Taylor's proclamation; 1850, Clayton-Bulwer Treaty; 1854, Black Warrior episode; 1854, October 18, "Ostend Manifesto." — Western territory: 1820, left without organization (§ 177); 1834, "Indian Country"; 1836, corner added to Missouri; 1851-53, bills for organizing as a territory. — "Popular Sovereignty":

1847, suggested by Leake and Cass (§ 196); 1850, not stated in the Compromise (§ 197); 1854, Douglas's new version. — Nebraska bill: 1853, December, House bill; 1851-54, three forms of Douglas's bill; 1854, Pierce's attitude; January 16, Dixon amendment; January 19, "Appeal of the Independent Democrats"; March 2, Chase's amendment; March 3, passes Senate; May 20, passes House. — Issues: question of previous repeal in 1850; demands of the South; extent of "squatter sovereignty"; principle of non-intervention. — Effects: Cuba impossible; Republican party formed (§ 201); Kansas struggle (§ 200); contest accelerated (§ 204).

**General.** — Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, I, Chs. xix-xxi; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Ch. xvii; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, Ch. xxiv; S. H. Gay, *Bryan's Popular History*, IV, 405-409; T. Roosevelt, *Thomas H. Benton*, Ch. xv; A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, Ch. x; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, II, 667-670, III, 36, 281-284; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Ch. vi; L. W. Spring, *Kansas*, Chs. i, ii; William Chambers, *American Slavery*, 62-74; A. W. Young, *American Statesman*, Ch. lxxv; Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 26-29; E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, Ch. iv; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, 240-257.

**Special.** — J. F. Rhodes, *History since 1850*, I, Ch. v; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, IV, Chs. iii-viii; V, Ch. i; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, II, Chs. xxx, xxxv; Friedrich Kapp, *Geschichte der Sklaverei*, Ch. xii; James Schouler, *History*, V, Ch. xxi, Sect. i; George T. Curtis, *Life of James Buchanan*, II, Chs. iv-vi; Reverdy Johnson, *Remarks on Popular Sovereignty*. — See also histories of Kansas, Nebraska, and Colorado (§ 23), and biographies of Douglas, Chase, Seward, Hale, Sumner (§ 25).

**Sources.** — DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Globe*, 33 Cong. 1 sess. (see indexes on pp. xxi, lvii, App. p. vi); *Senate Reports*, 33 Cong. 1 sess. I, No. 15, II, 394; *House Reports*, 33 Cong. 1 sess. I, No. 80; *House Exec. Docs.*, 33 Cong. 2 sess. X; *American History Leaflets*, Nos. 2, 17 (Reprints); Alexander Johnston, *Representative American Orations*, II, 183-255; Horace Greeley, *Slavery Extension*, Ch. xiv; Martin Van Buren, *Political Parties*, Ch. viii; [James Buchanan], *Mr. Buchanan's Administration*, Ch. ii; James S. Pike, *First Blows of the Civil War*, 108-240; E. L. Pierce, *Charles Sumner*,



III, Ch. xxxviii; Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, Pt. i, Ch. v; Garrison, *William Lloyd Garrison*, III, Ch. xiv; J. M. Cutts, *Treatise on Party Questions*, 91; John C. Calhoun, *Works*, IV, 339, 535; R. B. Warden, *Life of Salmon P. Chase*; Robert Toombs, in A. H. Stephens's *War between the States*, I, 625; J. W. Schuckers, *Life of Salmon P. Chase*; Theodore Parker, *Speeches*, 297.

**Bibliography.** — W. E. Foster, *Presidential Administrations*, 37, 39; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 145; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopaedia*, II, 670; III, 37, 284; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 162; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, § 64; notes to Von Holst and Rhodes.

## § 200. The Kansas Struggle, 1854-1861.

**Summary.** — Status of the territories: Kansas west of Missouri; scanty population; interest of Missouri. — Emigration: 1854-55, Massachusetts and New England Emigrant Aid Societies; August, Lawrence founded; "Border Ruffians"; Southern emigrants; pro-slavery towns founded; instances of slaves; 1856, Buford's Company; John Brown. — Territorial government: 1854, October, Gov. Reeder (1); 1855, March, fraudulent election; July, Shawnee legislature, slave code; July, Gov. Shannon (2); 1856, Gov. Geary (3); 1857, November, Gov. Walker (4); 1858, Gov. Denver (5). — Free state movement: 1855, November, Topeka Convention; 1856, March, state officers; July 4, legislature dispersed by troops. — Civil war: 1855, "Wakarusa War"; 1856, May, sack of Lawrence; John Brown's fights; August, "treaty of Lawrence"; 1859, Brown's aid to fugitives (§ 198). — Lecompton Constitution: 1855-57, Republican majority in the House (§ 201); 1857, Buchanan president; November, Lecompton Convention; December, pretence of a popular vote; 1858, Douglas refuses to vote for it; April, "English Bill"; August, Kansas refuses; November, Lincoln-Douglas debate (§ 203). — Admission as a free state: 1859, July, Wyandotte Convention; 1861, January 21, state admitted.

**General.** — Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, 224-251; Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, I, Chs. xxii-xxvi; II, Ch. i; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, IV, Ch. xvi; J. E. Cairnes, *Slave Power*,



195-201 ; Friedrich Kapp, *Geschichte der Sklaverei* ; George T. Curtis, *James Buchanan*, II, 197-210 ; E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, 67-70 ; J. G. Blaine, *Twenty Years*, I, 119-123 ; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, II, 664-666 ; Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, I, Chs. xxii-xxv.

**Special.** — H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, V, Chs. iii, v, vi, viii ; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, II, Chs. xxxv-xxxvii, xl-xlii ; Alexander H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, Colloquy xvii ; James Schouler, *History*, V, Ch. xxi, Sect. ii, Ch. xxii, Sect. i ; L. W. Spring, *Kansas*, Chs. iii-xii ; James Redpath, *Public Life of John Brown*, 75-228 ; J. N. Holloway, *History of Kansas* ; Eli Thayer, *Kansas Crusade* ; Jameson, *Constitutional Convention*, §§ 211-216 ; *Kansas Historical Collections*, I, II (see § 31) ; D. W. Wilder, *Annals of Kansas* ; J. H. Gihon, *Geary and Kansas*. — See state histories, § 23.

**Sources.** — DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Globe*, 33 Cong. 2 sess., 34 Cong., 35 Cong. (see indexes under Kansas) ; *House Exec. Docs.*, 34 and 35 Cong. ; *House Reports*, 34 and 35 Cong. (see indexes), especially 34 Cong., 1 sess., II, No. 200 (special committee) ; *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 34 and 35 Cong. (see indexes) ; *Senate Reports*, 34 and 35 Cong. (see indexes). — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: Charles Sumner, *Works*, IV ; Wendell Phillips, *Conquest of Kansas* ; F. B. Sanborn, *Life and Letters of John Brown*, Chs. vii-xi ; Sarah T. L. Robinson, *Kansas: Its Exterior and Its Interior Life* ; T. H. Gladstone, *Englishman in Kansas* ; contemporary newspapers, especially *New York Tribune*.

**Bibliography.** — W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 39, 43 ; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 146-149 ; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 296 ; II, 667 ; Notes to Von Holst and Rhodes.

## § 201. Rise of the Republican Party.

**Summary.** — Breaking up of the Whigs: 1850-52, "Finality Resolutions" ; 1852, Scott's candidacy ; 1852, Pierce elected president ; Free-Soil vote reduced. — The Know Nothings: 1835-44, "American Republican" movement ; 1852, Native American organization ; anti-foreign principles ; anti-Catholic principles ; 1854-55, great successes ; 1855, June, split on slavery ; 1857-60, slow absorption. — Republican party formed: first use of the name ; elements of membership ; 1854, May 23, Anti-Nebraska

conference; January–November, organization; state successes; 1855, December, a majority in the House; 1856, February, Banks chosen speaker; investigation of Kansas (§ 200).—Election of 1856: Know Nothings divided; May 22, assault on Charles Sumner; June, Buchanan nominated; Frémont nominated by the Republicans; August, deadlock over Kansas; November, Buchanan elected.—Later policy: 1857, on Dred Scott decision (§ 202); on Lecompton Constitution (§ 200); losses in election of 1858; success in 1860 (§ 203).

**General.**—E. Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Ch. xix; H. A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, Ch. xiii; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Chs. xvii–xxi; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, IV, 416–420; E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, Ch. iv; George W. Julian, *Joshua R. Giddings*, Ch. xi; George Lunt, *Origin of the Late War*, Chs. ix–xiii; R. McK. Ormsby, *History of the Whig Party*, Chs. xxviii–xxx; J. A. Spencer, *History*, III, Book VII, Chs. viii, ix; William Chambers, *American Slavery*, 95–114; A. Johnston, in Lalor's *Cyclopædia*, III, 597–598.

**Special.**—J. F. Rhodes, *History*, II, Chs. vii, viii; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, V, Chs. iii, iv, v, vii, ix, VI, Chs. ii–vii; Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, I, Chs. xviii–xxi; Alex. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, Colloquy xvii; George T. Curtis, *Life of James Buchanan*, II, Chs. vi, viii–xi; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, II, Chs. xxxi, xxxii, xxxv, xxxviii; James Schouler, *History*, V, Ch. xxi, Sect. ii, Ch. xxii, Sect. i; William Birney, *James G. Birney and His Times*, Chs. xxviii, xxix; A. G. Riddle, *Benjamin F. Wade*; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years*, I, Chs. vi, vii; O. A. Brownson, *Essays and Reviews*.

**Sources.**—DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Globe*, 34 and 35 Cong. (1855–59) (indexes, especially under names of J. P. Hale, B. F. Wade, John Sherman, Charles Sumner, W. H. Seward, etc.).—CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: E. L. Pierce, *Charles Sumner*, III, Chs. xxxix, xl; Garrisons, *William Lloyd Garrison*, III, Chs. xvi–xviii; James S. Pike, *First Blows*, 260–420; Alexander Johnston, *American Orations*, II, 256–314; Mrs. Chapman Coleman, *John J. Crittenden*, II, Chs. vi–x; [James Buchanan], *Mr. Buchanan's Administration*; Edward Quincy, *Josiah Quincy*, Ch. xx; Charles Sumner, *Works*; George W. Curtis, *Works*; Ben Perley Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, I, Chs. xxxvi–xliv; Nathan Sargent, *Public Men and Events*, II, Ch. ix; W. H. Seward, *Works*; R. B. Warden, *S. P. Chase*, Chs. xxiii, xxiv.

**Bibliography.** — W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 38; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 67, 87; II, 788; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 150, 151, 153, 155; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 163-165; Notes to Von Holst and Rhodes.

### § 202. Dred Scott Decision and John Brown's Raid.

**Summary.** — Status of the Supreme Court: early decisions (§ 175); changes under Jackson (§ 185); desire to settle the controversy; 1857, March 4, Buchanan's announcement. — The Dred Scott case; 1834-38, Scott taken to Illinois and the Indian country; 1847-53, Scott's three suits against his owner; 1856, suit before the Supreme Court; 1857, March 10, decision. — Principles of the Dred Scott decision: negro citizenship denied; effect of residence in free territory; constitutionality of the Missouri Compromise denied. — Effect of the decision: popular sovereignty denied (§ 196); Douglas in bad favor (§ 203); 1858, Lincoln's disavowal (§ 203); 1862, decision ignored by Congress (§ 214). — John Brown's raid: John Brown in Kansas (§ 200); his character; early plans for inciting a slave insurrection; support in New England; 1859, October, capture of Harper's Ferry; October-December, trial and execution; Republican disavowals; effect on the South.

**General.** — Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Chs. xviii, xx; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, IV, 424-432; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 838-841; E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, 70-74; G. W. Williams, *Negro Race*, II, 227.

**Special.** — On DRED SCOTT CASE: J. F. Rhodes, *History*, II, 242-277; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, VI, Ch. i; Samuel Tyler, *Memoir of R. B. Taney*, 359-438; Thomas H. Benton, *Historical and Legal Examination*; S. A. Foot, *Examination of the Case of Dred Scott*; Gray and Lowell, *Legal Review of the Case of Dred Scott*; Joel Parker, *Personal Liberty Laws and Slavery in the Territories*; J. C. Hurd, *Law of Freedom and Bondage*, §§ 489-539; Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, II, Chs. iv, v; H. L. Carson, *Supreme Court*, II, Ch. xv; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, II, Ch. xxxix; Martin Van Buren, *Inquiry into Political Parties*, Ch. viii. — On JOHN BROWN: James Redpath, *The Public Life of Captain John Brown*, 229-407;

H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, VI, Ch. i, and *John Brown*; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, II, 384-416; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, II, Chs. xxxix, xlv, xlvi.

**Sources.** — TEXT OF THE DECISION in 19 *Howard*, 399, and 2 *Miller*, 1; extracts in *American History Leaflets*, No. 23; J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 480. — DEBATES AND DOCUMENTS: *Congressional Globe*, 36 Cong. 1 sess. (see indexes, "Harper's Ferry"); *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 36 Cong. 1 sess. II, No. 2. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: F. B. Sanborn, *Life and Letters of John Brown*, Chs. xii-xvii; James Redpath, *Echoes of Harper's Ferry*; James S. Pike, *First Blows of the Civil War*, 420-480; Frederick Douglass, *Life and Times*, Pt. ii, Chs. viii-x; Garrisons, *William Lloyd Garrison*, III, Ch. xix; Ben Perley Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, II, Ch. iii; Alexander Johnston, *American Orations*, III, 28.

**Bibliography.** — J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 841; W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 42; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 152, 154; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, §§ 33 i, 33 j, 63, 65; H. Matson, *References*, Nos. 45-47; notes to Rhodes and Von Holst.

### § 203. Election of 1860.

**Summary.** — Parties in 1857 and 1858: Buchanan's presidency; 1857, new tariff; question of homesteads; revival of the slave-trade threatened; Kansas question (§ 200). — Lincoln-Douglas debate: Douglas against the Lecompton Constitution (§ 200); Lincoln as the Republican candidate for the senatorship; 1858, June 16, "House divided" speech; joint debates; August 27, Douglas's "Freeport Doctrine"; Douglass successful. — Congress: 1859-60, parties; Douglas out of favor; "Impending Crisis" debate; "Covode investigation." — Nominations of 1860: April 23-May 3, Charleston Convention; May 16, Republican convention; hopes of Seward, Cameron, and Chase; May 17, Lincoln nominated; May 24, Jefferson Davis's slavery resolutions; June 22, Baltimore convention nominates Douglas; June 28, Seceders' convention nominates Breckinridge. — Campaign issues: Kansas (§ 200); territorial slavery (§§ 196, 199, 220); abolition; disunion (§ 205). — The result: November 6, Lincoln elected; November 20, South Carolina secedes (§ 206).

**General.** — E. Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Ch. xx; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Ch. xxi; James Schouler, *History*, V, Ch. xxii, Sect. ii; E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, Ch. iv; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's History*, IV, 432-434; George Lunt, *Origin of the Late War*, Chs. xiv, xv; Comte de Paris, *History of the Civil War*, I, 107-132; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, III, 599, 997; J. E. Cairnes, *Slave Power*, 128 (203).

**Special.** — Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, II, Chs. x-xvi; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, II, Chs. x, xi; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, VI, Ch. vii, VII, Chs. ii-vi; George T. Curtis, *Life of James Buchanan*, II, Chs. xii, xiii; Alexander H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, Colloquy xviii; John T. Morse, *Abraham Lincoln*, I, Ch. vi; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, II, Chs. xliii, xliv, xlvii-lv; J. W. Draper, *History of the Civil War*, I, Ch. xxx; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Chs. viii-x; D. W. Bartlett, *Presidential Candidates in 1860*; Lives of Lincoln, Douglas, Breckinridge, Bell, Chase, Seward, etc. (§ 25).

**Sources.** — *Congressional Globe*, 36 Cong. 2 sess. (see Davis, Douglas, Wade, Seward, Hale, etc.); Lincoln and Douglas, *Debates*; Abraham Lincoln, *Works*, I; E. L. Pierce, *Memoir and Letters of Charles Sumner*, III, Ch. xliii; Alexander Johnston, *Representative American Orations*, III, 3-48; Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, Pt. i, Chs. vi, vii; [James Buchanan], *Mr. Buchanan's Administration*, Chs. iii, xii, xiii; Mrs. Chapman Coleman, *Life of John J. Crittenden*, II, Chs. xi, xii; Garrisons, *William Lloyd Garrison*, III, Ch. xx; James S. Pike, *First Blows of the Civil War*, 480-526; Ben Perley Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, II, Ch. iv; J. M. Cutts, *Brief Treatise*; E. McPherson, *History of the Rebellion*; *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, pp. 46-420.

**Bibliography.** — W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administrations*, 44; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 156, 157; notes to Von Holst, Rhodes, Schouler, etc.

## XXIII. THE CIVIL WAR PERIOD.

### § 204. The Sections Compared.

**Summary.** — Geography: areas of free states, border states, and seceding states; status of territories; status of Pacific states. — New states admitted: 1858, Minnesota; 1859, Oregon; 1861, Kansas (34th). — Military conditions: distances; coast line; Appalachian range; inside lines; the South on the defensive. — Economic comparison: agriculture; wealth; manufactures; commerce; means of communication. — Social comparison: population, Northern, border states, Confederacy; negroes and whites; cities; education; intelligence. — Military comparison: number of troops, Northern and Southern; regular army; military administration; military aptitude; officers; the Northern and Southern volunteer; military supplies; military preparation; use of negroes. — Expectation of foreign aid: "King Cotton"; sympathy of England and France; effect of the blockade (§ 212). — Slavery the chief cause of difference (see §§ 186-189, 203).

**General.** — NORTHERN ACCOUNTS: John C. Ropes, *Story of the Civil War*, I, Chs. vii, viii; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Ch. xxi; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, Ch. v; James Redpath, *Echoes from Harper's Ferry*, App.; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Ch. xiv; Albert B. Hart, *Practical Essays*, No. xi; S. G. Fisher, *Trial of the Constitution*, Ch. v. — SOUTHERN ACCOUNTS: Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, Pt. iv, 301-311, 471-483, II, Pt. iv, 705-717; Alexander H. Stephens, *War between the States*, I, 446, 646 (Toombs's Lecture), II, 396; E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, 49-53. — FOREIGN ACCOUNTS: James Spence, *American Union*, 248-314; William Chambers, *American Slavery and Colour*, Ch. xiv.

**Special.** — NORTHERN ACCOUNTS: James F. Rhodes, *History*, III, Ch. xii; H. Von Hölst, *Constitutional History*, VII, Chs. vii, viii; Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, III, Chs. i, ii; J. W. Draper,

*American Civil War*, I, Chs. xxvi, xix, II, Chs. xxxix, xli-xlv, III, Ch. xcv; T. S. Goodwin, *Natural History of Secession*; Richard Hildreth, *Despotism in America*; Century Co., *Battles and Leaders of the Civil War*, I, 74-98; F. Phisterer, *Statistical Record of the Armies of the United States*; G. W. Williams, *Negro Troops in the Rebellion*. — SOUTHERN ACCOUNTS: J. D. B. De Bow, *Industrial Resources of the Southern and Western States*; R. L. Dabney, *Defence of Virginia*, Ch. viii; see also personal narratives in §§ 209, 210; James Williams, *The South Vindicated*, and *Rise and Fall of the Model Republic*. — FOREIGN ACCOUNTS: Comte de Paris, *History of the Civil War*, I, 6, 16-29, 76-106, 172-217, 257-316; H. C. Fletcher, *American War*, I, Ch. iii; Adam Gurowski, *America and Europe*; J. E. Cairnes, *The Slave Power*; A. E. De Gasparin, *Uprising of a Great People* (Booth's translation); F. Laboulaye, *Separation: War without end*.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Congressional Globe*, 36 Cong. 2 sess. (1860-61), passim, especially 624 (Winslow), 721 (Slidell), 134 (Lane), 13, 72 (Wigfall), 1467 (Breckinridge), 943 (De Jarnette). — DOCUMENTS: *Eighth Census of the United States* (1860), volume "Population"; *Tenth Census of the United States* (1880), *Compendium*, I, 4, 333; *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 36 Cong. 2 sess. II (Army in 1860), III (Navy in 1860), VIII (importation by districts); 37 Cong. 1 sess. Nos. 1, 19, 85 (Secretary of War, July 1, 1861), No. 2 (Secretary of the Treasury); *House Exec. Docs.*, 36 Cong. 2 sess. II (finances in 1860), IX, No. 53 (militia), X, No. 77 (banks); 37 Cong. 1 sess. No. 1 (treasury), No. 14 (Indians and Negroes); *Senate Reports*, 37 Cong. 2 sess. No. 2 (militia); *House Reports*, 37 Cong. 1 sess. No. 1 (volunteers); *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, passim, especially 26 (Army), 490 (Navy), 1863, pp. 268, 361 (draft). — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: W. T. Sherman, *Memoirs*, II, Ch. xxv; F. L. Olmsted, *Cotton Kingdom* (or *Seaboard Slave States*, and *Back Country*, and *Texas Journey*); H. R. Helper, *The Impending Crisis*; G. M. Weston, *Progress of Slavery in the United States*; "Barbarossa," *The Lost Principle* (slave-trade); Augustin Cochin, *Results of Slavery*.

**Bibliography.** — J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, III, 737; E. C. Lunt, *Key to the Publications of the United States Census* (American Statistical Association, *Publications*, New Series, Nos. 2, 3); Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, p. 164; J. R. Bartlett, *Literature of the Rebellion*.



## § 205. Theory of Secession.

**Summary.** — Status of the states before 1789 (§§ 137, 142, 143, 149). — Ratifications of the Constitution (§§ 155, 156). — Threats of secession: 1795, Connecticut Courant; 1798, Virginia and Kentucky (§ 165); 1803, 1811, 1814, New England (§ 173); 1832, sentiment in South Carolina (§ 183); 1850, threats in the Compromise Debate (§ 197); 1856, meeting of the governors at Raleigh; 1860, threats in the presidential election (§ 203). — Enunciations of secession: 1798–99, Virginia and Kentucky doctrine (§ 165); 1803, Tucker's Blackstone; 1811, January 14, Josiah Quincy's speech; 1832, South Carolina resolutions (§ 183); 1850, Calhoun's speech (§ 197); 1845, William Lloyd Garrison's doctrine (§ 187); 1860, May 24, Jefferson Davis's resolutions. — Status of the doctrine in 1860: question of constitutionality; question of expediency; question of probable effectiveness; legal effect of ordinances of secession (§ 206).

**General.** — BRIEF LEGAL DISCUSSIONS (chiefly adverse): T. M. Cooley, *Constitutional Law*, Ch. ii, and *Story's Commentaries*, II, §§ 915–922; Joseph Story, *Commentaries*, §§ 178, 207–215, 311–322, 467–481; R. H. Dana, *Wheaton's International Law*, note 32; J. N. Pomeroy, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 25–42, 120a; George S. Boutwell, *Constitution of the United States*, §§ 58–71; Francis Wharton, *Commentaries*, 374n, 594n; J. I. C. Hare, *American Constitutional Law*, Index, under title "State Rights"; John Ordronaux, *Constitutional Legislation*, 84–91, 111–175, 210; Bump, *Notes on Constitutional Decisions*, 327–333; Joel Tiffany, *Treatise on Government*, §§ 41–65; C. G. Tiedeman, *Unwritten Constitution of the United States*, Ch. ix; John King, *Commentaries on the Constitution*, Ch. xii; Timothy Farrar, *Manual of the Constitution*, 64, 71, 111, 186, 386, 503; W. O. Bateman, *Political and Constitutional Law*, §§ 54, 90, 138–146; Timothy Walker, *Introduction to American Law*, 67–77. — BRIEF NARRATIVE DISCUSSIONS: John C. Ropes, *Story of the Civil War*, I, 12–16; J. W. Draper, *American Civil War*, I, Chs. xxvii, xxviii; L. G. Tyler, *Letters and Times of the Tylers*, II, Ch. xix; H. C. Fletcher, *History of the American War*, I, Ch. i; Comte de Paris, *History of the Civil War*, I, 113–116; Alexander Johnston, in Lalor's *Cyclopædia*, I, 61, III, 693–702, 788–800, and in his *American Orations*, III, 49–67; N. S. Shaler, *Kentucky*; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, Ch. vi; Charles Ingersoll, *Fears for Democracy*, Ch. viii.



**Special.** — THE DOCTRINE DEFENDED: Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, Pt. i, especially 70-77, 157-168, 185-192; Alexander H. Stephens, *War between the States*, I, 17-49, 408-418, 441-452; 459-539, II, 5-15, 26-34, 261-271; W. W. Handlin, *American Politics, Causes of the Civil War* (New Orleans, 1864); C. S. Farrar, *The War, Its Causes and Consequences*; Abel P. Upshur, *Brief Enquiry into the Nature of the Federal Government*; E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, Ch. i; A. T. Bledsoe, *Is Davis a Traitor?*; J. W. Du Bose, *Life of Yancey*, Chs. viii-xxi. — ADVERSE TO THE DOCTRINE: John C. Hurd, *Theory of Our National Existence*, and *The Union-State*; William Whiting, *War Powers under the Constitution*; T. S. Goodwin, *Natural History of Secession*; Henry Baldwin, *General View of the Constitution*; C. S. Patterson, *The United States and the States*, Chs. i, xii; J. M. Cutts, *Brief Treatise* (Douglas's views); J. Parker, *Constitutional Law*; C. W. Loring, *Nullification, Secession*; S. G. Fisher, *Trial of the Constitution*.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Congressional Globe*, 36 Cong. 2 sess.; 37 Cong. 1 sess., 2 sess. (especially debate on Davis resolutions, January, May, 1860). — DOCUMENTS. — Ordinances of Secession and accompanying documents (see § 206). — Lincoln's inaugural address and message of July 4, 1861, in Abraham Lincoln, *Complete Works*, II, 1-7, 55, 56; *Congressional Globe*; *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong. 2 sess. No. 1; *American History Leaflets*, No. 18. — Select speeches, in Johnston, *American Orations*, II, 46-125; III, 49-124. — Buchanan's doctrine: his message of December 3, 1861, in *Congressional Globe*, 36 Cong. 2 sess.; *Mr. Buchanan's Administration*. — Southern Documents: Southern Historical Society, *Papers*, I, 1, VI, 54, 190, X, 433. — SUPREME COURT CASES: *Texas vs. White*, 7 *Wallace*, 700, J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 302; *White vs. Hart*, 13 *Wallace*, 646, J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 259; *Keith vs. Clark*, 92 *United States*, 461; *Sprott vs. United States*, 20 *Wallace*, 419.

**Bibliography.** — Robert Desty, *Federal Constitution*, 116, 117, 273; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 62; III, 788; Albert B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, § 66.

### § 206. Process of Secession, 1860-1861.

**Summary.** — Previous threats (see § 205). — Causes of secession: conventional views; ambition; desire for independence; political supremacy; self-government; slavery. — Grievances of the South: general discontent; unfriendliness; wrong interpretation of the Constitution; political apprehension; opposition to

slavery. — Movement in South Carolina : 1860, October 5, Governor Gist's letter ; November 5, legislature called ; November 6, election day ; November 7, resignation of Federal officials ; November 12, act for calling a convention ; December 17–20, Secession Convention ; December 20, Secession Ordinance ; December 24, accompanying papers ; effect on the Union. — The other cotton states : movement for secession ; November 14, Stephens's Union speech ; 1861, January 5, resolutions of secession congressmen ; January 9, Mississippi secedes ; January 10, Florida secedes ; January 10, Alabama secedes ; January 11, Georgia secedes ; January 26, Louisiana secedes ; January 28, Texas secedes. — February 4–18, Southern Confederacy formed (§ 209).

**General.**—John T. Morse, *Abraham Lincoln*, I, Ch. vii ; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Chs. xxii, xxvi ; George Lunt, *Origin of the Late War*, Chs. xvi, xvii ; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, IV, 437–444 ; James Schouler, *History*, V, 469–491 ; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, V, 3405–3416 ; E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, Chs. ii–v ; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 296 ; *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, 696–708 ; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, Ch. vi ; A. C. McLaughlin, *Lewis Cass*, Ch. x ; James Spence, *American Union*, Chs. iii, v, vi ; Montague Bernard, *Neutrality of Great Britain*, 40–53 ; J. E. Cairnes, *Slave Power*, 17–32, 128–132 ; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, III, Ch. i.

**Special.** — NORTHERN VIEW : J. F. Rhodes, *History*, III, Chs. xiii, xiv ; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, VII, Chs. vii, viii ; John C. Ropes, *Story of the Civil War*, I, Chs. ii–iv ; Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, II, Chs. xvii–xxv, III, Chs. i, iii–xiii ; J. W. Draper, *History of the Civil War*, I, Chs. xxxi, xxxiii ; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, II, Ch. li, III, Chs. i, ix–xli ; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Ch. xi ; James Russell Lowell, *Political Essays*, 45–74, 118–152 ; Century Co., *Battles and Leaders of the Civil War*, I, 26–49, 99–110. — SOUTHERN VIEW : Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 57–85, 199–226 ; Mrs. Davis, *Jefferson Davis*, I, Ch. xlv ; II, Ch. i ; George T. Curtis, *Life of James Buchanan*, Chs. xiii–xx ; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, I, Colloquies xi, xii, II, Colloquies xix, xxi ; E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, Ch. v ; H. A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, Ch. xiv ; Horatio King, *Turning on the Light* ; Robert Toombs, in A. H. Stephens's *War between the States*, II, 109–130 ; Alfred Roman, *Military Operations of General Beauregard*, I, Chs. i, ii ; A. L. Long,

*Robert E. Lee*, Ch. v ; R. L. Dabney, *Stonewall Jackson*, 125-196 ; J. W. Du Bose, *Wm. L. Yancey*, Chs. xxiii, xxiv. — BIOGRAPHIES OF CONTEMPORARIES : especially lives of Lincoln, Seward, Chase, Buchanan, Jefferson Davis, Stephens, Toombs, Cobb, Tyler (§ 25). — STATE HISTORIES : J. T. Scharf, *Maryland*, III, Ch. xlii ; N. S. Shaler, *Kentucky*, Ch. xv ; see also histories of the seceding states (§ 23).

**Sources.** — DEBATES : *Congressional Globe*, 36 Cong. 2 sess. passim. — DOCUMENTS : Alexander Johnston, *American Orations*, III, Pt. vi ; *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 36 Cong. 2 sess. I, No. 1 (Message of December 3, 1860) ; IV, No. 5 (Message of January 31, 1861) ; 38 Cong. 1 sess. I, No. 3 (resignation) ; *House Exec. Docs.*, 36 Cong. 2 sess. VI, No. 26 (Message of January 9, 1861), IX, No. 61 (Message of February 8, 1861), No. 72 (Dix's report), 37 Cong. 3 sess., III, No. 1, p. 532 ; *House Reports*, 36 Cong. 2 sess. I, No. 50, II, 79, 87, 88, 91 ; *American Annual Cyclopædia, 1861*, see index under "Confederate States" and each seceding state ; also pp. 594-600, 666 (Message of December 3) ; T. V. Cooper, *American Politics*, Book I, 87-120 ; J. Buchanan Henry, *Messages of President Buchanan ; War of the Rebellion, Official Records*, Series I, Vol. I, passim (secession and Fort Sumter), Series IV, Vol. I, passim (messages and papers of seceding states) ; Frank Moore, *Rebellion Record*, I, Pt. ii, 1-28 ; Edward McPherson, *History of the Rebellion*, 1-47, 389-400 ; Southern Historical Society, *Papers*, XIV, 359, XVI, 319. — PROCEEDINGS OF SECESSION CONVENTIONS : especially *Journal of the Convention of the People of South Carolina*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS : James Buchanan, *Mr. Buchanan's Administration*, Chs. iv-vi, ix-xi ; W. T. Sherman, *Memoirs*, I, 172-204 ; Morgan Dix, *Memoirs of John A. Dix*, I, 333-388 ; John Sherman, *Recollections*, I, Ch. ix ; E. D. Keyes, *Fifty Year's Observation*, Chs. 17-19 ; Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, Pt. i, Chs. vii, ix, x, Pt. ii, Pt. iii, Chs. i-vii ; Pleasant A. Stovall, *Robert Toombs*, Chs. xix, xx.

**Bibliography.** — W. E. Foster, *Presidential Administrations*, 43 ; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, §§ 158, 159, 161 ; Albert B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, § 67.

### § 207. Coercion and Compromise, 1860-1861.

**Summary.** — Possible policies of the North : (1) "let the erring sisters go in peace" ; (2) resistance ; (3) compromise ; temper of the North. — Buchanan's attitude : 1860, October 29, "General Scott's Views" ; November 7-9, question of reinforcements ;

November 20, opinion of Attorney-General Black ; December 3, Buchanan's message ; December 9, "Memorandum" of South Carolina members ; December 11, instructions to Major Anderson ; December 15, resignation of Secretary Cass. — First period of compromise : precedent of earlier compromises of 1820, 1833, and 1850 (§§ 177, 183, 197) ; interest of the border states ; inclination of the Republicans ; December 6 to January 14, House Committee of 33 ; December 14, Southern address against compromise ; December 20–28, Senate Committee of 33 ; compromise defeated by Lincoln. — First Sumter episode : December 20, secession of South Carolina (§ 206) ; December 22–26, commission to Buchanan ; December 26, Anderson occupies Fort Sumter ; December 27–29, cabinet crisis, Floyd resigns ; December 29, Buchanan yields to Black ; December 31, decision to hold Sumter ; January 9, Star of the West fired upon ; January 14 to February 6, correspondence with South Carolina commission. — Second period of compromise : attitude of Seward ; January 14, Crittenden compromise defeated ; February 7, Vallandigham's plan ; February 4–27, peace conference ; March 2, all compromises fail ; March 2, Corwin amendment submitted ; why did compromise fail? — Question of coercion : apathy of Congress ; probable effect on border states ; effect on "Union men" in the South. — Principles of coercion : (1) protection of national property ; (2) "execution of the laws" ; (3) "suppressing insurrection" ; (4) "war on a state."

**General.** — John C. Ropes, *Story of the Civil War*, I, 10–60 ; George Lunt, *Origin of the Late War*, Chs. xvi–xix ; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Chs. xxiii–xxv ; James Schouler, *History*, V, Ch. xxii, Sect. ii ; John T. Morse, *Abraham Lincoln*, I, 189–220 ; E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, Ch. v ; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 553, 578 ; III, 932 ; T. M. Cooley, *Story's Commentaries*, § 1922 ; Lawrence, *Wheaton's International Law*, § 43 ; Charles Ingersoll, *Fears for Democracy*, 178–221 ; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, Ch. iv.

**Special.** — **NORTHERN VIEW :** James F. Rhodes, *History*, III, Ch. xiv ; Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, II, Chs. xxvi–xxviii, III, Chs. i, x–xv ; H. Von Holst, *Constitutional History*, VII, Ch. xi ; Fred-eric Bancroft, *The Final Efforts at Compromise (Political Science*

*Quarterly*, VI, 401-423); John T. Morse, *Abraham Lincoln*, I, Ch. vii; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, Chs. xxvi-xxix, xxxiii; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, III, Chs. ii-viii; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Chs. xii, xiii; F. W. Seward, *Seward at Washington*, Chs. li-liv.—SOUTHERN VIEW: Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 247-258; L. G. Tyler, *Letters and Times of the Tylers*, II, Ch. xx; H. A. Wise, *Seven Decades*, Ch. xv; George T. Curtis, *James Buchanan*, II, Chs. xxi, xxii.—See also lives of Lincoln, Seward, Chase, Crittenden, Toombs, Jefferson Davis (§ 25).

**Sources.**—OFFICIAL RECORDS: *Congressional Globe*, 36 Cong. 2 sess. passim, especially 1114 (Crittenden plan), 794 (Vallandigham's), 1254 (Peace Conference), 690 (Kellog's), 283, 379 (Clark's); *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 36 Cong. 2 sess. IV, No. 2 (Message of February 19); *Senate Reports*, 36 Cong. 2 sess. No. 288 (Committee of 13); *House Miscellaneous*, 36 Cong. 2 sess. (resolutions of legislatures and public meetings); *House Reports*, 36 Cong. 2 sess. I, No. 31 (Committee of 33), II, Nos. 87, 88 (coercion); *Opinions of Attorneys-Generals*, IX, 522-526 (Black).—COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS: *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, pp. 166-225 (Congress), 562-568 (Peace Conference), 575 (Personal Liberty Laws); *War of the Rebellion, Official Records*, Series IV, Vol. I, passim (messages and letters); Edward McPherson, *History of the Rebellion*, 48-91; Frank Moore, *Rebellion Records*, I, Pt. li, pp. 35, 36; Southern Historical Society, *Papers*, XII, 60; James B. Thayer, *Cases on Constitutional Law*, 2274-2420; L. E. Chittenden, *Report of the Debates and Proceedings of the Conference Convention*; *Official Journal of the Conference Convention*; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, passim.—CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: James Buchanan, *Mr. Buchanan's Administration*, Chs. vii, viii; *The Sherman Letters*, 76-104; Abraham Lincoln, *Complete Works*, I, 635-694; Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, Pt. i, Ch. viii, Pt. iii, Chs. viii-xi; Chapman Coleman, *Life of John J. Crittenden*, II, Chs. xiii-xvii; E. L. Pierce, *Memoir and Letters of Charles Sumner*, IV, Ch. xlv; Amos Kendall, *Autobiography*, Ch. xix; Charles Sumner, *Works*, V, 293-484; William H. Seward, *Works*, IV, 223-692.

**Bibliography.**—W. E. Foster, *References to Presidential Administration*, 43; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 554, III, 933; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 169; Ben Perley Poore, *Catalogue of Government Publications*, 783-791; *Indexes to Public Documents* (see § 16e); Albert B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, § 67; footnotes to Rhodes and Von Holst.

## § 208. Abraham Lincoln and his Policy.

**Summary.** — Lincoln's life : 1809, birth ; 1847-49, in Congress (§ 196) ; 1858, Douglas debate (§ 201) ; 1860, November 6, elected President ; characteristics. — Interregnum : December 22, letter to Stephens ; December, opposes compromise (§ 207) ; influence on Greeley and Seward ; February 11-23, journey to Washington. — Status of the country : secessions (§ 206) ; Southern Confederacy (§ 209) ; the forts (§ 207) ; uncertainty of public feeling. — Fort Sumter crisis : March 4, inaugural address ; March 5, cabinet nominated ; March 12, commission of the C. S. A. ; March 13-22, Campbell's intervention ; March 29, Lincoln decides to reinforce ; April 1, Seward's suggestion of foreign war ; April 6, notice to South Carolina ; April 12, attack on Fort Sumter ; April 13, the fort surrendered. — Outbreak of war : April 15, call for volunteers ; April 19, Sixth Massachusetts in Baltimore ; April 19-29, blockade proclamations. — Border states : April 17, Virginia secedes ; May 6, Arkansas secedes ; May 7, Tennessee secedes ; May 20, North Carolina secedes ; Maryland, Kentucky, and Missouri retained ; status of East Tennessee, West Virginia, and the eastern shore of Virginia.

**General.** — NORTHERN VIEW : Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Chs. xxvi-xxx ; James Schouler, *History*, V, 497-511 ; George Lunt, *Origin of the War*, Ch. xx ; James Russell Lowell, *Political Essays*, 75-91 ; Rossiter Johnson, *Short History of the War*, Chs. iii, v ; *American Annual Cyclopædia, 1861*, pp. 708-720 ; S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, IV, 444-450 ; John Bigelow, *Life of S. J. Tilden*, I, Ch. vii ; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, Ch. viii ; R. H. Gillet, *Democracy in the United States*, §§ 100-104 ; Geo. S. Boutwell, *Constitution of the United States*, 214-226 ; Joshua R. Giddings, *History of the Rebellion*. — FOREIGN VIEWS : Montague Bernard, *Neutrality of Great Britain*, 65-105 ; H. C. Fletcher, *American War*, I, Chs. ii, iii ; Goldwin Smith, *United States*, 233-253.

**Special.** — NORTHERN VIEW : James F. Rhodes, *History*, III, 300-354 ; Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, II, Ch. xxix, III, Chs. xvi-xxvi, IV, Chs. i-iv ; John C. Ropes, *Story of the Civil War*, I, Chs. v, vi ; Century Co., *Battles and Leaders of the Civil War*, I, 1-73 ;



J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, II, Chs. xxxiv-xxxviii; J. G. Nicolay, *Outbreak of Rebellion* (Campaign series); George T. Curtis, *James Buchanan*, II, Chs. xxiv-xxvii; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Chs. xiii, xiv; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, III, Chs. x-xvi; Samuel T. Crawford, *Genesis of the Civil War*.—BIOGRAPHIES OF LINCOLN (see § 25): especially John T. Morse, *Abraham Lincoln*, I, Ch. viii, 220-302; Henry J. Raymond, *Administration of Lincoln*; A. R. McClure, *Abraham Lincoln and Men of War Times*; Lamon, Herndon, Arnold.—SOUTHERN VIEW: Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 263-300, 319-329; Alex. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, Colloquies, xviii, xx; E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, Chs. v, vi; Alfred Roman, *Military Operations of General Beauregard*, I, Chs. iii, v; George Lunt, *Origin of the Late War*, Chs. xx, xxi; see also biographies of Jefferson Davis, Stephens, Toombs, Yancey, Lee, Stonewall Jackson (§ 25).—BIOGRAPHIES OF NORTHERN STATESMEN (§ 25), especially Chase, Seward, Scott, Douglas, B. F. Wade, Crittenden; F. W. Seward, *Seward in Washington*, I, Chs. liv-lvii; E. D. Keyes, *Fifty Years' Observation*, Chs. xx, xxi (Scott); Thurlow Weed Barnes, *Memoir of Thurlow Weed*, 291-348.—FOREIGN VIEW: Comte de Paris, *Civil War*, I, 107-171; Agénor de Gasparin, *Uprising of a Great People*.

**Sources.**—DEBATES AND SPEECHES: *Congressional Globe*, 36 Cong. 2 sess., 37 Cong. 1 sess., 37 Cong. 2 sess. (1860-62); Alexander Johnston, *American Orations*, III, 141-263.—DOCUMENTS: *House Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong. 1 sess. No. 20; *Senate Miscellaneous*, 37 Cong. 2 sess. (state resolution); *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, pp. 225-250 (Congress), 315-323 (forts), 416-420 (Lincoln), 601-612 (inaugural and message of July 4, 1861); *War of the Rebellion, Official Records*, Series I, Vol. I, 190-317 (Fort Sumter), 474-488 (North Carolina); Series IV, Vol. I, passim; *American History Leaflets*, Nos. 18, 26; Edward McPherson, *History of the Rebellion*, 105-150; Frank Moore, *Rebellion Record*, I, Pt. ii, pp. 36-73; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, V, 3417-3420.—CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: Abraham Lincoln, *Complete Works*, II, 1-66; William H. Seward, *Works*, IV; R. B. Warden, *Life of Salmon P. Chase*; L. E. Chittenden, *Recollections of Lincoln*, Chs. xlii-xlvi; Charles Sumner, *Works*, V, 481-508; G. W. Julian, *Political Recollections*; A. G. Riddle, *Recollections of War Times*, Chs. ii-vii; Thurlow Weed, *Autobiography*, 602-620; Hugh McCullough, *Men and Measures*, Ch. xiv; Horace Greeley, *Recollections*, Chs. xlix-lii; *The Sherman Letters*, 104-124; E. D. Keyes, *Fifty Years' Observation*,

Chs. xvii-xxi ; John Sherman, *Recollections*, I, Chs. x, xi ; E. L. Pierce, *Memoir and Letters of Charles Sumner*, IV ; Ben Perley Poore, *Perley's Reminiscences*, II, Ch. v ; Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, Pt. iii, Chs. xi-xiii, Pt. iv, Ch. i, Appendices G-I, L ; A. Doubleday, *Reminiscences of Fort Sumter* ; F. B. Carpenter, *Six Months at the White House* ; Gideon Welles, *Lincoln*.

**Bibliography.** — Andrew Boyd, *Memorial Lincoln Bibliography* ; Sabin, *Dictionary of Books Relating to America*, title Lincoln ; J. R. Bartlett, *Literature of the Rebellion* ; W. E. Foster, *Presidential Administrations*, 45, and *Providence Monthly Reference Lists*, I, 21 ; E. E. Sparks, *Topical Reference Lists*, § 162 ; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, pp. 169-172 ; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, § 68 ; Indexes to Public Documents (see § 16e) ; footnotes to Rhodes, *History*, and Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*.

### § 209. The Southern Confederacy, 1861-1865.

**Summary.** — Formation : 1798-1860, suggestions ; 1836, "The Partisan Leader" ; 1861, January 7, call by Alabama ; February 4, Congress at Montgomery ; February 8, provisional constitution ; February 18, Davis inaugurated president ; March 11, permanent Constitution adopted ; 1862, February 18, permanent Constitution in force. — The Constitution : modelled on the federal Constitution ; "delegated powers" ; cabinet ministers in Congress ; no protective tariffs or internal improvements ; veto of appropriation items ; two-thirds vote for export tax and new states. — Slavery in the Constitution : word "slaves" ; slave trade prohibited : right of transit acknowledged ; territorial slavery acknowledged ; November 21, Vice-President Stephens's "cornerstone" speech. — Administration of the Confederacy : cabinet ministers ; civil officials ; Davis's predominance ; rivalry of Stephens ; secret sessions. — Finances : loans ; foreign loans, paper money ; requisition ; taxes. — Conscription : difficulty with Georgia. — Foreign relations : friends abroad ; missions (see also § 212) ; recognition of belligerency ; no recognition of independence ; the Pope's letter. — Collapse in 1865 : military defeat (§ 210) ; exhaustion of the country ; effect of the blockade. — Legal status : a government *de facto* ; acts legally void ; effect of Fourteenth Amendment.



**General.** — Woodrow Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, §§ 117-123; A. Johnston, in Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 566-571; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, III, 291-296, 320-325, 381-394, 543-553; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, 403-408, 414-418; F. Wharton, *Commentaries*, §§ 140, 141, 165, 217-228, 233, 374<sup>n</sup>; Montague Bernard, *Neutrality of Great Britain*, 53-65; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, Ch. xv; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years*, I, Ch. xiii; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, III, Ch. ix.

**Special.** — NORTHERN VIEW: J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, I, Ch. xxxii, II, Ch. xlii, III, Chs. lxxiv-lxxxv; Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, III, Chs. xii, xiii, IV, Chs. ix-xiii, V-X, passim; *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, pp. 121-165, 278, 279, 1862, pp. 235-255, 1863, pp. 203-219, 1864, pp. 193-203, 1865, pp. 187-202; *Magazine of American History*, II, 259, XVI, 387; *Galaxy*, VI, 749-758, XVII, 399; *Fraser's Magazine*, LXVI, 443. — SOUTHERN VIEW: Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 229-246, 258-281, 339-352, 484-520, II, 1-17, 245-265, 343-350, 367-381, 608-624; Joseph Hodgson, *Cradle of the Confederacy*, Chs. xvii-xix; E. A. Pollard, *Lost Cause*, passim, especially Chs. v, vii, x; P. C. Centz, *Republic of Republics*, 497-512; *Southern Historical Society Papers*, VII, 99, 333. — BIOGRAPHIES: Mrs. Davis, *Jefferson Davis*, II; F. H. Alfriend, *Jefferson Davis*, Chs. viii-xxi; E. A. Pollard, *Jefferson Davis* (unreliable); Henry Cleveland, *Alexander H. Stephens*; Alfred Roman, *General Beauregard*, II, Ch. 1; J. W. Jones, *Robert E. Lee*; J. W. Du Bose, *William L. Yancey*, Chs. xxv-xxvii; H. D. Capers, *C. G. Memminger*. — FOREIGN VIEW: H. C. Fletcher, *American War*, I, Chs. iv, v, vii, x, II, Chs. i, ix, xi, III, Chs. xvii, xxiv. — FOREIGN AFFAIRS AND NAVY: J. T. Scharf, *History of the Confederate Navy*; John Bigelow, *France and the Confederate Navy*; J. D. Bullock, *Secret Service of the Confederate States in Europe* (see also §§ 210, 212). — MILITARY AFFAIRS (see § 210). — FINANCES: J. C. Schwab, *Finances of the Southern Confederacy* (*Political Science Quarterly* VII, 1); *Banker's Magazine*, XXIV, 934-941, 1089-1095; Horace White, *Money and Banking*, 166-174.

**Sources.** — OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS: Provisional and permanent constitutions, in *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, pp. 627-631; Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 640-675; A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, II, 714-735; *War of the Rebellion, Official Records*, Series IV, Vol. I, 134-141, 256-267; *Confederate Statutes*; *Echoes from the South*; E. McPherson, *History of the Rebellion*, 98-104; *British and Foreign State Papers*, LI, 672, 879. — MESSAGES AND DOCUMENTS: The archives of the Confederate government (including the MS.

*Journals of Congress*) are in the War Department in Washington. Many documents are published in rare original pamphlets (no consecutive numbers); *Echoes from the South*; *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, pp. 121-165 (legislation), 278 (diplomacy), 612-624 (messages), 1862, pp. 12-15 (army), 256-274 (Congress), 599-604 (navy), 732-738 (messages), 1863, pp. 16 (army), 226-233 (Congress), 659 (navy), 782-799 (messages), 1864, pp. 30 (army), 206-219 (Congress), 556 (navy), 691-698 (messages), 707 (navy), 710-714 (peace negotiations), 1865, pp. 717-719 (messages), 1861-1865, passim, under heads "Army," "Confederate States," "Congress, Confederate," and the seceded states by name; Edward McPherson, *Rebellion*, 400-403, 417-622, passim; [United States] *House Exec. Docs.*, 39 Cong. 1 sess. XII, No. 3 (state laws); *War of the Rebellion, Official Records*, Series I, serial Nos. 1-100, Series IV (Confederate); Frank Moore, *Rebellion Record*, I-XI, and supplement, Vol. I, passim; *British and Foreign State Papers*, LV; *Staatsarchiv*, IV, 239-335; Southern Historical Society, *Papers*, I, 23; II, 56, 104; V, 288; VI, 353; VII, 99, 127, 333, 353; IX, 542; X, 137, 154, 560; E. C. Mason, *Veto Power*, Appendix C.—STATUTES: *Confederate States of America, Statutes at Large of the Provisional Government*, and *Public Laws*, and *Private Laws*.—CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: Jefferson Davis (see above, under Special); A. H. Stephens, *War between the States*, passim; George Cary Eggleston, *A Rebel's Recollections*; J. B. Jones, *A Rebel War Clerk's Diary*; "A Lady of Virginia," *Diary of a Southern Refugee*; J. L. Peyton, *The American Crisis* I, Chs. i-v; J. H. Gilmer, *Southern Politics*, and *Argument in the Case of the Confederate States vs. Gilmer*; Daniel, *Richmond Examiner during the War*; R. L. Dabney, *Defence of Virginia and the South*; Heros Von Borcke, *Memoirs of the Confederate War for Independence*; Raphael Semmes, *Cruise of the Alabama*; *The Index* (a review published in London at the expense of the Confederacy); C. Girard, *Les États Confédérés d'Amérique, Visités en 1863*.—There are also numerous narratives and diaries of civilians within the Confederate lines.—PERIODICALS: Articles on the Confederacy are few (see § 26a), but they may be found by using the indexes (§ 16c). Of the Southern newspapers the most important are the *Richmond Whig*, *Richmond Examiner*, *Charleston Mercury*; files are very rare.

**Bibliography.**—Sabin, *Dictionary of American Bibliography*, title Confederate States; Bartlett, *Literature of the Rebellion*; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 571, 721; Boston Public Library, *Catalogue, Bates Hall Supplement*, 654-656; R. Desty, *Federal Constitution*, 116, 117; John O.

Sumner, in American Historical Association, *Papers*, IV, 332; W. E. Foster, *Presidential Administrations*, 48; A. B. Hart, *Federal Government*, § 40.

### § 210. Military Events of the Civil War, 1861-1865.

**Summary.** — Preparations: regular army; regular navy; resignations of officers; military stores; fortifications; theatre of war (§ 204); effect of Fort Sumter episode (§ 208). — Eastern campaigns: 1861, July 21, Bull Run; 1862, May-July, Peninsula campaign; August 24, second Bull Run; Sept. 16, 17, Antietam; December 13, Fredericksburg; 1863, May 3-5, Chancellorsville; July 1-4, Gettysburg; 1864, May 5-9, Wilderness; May-July, Grant's Virginia campaign; August-November, Sheridan's Valley campaigns. — Western campaigns: 1861, Missouri saved; November 7, Belmont; 1862, February 6, 8, Forts Henry and Donelson; April 6, 7, Pittsburg Landing; October 8, Perryville; December 31, Stone River; July 4, Vicksburg; September 19, 20, Chickamauga; November 23-25, Chattanooga; 1864, May-July, Sherman's Georgia campaign; September 2, Atlanta; November-December, "March to the sea"; December 15, 16, Nashville. — Naval warfare: 1861-65, blockade; 1862, March 9, 10, Merrimac and Monitor; April 23, New Orleans; 1863, July, Mississippi opened; 1864, June 19, Kearsarge and Alabama; August 4-22, Mobile. — Finale: 1865, January-April, Sherman's northward march; April 2, 3, Richmond abandoned; April 9, Lee surrenders at Appomattox; April 26, Johnston surrenders; dissolution of Southern organization; 1865-66, disbandment of Northern armies.

**General.** — S. H. Gay, *Bryant's Popular History*, IV, Chs. xvii-xxiii; J. T. Morse, *Abraham Lincoln*, I, 303-367, II, passim; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Chs. xv-xvii, xxiii-xxv; Goldwin Smith, *The United States*, 241-294; E. Channing, *The United States*, 258-300; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, Ch. ix, x; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, V, 3420-3560.

**Special.** — SINGLE-VOLUME HISTORIES: Theodore A. Dodge, *Bird's-Eye View of Our Civil War*; Rossiter Johnson, *Short History of the War of Secession*; John M. Botts, *The Great Rebellion*; Wm. Swinton,

*Twelve Decisive Battles of the War*; Heinrich Blankenburg, *Die innern Kämpfe der nord-amerikanischen Union*, 71-205.—EXTENDED HISTORIES: John C. Ropes, *Story of the Civil War* (3 vols.); Comte de Paris, *History of the Civil War* (4 vols.); J. F. Rhodes, *History of the United States*, III-V; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Chs. xxix, xxx, xxxiii, xxxv-xxxviii, II, Chs. i-ix, xiii-xx, xxiii-xxix, xxxi-xxxv; Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, IV-X, passim; Charles H. Fletcher, *History of the American War* (3 vols.); Century Company, *Battles and Leaders of the Civil War* (4 vols.); Massachusetts Military Historical Society, *Papers* (10 vols.); Southern Historical Society, *Papers* (1876-1895); J. W. Draper, *American Civil War*, II, Chs. xl, xlv-lix, III, Chs. lxxv-lxxxiii, lxxxviii-xciv; Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, I, 352-483, II, 18-157, 194-265, 311-342, 351-366, 382-449, 504-704; A. Mahan, *Critical History of the American War*; O. J. Victor, *History of the Southern Rebellion* (2 vols.); J. T. Headley, *Great Rebellion* (2 vols.); Ferdinand Le Comte, *Guerre de la Sécession* (3 vols.); Benson J. Lossing, *Pictorial Field Book of the Civil War* (3 vols.); Harpers, *Pictorial History of the Great Rebellion*; C. C. Coffin, *Drum-Beat of the Nation*, and *Redeeming the Republic*, and *Marching to Victory*, and *Freedom Triumphant*; E. A. Pollard, *Southern History of the War* (4 vols.), and *Lost Cause*, Chs. vii-xliii (both unreliable).—THE NAVY: Wilson, *Iron-Clads in Action*, I; Charles B. Boynton, *History of the Navy during the Rebellion*; J. R. Soley, *The Blockade and the Cruisers*; D. Ammen, *Atlantic Coast*; A. T. Mahan, *Gulf and Inland Waters*; David D. Porter, *Naval History of the Civil War*; Lewis R. Hamersley, *Records of the Officers of the Navy, with a History of Naval Operations*; J. T. Scharf, *Confederate Navy*; A. Roberts, *Never Caught* (blockade-running).—SPECIAL ARMIES AND CAMPAIGNS: Wm. Swinton, *Campaigns of the Army of the Potomac*; T. B. Van Horne, *History of the Army of the Cumberland* (2 vols.); John Fitch, *Annals of the Army of the Cumberland*; H. V. Boynton, *Chattanooga and Chickamauga*, and *Sherman's Historical Raid*; (Scribner's) *Campaigns of the Civil War* (13 vols.); George H. Gordon, *Campaign of the Army of Virginia under Pope*; Massachusetts Military Historical Society, *Papers* (10 vols.); J. H. Stine, *Army of the Potomac*.—MILITARY BIOGRAPHIES: James Grant Wilson (editor), *Great Commanders* ( vols.); Adam Badeau, *Military History of U. S. Grant* (3 vols.); T. B. Van Horne, *George H. Thomas*; Mrs. Hancock, *Reminiscences of W. S. Hancock*; Henry Coppee, *U. S. Grant and his Campaigns*; Loyall Farragut, *David G. Farragut*; A. T. Mahan, *David G. Farragut*; Alfred Roman, *Military Operations of General Beauregard*

(2 vols.); John Esten Cooke, *Robert E. Lee and Stonewall Jackson*; A. L. Long, *Memoirs of Robert E. Lee*; R. L. Dabney, *Thomas J. [Stonewall] Jackson*; Robert M. Hughes, *General [Joseph E.] Johnston*; Wm. Preston Johnson, *Albert Sidney Johnson*; H. B. McClellan, *J. E. B. Stuart*.—In addition there are numerous state military histories (see § 23), and histories of army corps, regiments, and particular battles and movements.—MILITARY MAPS: Theodore A. Dodge, *Bird's-Eye View of the Civil War* (sketches); John E. Ropes, *Story of the Civil War*; Comte de Paris, *Atlas to the History of the Civil War* (very beautiful), *War of the Rebellion*; *Official Records, Atlas* (official and very elaborate).—Most of the military histories and biographies contain maps of greater or less value.

**Sources.**—DEBATES: *Congressional Globe*, 37 Cong., 38 Cong., passim.—CONGRESSIONAL INVESTIGATION: *Report on the Conduct of the War* (3 vols., 1863), being *Senate Reports*, 37 Cong. 3 sess. No. 108; *Report on the Conduct of the War* (3 vols., 1865), being *Senate Reports*, 38 Cong. 2 sess. No. 142; *Supplemental Report on the Conduct of the War* (2 vols., 1866).—REPORTS OF THE SECRETARIES OF WAR AND OF THE NAVY: *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong. 2 sess. II–V (1861), 38 Cong., special session of March, 1863, 38 Cong. 2 sess. passim; *House Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong. 3 sess. IV–VIII (1862); 38 Cong. 1 sess. IV, V, VII, IX, XIII, XV (1863); 38 Cong. 2 sess. VI, VII, XII–XIV (1864); 39 Cong. 1 sess. III, V, XII–XVI (1865).—DOCUMENTS: *Senate Reports*, 38 Cong. 1 sess. passim, 38 Cong. 2 sess. passim; *House Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong. 2 sess. I, V, VII, IX, X, 37 Cong. 3 sess. IV; *House Miscellaneous*, 38 Cong. 2 sess. I, No. 39; *House Reports*, 38 Cong. 1 sess. I, Nos. 65, 67, 38 Cong. 2 sess., 39 Cong. 1 sess. III, XII, XIII; *American Annual Cyclopædia, 1861 to 1866*, under titles "Army," "Army Operations," "Navy," "Navy Operations," "Prisoners," and names of engagements; Edward McPherson, *History of the Rebellion*, 417–602, passim; Frank Moore, *Rebellion Record*, I–XI, and Suppl. I; George B. McClellan, *Report on the Army of the Potomac*; U. S. Grant, *Report of July 2, 1865* (in *American Annual Cyclopædia, 1865*, 719–742); [United States] *The War of the Rebellion*; *A Compilation of the Official Records of the Union and Confederate Armies*, Series I (serials Nos. 1–100), 100 vols.—WORKS OF COMMANDERS: Abraham Lincoln, *Complete Works*, I, Chs. xvii–xxxix; II; U. S. Grant, *Personal Memoirs*; W. T. Sherman, *Memoirs*, I, 176–405; II, 1–380; P. H. Sheridan, *Personal Memoirs*; Geo. B. McClellan, *McClellan's Own Story*; *The Sherman Letters*, 125–145; Joseph E.

Johnston, *Narrative of Military Operations*; George H. Gordon, *A War Diary*; J. B. Hood, *Advance and Retreat*; J. S. Mosby, *War Reminiscences*; Raphael Semmes, *Service Afloat*; Ambrose E. Burnside, *The Burnside Expedition*. — NARRATIVES OF PARTICIPANTS: T. W. Higginson, *Army Life in a Black Regiment*; P. R. de Trobriand, *Four Years with the Army of the Potomac*; S. D. Townsend, *Anecdotes of the Civil War*; Carlton McCarthy, *Detailed Minutiae of a Soldier's Life*; David D. Porter, *Incidents and Anecdotes of the Civil War*; George Alfred Townsend, *Campaigns of a Non-Combatant*; Junius H. Browne, *Four Years in Secession*; W. B. Hazen, *Narrative of Military Service*; George Cary Eggleston, *A Rebel's Recollections*; Arthur Sinclair, *Two Years in the Alabama*; C. E. Hunt, *The Shenandoah*; Frank Wilkeson, *Recollections of a Private Soldier*; John Wilkinson, *Narrative of a Blockade-Runner*. — FOREIGN OBSERVERS: William H. Russell, *My Diary North and South*; Samuel P. Day, *Down South*; Edward Dicey, *Six Months in the Federal States*; Lieut.-Col. A. J. Fremantle, *Three Months in the Southern States*. — ILLUSTRATIVE MATERIAL: Pictures in *Harper's Weekly* (many republished in *Harper's Pictorial History of the War*), and in *Frank Leslie's Weekly*; Richard Grant White, *Poetry of the Civil War*; W. L. Fagan, *Southern War Songs*; Geo. H. Boker, *Poems on the War* (see § 213). — PERIODICALS: There is an immense periodical literature, which can be reached through the indexes enumerated in § 16c. Of the newspapers (§ 27) the most useful are the *New York Tribune*, *Times*, *World*, *Evening Post*, *Springfield Republican*, *Boston Advertiser*, *Chicago Tribune*, *Cincinnati Commercial*.

**Bibliography.** — John C. Ropes, *Story of the Civil War*, I, Chs. ix–xii; W. E. Foster, *Presidential Administrations*, 46–48; Ben Perley Poore, *Catalogue of Government Publications*, 790–842; F. Leypoldt, *American Catalogue*, see indexes under "United States — history — Civil War"; J. R. Bartlett, *Literature of the Rebellion*; J. N. Larned, *History for Ready Reference*, V, 3905; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 173, 180–189, 191–198; H. Matson, *References for Literary Workers*, 85; Sabin, *Dictionary of American Bibliography*; Boston Public Library, *Catalogue Bates Hall Supplement*, under title "United States"; library catalogues enumerated in § 16d; footnotes to J. F. Rhodes, *History*; Robert Clarke & Co., *List of Books on the Rebellion*.



### § 211. Financial Measures of the Civil War, 1861-1865.

**Summary.** — Financial status in 1861: taxes, debt, estimates. — Financial administration: 1861, March 5, Secretary Chase; 1864, Secretary Fessenden. — Taxes: import duties raised; gold duties: 1862, July 1, 1863, March 3, 1864, June 30, 1865, March 3, internal revenue acts; direct tax; miscellaneous taxes; income tax; proceeds of the taxes. — Legal tenders: Chase's policy; 1862, February 25, July 11, 1863, March 3, legal tender acts; amount issued; 1862-79, gold speculation; 1869-70, and 1884, Supreme Court decisions. — Loans: "seven-thirties," "six-forties," "five-twenties"; amount of loans; proceeds of loans. — National banks: old state banks; 1863, February 25, 1864, June 3, National Bank acts; number of banks; services to the government; circulation. — Expenditures: military; civil; methods.

**General.** — J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 215-222, II, 488-490, III, 972-981; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, II, Ch. lxiii, III, Chs. lxxxiv-lxxxvi; Horace White, *Money and Banking*, 148-165, 406-419, 465; W. G. Sumner, *American Currency*, 189-215; Rossiter Johnson, *Short History of the Civil War*, Ch. xxx; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, Ch. vi.

**Special.** — John Jay Knox, *United States Notes*, Chs. ix-xi; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, III, 464, 559-578, IV, passim; Comte de Paris, *Civil War*, II, 654-706, III, 403-450; Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, VI, Chs. xi, xii, IX, Ch. iv; H. C. Adams, *Public Debts*, Pt. ii; George Bancroft, *Plea for the Constitution*; C. J. Stillé, *How a Free People Conduct a Long War*; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Chs. xviii, xix, xxii; F. W. Taussig, *History of the Tariff*. Many articles in periodicals (§§ 26, 26a), especially *Quarterly Journal of Economics*; *Political Science Quarterly*; *Galaxy*; *Atlantic*; *Harper's*; *Scribner's*; *Century*; *Banker's Magazine*.

**Sources.** — DEBATES: *Congressional Globe*, 37 Cong., 38 Cong., 39 Cong. 1 sess. passim. — FINANCE REPORTS: *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong. 2 sess. No. 2 (1861); 37 Cong. 3 sess. No. 1 (1862); *House Exec. Docs.*, 38 Cong. 1 sess. VI, No. 3 (1863), VII, No. 8, and XV, No. 84 (receipts and expenditures), VII, No. 4, and IX, No. 36 (treasurer's reports); 38 Cong. 2 sess. VII (1864), VIII, XIII, No. 73; 39 Cong. 1 sess. VI, XII, No. 74 (1865). — DOCUMENTS: *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 38 Cong., 1 sess. I, No. 35 (direct taxes), No. 52



(debt), No. 50 (banks); *Senate Miscellaneous*, 39 Cong. 1 sess. Nos. 100, 112, 117; *Senate Reports*, 51 Cong. 2 sess. No. 2130 (import duties); *House Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong. 2 sess. I, III, Nos. 36, 44, IX, No. 122; 37 Cong. 3 sess. V, No. 25 (banks); 38 Cong. 1 sess. XIII, No. 66 (Jay Cooke); 38 Cong. 2 sess. VIII, No. 16 (cotton); 39 Cong. 1 sess. VII, No. 26 (deposits), XII, No. 95 (rebel cotton loan); 48 Cong. 2 sess. XVII, No. 4, Table E (proceeds of taxes); *House Miscellaneous*, 38 Cong. 1 sess. III, No. 28; *House Reports*, 38 Cong. 1 sess. II, No. 140; *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, pp. 295-314; 1862, pp. 452-474 (finances); 1863, pp. 290-304 (National Bank Act), 394-412 (finances); 1864, pp. 371-377 (finances), 219-352, passim (Congress); 1865, pp. 205-301, passim (Congress), 335-350 (finances); Edward McPherson, *History of the Rebellion*, 358-374. — STATUTES: *Statutes at Large*, XII, XIII; C. F. Dunbar, *Laws Relating to Currency and Banking*, 155-198; *American Annual Cyclopædia*, as above; *Congressional Globe*, 37 Cong., 38 Cong., Appendices. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: Hugh McCulloch, *Men and Measures*, Chs. xv-xvii; John Sherman, *Recollections*, I, Chs. xii, xiii, and *Selected Speeches*; R. B. Warden, *Life of Salmon P. Chase*; J. W. Schuckers, *Salmon P. Chase*; Abraham Lincoln, *Complete Works*, II; L. E. Chittenden, *Personal Recollections*, Chs. xxxiii, xxxiv; Charles Sumner, *Works*, VI, 319, VII, 84-109, 148, 166, VIII, 419, 471, IX, 26, 229, 336. Other collections of speeches, see §§ 32-34. — COURT DECISIONS ON LEGAL TENDER: *Hepburn vs. Griswold*, 8 *Wallace*, 603, J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 2222; *Knox vs. Lee*, 12 *Wallace*, 457, J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 2237; *Juillard vs. Greenman*, 110 *United States*, 421, J. B. Thayer, *Cases*, 2255.

**Bibliography.** — J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*; II, 490, III, 986; W. E. Foster, *Providence Monthly Reference Lists*, II, Nos. 53, 60; indexes to public documents (see § 16e); Bowker and Iles, *Reader's Guide*, 35-43, 66-72; C. F. Dunbar, *Topics and References, Financial Legislation*.

## § 212. International Complications of the War, 1861-1865.

**Summary.** — Administration of foreign affairs: Secretary Seward; Charles Sumner; Lincoln. — Question of blockade: 1861, April 19, 27, Lincoln's proclamations; blockade-runners (§ 209); captures (§ 210); effect on foreign cotton-spinning. — Recognition of belligerency: 1861, May 13, English neutrality proclamation; other foreign neutrality proclamations. — Trent affair:

1861, November 8, seizure of Slidell and Mason by Wilkes; December 23, English ultimatum presented; December 25, cabinet agrees to surrender Mason and Slidell. — Alabama question: 1861, May 1, Minister C. F. Adams in London; Confederate sympathies of the governing class; Union sympathies of the working class; Confederate sympathies of the English colonies; 1862, February 18 to March 22, Adams's protests against the Oreto (Florida); June 23 to July 29, Adams's protests against the "290" (Alabama); 1863, the Japan (Georgia); 1864, the Sea King (Shenandoah); depredations of the cruisers (§§ 209, 210); question of indirect damages; effect on American merchant marine. — Captures of English vessels: blockade-runners (see above); "continuous voyages." — Mexico: 1861, English, French, and Spanish convention; 1862, French invasion; 1863, September 20, Seward's protest; 1864, April 4, House resolution on monarchical governments; Maximilian's empire; 1865-66, Napoleon III compelled to withdraw.

**General.** — John T. Morse, *Abraham Lincoln*, I, 368-387; Freeman Snow, *Lectures at the Naval War College*, §§ 57-69; Sidney Buxton, *Finance and Politics*, I, Ch. xiv; H. C. Fletcher, *American War*, I, Ch. ix; Rossiter Johnson, *Short History of the War*, Chs. v, xxiv; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, Chs. xiii, xiv.

**Special.** — NARRATIVES: Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, IV, Ch. xv, V, Ch. ii, VI, Chs. ii, iv, VII, Ch. xiv, VIII, Ch. x; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, III, 417-435, 519-543, IV, V (in preparation); F. W. Seward, *Seward at Washington*, I, Chs. lx, lxi, lxv-lxvii, II, Chs. i-xi, xx, xxiii, xxv, xxviii, xxix, xxxiv; E. L. Pierce, *Charles Sumner*, IV, Chs. xlv-xlviii; Charles F. Adams, Jr., *Charles Francis Adams* (in preparation); Pleasant A. Stovall, *Robert Toombs*, Ch. xxi; Montague Bernard, *Neutrality of Great Britain*, Chs. v-xviii; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, II, Chs. lx-lxii; III, Ch. lxxxiv; Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, II, 245-250, 266-284, 367-381; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Ch. xxvi; Thurlow Weed Barnes, *Memoir of Thurlow Weed*, 348-417; Century Company, *Battles and Leaders of the Civil War*, IV, 595-614 (Confederate cruisers); John Bigelow, *France and the Confederate Navy*; J. R. Soley, *The Blockade and the Cruisers*; *American Annual Cyclopaedia*, 1861, pp. 70 (blockade), 693 (Trent); 1862, pp. 193 (blockade), 738 (mediation), 741 (slave trade). — DISCUSSIONS: Henry Wheaton, *Elements of International Law* (Boyd edition),

§§ 412-537, and Appendices; C. C. Beaman, *National and Private Alabama Claims*; Theodore Woolsey, *International Law*, §§ 163-203; Travers Twiss, *Law of Nations*, War, I, Chs. vi, x-xii; J. N. Pomeroy, *International Law*, Ch. vii. — PERIODICALS: See list in § 26a, and indexes in § 16c. The English reviews devoted much space to the war, especially *Spectator*, *London Times*.

**Sources.** — DIPLOMATIC CORRESPONDENCE: *Papers Relating to Foreign Affairs*, years 1861, 1862, 1863 (2 vols.), 1864 (4 vols.), reprints from *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong. 2 sess. I (1861); 37 Cong. 3 sess. I (1862); *House Exec. Docs.*, 38 Cong. 1 sess. I, II (1863); 38 Cong. 2 sess. I-IV (1864); 39 Cong. 1 sess. I (1865). — OTHER DOCUMENTS: *House Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong. 2 sess. III, No. 46 (Trent), VIII, No. 104 (privateers), VIII, No. 100 (Mexico); 37 Cong. 3 sess. V, No. 23, and VI, No. 54 (Mexico); 38 Cong. 1 sess. VII, No. 10 (diplomatic system); XV, No. 92 (Mexico); 39 Cong. 1 sess. VII, No. 36 (Shenandoah); *House Reports*, 37 Cong. 2 sess. III, No. 122 (reciprocity); 39 Cong. 1 sess. I, No. 100 (neutral relations); *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong. 2 sess. IV, Nos. 8, 14, 18 (Trent); I, No. 100, and V, No. 57 (slave trade); 37 Cong. 3 sess. No. 27 (contraband), Nos. 49, 50 (English workingmen); 38 Cong. 1 sess. I, No. 30 (monarchical governments), No. 47 (Mexico), No. 54 (foreign enlistments); 38 Cong. 2 sess. I, No. 2 (aid by British subjects), No. 33 (Mexico); 39 Cong. 1 sess. I, No. 5 (Mexico); *Case of the United States before the [Geneva] Tribunal of Arbitration*; Edward McPherson, *History of the Rebellion*, 150-153, 338-356; Frank Moore, *Rebellion Record*, Suppl. I, passim; Francis Wharton, *Digest of the International Law of the United States* (see index under "Blockade," "Neutrals," "Privateers"); *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, pp. 258-277 (correspondence), 70 (blockade), 252 (cotton), 462 (Mexico), 584-593 (privateering), 624-627 (neutrality proclamations); 1862, pp. 378-393 (correspondence); 1863, pp. 340-345 (correspondence), 636 (Mexico); 1864, 360-366 (correspondence); 1865, pp. 335-350 (finances); Pitt Cobbett, *Leading Cases and Opinions in International Law*. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: Abraham Lincoln, *Complete Works*, II; William H. Seward, *Works*, V ("Diplomatic History of the War for the Union"); John Bright, *Speeches on the American Question*; Gideon Welles, *Lincoln and Seward*; C. G. Loring and E. W. Field, *Correspondence on the Present Relations between Great Britain and the United States*; Samuel A. Goddard, *Letters on the Rebellion*; J. L. Peyton, *The American Crisis*, II, Chs. i-v; Charles Sumner, *Works*, VI, 153-243, 474-487, VII-IX, passim.

**Bibliography.** — W. E. Foster, *Providence Monthly Reference Lists*, IV, No. 90 (Mexico); J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 45; Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder*, Pt. ii, 173-179; Indexes to Public Documents (§ 16e); footnotes to treatises on international law, cited above.

### § 213. Administration and People during the War, 1861-1865.

**Summary.** — Administration : President (§ 208); cabinet ; Secretary Stanton ; generals ; war governors ; civil service. — Raising troops : regulars ; volunteers ; terms of enlistment ; officers' commissions ; recruiting ; bounties ; drafts ; 1863, draft riots ; Sanitary Commission ; fairs. — Parties : Republicans ; War Democrats ; Peace Democrats ; unfavorable elections of 1862 ; Republican opposition to Lincoln ; cabinet troubles ; election of 1864. — Arbitrary government : 1861, April 27, Lincoln suspends *habeas corpus* ; May, Merriman case ; indemnity act ; 1863, act authorizing suspensions ; 1863, May, Vallandigham tried by a military tribunal ; Vallandigham sent south ; erection of provost marshalships in Northern states ; Milligan case. — Popular sentiment : commercial prosperity ; excitement of the war ; sacrifices of soldiers ; sacrifices of those who stayed at home ; the women.

**General.** — Alexander Johnston, *American Politics*, Ch. xx ; Woodrow Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, §§ 104-116 ; John T. Morse, *Abraham Lincoln*, II, passim ; Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, I, Chs. xxxii, xxxiv ; II, Chs. xxi, xxx ; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Chs. xvii, xx, xxi, xxiii ; Rossiter Johnson, *Short History of the War*, Chs. xxi, xxii, xxix ; S. G. Fisher, *Trial of the Constitution*, Chs. i, iii ; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 642, 836, II, 432, III, 532-537, 1099-1101 ; W. R. Houghton, *History of American Politics*, Ch. xviii ; E. Stanwood, *Presidential Elections*, Ch. xxi ; R. H. Gillett, *Democracy in the United States*, 270-283, 291 ; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, Chs. xi, xii ; Mrs. Chapman Coleman, *Life of J. J. Crittenden*, II, Ch. xviii ; E. B. Callender, *Thaddeus Stevens*, Ch. vi ; Thurlow Weed Barnes, *Memoir of Thurlow Weed*, 418-448 ; Geo. S. Boutwell, *Constitution of the United States*, §§ 243-261, 413-426 ; J. N. Pomeroy, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 662-668, 703-710 ; Joel Tiffany, *Treatise on Government*, 244-266.

**Special.** — NARRATIVES : W. A. Dunning, *Constitution in Civil War* (*Political Science Quarterly*, I, 163-198) ; Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham*

*Lincoln*, IV, Chs. vi–viii, VI, Chs. xv, xvi, VII, Chs. ii, xii, xiii, VIII, Chs. i, ii; J. W. Draper, *Civil War*, III, Chs. lxxxv, lxxxvii; H. C. Fletcher, *American War*, I, Chs. iv, x, xvii, II, Chs. v, ix, xv, III, Chs. i, xx, xxiv; Henry Wilson, *Military Measures of the United States Congress*; Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, II, 1–17, 343–350, 450–503; F. W. Seward, *Seward at Washington*, II. — HABEAS CORPUS AND MARTIAL LAW: Joel Parker, *Constitutional Law*, and *Habeas Corpus and Martial Law*, and *Three Powers of Government*; William Whiting, *War Powers under the Constitution*; Rollin C. Hurd, *Treatise on Habeas Corpus*; L. G. Tyler, *Suspension of Habeas Corpus (Political Science Quarterly*, III, 454–488); Samuel Tyler, *Memoirs of Taney*, Ch. vi; John A. Marshall, *American Bastille*; Horace Binney, *Privilege of the Writ of Habeas Corpus*; Lives of Abraham Lincoln (see § 25): *North American Review*, XCIII, 453. — PERIODICALS: List in § 26a; indexes, § 16c; especially *New York Tribune*, *New York Times*, *New York Evening Post*, *New York Herald*, *Boston Advertiser*, *Springfield Republican*, *Albany Evening Journal*.

**Sources.** — PRESIDENTS' MESSAGES: *Congressional Globe*, 37 and 38 Cong.; *Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861 to 1865 (under "Public Documents"); Abraham Lincoln, *Complete Works*; contemporary newspapers; *American History Leaflets*, Nos. 18, 26. — DEBATES: *Congressional Globe*, 37 Cong., 38 Cong. — DOCUMENTS: *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong. 2 sess. V, Nos. 42, 50, 51; *Senate Miscellaneous*, 38 Cong. 1 sess. III, No. 71 (draft riots); *House Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong. 1 sess. Nos. 5, 6, 16, 17 (*habeas corpus*); 38 Cong. 1 sess. V, No. 1 (provost marshal general); 38 Cong. 2 sess. XIII, No. 56 (election), No. 59 (peace); 39 Cong. 1 sess. IV, No. 1 (provost marshal general); *House Reports*, 39 Cong. 1 sess. I, No. 93 (Fry); *House Miscellaneous*, 39 Cong. 1 sess. III, No. 70; *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, pp. 328 (press), 354 (*habeas corpus*), 439 (martial law); 1862, pp. 275–376 (Congress), 508–515 (*habeas corpus*), 726–732 (message of December, 1862); 1863, pp. 233–258 (debates on *habeas corpus*), 268–328 (debates), 469–491 (*habeas corpus*), 606 (martial law), 811–818 (riots), 831–842 (general); 1864, pp. 219–352 (Congress), 389–394 (press), 421–425 (*habeas corpus*), 778–801 (general); 1865, pp. 205–301 (Congress), 414–421 (*habeas corpus*); *Official Opinions of Attorneys-General*, X, XI, passim; Edward McPherson, *History of the Rebellion*, 153–195 (*habeas corpus*), 261–338, 374–389 (general), 403–417 (conventions of 1864), 617–622; Frank Moore, *Rebellion Record*, I–XI, and Supplement, passim. — WRITINGS OF CONTEMPORARIES: John Sherman, *Recollections*, I, Ch. xv; Abraham Lincoln, *Complete Works*;

Alexander Johnston, *American Orations*, III, 187-198; Clement L. Vallandigham, *Record on Abolition, the Union, and the Civil War*; W. H. Seward, *Works*, V (Diary); Charles Sumner, *Works*, V-IX, passim; Henry Winter Davis, *Speeches and Addresses*; Geo. W. Julian, *Political Recollections*, Chs. ix-xi; A. G. Riddle, *Recollections of War Times*; Noah Brooks, *Washington in Lincoln's Time*.—HUMORISTS: Richard Grant White, *New Gospel of Peace*; R. H. Newell, *Orpheus C. Kerr Papers*; Charles F. Browne, *Artemus Ward, His Book, and His Travels*.

**Bibliography.**—W. E. Foster, *References to the Constitution*, 26, and *References to Presidential Administrations*, 45-49; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, I, 838, II, 434, III, 537, 1101; Woodrow Wilson, *Division and Reunion*, § 95; A. B. Hart, *Revised Suggestions*, § 68.

#### § 214. Abolition of Slavery, 1861-1865.

**Summary.**—Status in 1861: free states; border slaves states; territories; District of Columbia; 1861, February 11, House unanimous resolution; 1861, March 2, Corwin amendment (§ 207); 1861, July, House on the purpose of the war.—Question of slaves of combatants: 1861, May, Butler's "contrabands of war"; August 6, confiscation act; 1862, March 13, return by officers forbidden; July 2, second confiscation act.—District of Columbia: 1862, April 26, compensated emancipation act.—Territories: June 19, prohibition act.—Negro troops: 1861, December, Cameron's message; 1862, Hunter's regiment; July 17, act authorizing enlistments; 1862-64, enlistments.—Slave trade: 1862, June 7, treaty with England; 1864, July 7, domestic trade forbidden.—Emancipation proclamations: 1861-62, pressure on Lincoln; influence of the border states; 1861, August 30, Frémont's order; 1862, May 9, Hunter's order; 1862, August 19, Lincoln's letter on saving the Union; September 22, preliminary proclamation; 1863, January 1, final proclamation; legal effect; political effect.—State emancipations: Lincoln's scheme of compensation; 1862, April 10, joint resolution favoring; 1862-63, border states refuse; 1862, March 21, West Virginia abolishes; 1863, June 24, Missouri emancipates; 1864, October 13, Maryland abolishes; 1865, December, abolition in Kentucky and



Delaware by Thirteenth Amendment. — Fugitive slaves : 1864, June 28, act of 1850 repealed. — Thirteenth Amendment : Lincoln's influence ; 1864, June 15, fails in the House ; question in the campaign of 1864 ; 1865, Jan. 31, passes the House ; December 18, declared in force.

**General.** — Horace Greeley, *American Conflict*, II, Chs. xi, xii, xxii ; J. W. Draper, *American Civil War*, II, Ch. lxiv ; James G. Blaine, *Twenty Years of Congress*, I, Chs. xx, xxi ; Geo. S. Boutwell, *Constitution of the United States*, §§ 706-716 ; Rossiter Johnson, *Short History of the War*, Ch. xiii ; S. S. Cox, *Three Decades*, Ch. xvi ; *American Annual Cyclopædia, 1862*, pp. 786-796 ; J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, II, 76-78, 280 ; J. N. Pomeroy, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 109-119 ; Wm. Whiting, *War Powers*, Chs. iii, viii.

**Special.** — Nicolay and Hay, *Abraham Lincoln*, IV, Chs. xxii, xxiv, V, Ch. xii, VI, Chs. vi, viii, xvii, xix, xx, VIII, Chs. xvi, xx, X, Ch. iv ; E. L. Pierce, *Charles Sumner*, IV, Chs. xlvi-1 : Garrisons, *Life of William Lloyd Garrison*, IV, Chs. i-vi ; Henry Wilson, *Slave Power*, III, Chs. xvii-xli ; Comte de Paris, *Civil War*, II, 706-747 ; Isaac N. Arnold, *History of Lincoln and the Overthrow of Slavery* ; F. Wharton, *Commentaries*, §§ 20, 360, 400, 584-593 ; J. N. Pomeroy, *Constitutional Law*, §§ 116-118 ; T. M. Cooley, *Story's Commentaries*, II, §§ 1923-1927 ; J. F. Rhodes, *History*, III, 446-476, IV [in preparation] ; A. Wilcox, *Powers of the Federal Government over Slavery* ; Jefferson Davis, *Confederate Government*, II, 158-193, 460-476 ; S. G. Fisher, *Trial of the Constitution*, Ch. iv ; Augustin Cochin, *Results of Emancipation* ; J. E. Cairnes, *Slave Power*, Ch. ix ; G. W. Williams, *Negro Race*, II, Chs. xiv-xviii ; Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, §§ 85-105, Appendix C ; Mary Tremain, *Slavery in the District of Columbia* ; biographies of Lincoln (see §§ 25, 208), Chase, Sumner, Ben Wade, Thaddeus Stevens, W. L. Garrison, Seward (§ 25).

**Sources.** — DEBATES : *Congressional Globe*, 37 Cong., 38 Cong., 39 Cong. 1 sess. ; daily newspapers, especially *New York Tribune*, *Times*, *Herald*, *Boston Advertiser*, *Chicago Tribune* (see § 27). — DOCUMENTS : *Senate Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong. 2 sess. V, No. 42, VI, No. 68 ; 39 Cong. 1 sess. II, No. 55 ; *Senate Reports*, 37 Cong. 2 sess. No. 12 ; 38 Cong. 1 sess. Nos. 8, 17, 24, 25 ; 38 Cong. 2 sess. I, No. 137 ; *House Exec. Docs.*, 37 Cong. 2 sess. V, No. 69 (emancipation) ; X, Nos. 133, 143 (black troops) ; 38 Cong. 1 sess. IX, No. 42 (District of Columbia) ; 38 Cong. 2 sess. VIII, No. 38 (troops) ; *House Reports*, 37 Cong. 2 sess.



III, No. 58, IV, Nos. 120, 148; 38 Cong. 1 sess. I, No. 2; 38 Cong. 2 sess. No. 9; *House Miscellaneous*, 38 Cong. 2 sess. (state resolutions). — *American Annual Cyclopædia*, 1861, pp. 641-645 (slaves); 1862, pp. 720-726 (Lincoln's plans), 752-759 (slaves), 736 (emancipation proclamation); 1863, pp. 268 (negro troops), 304-321 (emancipation in states), 425-431 (freedmen), 831-835 (Lincoln on emancipation); 1864, pp. 219-353, passim, (Congress), 387; 1865, pp. 205-217 (Thirteenth Amendment), 370-378 (freedmen). — Edward McPherson, *History of the Rebellion*, 195-261; Frank Moore, *Rebellion Record*, V-XI, and Supplement I, passim. — CONTEMPORARY WRITINGS: Abraham Lincoln, *Complete Works*, II; Charles Sumner, *Works*, VI-IX, passim; John Sherman, *Recollections*, I, Ch. xiv; A. G. Riddle, *Reminiscences*, 129-163; Geo. S. Boutwell, *Speeches and Papers*; Garrisons, *Life of William Lloyd Garrison*, IV, Chs. i-vi; Frederick Douglass, *Life and Times*, Chs. xi, xii; Samuel A. Goddard, *Letters on the American Rebellion*; Noah Brooks, *Washington in Lincoln's Time*, Ch. vi; A. K. McClure, *Lincoln and Men of War Time*, 88-104; F. B. Carpenter, *Six Months at the White House*; Elizabeth H. Botume, *First Days Among the Contrabands*. — PERIODICALS: List in § 26a; indexes in § 16c; especially *Liberator*, *Independent*, *New York Tribune*.

**Bibliography.** — J. J. Lalor, *Cyclopædia*, II, 78, 280; Marion G. McDougall, *Fugitive Slaves*, Appendix E; Indexes to Public Documents (see § 16e); Bartlett, *Literature of the Rebellion*; Robert Desty, *Federal Constitution*, 277, 278, 326.



# I N D E X.

—◆—

[In this index will be found references to subjects, persons, and books, in one alphabet. An asterisk indicates a page on which the title of the work is cited in full, with the place and date of publication. Titles are commonly entered only on the page in which they first appear].

- A**BBOTT, B. V., *United States Digest*, \*117.
- Abbott, C., *Primitive Industry*, 231.
- Abdy, E. S., *Residence and Tour*, \*78.
- Ableman vs. Booth, case of, 393, 394.
- Abolition movement, 376; anti-abolition mobs, 377; societies, 377; petitions, 378; in Civil War, 425. — See Annexation, Emancipation, Free-Soil Party, Fugitives, Liberty Party, Petitions, Slavery, Slave-Trade.
- Aborigines. — See Indians.
- Acadia, settlement of, 242; ceded to England, 242, 281.
- Acadians, removal of, 281.
- Acrelius, *New Sweden*, 262.
- Adair, J., *American Indians*, 233.
- Adams, Abigail (with John), *Letters*, 336.
- Adams, Brooks, *Emancipation of Massachusetts*, \*62.
- Adams, C. F. [1st], biography, \*87; (with J. Q. Adams) *John Adams*, \*87; minister to England, 421.
- Adams, C. F. [2d], *Braintree and Quincy (Mass.)*, \*63; *Massachusetts Historians*, \*62, 273; *Three Episodes*, \*62, 146, 269; *Charles Francis Adams* [1st], \*87; *R. H. Dana*, \*89; (with H. Adams) *Essays*, 251; *Old Planters*, 269; *Massachusetts Towns*, 271; *Welde's Short History*, 273; *Railroads*, 366.
- Adams, C. K., *Manual of Historical Literature*, \*30, 35; on methods, 23.
- Adams, D., *English Party Leaders*, 301.
- Adams, F. C., *Uncle Tom at Home*, 376.
- Adams, Hannah, *Memoir*, \*127.
- Adams, Henry, *History*, 34, \*46; *Albert Gallatin*, \*99; *John Randolph*, \*97; *New England Federalism*, \*132; (with C. F. Adams 2d) *Essays*, 251.
- Adams, Henry C., *Public Debts*, 332; *Taxation*, 332.
- Adams, Herbert B., *Study of History*, \*30; *History in Colleges*, 32; *Methods*, 32; *Jared Sparks*, \*98; *Germanic Origin*, 271; *Maryland's Influence*, 305.
- Adams, John, biographies, \*87; *Works*, \*124; (with Abigail) *Familiar Letters*, \*127; selected biography of, 291; President, 340; in French crisis, 340; trouble with cabinet, 340; Hamilton's attack on, 343; defeated in 1800, 343.
- Adams, John Quincy, biographies, \*87; (with C. F. 1st) *John Adams*, \*87; *Madison and Monroe*, \*95; *Memoirs*, 107, \*127; *Jubilee of the Constitution*, 327; President, 364; opposition to, 364; contest with Georgia, 364; and Jackson, 367; anti-slavery leader, 378; attempts to censure, 378; against Texan annexation, 385.
- Adams, N., *Portsmouth*, \*65.
- Adams, Nehemiah, *South Side View*, 376.
- Adams, Samuel, biographies, \*87; writings, 289, 290.
- Adolphus, John, *England*, \*46, 284.
- Agassiz, E. C., *Louis Agassiz*, \*87.
- Agassiz, Louis, biography, \*87.
- Agnew, D., *Pennsylvania*, \*72.
- Agreement of the People*, The, 290.
- Agriculture of North America, 227. — See Cotton, North, South.
- Aid to Students, 195.
- Akins, T. B., *Selections from the Public Documents*, \*109.
- Alabama, histories, \*57; admitted, 360; secedes, 406; suggests Confederacy, 421.
- Alabama, The, sunk by Kearsarge, 415; Confederate cruiser, 421; resulting claims, 421.
- Alabama Historical Society, publications, \*122.
- Alaska, histories, \*57; annexation of, 309.
- Albach, J. R., *Annals of the West*, \*55.
- Albany, *Annals*, \*113; Congress of, see Congress of Albany.
- Albany Institute, *Transactions*, 103.
- Albemarle, Lord, *Marquis of Rockingham*, \*97, 235.
- Alcott, L. M., *Hospital Sketches*, \*137.
- Aldrich, P. E., *New England Towns*, 271.
- Aldrich, T. B., *Prudence Palfrey*, \*137.
- Alexander VI, Bull of 1493, 235, 246.
- Alexander, Sir Wm., patent, 242.

- Alfriend, Frank H., *Jefferson Davis*, \*90.  
 Algerians, war with, 356.  
 Alien Act (1798), 333, 342.  
 Alien Enemies Act (1798), 342.  
 Allen, A. V. G., *Jonathan Edwards*, \*90.  
 Allen, Ethan, biography, \*87; *Narrative*, 296.  
 Allen, E. A., *Prehistoric World*, 231.  
 Allen, G., *Reminiscences*, \*127.  
 Allen, I., *Vermont*, \*75.  
 Allen, J. G., *Topical References*, 33, \*36.  
 Allen, Paul, *Expedition of Lewis & Clark*, \*83, 348.  
 Allen, William, *Biographical Dictionary*, \*40.  
 Allen, W. F., *History Topics*, 11, \*36; *Reader's Guide*, \*137; *Essays*, 271.  
 Allibone, S. A., *Dictionary of Authors*, \*40.  
 Allison, Samuel, *Acts of New Jersey*, \*113.  
 Almon, John, *William Pitt*, \*66; *Collection of Papers or Prior Documents*, \*108; *Charters*, \*109; *Remembrancer*, 299.  
 Amadas, Voyage of, 248.  
 Amendments to Articles of Confederation, proposed, 304, 319, 321, 322; to Constitution, 325, 358; compromises (1861) 408; Thirteenth, 426.  
 America. — See North America.  
 "America," name of, 237.  
 American Academy of Political and Social Science, *Annals*, \*102.  
*American Annual Cyclopædia*, \*40, 132.  
 American Antiquarian Society, publications, \*123.  
 American Anti-Slavery Society, 377 — See Abolition, Slavery.  
 American Colonization Society, 361.  
*American Commonwealth* (Series), 57.  
*American Cyclopædia*, \*41.  
*American Geologist*, 50.  
 American Historical Association, publications, 55, \*122.  
 American history, standing of, 1; laborers in, 1; teaching of, 2; material chiefly in English, 2, 8, 26; extent of, 3; beginning of, 3; connection with the history of other countries, 4; adjuncts to, 4, 21; proper position in a curriculum, 6; educative value, 7; proportion for teaching, 7; historical basis, 9; convenient sub-divisions, 11, 18; preparation for teaching, 21; school work, 23; college work, 24; investigation, 25; study without a teacher, 27; collateral subjects, 29; bibliography, 30, 142; cheap libraries, 144, 147; working libraries, 147; public libraries, 148; great libraries, 149-151; systems of teaching, 152-225. — See TABLE OF CONTENTS.  
*American History Leaflets*, \*133, 145.  
*American History* (Series), 44, \*44.  
 American institutions, source in England, 4, 10.  
 American literature, essential, 29.  
*American State Papers*, \*120.  
*American Statesmen* (Series), 146.  
 American and Foreign Anti-Slavery Society, 377. — See Abolition, Slavery.  
 Ames, E. and Goodell, A. C., *Province Laws*, \*111.  
 Ames, Fisher, biography, \*87; *Works*, \*124.  
 Ames, John G., *Finding List*, 34, \*38; *Comprehensive Index*, \*38; *List of Congressional Documents*, \*38.  
 Ames, Mrs. M. C., *Ten Years in Washington*, \*128.  
 Ames, Seth, *Fisher Ames*, \*87.  
 Amesbury (Mass.), history, \*63.  
 Ammen, D., *Atlantic Coast*, 416.  
 Amory, T. C., *James Sullivan*, \*99; *John Sullivan*, \*99, 298.  
 Ampère, J. J., *Promenade en Amérique*, \*78.  
 Anburey, Thomas, *Interior Parts of America*, \*78.  
 Anderson vs. Dunn, case of, 334, 359.  
 Anderson, A., *Origin of Commerce*, 285.  
 Anderson, Major, in Charlestown harbor 408; defends Fort Sumter, 410.  
 André, John, biography, \*87; case of, 300.  
 Andreas, A. T., *Chicago*, \*60.  
 Andrew, J. A., biography, \*87.  
 Andrews, C. M., *River Towns of Connecticut*, 271.  
 Andrews, E. B., *Constitutional History*, \*36; *History*, \*44.  
*Andros Tracts*, *The*, 279.  
*Annals of the American Academy of Political and Social Science*, \*102.  
*Annals of Congress*, \*119.  
 Annapolis (Md.), history, \*62; Convention, 322.  
 Annapolis (N. S.), founded, 281.  
 Annexation of territory to the United States, 309; constitutionality of, 333; under Jefferson, 347; of Oregon, 383; of Texas, 386; from Mexico (1848), 387; Gadsden Purchase (1853), 387; desire for Cuba, 394. — See England, Spain, Slavery, Territory.  
 Anson, Sir W. R., *Constitution*, 312  
 Antietam, battle, 415.  
 Anti-federalists, oppose ratification of Constitution, 325; party of the, 334.  
 Antillia, legend of, 234.  
 Anti-masonic party, 368.  
 Anti-Nebraska. — See Republican.  
 Antinomian controversy, 272.  
 Anti-rent, in New York, 388.  
 Anti-slavery. — See Abolition, Slavery.  
 Appeal, jurisdiction, 329. — See Courts.  
 Appelgarth, A. C., *Quakers in Pennsylvania*, 315.  
*Appleton's Annual Cyclopædia*, \*132.  
*Appleton's Cyclopædia*, \*41.  
*Appleton's Cyclopædia of American Biography*, \*41  
 Appointments. — See Civil Service.  
 Appomattox, surrender at, 415.  
 Arber, E., *First Three English Books*, 236; *Henry Hudson*, 258.  
 Arbitration, in 1827, 383; declined in Ore-

- gon, 383. — See Annexations, Foreign Treaties.
- Arbuthnot, 359.
- Archæologia Americana*, \*123.
- Archæological Institute of America, publications, \*122.
- Arfwedson, C. D., *United States and Canada*, \*78.
- Arizona, histories, \*67.
- Arkansas, admitted, 373; secedes, 410.
- Armada, Spanish, 249.
- Armstrong, John, *War of 1812*, 353.
- Army, half-pay question, 319; in War of 1812, 352; in 1860, 402; in Civil War, 415, 423. — See Wars.
- Arnold, Benedict, biographies, \*87, 296; treason of, 298, 300.
- Arnold, Sir E., *Seas and Land*, \*79.
- Arnold, I. N., *Benedict Arnold*, \*87; *Abraham Lincoln*, \*94.
- Arnold, S. G., *Rhode Island*, \*73.
- Articles of Confederation, formation of, 304; proposed amendments to, 304, 319, 321, 322; extracts from, 163; texts, 305. — See Confederation, Constitution.
- Ashburton Treaty (1842), 383.
- Ashe, Thomas, *Travels in America*, \*79.
- Asher, *Henry Hudson*, 258.
- Assembly, first American, 250; *Records*, \*115; colonial, 312.
- Assistants, in college written work, 219.
- Association (of 1774), 291; on slave-trade, 320.
- Assumption of state debts, 331.
- Austria, history, \*72; founded, 347.
- Athens County (O.), history, \*71.
- Atkinson, J., *Newark* (N. J.), \*66.
- Atkinson, W. P., *On history*, \*30; *Study of Politics*, \*30.
- Atlanta, capture of, 415.
- Atlantis, story of, 234.
- Attorneys-General, *Official Opinions*, \*122.
- Atwater, C., *Ohio*, \*70.
- Atwater, E. E., *New Haven*, \*58.
- Auckland Correspondence*, 301.
- Augusta County (Va.), history, \*77.
- Austin, G. L., *Wendell Phillips*, \*96.
- Austin, Mrs. J. G., historical novels, \*137.
- Austin, J. T., *Elbridge Gerry*, \*91, 316.
- Autobiographies, \*127-132.
- Avalon, colony of, 253.
- Ayllon, L. V. de, voyages, 239.
- B**ACKUS, I., biography, \*87; *The Baptists*, 285.
- Bacon, Leonard, *Historical Discourses*, 275.
- Bacon's Rebellion, in Virginia, 252.
- Bacourt, *Souvenirs d'un Diplomate*, \*127.
- Badeau, Adam, *U. S. Grant*, \*91.
- Baird, C. W., *Rye* (N. Y.), \*69; *Huguenot Emigration*, 241.
- Baker, G. H., *Poems on the War*, 418.
- Baker, J. F., *Federal Constitution*, 327.
- Balboa, discovers Pacific, 236.
- Baldwin, H., *General View*, 311.
- Baldwin, J. D., *Ancient America*, 231.
- Ballads, lists of, 141.
- Ballagh, J. C., *White Servitude in Virginia*, 315.
- Baltimore, history, \*62; Sixth Massachusetts in, 410.
- Baltimore, Lord. — See Calvert.
- Bancroft, F., *William H. Seward*, \*98.
- Bancroft, George, *United States*, 34, 45, \*46; *History of the Constitution*, 34; *Plea for the Constitution*, 333.
- Bancroft, H. H., *Pacific States*, \*57, \*58, \*67, \*71, \*75, \*76, 233 (includes *Alaska, Arizona, California, Mexico, Native Races, New Mexico, Oregon, Utah, Texas, Washington Idaho and Montana*).
- Bandelier, A. F., publications, 232; *History of Zuni*, 240.
- Bank Fraud Act (1798), 342.
- Bank of North America, 319, 331.
- Bank of the United States, organized, 331; constitutionality of, 333; rechartered, 356; Supreme Court cases, 358; attitude of Jackson, 369; deposits removed, 372; fails, 381. — See Implied Powers, National Banks.
- Banks, Land in New England, 280.
- Banks, National (1863), 419.
- Banks, N. P., Speaker, 398.
- Banks, State, 352, 356, 372, 388, 419.
- Barbarossa, *Lost Principle*, 403.
- Barbary powers, treaties of tribute, 337.
- Barber, *Connecticut*, 286; *New London*, 286.
- Barber, J. W., and Howe, H., *New York*, \*67.
- Barbeyrac and Rousset, *Supplément au Corps Universel Diplomatique*, \*54.
- Barclay, Robert, *Agricultural Tour*, \*79.
- Barlow, Joel, *Political Writings*, \*124; *Vision of Columbus*, \*141.
- Barn-burners in New York, 390. — See Democrats.
- Barneby, W. H., *Life in the Far West*, \*79.
- "*Barnes History*," \*43.
- Barnes, A., *Scriptural View*, 375.
- Barnes, M. S. and E., *Studies in American History*, \*43.
- Barnes, T. W., *Thurlow Weed*, \*100.
- Barnes, Joshua, biography, \*87.
- Barns, C. R., *Missouri*, \*65.
- Barnwell, J. G., *Reading on the Constitution*, \*35.
- Barrett, J. A., *Ordinance of 1787*, \*70.
- Barrows, W., *On methods*, 33; *Oregon*, \*71.
- Barry, J. S., *Massachusetts*, \*62.
- Bartlett, D. W., *Presidential Candidates*, 401.
- Bartlett, J. R., *Bibliography of Rhode Island*, \*73; *Personal Narrative*, \*79; *Records of Rhode Island*, \*112; *Destruction of the Gaspee*, 293; *Literature of the Rebellion*, 403.
- Barton, Wm., *David Rittenhouse*, \*97.
- Bartram, Wm., *Travels*, \*79.
- Bassett, J. S., *North Carolina*, 313.
- Bateman, W. O., *Political Law*, 311.
- Bates, Mary, *J. C. Calhoun*, \*88.

- Bates, S. A., (ed.), *Records of Braintree*, \*111.
- Bayard, J., *Brief Exposition*, 327.
- Bayard, R. H. and J. A., *Election of 1801*, 344.
- Bayley, R. A., *National Loans*, 305.
- Beaman, C. C., *Alabama Claims*, 422.
- Bean, T. W., *Washington at Valley Forge*, 290.
- Beardsley, E. E., *Samuel Seabury*, \*98.
- Beatson, R., *Memoirs*, 295.
- Beaumarchais, C. de, relations with U. S., 300.
- Beauregard, P. T., biography, 406.
- Becher, Captain, *Landfall of Columbus*, 235.
- Bedford Correspondence*, 289.
- Bee, T., *South Carolina Reports*, \*117.
- Beecher, Henry Ward, biography, \*87.
- Beecher, Lyman, *Autobiography*, \*127.
- Beecher, W. C., *Henry Ward Beecher*, \*87.
- Beer, G. C., *Commercial Policy*, 285, 312.
- Behaim, M., geographer, 234.
- Belknap, J., *New Hampshire*, \*65.
- Bell, C. H., *Exeter* (N. H.), \*65.
- Bell, John, nominated 1860, 400.
- Belmont, battle, 415.
- Benedict, D., *History of the Baptists*, 285.
- Benedict, W. A., and Tracy, H. A., *Sutton* (Mass.), \*64.
- Bennett, E. H., *Massachusetts Digest of Decisions*, \*117.
- Benton, T. H., biography, \*87; *Thirty Years' View*, 107, \*127; *Abridgement of Debates*, 330; on Texan annexation, 385; *Dred Scott Case*, 399.
- Berkeley, Governor of Virginia, 252; his Report, 252.
- Berkeley, Lord, and Carteret, Sir G., New Jersey grant, 260.
- Berlin Decree (1807), 350.
- Bernard, Francis, *Letters*, 285.
- Bernard, John, *Retrospections*, \*128.
- Bernard, M., *Neutrality of Great Britain*, 406.
- Bernhard, Duke of Saxe-Weimar-Eisenach, *Travels through North America*, \*79.
- Bernheim, G. D., *German Settlements*, 256; *Lutheran Church*, 285.
- Besse, J., *Sufferings of the Quakers*, 262.
- Beste, J. R., *The Wabash*, \*79.
- Beverly, R., *Virginia*, \*76.
- Bibliography of American history, 30-142; of methods, 30-33; special bibliographical aids, 33; brief bibliographies, 35; topical outlines, 36; useful indexes, 37; useful catalogues, 38; index to public documents, 38; general reference books, 40; school text-books, 41-43; college text-books, 43-45; general histories, 45; larger comprehensive works, 46-48; historical geography, 48; physical geography, 50; physical maps, 51; historical maps, 53; sources of historical geography, 53; works on special topics, 55; state and local histories, 57-78; books of travel, 78-86; biographies, 86-101; periodicals, 101-104; newspapers, 104-106; printed sources, 106; colonial records, 107-118; United States records, 118-121; reports of judicial proceedings, 121; proceedings of learned societies, 122-124; works of American statesmen, 124-127; autobiographies, 127-132; reminiscences, 127-132; collections of documents, 132-134; collections of speeches, 132-134; manuscript sources, 134; illustrative material, 135; historical novels, 137-140; poems and ballads, 141; lists of general readings, 181-195; use in monographs, 221; classified lists on colonial history, Part II; classified lists on United States history, Part III.—See special bibliographies at the end of each section, TABLE OF CONTENTS, and INDEX, passim.
- Biddle, Charles, *Autobiography*, \*128.
- Biddle, Nicholas, banker, 369.
- Biddle, R., *Sebastian Cabot*, 246.
- Bienville, Sieur de, biography, \*88; in Louisiana, 244; *Journal of an Expedition*, 282.
- Bigelow, John, *Samuel J. Tilden*, \*99; *France and Confederate Navy*, 413.
- Billon, F. L., *St. Louis*, \*65.
- Binney, H., *Habeas Corpus*, 424.
- Binns, John, *Recollections*, \*128.
- Biography, lists of biographies, 86-101; topics in, 209, 210, 215, 218; composition in, 210.—See individuals by name.
- Bioren and Duane, *Laws of the United States*, \*49.
- Bird, I., *Englishwoman in America*, \*79.
- Birkbeck, M., *Journey in America*, \*79.
- Birney, C. H., *Grimké Sisters*, 377.
- Birney, J. G., biography, \*87, 376.
- Birney, W., *James G. Birney*, \*87.
- Bishop, C., *Colonial Suffrage*, 261, 313.
- Bishop, J. L., *American Manufactures*, \*55.
- Bisset, J., *Acts of Maryland*, \*115.
- Black, A., *Ohio*, \*70.
- Black, J. S., *Reports*, \*121; opinion on coercion, 408; controls Buchanan, 408.
- Black Hawk War, 373.
- Blackmar, F. W., *Spanish Colonization*, 239.
- Blackstone, W., *Commentaries*, 290.—See Tucker.
- Black Warrior episode, 394.
- Blaine, James G., biography, \*88; *Twenty Years of Congress*, \*128.
- Blair, Commissary of Virginia, 253.
- Blake, J., *Dorchester* (Mass.), \*63.
- Blanchard, Claude, *Journal*, 285.
- Blanchard, R., *The Northwest*, \*70.
- Bland, Richard, *Rights of the Colonies*, 289.
- Blane, Wm. N., *An Excursion through the U. S.*, \*79.
- Blankenburg, H., *Kämpfe in Nord Amerika*, 416.
- Bledsoe, A. T., *Liberty and Slavery*, 375; *Is Davis a Traitor?*, 405.
- Blockade, in Napoleonic wars, 350; in

- Civil War, 402, 412, 415; proclamations, 420; blockade-runners, 420.
- Blunt, Joseph, *Historical Sketch*, 228.
- Boardman, T., *Log-Book*, \*128.
- Body of Liberties*, 271.
- Boker, G. H., *Poems on the War*, 418.
- Bolles, A. S., *Financial History*, \*55.
- Bollman and Swartwout, 349.
- Bond, *History of Watertown*, 272.
- Bonham, Josiah, *Recollections*, \*128.
- Books, discriminating use of, 10, 197.
- Booth, M. L., *City of New York*, \*68.
- "Border ruffians," 396.
- Border states, status in 1860, 402; interest in compromise, 408; attitude on slavery, 425; scheme of compensation, 425; emancipation, 425.
- Borgeaud, Charles, *Modern Democracy*, 290, 307; *Constitutions*, 306.
- Boston, histories, \*63; settlement of, 269; *Records*, \*111, \*272; in the Revolution, 293; cases of fugitives, 393.
- Boston (Schooner), case of, 379.
- Boston Athenæum, *Catalogue*, 34, \*38, \*39.
- Boston Public Library, 26; *Catalogue*, \*38, \*39; *Supplement to Catalogue*, \*38, 39; *Bulletin*, 57.
- Boston Record Commission, *Reports*, \*111.
- Botts, J. M., *Great Rebellion*, 415.
- Botume, E. H., *Contrabands*, 376.
- Boundaries, French and Spanish, 241; French and English, 242; of Canada, 243; of Louisiana, 244; of Virginia, 250; of Maryland, 253, 261; of the Carolinas, 255; of Georgia, 257; of New York, 258, 260, 261; of Pennsylvania, 261; of Massachusetts, 269; of Connecticut, 261, 274; of the United States in treaty of 1783, 303; disputes as to exterior, 309, 317; interior under Confederation, 317; under Louisiana Treaty, 347; Northeastern, 383; Northwestern, 383; Texan, 385; by treaty of 1848, 387; Gadsden purchase, 387. — See England, France, Geography, Mexico, Spain, States (by name), Territories (by name), Treaties.
- Boughton, W., on local history, 32.
- Bourget, Paul, *Outre-Mer; Impressions of America*, \*79.
- Bourne, E. G., *Demarcation Line*, 235; *Surplus Revenue*, 374.
- Boutmy, E., *English Constitution*, 312.
- Bouton, N., *Concord (N. H.)*, \*66, 286.
- Boutwell, George S., *Speeches*, \*125; *Constitution*, 404.
- Bowen, C. W., *Boundaries of Connecticut*, 274.
- Bowen, Francis, *James Otis*, \*96; *Documents*, \*133; *Life of Lincoln*, 302.
- Bowker, R. R., and Iles, G., *Reader's Guide*, \*35.
- Boyd, A., *Lincoln Bibliography*, 412.
- Boyd, D., *Greeley and Colorado*, \*58.
- Boykin, Samuel, *Hon. Howell Cobb*, \*89.
- Boynton, C. B., *Navv*, 416.
- Boynton, H. V., *Chattanooga and Chica-mauga*, 416; *Sherman's Raid*, 416.
- Bozman, J. L., *Maryland*, \*62.
- Brackinridge, Henry M., *Western Insurrection*, 340.
- Brackenridge, Hugh H., *Modern Chivalry*, \*137; *Insurrection in Pennsylvania*, 340.
- Brackett, J. R., *Negro in Maryland*, 315.
- Bradbury, John, *Travels in America*, \*79.
- Braddock, General, defeat, 282.
- Bradford, Alden, *Massachusetts*, \*62; *Jonathan Mayhew*, \*95; *Massachusetts State Papers*, \*110; *Federal Government*, 330.
- Bradford, W., *Plymouth Plantation*, \*125, 140, 265, 266; *Letter Book*, 266.
- Braintree (Mass.), history, \*63; *Records*, \*111.
- Brann, Henry A., *Most Rev. John Hughes*, \*92.
- Brannan, J., *Official Letters*, 354; *The War*, 354.
- Brattleboro (Mass.), history, \*63.
- Braxton, C., *Address*, 307.
- Brayton, G. A., *Samuel Gorton*, \*91, 273.
- Brazil, Huguenot colony in, 241.
- Breckinridge, J. C., nominated in 1860, 400.
- Breese, S., *Illinois*, \*60.
- Bremer, Frederika, *Homes of the New World*, \*79.
- Brevard, Joseph, *Digest of the Law of South Carolina*, \*116.
- Brevoort, J. C., *Verrazano*, 240.
- Brewer, J. S., *English Studies*, \*30.
- Brewer, W., *Alabama*, \*57.
- Brewster, C. W., *Portsmouth (N. H.)*, \*66, 286.
- Brice, W. A., *Fort Wayne*, \*60.
- Briggs, C. A., *American Presbyterianism*, 265.
- Brigham, W., *Laws of Plymouth*, \*111.
- Bright, G. F., *English History*, 46, 284.
- Bright, John, *American Question*, 422.
- Brightly, F. C., *Pennsylvania Digest*, \*117; *United States Digest*, \*118.
- Brinton, D. G., *Aboriginal American Authors*, 233.
- Bristol (R. I.), history, \*74.
- Bristol Parish (Va.), history, \*77.
- British and Foreign State Papers*, 413.
- British Museum, *Catalogue*, 34, \*38.
- Brock, R. A., *Virginia and Virginians*, \*76.
- Brodhead, J. R., *New York*, \*67.
- Brookline (Mass.), history, \*63; *Records*, \*111.
- Brooklyn (N. Y.), history, \*67.
- Brooklyn Mercantile Library, *Catalogue*, \*38.
- Brooks, E. S., *New York*, \*67.
- Brooks, Noah, *Washington in Lincoln's Times*, \*128.
- Brothers, Thomas, *United States*, \*79.
- Brown et al. vs. Maryland, 358.
- Brown, Alexander, *Genesis of the United States*, 249.



- Brown, C. B., *Arthur Merwyn*, \*137.  
 Brown, C. R., *Indiana*, \*60.  
 Brown, Geo. W., *John Brown*, \*88.  
 Brown, H., *Illinois*, \*60.  
 Brown, I., *Indianapolis*, \*60.  
 Brown, Jacob, 353.  
 Brown, John, *British Churches*, 285.  
 Brown, John, *Pilgrim Fathers*, 265.  
 Brown, John, biographies, \*88; slave insurrection, 375; rescues of fugitives, 393; in Kansas, 396; Harper's Ferry raid, 399.  
 Brown, S. G., *Rufus Choate*, \*88.  
 Browne, A. C., Jr., *J. A. Andrew*, \*87.  
 Browne, Charles F., *Artemus Ward, His Book*, 425; *His Travels*, 425.  
 Browne, J. H., *Four Years in Secessia*, 418.  
 Browne, W. H., *Maryland*, \*62; *George and Cecilius Calvert*, \*88, 254; *Archives of Maryland*, \*115.  
 Brownson, O. A., *Essays and Reviews*, 398.  
 Bruce, P. A., *Economic History of Virginia*, 251.  
 Bruce, Henry, *General Houston*, \*92; *General Oglethorpe*, \*96.  
 Bryant, W. C., *Popular History*, \*46.  
 Bryce, George, *Canadian People*, 243, 353.  
 Bryce, James, *American Commonwealth*, \*56, 271; *Predictions*, 366.  
 Brymner, Douglas, *Reports on Canadian Archives*, \*109.  
 Buchanan, James, biography, \*88; *Buchanan's Administration*, \*128; on petitions, 378; in Lecompton Constitution, 396; President, 398; Dred Scott case, 399; investigation of, 400; administration, 400; attitude on the crisis, 407; message, 408; South Carolina Commission, 408; Fort Sumter, 408; waits, 408. — See Civil War, Compromise.  
 Buchanan, Roberdeau, *Hon. Thomas McKean*, \*94.  
 Buck, Edward, *Massachusetts Ecclesiastical Law*, \*111, 271.  
 Buck, J. S., *Milwaukee (Wis.)*, \*77.  
 Buck, W. J., *William Penn*, \*96; *Indian Walk*, 263.  
 Buckingham, Lord, *Courts and Cabinets*, 303.  
 Buckingham, J. S., *America*, \*79; *Eastern and Western States*, \*79; *Slave States*, \*79.  
 Buckingham, J. T., *Newspaper Literature*, \*104, 128.  
 Budd, T., *Good Order Established*, 262.  
 Buffalo (N. Y.), history, \*67.  
 Bulfinch, Th., *Oregon and Eldorado*, \*71.  
 Bullock, J. D., *Secret Service of Confederate States*, 413.  
 Bullock, Wm., *Journey from New Orleans to New York*, \*80.  
 Bull Run, battle, 415; second battle, 415.  
 Bump, *Constitutional Decisions*, 404.  
 Bunker Hill, battle, 294.  
 Bureau of Ethnology, *Reports*, 231.  
 Bureau of Rolls and Library, *Bulletin*, 317.  
 Burgess, I. B., College preparatory history, 32.  
 Burgess, J. W., *United States from 1815*, \*44; *Political Science*, 323.  
 Burgoyne, John, biography, \*88; campaign of, 298; *State of the Expedition*, 298; effect of surrender on France, 300.  
 Burk, J. D., *Virginia*, \*76.  
 Burke, Edmund, *Account of the European Settlements*, \*56, 284; *Works*, 289; *Speeches on Conciliation*, 293.  
 Burnaby, Andrew, *Travels through the Middle Settlements*, \*80.  
 Burnap, *Leonard Calvert*, 254.  
 Burnet, J., *Northwestern Territory*, \*70.  
 Burnett, Mrs., *Through One Administration*, \*137.  
 Burns, fugitive slave, 393.  
 Burnside, A. E., *Burnside Expedition*, 418.  
 Burr, Aaron, biography, \*88; *Private Journal*, \*128; Vice-President, 343, 348; duel with Hamilton, 348; conspiracy, 348; capture of, 349; trial of, 349.  
 Burrage, Wm., *John Hancock*, \*92.  
 Bushnell, H., *Granville (O.)*, \*70.  
 Butler, B. F., on "Contrabands," 425.  
 Butler, Mrs., — See Kemble, F. A.  
 Butler, N. M., *War of 1812*, 357.  
 Buxton, Sidney, *Finance and Politics*, 421.  
 Bynner, E. L., historical novels, \*137.
- CABEZA-DE-VACA, wanderings, 239.  
 Cabinet, organization of first, 329; trouble with J. Adams, 340; breaks up (1799), 343; Jefferson's, 345; Monroe's, 359; on Missouri Act, 361; J. Q. Adams's, 364; Jackson's, 367; Tyler's, 382; Lincoln's, 423. — See presidents by name, Civil Service.  
 Cable, G. W., historical novels, \*137.  
 Cabot, George, biography, \*88.  
 Cabot, J. E., *Ralph Waldo Emerson*, \*90.  
 Cabot, John and Sebastian, discover North America, 246; Map, 244.  
 Calef, R., *More Wonders*, 280.  
 Calhoun, John C., biographies, \*88; *Works*, \*125; bank bill (1814), 356; and Jackson, 367; on nullification, 370; on distribution, 373; against abolitionists, 378; Texan annexation, 385; Compromise of 1850, 391; on secession, 404. — See Nullification, Slavery.  
 California, histories, \*58; Monterey occupied, 385; desired by Polk, 387; conquered, 387; annexed, 309, 387; gold discovered, 390; self-organization, 390; admitted as a state, 391.  
 California Historical Society, *Publications*, \*122.  
 Call, Daniel, *Reports of Cases of Virginia*, \*117.

- Callender, sedition case, 342.  
 Callender, E. B., *Thaddeus Stevens*, \*98.  
 Callender, J., *Rhode Island*, \*74.  
 Calvert, The, biography, \*88, 254; Maryland granted to, 253; founded by the, 253, 255; *Papers*, 254.  
 Calvin, John, *Institutes*, 265.  
 Cambridge (Eng.), "Agreement" at, 269.  
 Cambridge (Mass.), histories of, \*63; Synod at, 272.  
 Camden, battle of (1780), 301.  
 Cameron, Simon, on emancipation, 425.  
*Campaigns of the Civil War* (Series), 416.  
 Campbell, C., *Introduction to History of Virginia*, \*76; *Dominion of Virginia*, \*76.  
 Campbell, D., *Puritans*, 265.  
 Campbell, John W., *R. J. Meigs*, \*95.  
 Campbell, Lord, *Lord Chancellors*, 289; *Lord Chief Justices*, 289.  
 Campbell, Mrs. Maria, *General Wm. Hull*, \*92.  
 Campbell, Thomas, *Gertrude of Wyoming*, \*141.  
 Campbell, W. W., *Tryon County* (N. Y.), \*69; *De Witt Clinton*, \*89.  
 Canada, archives of, 53; discovered, 240; founded, 242; conquered by England, 282; invasion of (1775), 294; invasion of (War of 1812), 352; fugitives to, 379, 393. — See England, France, Louisiana.  
 Canals. — See Internal Improvements.  
 Canning, George, biography, \*88.  
 Cannon, Geo. Q., *Brigham Young*, \*101.  
 Cape Ann, early settlement, 269.  
 Cape Breton, discovery, 246.  
 Cape Cod, history of, \*63.  
 Capers, H. D., *C. G. Memminger*, 413.  
 Capital, selection of national, 331; fixed at Washington, 336. — See District of Columbia.  
 "Cards," a school exercise, 154, 223.  
 Carey, H. C., *Slave Trade*, 380.  
 Carey, Matthew, *Olive Branch*, \*133, 351; *Remembrancer*, 338.  
 Carey, Matthew, and Bioren, John, *Laws of Pennsylvania*, \*114.  
 Carlier, A., *République Américaine*, 310.  
 Carolina, history, \*69; grant of, 255.  
 Carolinas, The, charters, 255; settlement and government, 255, 256; "Fundamental Constitutions," 255, 256. — See North Carolina, South Carolina.  
 Carpenter, F. B., *Six Months at the White House*, \*128.  
 Carpenter, T., *Trial of Aaron Burr*, 349.  
 Carr, L., *Missouri*, \*65; *Mounds*, 231.  
 Carrington, H. B., *Battles of the Revolution*, 295.  
 Carroll, B. R., *South Carolina*, \*74.  
 Carson, H. L., *Hundredth Anniversary*, 305; *Supreme Court*, 316.  
 Carteret, Philip, Governor of New Jersey, 260.  
 Cartier, J., explores the St. Lawrence, 240; writings, 241.  
 Caruthers, W. A., historical novels, 137.  
 Carver, J., *Travels*, 233.  
 Cary, Edward, *George William Curtis*, \*89.  
*Case's Map of the United States*, 52.  
 Case, J. W., *Southold* (L. I.) *Records*, \*113.  
 Cass, Lewis, biography, \*88; nominated for presidency, 390; suggests popular sovereignty, 395; in Buchanan's cabinet, 408.  
 Casseday, L. B., *Louisville*, (Ky.), \*61.  
 Castaneda, *Relacion de la Jornada*, 232, 240.  
 Catalogues, select, 38; of *Geological Maps*, 50.  
 Catherwood, F., *Central America*, 233.  
*Catholic Historical Researches*, 235, 255.  
 Catholics, organization against, 397.  
 Caulkins, F. M., *Norwich* (Conn.), \*58, 274.  
 Cavendish, explorations of, 247.  
*Cavendish's Debates*, 293.  
 Cecil County (Md.), history, \*62.  
 Central America, first voyages to, 235.  
 Century Co., *Civil War*, 403.  
 Centz, P. C. [Sage, B. J.], *Republic of Republics*, 306.  
 Chalmers, George, *Collection of Treaties*, \*54, 288; *Annals*, \*56; *Opinions of Lawyers*, \*118; *History of the Revolt*, 296.  
 Chamberlain, Mellen, *Declaration of Independence*, 297.  
 Chambers, T. F., *Germans of New Jersey*, \*66.  
 Chambers, Wm., *Things in America*, \*80; *American Slavery*, 314.  
 Champlain, discoveries in America, 242; writings, 242; memoir, 242.  
 Champlain, Lake, history, \*67; discovered, 242.  
 Chancellorsville, battle, 415.  
 Chandler, P., *Criminal Trials*, 259.  
 Channing, Edward, *The United States*, \*44, 144, 145; *Town and County*, 271; *Navigation Laws*, 285.  
 Channing, William Ellery, biography, \*88.  
 Channing, Wm. H., *William Ellery Channing*, \*88.  
 Chapman, I. A., *Wyoming* (Pa.), \*72.  
 Chapman, T. J., *Wyoming*, 299; *Year-Books*, 256, 302.  
 Charleston (S. C.), founded, 255; *Year-Books*, 256, 302; attacked (1776), 294; captured by Clinton (1780), 301; convention of 1860, 400. — See Sumter.  
 Charlestown (Mass.), history, \*63.  
 Charlestown (N. H.), history, \*66.  
 Charlevoix, *Histoire de la Nouvelle France*, 243.  
 Charnay, D., *Cités et Ruines*, 233; *Ancient Cities*, 233.  
 Charter of Privileges, Pennsylvania, 263; Dutch patroons, 258.  
 Charters, authorities on, 229; Raleigh's, 248; Virginia, 250; Maryland, 253; Avalon, 253; Carolina, 255; Carolina, 255; Georgia, 257; Dutch, 258; New Jersey, 260; Pennsylvania, 261; Coun-

- cil for New England, 268; Massachusetts, 269, 279; Rhode Island, 273; Connecticut, 274; forms of government under, 312.—See Colonies by name, Constitution, States.
- Charters and Constitutions*, \*109.—See Poor, B. P.
- Charters of the British Colonies in America*, \*109.
- Chase, B., *Old Chester* (N. H.), \*66.
- Chase, G. W., *Haverhill* (Mass.), \*64.
- Chase, Salmon P., *Ohio*, \*70; biography, \*88; on Nebraska bill, 395; not nominated in 1860, 400; Secretary of the Treasury, 410.
- Chase, Samuel, Judge, impeached, 345.
- Chastellux, Marquis de, *Travels in North America*, \*80.
- Chateaubriand, F. A. de, *Voyages en Amerique*, \*80.
- Chatham, Earl of, *Correspondence*, 301.
- Chattanooga, battles, 415.
- Chauncey, C., *Letter from Boston*, 280.
- Chautauqua system, advantages of, 22, 27.
- Cheetham, James, *Thomas Paine*, \*96.
- Cheever, G. B., *Guilt of Slavery*, 375.
- Cheney, Mrs. H. V., *Peep at the Pilgrims*, \*137.
- Cherokees, controversy under Jackson, 373.
- Chesapeake attacked by Leopard, 350.
- Chesney, C. C., *General Grant*, \*91.
- Chester (N. H.), history, \*66.
- Chevalier, Michel, *Letters*, \*80.
- Cheyney, E. P., *Anti-rent Agitation*, 382.
- Chicago (Ill.), history, \*60.
- Chicago Historical Society, publications, \*122.
- Chickamauga, battle, 415.
- Child, John, *New England's Jonas*, 272.
- Child, Mrs. L. M., historical novels, \*138; *The Oasis*, 376; *Isaac T. Hopper*, 377.
- Childs, G. W., *General Grant*, \*91.
- Chipman, Daniel, *Thomas Chittenden*, \*88; *Seth Warner*, 299.
- Chisholm vs. Georgia, case, 334, 359.
- Chittenden, L. E., *Personal Reminiscences*, \*128, 146; *Conference Convention*, 409.
- Chittenden, Th., biography, \*88.
- Choate, Rufus, biography, \*88; *Works*, \*125.
- Christie, R., *Lower Canada*, 282.
- Chronology, beginning of American history, 3.
- Church, A. W., and Smith, H. H., *Tables showing Contents*, 34, \*39.
- Church, B., *Entertaining Passages*, 278.
- Church of England established, in Virginia, 253; in Maryland, 255.
- Cieza de Leon, *Chronica del Peru*, 238.
- Cincinnati (O.), history, \*70, 71.
- Cist, C., *Cincinnati in 1841*, \*70.
- Cities, history of, 57-78; reasons for site, 169.
- "Citizen," *America*, 363.
- Citizenship, training for, 23.
- Civil Service, Washington's, 329; Adams's 337; Jefferson's, 345; Monroe's, 359; J. Q. Adams's, 364; Jackson's, 367; Lincoln's, 423.—See presidents by name.
- Civil War, topics on, 14, 18; conditions of, 402; causes, 405; attempts to obviate, 408; first shot, 408; attack on Sumter, 410; troops called, 410; Confederate preparations, 412; Union preparations, 415; campaigns, 415; end, 415; finances, 419; international complications, 420; administration, 423; parties, 423; popular feeling, 423; abolition of slavery, 425.—See Army, Blockade, Confederate States, Navy, Secession, commanders and engagements by name.
- Claiborne, J. F. H., *Mississippi*, \*65; *Sam Dale*, \*128.
- Clap, R., *Memoirs*, 270.
- Clarendon Papers*, 260.
- Clark and Hall, *Bank of the United States*, 332.
- Clark, G. R., *Campaign of 1778*, 309.
- Clark, R. H., *Gladstone and Maryland Toleration*, 255.
- Clarke, H. D., *Decisions of the Supreme Court*, \*119.
- Clarke, J. F., *Anti-Slavery Days*, \*128, 146.
- Clarke, R. & Co., *Bibliotheca Americana*, 33, \*37; *Books on the Rebellion*, 418.
- Clarkson, Thomas, *William Penn*, \*96.
- Class exercises, 152-157; written work, 205; tests, 223.
- Clay, C. M., *Memoirs*, \*128.
- Clay, Henry, biographies, \*89; *Works*, \*125; *Private Correspondence*, \*125; and Burr, 348; urges war, 352; and Monroe, 359; compromise of 1821, 361; interest in Monroe doctrine, 362; charge of corrupt bargain in 1825, 364; and Jackson, 367; fight on the bank, 369; defeated for presidency, 369; censure of Jackson, 372; distribution policy, 373; breach with Tyler, 382; on Texas, 385; loses nomination of 1844, 385; compromise of 1850, 391.
- Clay, J. C., *Swedes on the Delaware*, \*59.
- Clayborne, in Maryland, 253, 254.
- Clason, A. W., *Seven Conventions*, 326.
- Cleveland (O.), history of, \*71.
- Cleveland, H., *Alex. H. Stephens*, \*98.
- Cleveland Public Library, *Catalogue*, \*38.
- Climate, of North America, 227.
- Clinton, De Witt, biography, \*89; *Vindication of Jefferson*, 334; in 1812, 334.
- Clinton, Sir Henry, *Stedman's History*, 296.
- Clute, J. J., *Staten Island*, \*69.
- Coahuila and Texas, 385.
- Cobb, Howell, biography, \*89.
- Cobb, T. R. R., *Historical Sketch of Slavery*, 315.
- Cobbett, Pitt, *Cases in International Law*, 422.
- Cobbett, Wm., *A Year's Residence in the*

- U. S., \*80; biography, \*89; *Porcupine's Works*, 339.
- Coburn, *Battle of Bennington*, 299.
- Cochin, Augustus, *Emancipation*, 376, *Results of Slavery*, 403.
- Cocke, W. A., *Constitutional History*, 338.
- Coercion, in 1832, 371; plans in 1860, 407; Buchanan's attitude, 407; action of Congress, 408; constitutional principles, 408; Lincoln on, 410. — See Compromise, Civil War, Insurrections.
- Coffin, C. C., *Old Times in the Colonies*, 314; *Drum-Beat*, 416; *Republic*, 416; *Marching to Victory*, 416; *Freedom Triumphant*, 416.
- Coffin, Joshua, *Newbury* (Mass.), \*64; *Slave Insurrections*, 376.
- Coffin, Levi, *Reminiscences*, \*128, 377.
- Coggeshall, *American Privateers*, 353.
- Cohens vs. Virginia, case, 359.
- Coinage, under Confederation, 319; 16 to 1, 372. — See Finance.
- Coke, E., *Institutes*, 290.
- Colburn, J., *Bibliography of Massachusetts*, \*63.
- Coleman, Mrs. Ann Mary (Chapman), *John J. Crittenden*, \*89.
- Coleman, W., *Death of Hamilton*, 349.
- Coles, Edward, *Ordinance of 1787*, 318.
- Collectanea Adamantæa*, \*133.
- Colleges, American history in, 2, 7, 24; text-books, 43, 154; recitations in, 153; "The Quiz," 156; written recitations, 206.
- Collins, L., *Kentucky*, \*61.
- Colonies, topics on, 5, 12, 13, 15, 16; constitutional status, 218; boundaries, 228; condition (1760), 284-288; become states, 296, 306; institutions, 311, 312, 314; influence of, on later government, 329; parties in, 334; slave insurrections, 375. — See Colonies by name.
- "Colonization," in Monroe doctrine, 362, 363.
- Colonization Society, 361.
- Colorado, histories, \*58.
- Colton, Calvin, *Henry Clay*, \*89.
- Columbia river, discovery, 347. — See Oregon.
- Columbia University, *Studies in History*, 55.
- Columbus, Christopher, biographies, \*89; discovers America, 235; writings, 235.
- Columbus (O.), history, \*71.
- Combe, Geo., *Notes on the U. S.*, \*80.
- Comet, case of, 380.
- Commerce, of the Confederation, 321; re-organization in 1816, 356; Supreme court cases, 355. — See Finances, Internal Improvements.
- Commissioners, Royal, in New England (1664), 278.
- Committee of Ten of 1893, suggestions on history, 6; on preparation of teachers, 21; *Report*, \*31.
- Committee of 13 (1860), 408.
- Committee of 33 (1860), 408.
- Commonwealth, English, relations with Virginia, 252; Maryland, 254; Massachusetts, 278.
- Committees of Congress, organization, 329.
- Committees of Correspondence, 204.
- Communism, in Plymouth, 266.
- Compact, theory of the Constitution, 327; the Pilgrim, 266.
- Composition, on historical subjects, 21, 210.
- Compromises, in Federal Convention, 323; of 1820, 361; of 1821, 361; of 1833, 376; of 1850, 391, 404; policy in 1860, 407; committee of thirteen, 408; committee of thirty-three, 408; Crittenden's, 408; Peace Conference, 408; Vallandigham's, 408; defeated by Lincoln, 408. — See Coercion, Constitution, Slavery, Tariff.
- "Concessions," of New Jersey, 260.
- Concord (Mass.), battle (1775), 294.
- Concord (N. H.), history, \*66; *Records*, \*110.
- Conduct of the War*, 417.
- Condy, T. D., *Laws of U. S.*, \*116.
- Cone, Mary, *Rufus Putnam*, \*97.
- Confederate States of America, manuscript archives, 135; organized, 406; mission to Lincoln, 410; attack on Sumter, 410; additional secessions, 410; formation at Montgomery, 412; provisional constitution, 412; permanent constitution, 412; slavery, 412; administration, 412; finances, 412; conscription, 412; foreign relations, 412; collapse, 412; legal status, 412; *Statutes at Large*, 414; *Public Laws*, 414; *Private Laws*, 414. — See Civil War, Coercion, Secession, seceding states by name.
- Confederation, The (1781-1788), topics on, 13, 17; manuscript relating to, 134; formation of, 304; government of, 316; proposed amendments, 322; a precedent for national government, 329; expiration of, 329; no implied powers, 333; states under, 336; slavery under, 336. — See Articles of Confederation, Constitution.
- Confederation of New England. — See New England Confederation.
- Conference Convention (1861), *Official Journal*, 409.
- Conference on History (1893), *Report to the Committee of Ten*, \*31.
- Conference system, 195.
- Confiscation, in Civil War, 425.
- Congdon, C. T., *Reminiscences*, \*128.
- Congregationalism, English, 265.
- Congress, of Albany, 282, 283, 305.
- Congress, of the Confederate States. — See Confederate States of America.
- Congress, of the Confederation (1781-1788), 315, 316; calls Federal Convention, 322; transmits constitution to states, 325. — See Confederation.
- Congress, Continental (1775-1781), *Proceedings*, \*104; manuscripts of, 134;

- powers of, 296; frames articles of confederation, 304; a precedent for national government, 329; implied powers, 333.
- Congress of the United States (1789-1895), index to documents of, 38; records of debates, \*119; acts of, \*120; organization of (1789), 329; first financial acts, 331; Missouri Compromise, 361; opposition to J. Q. Adams, 364; breach with Tyler, 382; annexation of Texas, 385; territorial crisis, 390; Compromise of 1850, 392; Kansas-Nebraska act, 395; Lecompton Constitution, 396; compromise and coercion (1860-1861), 408; in Civil War, 415, 419, 423; acts on slavery, 425; thirteenth amendment, 426. — See Compromises, Finances, Internal Improvements, Slavery, Tariff, Territories.
- Congresses, early colonial, 304, 305. — See Albany, Stamp Act.
- Congressional Debates*, \*119.
- Congressional documents, as geographical sources, 54; titles of, \*120.
- Congressional Globe*, \*107.
- Congressional Record*, \*107.
- Conkling, A. R., *Roscoe Conkling*, \*89.
- Conkling, Roscoe, Biography of, \*89.
- Connecticut, histories, \*58; *Records*, \*112; founded, 274; charter, 274; absorbs New Haven, 275; in New England Confederation, 276; Quakers in, 277; Andros in, 278; condition of (1760), 286; claims to western lands, 304; cedes lands, 317, 336; emancipates slaves, 320; ratifies constitution, 325.
- "Connecticut Courant," secession in, 404.
- "Connecticut Farmer," *Remarks on a Pamphlet*, 318.
- Connecticut Historical Society, publications, \*122.
- Connelly, E. M., *Kentucky*, \*61.
- Constitution, of the Confederate States, 406, 412.
- Constitution, of the United States, topics on, 13, 17; manuscripts, 134; memorable dates, 159; extracts, 165; topics on, 214, 218; formation of, 322, 323; text and reprints, 324; ratification of, 325, 404; theories as to, 327; implied powers in, 333; application to territories, 390; interpretation in 1860, 405; strained in Civil War, 423. — See Amendments, Habeas Corpus, Implied powers, Nullification, Secession.
- Constitutions of the States. — See States by name.
- Contraband, in Napoleonic Wars, 350; Butler's, 425.
- Conventions, of 1787, see Federal Convention; for ratifying the Constitution, 325; South Carolina nullification (1832), 370; Nashville (1850), 392; Charleston (1860), 400; Chicago (1860), 400; peace conference (1861), 408; secession, 406; Montgomery, 412.
- Conway, M. D., *Thomas Paine*, \*96; *Edmund Randolph*, \*97.
- Coode, Rebellion of, in Maryland, 254.
- Cooke, J. E., *Virginia*, \*76; *R. E. Lee*, \*94; historical novels, \*138; *Stonewall Jackson*, 417.
- Cooley, T. M., *Michigan*, \*64; *Constitutional Limitations*, 311; *Story's Commentaries*, 320; *Acquisition of Louisiana*, 348.
- Cooper, sedition case, 342.
- Cooper, J. F., *Navy of the United States*, \*56, 353; *Notions of the Americans*, \*80; historical novels, 138.
- Cooper, T., *Information respecting America*, \*80; (with McCord, D. J.), *Statutes of South Carolina*, \*116.
- Cooper, T. V., *American Politics*, \*133.
- Cope, T. P., *William Penn*, \*96.
- Coppée, Henry, *U. S. Grant*, \*91.
- Corbett, J., *Sir Francis Drake*, 247.
- Córdoba, Voyage to Yucatan, 238, 239.
- Cornelison, I. A., *Religion and Civil Government*, 285.
- Cornell, W. M., *Pennsylvania*, \*72.
- Cornell University, *Bulletins*, 378.
- Cornwallis, Charles, biography, \*89; southern campaign, 301.
- Coronado, explorations, 239.
- Cortez, Hernando, conquest of Mexico, 238.
- Corwin, Thomas, biography, \*89; *Speeches*, \*125; constitutional amendment, 408, 425.
- Costa, B. F., *Pre-Columbian Discovery*, 234; *Verrazano*, 240; *Norumbega*, 250.
- Cotton, Whitney's gin, 336; importance in 1860, 402; scarcity in Civil War, 420, 421. — See Slavery.
- Cotton, Edward R., *Nathaniel Macon*, \*94.
- Cotton, John, *Abstracts of the Lawes of New England*, 271.
- Councils, colonial, 312.
- Counties, histories of, 57.
- Courts, colonial, 312; under Confederation, 316; Court of Appeals in Cases of Capture, 316; federal organized, 329; under Jefferson, 345; Confederate, 412; *Digests of Decisions*, \*119; *Reports of Decisions*, \*121. — See Supreme Court.
- "Covode Investigation," 400.
- Cowan, Frank, *Southern Pennsylvania*, \*141.
- Cowpens, battle (1781), 301.
- Cox, S. S., *Three Decades*, \*128.
- Coxe, Brinton, *Judicial Power*, 290.
- Coxe, D., *English Province of Carolina*, \*69.
- Coxe, Tench, *Conduct of Great Britain*, 351.
- Craig, N. B., *Exposure of Misstatements*, 340.
- Cranch, William, *Reports*, 121.
- Crane, W. C., *Sam Houston*, \*92.
- Crane and Moses, *Politics*, 313.
- Crawford, S. T., *Genesis of the Civil War*, 411.
- Creighton, Louise, *Sir Walter Raleigh*, 247.



- Creole, case of, 380.  
 Cresap, Michael, biography, \*89.  
 Crevecoeur, St. John de, *Letters from an American Farmer*, \*80.  
 Crew, H. W., *Dayton* (Ohio), \*70.  
 Crittenden, John J., biography of, \*89; compromise (1861), 408.  
 Crockett, David, *Exploits and Adventures*, \*128.  
 Cross, *Answer to a Brief State*, 263.  
 Crozat, Grant of Louisiana, 244, 347.  
 Cuba, discovery, 235; circumnavigated, 236; conquest of, 238; Monroe Doctrine, 363; attempts to annex, 394, 395.  
 Cumberland Road, 356. — See Internal Improvements.  
 Cunningham, W., *Growth of English Industry and Commerce*, 285.  
 Currency. — See Finances.  
 Curriculum, place of American history in, 6.  
 Curteis, G. H., *Dissent*, 265.  
 Curtis, B. R., *Reports*, \*122.  
 Curtis, G. T., *Constitutional History*, \*47; *James Buchanan*, \*88; *Daniel Webster*, \*100.  
 Curtis, G. W., biography, \*89; *Orations and Addresses*, \*125.  
 Curwen, Samuel, *Journal*, 304.  
 Cushing, William, *Index to North American Review*, \*37.  
 Cutler, Manasseh, biography, \*89.  
 Cutler, W. P., *Ordinance of 1787*, \*70, 318; (with Julia Perkins Cutler), *Rev. Manasseh Cutler*, \*89.  
 Cuts, J. M., *Brief Treatise*, \*128.  
*Cyclopædia of American Literature*, \*40.  
*Cyclopædia of Political Science*, \*40.  
 Cyclopædias, 40, 41.
- D**ABNEY, R. L., *Defense of Virginia*, 403; *Stonewall Jackson*, 407.  
 Daggett, J., *Attleborough* (Mass.), \*63.  
 Dale, Sam., biography, 128.  
 Dale's Laws, in Virginia, 250, 251.  
 Dall, W. H., *Alaska*, 57 (with Baker, M.), *Publications relating to Alaska*, \*57.  
 Dallas, A. J., biography, \*89; *Laws of Pennsylvania*, \*114; *Reports*, \*117, \*121.  
 Dallas, Geo. M., *Alexander J. Dallas*, \*89.  
 Dallinger, F. W., *Nominations for Office*, 335.  
 Dana, C. A., and Wilson, J. H., *U. S. Grant*, \*91.  
 Dana, R. H., biography, \*89; *Wheaton's International Law*, 363.  
 Dane, N., and others, *Laws of Massachusetts*, \*111.  
 Danforth, H. G., *Digest of Supreme Court Reports*, \*119.  
 Daniel, *Richmond Examiner*, 414.  
 Dankers, J., and Sluyter, P., *Voyage to New York*, \*80, 259.  
 Darby, J. F., *Personal Recollections*, \*128.  
 Darby, Wm., *Tour*, \*81.  
 Dartmouth College, case, 359.  
 Dates, memorable, 157-162.  
 D'Aulnay and La Tour, 242.  
 Davenport, John, founder of New Haven, 275.  
 Davenport (Iowa), history, \*60.  
 D'Avezac, *Waltzeemueller*, 237.  
 Davidson, Hannah H., *Reference History*, \*36.  
 Davidson, *Drake's Anchorage*, 248.  
 Davies, H. E., *General Sheridan*, \*98.  
 Davis, A. McF., *Provincial Banks*, \*280.  
 Davis, C. H., *Letters of J. Downing*, \*138.  
 Davis, G. L., *Day Star*, 255.  
 Davis, H. W., *Speeches*, 425.  
 Davis, Horace, *American Constitutions*, 306.  
 Davis, James, *Laws of North Carolina*, \*115.  
 Davis, Jefferson, *Confederate Government*, \*47; biographies of, \*90; compromise of 1850, 391; resolutions of 1860, 400, 404; president of the Confederacy, 412.  
 Davis, John, *Travels*, \*81.  
 Davis, J. C. B., *United States Reports*, \*121.  
 Davis, Matthew L., *Aaron Burr*, \*88.  
 Davis, P. M., *Authentic History*, 353.  
 Davis, Reuben, *Recollections*, \*128.  
 Davis, Mrs. Varina J., *Jefferson Davis*, \*90.  
 Davis, W. B., and Durrie, D. S., *Mis-souri*, \*65.  
 Davis, W. H. H., *Spanish Conquest*, 239.  
 Davis, W. M., *Geographical Illustrations*, \*51; *Governmental Maps*, \*51, 151.  
 Davis, W. T., *Plymouth*, \*64.  
 Dawes, Anna L., *Charles Sumner*, \*99.  
 Dawson, G. F., *Gen. John A. Logan*, \*94.  
 Dawson, A. B., *Battles of the United States*, 295; *Trial of J. H. Smith*, 300; *The Papers Concerning André*, 300; *The Federalist*, 325.  
 Day, S. P., *Down South*, 418.  
 Day, S., *Historical Collections* (Pennsylvania), \*72.  
 Dayton (O.), history, \*70.  
 DeBow, J. D. B., *Industrial Resources*, 403.  
 Deane, Charles, *Slavery in Massachusetts*, 315.  
 Deane, Silas, *Papers*, \*125, in France, 300.  
 Debates, records of Congressional, 119; as a school exercise, 173.  
 DeBry, *Voyages*, 233; *Report of Virginia*, 249.  
 Debts, in treaty of 1783, 303; funding of (1790), 331; 1801, 345. — See Loans.  
 Declaration of Independence, manuscript of, 134; extracts, 162, 296, 297.  
 Declaratory Act, 288.  
 Dedham, history, 63; *Records*, \*111.  
 De Gasparin, A. E., *Uprising of a Great People*, 403.  
 DeLaet, *Nieuwe Wereld*, 230, 258.

- Delaware, histories of, \*59; colonial records, \*114; colony of, 261, 263; first state government, 306; ratifies constitution, 325; slavery ceases, 426.
- Delaware County (N. Y.), history of, 68.
- Delaware County (Pa.), history of, 73.
- Delaware Historical Society, *Papers*, 122.
- Demarcation, bull of, 235.
- DeMille, James, *Lily and Cross*, \*139.
- Democratic Party, early American, 334; clubs, 339; Jeffersonian, 334; in power (1801), 345; split (1812), 354; era of good feeling, 359; Jacksonian, 368; elections, 381, 385, 398; split (1860), 400; during Civil War, 423.—See Civil War, Elections, Finance, Internal Improvements, Jackson, Jefferson, Slavery, Tariff.
- De Monts, patent, 242.
- Dent, J. C., *Canada*, 384.
- Denton, D., *Description of New York*, 259, 287.
- Denver (Col.), histories, \*58.
- Denver, Gov., 396.
- Departments, organization of, 329.
- Deposit act, 374; suspended, 381.
- Deposits, removal by Jackson, 372.
- D'Estaing, Admiral, in the Revolutionary War, 300, 301.
- Desty, Robert, *Constitution of the United States*, \*119.
- Detroit (Mich.), history, \*64; captured 1812, 352.
- De Vries, *Korte Historiæ*, 258.
- De Witt, Cornelis, *Thomas Jefferson*, \*93.
- Dewhurst, W. W., *Saint Augustine* (Fla.), \*89.
- Dexter, F. B., *Estimates of Population*, 284.
- Dexter, H. M., *Roger Williams*, \*100, 273; *Congregationalism*, 265.
- Diaz, Bernal, *Historia Verdadera*, 232.
- Dacey, A. V., *Law of the Constitution*, \*333.
- Dacey, Edward, *Federal States*, 418.
- Dickens, Charles, *American Notes*, \*80.
- Dickson, *American Numismatic Manual*, 319.
- Dickinson, Daniel S., *Speeches*, \*125.
- Dickinson, John, biography, \*90; *Political Writings*, \*125; *Letters of a Farmer*, 290; draft of Articles of Confederation, 304.
- Dictionary of Altitudes*, 50.
- Diesterweg, G., *Instruction in History*, \*30.
- Digests, \*117, 119.
- Dillon, J. B., *Oddities of Colonial Legislation*, \*108.
- Dillon, J. D., *Indiana*, \*60.
- Dinwiddie, Governor, *Official Records*, 283.
- Discovery, topics on, 12, 15; memorable dates, 157; of America, 234-237.
- Dissenters, in Virginia, 253.
- Distribution of surplus, 373.
- District of Columbia, organized, 336; status of slaves in, 378; petitions on, 378; slave trade, 390; act of 1850, 391; emancipation, 425.
- Disunion.—See Civil War, Compromises, Nullification, Secession.
- Dix, Dorothea L., biography, \*90.
- Dix, J. A., *Speeches*, \*125; biography, 407.
- Dix, Morgan, *John A. Dix*, 407.
- Dixon, *Life of Penn.*, 262.
- Dixon, Amendment to Nebraska Bill, 395.
- Documents of the United States, \*120; collections of, 132-134.
- Documentos Inéditos*, 232.
- Dodge, Abigail.—See Hamilton, Gail.
- Dodge, T. A., *Civil War*, 415.
- Donaldson, Th., *Public Domain*, 49, \*49, 305.
- Dominion Atlas*, 385.
- Dongan, Governor of New York, 259.
- Doniol, H., *Participation de la France*, 301.
- Donne, W. B., *Correspondence of George III*, 294.
- Dorchester (Mass.), history of, \*63.
- Dorchester Fishing Company, 269.
- Dorr, T. W., biography, 382.
- Dorr Rebellion (1842), 382.
- Doubleday, A., *Fort Sumter*, 412.
- Dougherty, J. H., *Constitutions of New York*, 307.
- Douglas, Stephen A., biographies, \*90; Kansas-Nebraska Act, 395; Lecompton Constitution, 396; Dred Scott decision, 399; debate with Lincoln, 400; nominated for president, 400; defeated, 400.
- Douglass, C. H. J., *Financial History of Massachusetts*, 319.
- Douglass, Frederick, *Life and Times*, \*129.
- Douglass, W., *British Settlements*, \*56.
- Doyle, J. A., *English in America*, \*47; *Virginia*, \*47, 241; *Puritan Colonies*, \*47, 146.
- Drafts of 1863, 423.
- Drake, D., *Kentucky*, \*61.
- Drake, Sir Francis, biography, 247; American voyages, 247; rescues Raleigh's colonists, 248.
- Drake, F. S., *Dictionary of American Biography*, \*40; *Roxbury* (Mass.), \*64; *Henry Knox*, \*93.
- Drake, S. A., *Great West*, \*56, 360; *New England*, 269; *Landmarks of Boston*, 286; *Nooks and Corners*, 286; *Historic Fields*, 295.
- Drake, S. G., *Boston*, \*63; *New England Legends*, \*138; *French and Indian War*, 283.
- Draper, J. W., *History of the Civil War*, \*47, 51.
- Draper, L., *King's Mountain*, 302.
- Drayton, J., *Memoirs*, 206.
- Drew, Benjamin, *Refugee*, 394.
- Droysen, J. G., *Outlines of the Principles of History*, \*31.
- Duane (and Bioren), *Laws of the United States*, \*49.



- Duane, Secretary, removed, 372.  
 Du Bois, W. E. B., *Slave Trade*, 315.  
 Du Bose, J. W., *William Lowndes Yancey*, \*100.  
 Dudley, Th., *Letter to the Countess of Lincoln*, 270.  
 Duer, W. A., *William Alexander*, \*98; *Constitutional Jurisprudence*, 316.  
 Duke of York's Laws, \*114, 259.  
 Dumont, M. J., *Corps Universel Diplomatique*, \*54, 228.  
 Du Monts, *La Louisiane*, 233.  
 Dunbar, C. F., *Topics on Financial Legislation*, \*36; *References on Economic History*, \*36; *Laws Relating to Finance*, 332.  
 Duncan, J. N., *Travels*, \*81.  
 Dunlap, William, *André*, \*141.  
 Dunn, J. P., *Indiana*, \*60.  
 Dunning, W. A., *Constitution in Civil War*, 423.  
 Duponceau, P. S., *Landing of Penn.*, \*72.  
 Durand, J., *Documents on the Revolution*, 301.  
 Durham, Bishop of, jurisdiction, 253.  
 Dutch, claims to America, 227; relations with Swedes and English, 258; influence in America, 258; on the Delaware, 261; explorers of New England, 264; relations with Plymouth, 266; on the Connecticut river, 274; relations with New England Confederation, 276; race element, 310; loans to U. S., 319.  
 Dutch West India Company, 258.  
 Duyckinck, E. A. and G. L., *Cyclopædia of American Literature*, \*40; *Ballads*, \*141.  
 Dwight, S. E., *President Edwards*, \*90.  
 Dwight, Theodore, *Connecticut*, \*58; *Thomas Jefferson*, \*93; *Hartford Convention*, 351.  
 Dwight, Timothy, *Travels*, \*81; *Greenfield Hill*, \*141.  
 Dyer, Oliver, *Jefferson Davis*, \*90.  
 Dyer, T. H., *Modern Europe*, 350.
- E**ARLE, A. M., *Puritan Sabbath*, 314.  
 Earle, Thomas, *Benjamin Lundy*, \*94.  
 East Florida, disputes and annexation, 359.  
 East Hampton (L. I.), *Records*, \*113.  
 East Jersey, colony of, 260.  
 East Tennessee, Union sentiment, 410.  
 Eaton, Major, 367.  
 Eaton, Theophilus, founder of New Haven, 275.  
*Echoes from the South*, 413.  
 Eddis, W., *Letters*, 287.  
 Education, in provincial New England, 280; in the United States in 1830, 366. — See People.  
 Edwards County (Ill.), history, \*60.  
 Edwards, E., *Life of Raleigh*, 247.  
 Edwards, Jonathan, biographies, \*90.  
 Edwards, R., and Hopewell, M., *Great West*, \*65.
- Eelking, Max von, *Major-General Riedesel*, \*131.  
 Eggleston, G. C., *American War Ballads*, \*141; *A Man of Honor*, \*138; *Rebel's Recollections*, 418.  
 Eggleston, Edward, *History for School*, \*43; *Household History*, 314.  
 Egle, W. H., *Pennsylvania*, \*72; *Notes and Queries*, \*102.  
 Eggleston, Melville, *Land Systems of New England*, 271.  
 Elections, first national, 329; of 1792, 334; of 1796, 340; of 1800, 343; of 1808, 351; of 1812, 354; of 1816, 359; of 1824, 364, 367; of 1825, 364; of 1828, 367; of 1832, 369; of 1836, 381; of 1840, 382; of 1844, 385; of 1848, 390; of 1856, 398; of 1860, 400; of 1864, 423.  
 Eleventh Amendment, Supreme Court cases, 358.  
 Eliot, W. G., *Archer Alexander*, 394.  
 Elizabeth (N. J.), histories, \*66.  
 Ellet, E. F., *Women of the Revolution*, 292.  
 Elliot, H. W., *Affairs in Alaska*, \*57; *Our Arctic Province*, \*57.  
 Elliot, J., *Funding System*, 332; *Debates*, 324.  
 Elliott, Charles W., *New England History*, \*56.  
 Ellis, G. E., *Mrs. Anne Hutchinson*, \*92; *Puritan Age*, 265, 273, 279; *Bunker Hill*, 296.  
 Elmer, L. Q. C., *History of the [N. J.] Constitution*, 307.  
 Elting, I., *Dutch Village Communities*, 314.  
 Emancipation. — See Slavery.  
 Embargo, implied powers, 333; Jefferson's, 351.  
 Emerson, Ralph Waldo, biographies, \*90.  
 Encomium, case of, 380.  
*Encyclopædia Americana*, \*41.  
*Encyclopædia Britannica*, \*40.  
 Encyclopædias, special treatises in, 55.  
 Endicott, Charles M., *John Endicott*, \*90.  
 Endicott, John, biography, \*90; in Massachusetts, 260.
- England, strong colonies of, 4; contribution to American institutions, 5; relations with the United States, 29; *Statutes*, \*108; claims to America, 228; explorers of, 246-248; Reformation in, 264; Puritans in, 264; Quakers in, 277; contest with France (1690-1763), 281; constitutional relations with the colonies, 284; political parties in (1765), 288; ministries of (1760-1776), 291; political institutions (to 1775), 311; boundary controversies with United States (1783-1789), 317; relations with the Confederation, 321; as furnishing a precedent for national government, 329; war with France (1793), 337; relations with United States (1789-1796), 337; claims to Louisiana, 347; war with France (1803), 350; aggressions on neutral trade, 350, 355; Orders in Council, 350; captures American ships, 350; war with

- United States, 352, 353; imports from in 1816, 356; commercial convention with (1815), 356; fishery convention (1818), 356; slaves carried away (1815), 361; on South American affairs, 362; fugitives to Canada, 379; controversy with as to slave vessels, 380; treaty of 1842, 383; boundary controversies, 383; Oregon, 383; treaty of 1846, 383; Pakenham correspondence, 385; sympathy with the South, 402, 421; neutrality, 420; Trent affair, 420; Alabama question, 421; Mexico, 421.
- English, taught through history, 210; treatment of Indians by, 232; seamen, sixteenth century, 247; relations with New Netherland, 258; conquest of New Netherland, 261.
- English, T. D., *American Ballads*, \*141.
- "English Bill," 396.
- Enterprise, case of, 380.
- Episcopacy, English, 265.
- Episodes, as subjects for written work, 209-210.
- Epochs of American History*, 33, 44, \*45, 145.
- "Era of good feeling," 359.
- Eratosthenes, theories of, 234.
- Ericson. — See Leif.
- Erie Canal, 306.
- Erie County (Pa.), history of, 73.
- Erskine treaty, 351.
- Escorial, treaty of 1795, 337.
- Essays, historical for schools, 210; for colleges, 215, 220.
- Essex (Mass.), history of, 64.
- Essex Institute, *Historical Collections*, 123.
- Europe, connection with American history, 4; claims to America, 227. — See Dutch, England, France, Portugal, Russia, Spain, Sweden.
- "European System," in Monroe Doctrine, 302.
- Evans, C., *History of the Friends*, 262.
- Everett, Edward, *Orations*, \*125.
- Examinations, advantages of, 205; oral, 223, 225; written, 224.
- Excise, early acts, 331, 339.
- Excursions, for schools, 172.
- Executive, Colonial, 312; under confederation, 315; organization of federal, 329. — See Cabinet, Civil Service, President.
- Executive Documents*, 121.
- Exeter (N. H.), history, \*65; settlement, 275.
- Expenditures. — See Finance.
- Exploration, topics on, 12, 15; memorable dates, 157; explorers' reports as sources, 48. — See Europe and explorers by name.
- Extradition, connection with slavery, 379; in treaty of 1842, 383.
- FAGAN, W. L., *Southern War Songs*, 418.
- Fairbanks, G. R., *Florida*, \*59; *St. Augustine*, 241.
- Faithful, Emily, *Three Visits in America*, \*81.
- Falconer, Thomas, *Oregon Question*, 384.
- Farmer, J., and Moore, J. B., *Collections of New Hampshire*, \*66.
- Farmer, S., *Detroit and Michigan*, \*64.
- Farragut, D. G., biography, \*90.
- Farragut, Loyall, *David Glasgow Farragut*, \*90.
- Farrar, C. S., *The War*, 405.
- Farrar, T., *Constitution*, 323.
- Faux, W., *Memorable Days*, \*81.
- Fay, Benjamin, *Treatise on Slave Keeping*, 315.
- Fearon, H. B., *Sketches of America*, \*81.
- Federal Convention, 322; *Journal*, 324; manuscripts, 134. — See Confederation, Constitution, and members by name.
- Federalist*, \*134, 325.
- "Federalists" (1787-1788), 325.
- Federalist Party, formed, 334; fall of, 343; conciliated by Jefferson, 345; objects to Louisiana purchase, 347; effect of Burr's conspiracy on, 349; opposes War of 1812, 354; disappearance, 359.
- Federations, early American, 304. — See Congress.
- Fédix, M., *L'Orégon*, 71.
- Fendall, rebellion of in Maryland, 254.
- Felt, J. B., *Ecclesiastical History*, \*56, 271; *Essex* (Mass.), \*64; *Salem* (Mass.), \*64; *Massachusetts Currency*, 280; *Customs of New England*, 286.
- Fernow, B., *Ohio Valley*, \*70.
- Ferris, B., *Delaware*, \*59.
- Fessenden, W. P., secretary of the treasury, 419.
- Fidler, Isaac, *Observations*, \*81.
- "Fifty-four forty or fight," 383.
- Filibusters, to Cuba, 394.
- Filmer, Sir Robert, *Patriarcha*, 290.
- Filmore, Millard, becomes president, 391; accepts the compromise, 391.
- "Finality Resolutions," 397.
- Finances, of the Revolution, 304, 306; superintendent of the, 316; of the Confederation, 319; organization of in 1789, 331; federal taxes, 343; Jefferson's policy, 345; reorganization in 1816, 356; under Jackson, 367-374; under Van Buren, 381; under Polk, 388; of the Confederacy, 412; of the Civil War, 419.
- Finch, J., *Travels*, \*81.
- Findley, W., *Insurrection in Pennsylvania*, 340.
- "Fiscal Bank" and "Fiscal Corporation," 382.
- Fischer, Theobald, *Raccolta di Mapamondi*, 229.
- Fisher, G. P., *Colonial Era*, \*44, 145.
- Fisher, S. G., *Trial of the Constitution*, 375.
- Fisher, W. C., *American Trade Regulations*, 322.
- Fisheries, in treaty of 1783, 303; convention of 1818, 356.
- Fiske, John, *School History*, 11, 42, \*43,

- 144; *Discovery of America*, 45, \*47, 146; *Beginnings of New England*, \*47; *American Revolution*, \*47; *Critical Period*, \*47; *Irving's Washington*, \*99.
- Fitch, Charles E., *George William Curtis*, \*80.
- Fitch, John, *Army of Cumberland*, 416.
- Fitzhugh, G., *Cannibals All*, 376.
- Fitzmaurice, Lord E., *Life of Shelburne*, \*98, 230, 289.
- "Five Per Cent Scheme," 319.
- Flanders, Henry, *Chief Justices*, 316.
- Flatbush, N. Y., history of, 68.
- Fletcher vs. Peck, case, 359.
- Fletcher, H. C., *American War*, 403.
- Fletcher, W. I., *A. L. A. Index to General Literature*, 34, \*37, 149.
- Florida, histories, \*59; *Records*, \*116; extent of, 239; annexation of, 309; secedes, 406.
- Florida, The, confederate cruiser, 421.
- Flower, G., *Edwards County* (Ill.), \*60.
- "Fluents," a school exercise, 154; in recitation, 223.
- Floyd, J. B., in Buchanan's cabinet, 408.
- Follett, M. P., *The Speaker*, 330.
- Folsom, George, *Despatches of Cortez*, 238; *Saco and Biddeford* (Maine), 275.
- Fonblanque, E. B. de, *John Burgoyne*, \*88, 206.
- Foote, H. S., *Texas*, \*75.
- Foote, S. A., *Dred Scott Decision*, 399.
- Foote, W. H., *North Carolina*, \*69; *Virginia*, \*76, 253, 287.
- Force Act (1833), 371.
- Force, Peter, *American Archives*, \*133; *Tracts*, \*133; manuscript collections, 135.
- Ford, H. A., and K. B., *Cincinnati* (O.), \*71.
- Ford, P. L., *Pamphlets on the Constitution*, 35; *Franklin Bibliography*, \*90; *Jefferson's Writings*, \*126; *Essays on the Constitution*, 324; *Pamphlets on the Constitution*, 324; *Bibliography and Reference List*, 326; *Bibliotheca Hamiltonia*, 333.
- Ford, T., *Illinois*, \*60.
- Ford, W. C., *Washington's Writings*, 127.
- Foreign relations, of the Confederation, 316, 321; under Washington, 337; under Jefferson, 345, 354; after 1815, 356; effect on of slavery, 379; under Tyler, 382; under Polk, 383-388; under Taylor, 394; under Pierce, 394; in Civil War, 420. — See foreign countries by name.
- Forney, J. W., *Anecdotes of Public Men*, \*129.
- Forrest, W. S., *Norfolk and Vicinity*, \*76.
- Forsyth, William, *Cases and Opinions*, \*118.
- Fort Donelson, capture, 415.
- Fort Duquesne, capture, 282.
- Fort Frontenac, capture, 282.
- Fort Henry, capture, 415.
- Fort Necessity, surrender, 282.
- Fort Sumter. — See Sumter.
- Fort Wayne (Ind.), history, \*60.
- Foster, F. H., *Seminary Method*, \*31.
- Foster, J. W., *Prehistoric Races*, 231.
- Foster, W. E., *References to the Constitution*, 34, \*35, 326; *References to Political Topics*, \*35; *Presidential Administrations*, 34, \*35; *Monthly Reference Lists*, \*35; *Stephen Hopkins*, \*92; *Town Government in Europe*, 314.
- Fourteenth Amendment, effect on Confederacy, 412.
- Fox, Charles James, biography, \*90.
- Fox, George, the Quaker, 261.
- Fox, G. L., *Study of Politics*, \*36.
- Fox, G. V., *Landfall of Columbus*, 235.
- France, feeble colonies of, 4; relations with America, 29; claims to America, 228; relations with England, 282; alliance with United States, 300; in Peace of 1783, 303; relations with Confederation, 321; effect of the Revolution of 1789, 334; relations with United States (1778-1796), 337; war with England (1793), 337; breach with (1797-1800), 340, 343; spoliation claims, 341; claims to Louisiana, 347; treaty of 1800, 350; aggressions on neutral trade (1793), 350; treaty of 1803, 350; decrees as to neutral trade, 350, 351; question of withdrawal, 351; difficulty with Jackson, 368; claim to Texas, 385; sympathy with South, 402; invasion of Mexico, 421; obliged to retire, 421. — See French.
- Franchère, G., *Narrative*, \*71.
- Frankland, biography of, 286.
- Franklin, Benjamin, biographies, \*90; bibliographies of, 90, 125; autobiography, 107, 145, 285; *Works*, \*125; in France, 300; negotiates treaty of 1783, 303; drafts plan of Confederation, 304.
- Franklin County (N. Y.), history, 69.
- Fredericksburg, battle, 415.
- Fredericq, P., on historical teaching in Europe, 33.
- Freeman, E. A., *Methods of Historical Study*, \*31; *Impressions of the United States*, \*81; *English Constitution*, 312.
- Freeman, F., *Cape Cod*, \*63.
- Fremantle, A. J., *Southern States*, 418.
- "Freeport Doctrine," 400.
- Free-soil Party, origin, 385; election of 1848, 390; election of 1852, 397; basis of Republican, 398.
- "Free Ships" in Napoleonic wars, 350.
- Frémont, Jessie Benton, *Memoirs*, \*129.
- Frémont, J. C., *Exploring Expedition*, \*81; *Memoirs*, \*81, \*129; campaign of 1856, 398; controversy with Lincoln, 425.
- French, The, treatment of Indians, 232; early discoveries of, 234; early explorers, 240, 264; settlements on the coast, 241, 242; explorations in interior, 243; settlement of Louisiana, 244; relations with the New England Confederation, 276; wars with the English (1690-1748),

- 281; French and Indian war, 282; race element, 310. — See France.
- French, B. F., *Historical Collections of Louisiana*, \*61, 242; *Historical Collections of Louisiana and Florida*, \*61.
- Freneau, Philip, *Poems*, \*141.
- Friends, in New England, 277; in the Southern Colonies, 277. — See New Jersey, Quakers, Pennsylvania.
- Fries, Insurrection (1799), 343.
- Frobisher, explorations of, 247.
- Froebel, Julius, *A Travers l'Amérique*, \*81.
- Frothingham, O. B., *Theodore Parker*, \*96; *Gerrit Smith*, \*98.
- Frothingham, Richard, *Rise of the Republic*, \*45; *Charlestown*, \*63; *Joseph Warren*, \*99; *Siege of Boston*, 295; *Bunker Hill*, 295.
- Froude, J. A., *Short Studies*, \*31; *Science of History*, \*31; *Scientific Method Applied to History*, \*31; *English Seamen*, 247; *History of England*, 247; *Calvinism*, 265.
- Fugitive slaves, in the colonies, 314; act of 1793, 336; in Washington, 378; question of, 379; cases before 1850, 390; act of 1850, 391, 393; cases (1850-1860), 393; tested in Ableman case, 393; act repealed (1864), 426. — See Slavery.
- Fuller, T., *Church History*, 265.
- "Fundamental Orders," of Connecticut, 274.
- Fundy, Bay of, settlement on, 242.
- Furnan, G., *Brooklyn*, \*67; *Long Island*, \*68, 286.
- Fusang legend, 234.
- GABRIEL**, slave insurrection, 375.
- Gadsden Purchase, 309, 387.
- Gaffarel, P., *Floride Française*, \*59, 239; *Histoire de la Découverte*, 234, 235; *Brésil Française*, 241.
- Gag resolutions, 378.
- Gallatin, Albert, biographies, \*90, *Writings*, \*125; Secretary of the Treasury, 345; on internal improvements, 356; on the tariff, 370, *North Eastern Boundary*, 384.
- Galloway, Joseph, *Candid Examination*, 304.
- Gambrall, T. C., *Church Life in Colonial Maryland*, 287.
- Gansev, fugitive slave, 379.
- Gannett, Henry, *Boundaries*, \*49, *Maps of the United States*, 51; physical maps, 52; *Scribner's Statistical Atlas*, \*53; *Mother Maps*, 310.
- Garden, Alexander, *Anecdotes*, \*129.
- Garden, G. de, *Traité*, \*54.
- Gardiner, S. R., *History of England*, 265; *Constitutional Documents*, 290, 312; *Students' History*, 311.
- Garfield, J. A., biography, \*90; *Works*, \*125.
- Garland, H. A., *John Randolph*, \*97.
- Garneau, F. X., *Histoire de Canada*, 243.
- Garner, Fugitive Slave Case, 393.
- Garrett, W. R., *South Carolina Cession*, 305.
- Garrison, F. J., and W. P., *Wm. Lloyd Garrison*, \*91.
- Garrison, W. L., biographies, \*91, *Writings*, 376; founds the *Liberator*, 376; mobbed, 377; on Secession, 404. — See Abolition, Slavery.
- Gaspée, Burning of the, 293.
- Gasparin. — See De Gasparin.
- Gay, S. H., *Bryant's Popular History*, 45, \*46; *James Madison*, \*95.
- Gayarré, C., *Histoire de la Louisiane*, 53, \*61; *Louisiana*, \*61.
- Geary, Governor, 396.
- Gee, J., *Trade and Navigation*, 285.
- General Histories, 45.
- "General Welfare," 333. — See Implied Powers.
- Genet, French minister, 337.
- "Gentlemen of Elvas," *Conquest of Terre Florida*, 239.
- Geography, historical, 23, 29, 48, 49, 53, 169-171; physical, 29, 50; topical work in, 209; of North America, 227-231, 309; ancient and mediæval, 234; political, of the United States, 309; in 1830, 366; in 1860, 402. — See Annexation, Boundaries, Territories, States.
- Geological Survey of the United States, 50.
- George III., *Correspondence*, 294.
- Georgia, histories, \*59; *Records*, \*116; settlement of, 257; boundaries, 257; condition of (1760), 288; in Revolutionary War, 301; claims to Western lands, 304; cedes claims to United States, 317, 336; ratifies constitution, 325; early insubordination, 330; Indian War (1795), 339; and J. Q. Adams, 364; secedes, 406; controversy with Confederacy, 412; campaign of 1864, 415.
- Georgia, The, Confederate cruiser, 421.
- Georgia Historical Society, publications, \*122.
- Gerard, J. W., *Peace of Utrecht*, \*54.
- German, Race Element, 310.
- Gerry, Elbridge, biography, \*91.
- Getchell, G. B., *Our Nation's Executives*, \*45.
- Gettysburg, battle, 415.
- Ghent, treaty of, 353.
- Ghillany, *Behaim*, 236.
- Gibbes, W. R., *Documentary History*, 296.
- Gibbons vs. Ogden, 334, 359.
- Gibbs, George, *Washington and Adams*, \*100.
- Gibson, James, *Journal of the Siege*, 281.
- Giddings, J. R., biography, \*91; *Speeches*, \*125; anti-slavery man, 378, 390; attempts to censure, 378; *History of the Rebellion*, 410.
- Gihon, J. H., *Geary and Kansas*, 397.
- Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, expeditions, 248.
- Giles, F. W., *Topeka (Kan.)*, \*60.
- Gillet, R. H., *Democracy*, 360.

- Gilman, Arthur, *People of the United States*, 44, \*45; *Boston*, \*63.
- Gilman, Caroline, *Recollections*, \*129; *New England Housekeeper*, \*138.
- Gilman, D. C., *James Monroe*, \*95.
- Gilmer, J. H., *Southern Politics*, 414; *Argument*, 414.
- Gilmore, J. R., *Rear Guard of the Revolution*, \*74; *John Sevier*, \*74; *Advance Guard of Western Civilization*, \*74.
- Girard, C., *États Confédérés*, 414.
- Girardin, L. H., *Continuation of Burk*, 302.
- Gist, Governor, 406.
- Gladstone, T. H., *Englishman in Kansas*, \*81.
- Gladstone, W. E., *Vaticanism*, 255.
- Glen, James, *South Carolina*, \*74, 288.
- Gneist, R., *English Constitution*, 312; *English Parliament*, 312.
- Gobright, L. A., *Recollections*, \*129.
- Goddard, H. P., *Luther Martin*, \*95.
- Goddard, S. A., *Letters*, 422.
- Goddard, *Bank of the United States*, 373.
- Gold, ratio of 16 to 1, 372; discovery in California, 390; during Civil War, 419.
- Goldsborough, *Naval Chronicle*, 341.
- Goldschmid, *Henry Hudson*, 258.
- Goldsmith, L., *Conduct of France*, 342.
- Gomara, *Conquista de México*, 238.
- Gomez, *Voyages*, 239.
- Goodell, W., *Slavery*, 314, 375; *Constitutional Law*, 378.
- Goodrich and Tuttle, *Indiana*, \*60.
- Goodrich, S. C., *Recollections*, \*129.
- Goodwin, D. R., *Slavery*, 376.
- Goodwin, J. A., *Pilgrim Republic*, \*64.
- Goodwin, T. S., *Secession*, 403.
- Gordon, George H., *Army of Virginia*, 416; *War Diary*, 418.
- Gordon, T. F., *New Jersey*, \*66; *Gazetteer of New York*, \*67; *Pennsylvania*, \*72.
- Gordon, W., *Revolution*, 289.
- Gordy and Twitchell, *Pathfinder in American History*, \*31, \*36.
- Gorges, Ferdinando, 268.
- Gorges, Robert, 268.
- Gorges Society, publications, 264.
- Gorton, S., biography, \*91; struggle with Massachusetts, 273; *Simplicities Defence*, 274.
- Gosnold, Bartholomew, in New England, 249.
- Goss, Elbridge H., *Colonel Paul Revere*, \*97.
- Goss, J. D., *Tariff Administration*, 332, 371.
- Gosse, E., *Raleigh*, 247.
- Gouge, W. M., *Texas*, \*75; *Paper Money*, 369.
- Gough, *Quakers*, 277.
- Gould, B. A., *Investigations*, 227.
- Gould, E. W., *Fifty Years on the Mississippi*, \*129.
- Gould, J., *Delaware County* (N. Y.), \*68.
- Graduate work in American history, 2; connections of, 7. — See Methods.
- Grafton (Mass.), history of, 63.
- Grafton, Duke of, ministry with Chatham, 291.
- Graham, James, *Daniel Morgan*, \*95.
- Grammar schools, American history in, 6, 23. — See Methods.
- Grant, Anne, *Memoirs*, \*129.
- Grant, General U. S., biographies, \*91; *Personal Memoirs*, \*129; campaigns, 415; *Report*, 417.
- Grants, Colonial. — See Charters.
- Granville (O.), history, \*70.
- Gray, W. H., *Oregon*, \*71.
- Gray and Lowell, *Case of Dred Scott*, 399.
- Graydon, A., *Memoirs*, \*129, 285.
- Grayson, Ordinance of 1785, 317.
- Greeley, Horace, *American Conflict*, \*47; biographies, \*91; *Recollections*, \*129; *Slavery Extension*, 386; Lincoln's influence, 410.
- Greeley (Col.), history, \*58.
- Green, J. R., *English People*, 46, 265.
- Green, S. A., *Records of Groton*, \*63.
- Greenbacks. — See Legal Tenders.
- Greene, D. H., *East Greenwich*, 273, 286.
- Greene, F. V., *General Greene*, \*91.
- Greene, G. W., *Historical View*, \*56, 296; *Rhode Island*, \*74; *Nathaniel Greene*, \*91; *German Element*, 298.
- Greene, Nathaniel, biographies, \*91; southern campaign of, 301.
- Greenhow, R., *Northwest Coast*, \*71; *Oregon and California*, \*71.
- Grenville, G., *Papers*, 289.
- Grenville, colony of, 248.
- Greenwood, J. M., on teaching, 32.
- Griffin, A. P. C., *Bibliography of Historical Societies*, \*122.
- Griffis, W. E., *Sir William Johnson*, \*93; *Matthew Galbraith Perry*, \*96.
- Griffith, T. W., *Annals of Baltimore*, 287.
- Grijalva, 236, 238.
- Grimké, A. H., *William Lloyd Garrison*, \*91; *Charles Sumner*, \*99.
- Grimké, J. F., *Laws of South Carolina*, \*116.
- Grimké (sisters), biography, 377.
- Griswold, W. M., *A Descriptive List of Novels*, \*137.
- Griswold, R. W., *Republican Court*, 330.
- Grosvenor, *Does Protection Protect?* 384.
- Groton, history, \*63; *Records*, 272.
- Grund, F. J., *The Americans*, \*82.
- Guadeloupe Hidalgo, Treaty of, 387.
- Guild, R. A., *Chaplain Smith*, 285.
- Guilford, battle of, 301.
- Gunboat system, 345, 350.
- Gurowski, Adam, *America*, 375; *Slavery*, 379.
- HABEAS CORPUS, in Burr's conspiracy, 349; in Civil War, 423.
- Hackett, F. W., *Portsmouth Records*, \*110.
- Hadden, J. M., *Orderly Books*, 298.
- Hadley (Mass.), history of, 63.



- Hagerman, J. F., *Princeton* (N. J.), 298.  
 Hale, E. E., historical novels, \*138;  
*Washington*, \*100; *Franklin in France*,  
 300.  
 Hale, J. P., *Trans-Alleghany Pioneers*,  
 395; anti-slavery activity, 390.  
 Hale, Nathan, biography, \*91.  
 Haliburton, Thomas C., *The Clockmaker*,  
*Samuel Slick*, \*138; *Rule and Misrule*,  
 280.  
 Hall, Basil, *Voyages and Travels*, \*82;  
*Forty Etchings*, \*82.  
 Hall, B. H., *Eastern Vermont*, \*75.  
 Hall, G. S., *Methods*, \*31, 33.  
 Hall and Mansfield, *Bibliography*, \*30.  
 Hall, H., *Ethan Allen*, \*87.  
 Hall, James, *Sketches of the West*, \*82;  
*Letters from the West*, \*82.  
 Hall, S. C., *Retrospect*, \*129.  
 Halleck, H. W., *International Law*, 300.  
 Halloway, J. N., *Kansas*, \*60.  
 Hallowell, Mrs. A. D., *James and Lucretia Mott*, \*96.  
 Hallowell, R. P., *Quaker Invasion*, 277.  
 Hakluyt, R., *Principall Navigations*,  
 232; *Western Planting*, 248.  
 Hakluyt Society, publications, \*133.  
 Hammersley, L. R., *The Navy*, 416.  
 Hamilton (Mass.), history of, 64.  
 Hamilton, Alexander, biographies, \*91,  
 \*92, 349; *Works*, \*125; *Reports*, 331;  
 as a party leader, 334; *Conduct of John Adams*, 334; question of military command, 340; attack on Adams, 343.  
 Hamilton, Gail (*pseud.*), *J. G. Blaine*,  
 \*88.  
 Hamilton, J. A., *Reminiscences*, \*129.  
 Hamilton, J. C., *Alexander Hamilton*,  
 \*91.  
 Hamilton, Luther, *Robert Rantoul*, \*97.  
 [Hamilton, Thomas], *Men and Manners*,  
 \*82.  
 Hamlet, fugitive slave, 393.  
 Hammond, J., *Leah and Rachael*, 255.  
 Hammond, J. D., *Parties in New York*,  
 \*67, 326.  
 Hamor, R., *Discourse of Virginia*, 251.  
 Hampton (N. H.), settlement, 275.  
 Hancock, John, biography, \*92.  
 Hancock, Mrs., *W. S. Hancock*, 129.  
 Hancock, W. S., biographies, \*92, 129.  
 Handlin, W. W., *American Politics*,  
 405.  
 Hanger, Col. George, *Life, Adventures*,  
 \*129.  
 Hannay, J., *Acadia*, 242, 281.  
 Harding, S. B., *Ratification by Massachusetts*, 326.  
 Hardwick (Mass.), history, \*63.  
 Hare, J. I. C., *Constitutional Law*, 323.  
 Harriot, Thomas, *Narrative of Virginia*,  
 233, 249.  
 Harlem (N. Y.), history, \*68.  
 Harper, W., *Pro-Slavery Argument*,  
 376.  
 Harper's, *Cyclopædia of United States History*, \*40; *Great Rebellion*, 416.  
 Harper's Ferry, John Brown raid, 399.  
 Harriman, W., *Warner* (N. H.), \*66.  
 Harrington, J., *Oceana*, 290.  
 Harris, Alex., *Political Conflict*, 378.  
 Harris, T. M., *Journal of a Tour*, \*82.  
 Harris and McHenry, *Maryland Reports*,  
 \*117.  
 Harrison, Frederick, *Meaning of History*,  
 \*31.  
 Harrison, Wm. H., elected president,  
 382; death, 382.  
 Harrisse, H., *Christopher Columbus*,  
 235; *John Cabot*, 246; *Jean et Sebastian Cabot*, 246; *Discovery*, 246.  
 Harsha, W. J. J., *Iowa*, \*60.  
 Hart, A. B., *Studies in American Education*, \*31; *Revised Suggestions*, \*31;  
*High and Preparatory Schools*, 32;  
 on entrance requirements, 32; on the study of history, 32; *Federal Government*, \*35; *Epochs of American History*, 44, \*45; *Formation of the Union*, \*45; *Epoch Maps*, 52, \*53, 144; *American History Leaflets*, \*133; *Harvard Debates*, 174.  
 Hart, C. H., *Robert Morris*, \*95.  
 Hart, F. B., *Thankful Blossom*, \*138.  
 Hart, J. C., *Miriam Coffin*, \*138.  
 Hartford County (Conn.), histories, \*59.  
 Hartford Convention (1814), 355.  
 Hartwell, Blair, and Chilton, *Present State of Virginia*, 253.  
 Harvard College Library, Card Catalogue,  
 \*38.  
*Harvard Historical Studies*, 55.  
 Harvey, Governor of Virginia, 252.  
 Harvey, Peter, *Daniel Webster*, \*100,  
 129.  
 Haskins, C. H., *Yazoo Land Companies*,  
 337.  
 Haskins, N., *Vermont*, \*75.  
 Hass, W. de, *Western Virginia*, \*76.  
 Hatfield, E. F., *Elizabeth* (N. J.), \*66.  
 Haven, C. C., *Annals of Trenton*, 298.  
 Haven, S. F., *Archæology*, 231; *Grants under the Council*, 268.  
 Haverhill (Mass.), history, \*64.  
 Hawks, F. L., *North Carolina*, \*60.  
 Hawks and Perry, *Documentary History of Episcopal Church*, \*109.  
 Hawkins, W. G., *Lunsford Lane*, 394.  
 Hayburn's case, 359.  
 Hayden's Survey, 50.  
 Hayne, R. Y., debate with Webster, 370.  
 Haynes, G. H., *Representation and Suffrage in Massachusetts*, 271, 313.  
 Hayti, relations with, 379.  
 Haywood, J., *Tennessee*, \*74.  
 Hawthorne, N., *Franklin Pierce*, \*96;  
 historical novels, \*138.  
 Hazard, Ebenezer, *Historical Collections*,  
 \*133.  
 Hazard, S., *Pennsylvania*, \*72; *Register of Pennsylvania*, \*102; *Pennsylvania Archives*, \*114.  
 Hazen, C. D., *American Opinion of the French Revolution*, 338.  
 Hazen, W. B., *Narrative*, 418.  
 Headly, J. C., *Great Rebellion*, 416.

- Heath, Sir Robert, Grant of Carolana, 255.  
 Heath, Gen. Wm., *Memoirs*, 298.  
 Heaton, J. L., *Vermont*, \*76.  
 Heckewelder, J., *Indian Nations*, 233.  
 Helper, H. R., *Impending Crisis*, 376.  
 Helps, Arthur, *Spanish Conquest*, 235; *Life of Pizarro*, 238; *Life of Cortez*, 238.  
 Hening, W. W., *Statutes-at-Large of Virginia*, \*115.  
 Hennepin, on Mississippi, 243.  
 Henry, Mission, the (1809), 351.  
 Henry, J. B., *Messages of Buchanan*, 407.  
 Henry, J. J., *Accurate Account*, 296.  
 Henry, Patrick, biographies, \*92.  
 Henry, W. W., *Patrick Henry*, \*92.  
 Hepburn vs. Griswold, 420.  
 Herndon and Weik, *Abraham Lincoln*, \*94.  
 Herrera, A. des, *Historia General*, 236.  
 Hessians, in Revolution, 298.  
 Hewatt, A., *South Carolina and Georgia*, \*74, 256, 257.  
 Hewes and Gannett, *Scribner's Statistical Atlas*, \*53.  
 Hickey, W., *Constitution*, 370.  
 Higginson, Francis, biography, \*92; *New England's Plantation*, 269; *Voyage*, 269.  
 Higginson, T. W., *Young Folks' History*, 42, \*43, 144; *Larger History*, 44, \*45, 145; *Francis Higginson*, \*92; *Wendell Phillips*, \*96; *English History*, 311; *Army Life*, 418.  
 High Schools. — See Methods.  
 "Higher Law," on slavery, 393.  
 Hildreth, R., *History*, 45, \*47; on geography, 49; *The Slave*, \*139; *Banks*, 332; *Despotism*, 375.  
 Hildreth, S. P., *Pioneer History*, \*71.  
 Hill, D. G., *Dedham Records*, \*111, 272.  
 Hill, H. A., *Abbott Lawrence*, \*93.  
 Hill, William, *Colonial Tariffs*, 313; *First Stages of the Tariff*, 313.  
 Hillard, G. S., *G. B. McClellan*, \*94; *Jeremiah Mason*, \*95.  
 Hillegas, Michael, *Journals of the House of Representatives of Pennsylvania*, \*114.  
 Hincks, Sir Francis, *Boundaries*, 384.  
 Hines, G., *Oregon*, \*72.  
 Hingham (Mass.), history, \*64.  
 Hinman, R. R., *Blue Laws of New Haven*, 275; *Antiquities of Connecticut*, 286.  
 Hinsdale, B. A., *How to Study and Teach History*, \*30; *Old Northwest*, 48, \*49, 71, 228, 318; *Bounding the United States*, \*49; *Right by Discovery*, 222; *American Government*, 313.  
 Historical geography, sources, 48, 53, 169-171, 227-231, 309-310. — See Annexations, Boundaries, Geography, States, Territories.  
 Historical novels, lists of, 137-140.  
 Historical Societies, publications of, 2, 122-124; manuscripts in, 135.  
*History of the British Dominions*, \*55.  
 Hitchcock, Henry, *State Constitutions*, 306.  
 Hittell, J. S., *San Francisco*, \*58.  
 Hittell, T. H., *California*, \*58.  
 Hoadly, C. J., *New Haven Records*, \*112.  
 Hobbes, T., *Philosophical Rudiments*, 290; *Leviathan*, 290.  
 Hodges, *Presbyterian Church*, 285.  
 Hodgson, Adam, *Letters from North America*, \*82.  
 Hodgson, Joseph, *Troup, Quitman, and Yancey*, \*101; *Cradle of the Confederacy*, 379.  
 Holland, American colonies of, 258; English emigrants in, 265. — See Dutch.  
 Holland, J. C., *Abraham Lincoln*, \*94; *Bay-Path*, \*139; *Arthur Bonnicastle*, \*139.  
 Hollister, G. H., *Connecticut*, \*58.  
 Holm, T. C., *Nya Swerige*, \*59; *New Sweden*, \*59.  
 Holmes, Abiel, historical influence, 1; *Cambridge*, \*63.  
 Holmes, Arthur, *Parties and Principles*, 335.  
 Holmes, Isaac, *Account of the U. S.*, \*82.  
 Holmes, O. W., *Ralph Waldo Emerson*, \*90; *John Lothrop Motley*, \*95; historical novels, \*139.  
 Holloway and French, *Index of Claims*, \*39.  
 Holst, H. Von. — See Von Holst, H.  
 Holy Alliance (1815), 361.  
 Hone, Philip, *Diary*, \*129.  
 Hooker, Richard, *Ecclesiastical Polity*, 290.  
 Hooker, Thomas, biography, \*92.  
 Hopkins, J. H., *Slavery*, 376.  
 Hopkins, Stephen, biography, \*92; *True Representation*, 283; *Rights of Colonies*, 289.  
 Hopkinson, Francis, *Battle of the Kegs*, \*141.  
 Horry, Peter, *Francis Marion*, 302.  
 Horsmanden, D., *Negro Plot*, 260.  
 Hosack, David, *De Witt Clinton*, \*89.  
 Hosmer, J. K., *Samuel Adams*, \*87; *Sir Henry Vane*, \*99; *Anglo-Saxon Freedom*, 323.  
 Hotchkiss, J. H., *Western New York*, \*69.  
 Hough, F. B., *Jefferson County (N. Y.)*, \*68; *Lewis County (N. Y.)*, \*68; *St. Lawrence and Franklin Counties (N. Y.)*, \*69; *Nantucket Papers*, \*112; *American Constitutions*, \*133; *Charleston*, 302; *Savannah*, 302.  
 House of Representatives. — See Congress, Compromises, Internal Improvements.  
 Houston vs. Moore, 358.  
 Houston, D. F., *Nullification*, 371.  
 Houston, Samuel, biographies, \*192.  
 Houston, W., *Documents*, \*109.  
 Hovey, Alvah, *Rev. Isaac Backus*, \*87.  
 Howard, Benjamin, *Reports of the Supreme Court*, \*121.



- Howard, G. E., *Local Constitutional History*, 271.
- Howard, O. O., *General Taylor*, \*99.
- Howe, H., *Ohio*, \*71.
- Howe, S. G., *Refugees from Slavery*, 393.
- Howe, General Sir William, American campaign, 298, 299; *Narrative*, 298.
- Howell, G. R., *Southampton (L. I.)*, \*69.
- Hoyt, *Luzerne Townships (Pa.)*, 299.
- Hubbard, W., *Troubles with the Indians*, 278.
- Hudson, C., *History of Lexington (Mass.)*, 295.
- Hudson, Frederic, *History of Journalism*, \*104.
- Hudson, Henry, explorations, 258.
- Hughes, John, biography of, \*92.
- Hughes, J. L., on topical teaching, 32.
- Hughes, John T., *Doniphan's Expedition*, \*82.
- Hughes, R. M., *General Johnston*, 417.
- Huguenots, American settlements, 241.
- Huling, R. G., on secondary education, 32.
- Hull, William, biography of, \*92.
- Humboldt, A. Von, *Examen Critique*, 236, 237.
- Hunt, C. E., *The Shenandoah*, 418.
- Hunt, C. H., *Edward Livingston*, \*94.
- Hunt, R. D., *California's First Constitution*, 391.
- Hunter, C. L., *Western North Carolina*, \*69.
- Hunter, General, raises negro troops, 425.
- Hurd, J. C., *Freedoms and Bondage*, 315; *Theory of National Existence*, 327; *The Union-State*, 405.
- Hurd, R. C., *Habeas Corpus*, 312.
- Huron, Lake, discovered, 242.
- Hutchinson, Anne, biography, \*92; controversy as to, 272.
- Hutchinson, P. O., *Letters of Thomas Hutchinson*, 295.
- Hutchinson, T., *Massachusetts*, \*62; *Papers*, \*110; *Diary and Letters*, \*125, 129; "Hutchinson Letters," 294, 295.
- Hylacomylus, *Cosmographi*, 237.
- Hylton vs. the United States, case, 358.
- I**BERVILLE, in Louisiana, 244.
- Icazbalceta, J. G., *Coleccion*, 236.
- Iceland, American settlements identified, 264.
- Idaho, histories, \*77.
- Illinois, histories, \*60; explored, 243; part of Louisiana, 244; admitted, 360.
- Illustrative material and methods, 23, 135-142, 171. — See Methods.
- Immigration, 214, 310; in 1830, 366. — See Internal Improvements, Lands, People, Territories.
- "Impending Crisis," controversy (1859), 400.
- Implied Powers, doctrine of, 333; Supreme Court cases, 358. — See Bank, Constitution, Internal Improvements, Legal Tenders, Supreme Court, Tariff.
- Impressment, question in 1794, 337; renewed, 350; leads to war (1812), 352; waived (1814), 353; disposed of (1842), 383.
- Income tax, Civil War, 419.
- Indentured servants, in the colonies, 314.
- Independence, Declaration of, 296, 297.
- "Independent Democrats," *Appeal*, 395.
- "Independent Treasury," established, 381; repealed, 381, 382; revived, 388. — See Finance.
- Indexes, 37, 38, 108.
- "Indian Country," organized, 394.
- Indian Territory, 373.
- Indiana, histories, \*60; admitted, 360.
- Indianapolis, history, \*60.
- Indians, The, in 1492, 232; policies as to, of England, France, and Spain, 232; and the French, 243, 244; the massacre in Virginia, 250; and the Dutch, 258; and the English in New York, 259; and the Pilgrims, 266; and the New England Confederation, 276; King Philip's War, 277; employed by French against English, 281; Pontiac's conspiracy, 288; as a race element, 310; slavery of, 314; under Confederation, 320; wars (1790-1795), 339; war (1811), 352; British intrigues with, 352; Seminole War, 359; under J. Q. Adams, 364; under Jackson, 373; Black Hawk War, 373. — See Indian Territory.
- Ingersoll, C., *Fears for Democracy*, 324.
- Ingersoll, C. J., *Second War*, 353.
- Ingersoll, L. D., *Iowa*, \*60.
- Ingham, on the Bank, 369.
- Instrument of Government*, 290.
- Insurrections, slave, 314, 375; Whiskey, 339; Fries, 343; Burr, 348; Dorr, 382; John Brown, 399; principle of suppression, 408; Civil War, 405-427.
- Internal improvements, Jefferson's policy, 345; in 1817, 356; constitutionality of, 333, 356; under J. Q. Adams, 364; under Jackson, 373; by states, 381; status (1829-1849), 388; forbidden to Confederacy, 412. — See Constitution, Commerce, Implied Powers.
- "Interposition," theory of, 327; in 1798, 342. — See Nullification, Secession.
- "Intervention," 362, 363.
- Ipswich (Mass.), history, \*64.
- Investigation, in American history, 25; application in schools, 26; in colleges, 26; in graduate schools, 26. — See Methods.
- Iowa, histories of, \*60.
- Iredell, James, biography, \*92.
- Irish, legendary explorers, 234; race element, 310.
- Irving, Theodore, *Conquest of Florida*, 239.
- Irving, W., *Astoria*, \*72; *Columbus*, \*89; biographies, \*92; *Washington*, \*100; *Knickerbocker History*, \*139; *Companions of Columbus*, 236.

- Isham, Charles, *Silas Deane*, 300; *Fishery Question*, 354.
- Izard, Ralph, *Correspondence*, \*125.
- JACKSON, Andrew, biographies, \*92, 93, 369; and Burr, 348; in the Floridas, 359; defeated for the presidency (1824-1825), 364; president, 366-374; policy, 367-373; war on Bank, 369; nullification, 370; removal of deposits, 372; controversy with Senate, 372; opposes internal improvements, 388. — See Bank, Civil Service, Deposits, Indians, Surplus, Tariff.
- Jackson, Helen Hunt, historical novels, \*139.
- Jackson, "Stonewall," biographies, 417.
- Jacob, J. J., *Captain Michael Cresap*, \*89, 287.
- James I (King of England), religious persecutions, 265; *Works*, 290.
- James, E., *Expedition under Major Long*, \*83, 348.
- James, W., *Military Occurrences*, 353; *Naval Occurrences*, 354; *Naval History*, 354.
- Jameson, John A., *Constitutional Conventions*, 306.
- Jameson, J. F., *Introduction to the States*, 306; *Essays*, 316.
- Jamestown, settlement, 250.
- Janney, S. M., *William Penn*, \*96; *Friends*, 262.
- Janson, C. W., *Stranger in America*, \*82.
- Janvier, T. A., *In Old New York*, \*68.
- Jay, John (1st), biographies, \*93; *Correspondence*, \*125; in negotiations of 1782, 303; treaty of 1794, 337; treaty expires, 350; boundaries under, 383.
- Jay, John (2d), on American history, 32; *Peace Negotiations*, 303.
- Jay, Wm., *John Jay*, \*93; *Writings on Slavery*, \*126, 362; *Mexican War*, 387.
- Jefferson, T., *Notes on Virginia*, \*76, 147; biographies, \*93; *Virginia Reports*, \*117; bibliography, \*126; *Writings*, \*126; *Anas*, \*129; manuscripts, 135; *Summary View*, 290; ordinance of 1784, 317; plan of coinage, 319; on slavery and the slave-trade, 320; assumption — capital compromise, 331; as a party leader, 334; election of 1800, 343; political history of, 345; and Louisiana purchase, 347; at Burr's trial, 349; policy as to neutral trade, 350; embargo policy, 351; and the Supreme Court, 358; on Cuba, 394. — See Courts, Declaration of Independence, Democrats, Finance, Republicans.
- Jefferson County (N. Y.), history, \*68.
- Jenkins, J. S., *Political Parties in New York*, \*67; *John C. Calhoun*, \*88; *James K. Polk*, \*97; *Silas Wright*, \*100.
- Jennens, J. S., *Documents relating to New Hampshire*, 276.
- Jennings, I., *Memorial of a Century* (Bennington), \*76.
- Jesuits, *Relations*, 243.
- Jogues, Father Isaac, *Novum Belgium*, 258.
- Johns Hopkins University, *Studies*, \*102.
- Johnson, Albert Sidney, biography, 417.
- Johnson, Andrew, biography, \*93.
- Johnson, B. T., *General Washington*, \*100.
- Johnson, E., *Wonder-working Providence*, 270.
- Johnson, J., *Old Maryland Manors*, 313.
- Johnson, Oliver, *William Lloyd Garrison*, \*91.
- Johnson, Reverdy, *Popular Sovereignty*, 395.
- Johnson, Rossiter, *History of the War*, 410.
- Johnson, William, *Nathaniel Greene*, \*91.
- Johnson, William P., *Albert Sidney Johnson*, 417.
- Johnson, Sir William, biography, 93.
- Johnson's Cyclopædia*, \*40.
- Johnston, Alexander, in Lalor's *Cyclopædia*, \*35; *School History*, 33, 42, \*43, 144 (maps in), 53; *American Politics*, 44, \*45, 145; *The United States*, 44, \*45; *Connecticut*, \*58; *American Orations*, \*133; *Genesis of Connecticut Towns*, 271.
- Johnston, G., *Cecil County (Md.)*, \*62.
- Johnston, H. P., *Campaign of 1776*, 298; *Yorktown Campaign*, 302.
- Johnston, J. E., *Military Operations*, \*130; biography of, 417.
- Johnston, R. M., historical novels, \*139; (with Browne, W. H.), *Alexander H. Stephens*, \*98.
- Joliet, discovers Mississippi River, 243.
- Jomard, E. F., *Monuments de la Géographie*, 220.
- Jones, C. C., *Georgia*, \*59; *Acts of Georgia*, \*116; *Antiquities*, 233; *Transactions of the Trustees*, 257; *Delegates of Georgia*, 292.
- Jones, J. B., *Rebel War Clerk's Diary*, 414.
- Jones, J. W., *R. E. Lee*, \*94.
- Jones, L. A., *Index to Legal Periodicals*, 34, \*37.
- Jones, Paul, biography, \*93.
- Jones, Th., *New York*, 295.
- Jones, W. C., *Papers and References*, \*36.
- Josselyn, John, *Account of Two Voyages*, \*82, 272.
- Journals, of Colonial Assemblies, \*107-118; of Continental Congress, \*119; of Congress of the U. S., \*119.
- Journal of Geology*, 50.
- Judd, S., *Hadley (Mass.)*, \*63; *Margaret*, 139.
- Judges. — See Courts, Supreme Court.
- Judiciary, digests of decisions, 119; reports of, \*121; topics on, 214; organized

- (1789), 329; act of 1800, 343; repealed, 345.—See Courts, Supreme Court.
- Judson, H. P., on history in secondary schools, 32.
- Juilliard vs. Greenman, 334, 420.
- Julian, George W., *Joshua R. Giddings*, \*91, 337; *Political Recollections*, \*130.
- Jurisdiction.—See Judiciary.
- K**ALB, John, biography, \*93.
- Kalm, Peter, *Travels into North America*, \*82.
- Kansas, histories of, \*60; attempts to organize, 395; settlement of, 396; territorial government, 396; civil war, 396; Lecompton Constitution, 396; deadlock in Congress, 398; admission, 396, 402.
- Kansas State Historical Society, *Transactions*, \*122.
- Kapp, F., *John Kalb*, \*93, 302; *William Von Steuben*, \*98, 299; *Amerika*, \*130; *Skavenfrage*, 375; *Geschichte der Sklaverei*, 395.
- Kaysersling, *Christopher Columbus*, 235.
- Kearny, J. W., *American Finances*, 332.
- Keith vs. Clark, 405.
- Kelley, H. J., *Oregon and Upper California*, \*72.
- Kemble, Frances Ann, *Journal*, \*80; *Records of Later Life*, \*130.
- Kendall, Amos, *Autobiography*, \*130; on abolition, 378.
- Kendall, E. A., *Travels*, \*82.
- Kendall, G. W., *Texan Santa Fé Expedition*, \*75.
- Kennedy, fugitive-slave case, 379.
- Kennedy, J. P., *William Wirt*, \*100, 379; historical novels, \*139.
- Kennedy, W., *Texas*, \*75.
- Kennedy, W. S., *J. G. Whittier*, \*100.
- Kent, James, *Commentaries*, 316.
- Kentucky, histories, \*61; admitted, 336; Resolutions, 342; adheres to Union, 410; slavery ceases, 425.
- Kentucky vs. Denison, case, 379, 394.
- Kercheval, S., *Valley of Virginia*, \*76.
- Kerr, C. H., *Senate*, 330.
- Kerr, Orpheus C.—See Newell, R. H.
- Kerts, Sir Thomas, captures Quebec, 242.
- Ketchum, W., *Buffalo* (N. Y.), \*67.
- Keyes, E. D., *Fifty Years' Observation*, \*130.
- Kidder, F., *Boston Massacre*, 293.
- King, C. C., *George Washington*, \*100.
- King, C. R., *Rufus King*, 318.
- King, D., *Thomas W. Dorrr*, 382.
- King, Grace, *Sieur de Bienville*, \*88, 244; *Monsieur Motte*, \*139.
- King Horatio, *Turning on the Light*, 406.
- King Philip's War, 277.
- King, R. (1st), biography and correspondence, 318; on slavery in 1785, 320.
- King, R. (2d), *Ohio*, \*71.
- King's Mountain, battle of, 301.
- King's Survey, 50.
- Kingsford, William, *History of Canada*, \*109.
- Kingsley, Charles, *Westward Ho!* \*139.
- Kingston (N. Y.), history, \*68.
- Kinley, David, *Independent Treasury*, 389.
- Kinney, J. K., *Digest*, \*119.
- "Kitchen Cabinet," Jackson's, 367.
- Knapp, H. S., *Maumee Valley*, \*71.
- Knight, John, *Journal of the Voyage*, \*82.
- Knowles, J. D., *Roger Williams*, \*100, 273.
- Know Nothing Party, 397.
- Knox County (O.), history, \*71.
- Knox, Henry, biography, \*93.
- Knox, J. J., *United States Notes*, 357.
- Knox vs. Lee, 420.
- Koch, C. W. de, *Abregé de l'Histoire des Traités de Paix*, \*54.
- Kohl, J. G., *Discovery of Maine*, 229.
- Kretschmer, *Entdeckung Amerikas*, 229.
- Kunstmann, F., *Entdeckung Amerikas*, 229.
- L**ABOULAYE, E. R. L., *Paris en Amérique*, \*82; *Paris in America*, \*82.
- Laboulaye, F., *Separation*, 403.
- Labrador, discovery, 246.
- La Cosa, J. De, *Map*, 236.
- Ladd, H. O., *New Mexico*, \*67.
- "Lady of Virginia," *Diary*, 414.
- Lafayette, Marquis de, biographies, \*93; *Memoirs*, 299; in Virginia, 301.
- Lafitau, J. F., *Mœurs des Sauvages*, 232.
- La Harpe, B. de, *Journal Historique*, 244.
- Lake Champlain.—See Champlain.
- Lake Erie, battle of, 352.
- Lake of the Woods, boundary, 383.
- Lalor, J. J., *Cyclopædia of Political Science*, \*40.
- Lamb, Gen. John, biography, \*93.
- Lamb, Mrs. M. J., *City of New York*, \*68; *Homes of America*, 285.
- Lambert, E. R., *New Haven Colony*, \*58.
- L'Amistad, case of, 380.
- Lancaster (Mass.), *Records*, \*111.
- Lancaster County (Penn.), history, \*72, \*73.
- Landfall of Columbus, 235.
- Landon, J. S., *Constitutional History*, 44, \*45, 146.
- Land Office Map*, 52.
- Lands, claims to western, 304; cessions of, 304, 305, 306, 317, 336; proceeds of sales of, 331; Supreme Court cases, 358; under Jackson, 373.—See Annexations, Territories.
- Lane, W. C., *Reference Lists*, \*35.
- Langworthy, Edward, *Charles Lee*, \*94.
- Lanier, S., *Florida*, \*59.
- Lanman, C., *Biographical Annals*, \*40.
- Lanman, J. H., *Michigan*, \*64.
- Larcom, Lucy, *A New England Girlhood*, \*139.
- Larned, E. D., *Windham County* (Conn.), \*58, 274.
- Larned, J. N., *History for Ready Reference*, \*40.

- La Salle, explores Mississippi, 243; attempt at colonization, 244.
- Latin Americans, contribution to history, 4.
- Latin colonization, 238-245.
- La Tour and D'Aulnay, 242.
- Laudonnière, R., Huguenot leader, 241; *Histoire de la Floride*, 232, 241.
- Lauer, P. E., *Church and State in New England*, 271.
- Laughton, J. K., *The Armada*, 247.
- Law, John, Mississippi Bubble, 244.
- Lawrence (Kan.), founded, 396; sacked, 396.
- Lawrence, Abbott, biography, \*93.
- Lawrence, Amos, biography, \*93; *Diary*, \*126.
- Lawrence, W., *Amos A. Lawrence*, \*93.
- Laws, of the States, \*107-118; of the United States, \*120. — See Congress, Courts, etc.
- Lawson, J., *Description of North Carolina*, 288.
- Lawton, G. W., *Caucus System*, 335.
- Leake, I. Q., *General John Lamb*, \*93.
- Leaming, Aaron, and Spicer, Jacob, *Grants of New Jersey*, \*113, 261.
- Learned societies, proceedings of, 122-124.
- Leavitt, Joshua, *Monroe Doctrine*, 363.
- Lechford, T., *Plain Dealing*, 272; *Journal*, 272.
- Lecky, W. E. H., *England*, 47, 147, 284.
- Leclerc, *Premier Etablissement de la Foire*, 243.
- Lecompton Constitution, 396; effect on Douglas, 396; Lincoln against, 400.
- Le Comte, *Guerre de la Sécession*, 416.
- Lectures, by students, 174; by teachers, 198; in colleges, 199. — See Methods.
- Lee, Arthur, biography, \*94; in France, 300.
- Lee, Charles, biographies, \*94; treason of, 299; *Papers*, 299.
- Lee, D., and Frost, J. H., *Ten Years in Oregon*, \*129.
- Lee, F. D., *History of Savannah* (Ga.), 288.
- Lee, Henry, *Memoirs*, 302.
- Lee, R. E., biographies, \*94; surrender, 415.
- Lee, R. H., biography, \*94; *Arthur Lee*, \*94, 300; Resolutions (1776), 296.
- Lee, W., *Letters*, \*126.
- Legal tenders, implied powers, 333; Supreme Court cases, 334, 419, 420. — See Banks, Finance.
- Legaré, H. S., *Writings*, \*126.
- Legislative department, organization, 329. — See Congress.
- Leif, the explorer, 234.
- Leisler, J., "rebellion" in New York, 259; *Papers*, 259.
- Leland, Charles G., *Abraham Lincoln*, \*94.
- Lelewel, J., *Géographie du Moyen Age*, 229.
- Lenox Library, 26.
- Leopard, attacks the Chesapeake, 350.
- Lery, de, *Voyage en Brésil*, 241.
- Lescarbot, *Histoire de la Nouvelle France*, 232.
- Leslie, Emma, *Saxby*, \*139.
- Lester, *Life of Vesputius*, 237.
- Lester, C. E., *Houston*, 386.
- Levermore, C. H., *New Haven* (Conn.), \*58.
- Lewis, Major, Jackson's director, 367.
- Lewis, Sir G. C., *Government of Dependencies*, 284; *Observation in Politics*, 290; *Administrations of Great Britain*, 301.
- Lewis, V. A., *West Virginia*, \*77.
- Lewis and Clark Expedition, 83, 347; *Travels*, 384; *Expedition to the Pacific*, 384.
- Lewis County (N. Y.), history, \*68.
- Lexington (Ky.), history, \*61.
- Lexington (Mass.), battle of, 294.
- Leypoldt, F., and Jones, L. E., etc., *American Catalogue*, 34, \*37.
- Libby, O. G., *Vote of the Thirteen States*, 324.
- Liberator. — See Garrison, W. L.
- Liberia, 361; relations with, 379. — See American Colonization Society.
- Liberty, sloop, seizure of, 293.
- Liberty Party, organized, 377; in election of 1844, 385. — See Republican.
- Libraries, development of, 3; necessity of, 143; small collections, 144-148; use of public, 148; great libraries, 149; reserved system, 150.
- Library of American Literature*, \*41.
- Library of Congress, *Catalogue*, \*38.
- Lieber, Francis, biography, \*94.
- Lincoln, Abraham, biographies, \*94, 412; *Complete Works*, \*126; Reminiscences of, \*131; in Congress, 390, 410; debates with Douglas, 396, 400, 410; nominated for presidency, 400; elected, 400, 410; defeats compromise, 408; early life, 410; attitude on compromise, 410; inaugurated, 410; Confederate commission, 410; decides to reinforce Sumter, 410; calls for volunteers, 410; proclaims blockade, 410, 420; connection with military operations, 415; Trent affair, 421; administration, 423; habeas corpus, 423; election of 1864, 423; emancipation proclamations, 425.
- Lincoln, A., and Douglas, S. A., *Political Debates*, \*133.
- Lincoln, Gen. B., Southern campaign, 301.
- Lincoln, W., *Journals of Provincial Congresses*, \*110.
- Linn, J. B., and Egle, W. H., *Pennsylvania Archives*, \*114.
- Linn, P., *Considerations on the Election*, 334.
- Literature, an adjunct to history, 22; in 1830, 366; in 1860, 402.
- Little, L. P., *Ben Hardin*, \*130.
- Livermore, George, *Historical Research*, 321.

- Livingston, Edward, biography, \*94.  
 Livingston, William, biography, \*94.  
 Lloyd, T., *Register of Debates*, 330.  
 Loans, under confederation, 319; funding, 331; War of 1812, 356; Civil War, 419. — See Debts, Finance.  
 Local government, beginnings, 250; in Virginia, 250; in Massachusetts, 270, 278; in England, 311; in the colonies, 312. — See Colonies by name.  
 Local history, 57-78; interest in, 210, 217. — See states, cities, counties, and towns by name.  
 Locke, John, *Civil Government*, 290.  
 Lodge, H. C., *English Colonies*, 34, \*45, 146; *Boston*, \*63; *George Cabot*, \*88; *Alexander Hamilton*, \*91; *George Washington*, \*100, 145; *Daniel Webster*, \*100.  
 Logan vs. United States, 334.  
 Logan, John A., biography, \*94.  
 Logan, J. H., *Upper South Carolina*, \*74.  
 Lomenie, L. de, *Beaumarchais*, 300.  
 London Company, 250.  
 "Lone Star" Republic. — See Texas.  
 Long, A. L., *Robert E. Lee*, \*94.  
 Longfellow, H. W., *Final Memorials*, \*130; poems illustrating history, \*141.  
 Long Island, histories, \*68; campaign of, 298.  
 Long Island Historical Society, publications, \*123.  
 Longstreet, A. B., *Georgia Scenes*, \*139.  
 Lords of Trade, report to on Virginia, 252. — See Commerce, England, Navigation Acts.  
 Lorenzana, F. A., *Historia*, 238.  
 Loring, C. G., and Field, E. W., *Correspondence*, 422.  
 Loring, C. W., *Nullification, Secession*, 327.  
 Loskiel, G. H., *United Brethren*, 233.  
 Lossing, B. J., *Cyclopædia of U. S. History*, \*40; *The Hudson*, \*68; *New York City*, \*68; *Philip Schuyler*, \*97, 296; *Revolution*, 295; *Two Spies*, 300; *War of 1812*, 353; *Civil War*, 416.  
 Lothrop, T. K., *William H. Seward*, \*98.  
 Louisburg, in Intercolonial Wars, 281, 282.  
 Louisiana, histories, \*61; *Records*, \*116; boundaries, 227, 243, 244; ceded to Spain and England (1763), 227, 244, 347; retroceded to France, 347; ceded to United States, 347; territorial government, 347; admitted as a state, 347; question of implied powers, 347; slavery in, 361; secedes, 406. — See Annexations, Boundaries, Territories, Secession.  
 Louisville (Ky.), history, \*61.  
 Lovejoy, mobbed, 377.  
 Lowell, A. L., *Essays on Government*, 330.  
 Lowell, E. J., *Hessians*, 298.  
 Lowell, J. R., historical poems, 141; *Among My Books*, 279; *Political Essays*, 406.  
 Lowry, R., and McCardle, W. H., *Mississippi*, \*65.  
 Loyalists, in the Revolution, 303, 304.  
 Lucas, C. P., *Historical Geography*, 288.  
 Lucas, Eliza, *Journal*, 257.  
 Lucas, Samuel, *Charters of the Colonies*, 229.  
 Luden, Heinrich, *Reise durch Nord-Amerika*, \*79.  
 Lundy, Benjamin, biography, \*94, 376.  
 Lunt, E. C., *Key to United States Census*, 403.  
 Lunt, George, *Origin of the Late War*, 390.  
 Luther vs. Borden, case of, 383.  
 Luzerne County (Pa.), history, \*73.  
 Lyell, Charles, *Travels*, \*83.  
 Lyman, T., *Diplomacy*, 300.
- MACAULEY, J., *New York*, \*67.  
 McCall, George A., *Letters from the Frontier*, \*83.  
 McCall, H., *Georgia*, \*59.  
 McCarthy, C., *Soldiers' Life*, 418.  
 McCarthy, W., *Songs on National Subjects*, \*41.  
 McClellan, G. B., biographies, \*94; *Own Story*, \*94; *Report*, 417.  
 McClellan, G. B. (2d), *George Brinton McClellan*, \*94.  
 McClellan, H. B., *J. E. B. Stuart*, 417.  
 McClintock, J. N., *New Hampshire*, \*66.  
 McClure, A. K., *Lincoln and War Times*, \*130.  
 MacCoun, Townsend, *Historical Geography*, \*53, 300.  
 McCulloch vs. Maryland, 334, 359.  
 McCulloch's Dictionary, 285.  
 McCulloch, Hugh, *Men and Measures*, \*130, 147.  
 McDougall, M. G., *Fugitive Slaves*, 315.  
 Mace, W. H., *Working Manual*, \*36.  
 McGregor, John, *Progress of America*, 389.  
 Machiavelli, N., *Discourses on Livy*, 290.  
 Mackay, Alexander, *Western World*, \*83.  
 McKean, Hon. Thomas, biography, \*94.  
 MacKibbin, S., on study of history, 32.  
 McKee, T. H., *Reports of Committees*, \*39.  
 MacKenzie, A. S., *Paul Jones*, \*93.  
 McKenzie, R., *Strictures on Tarleton*, 302.  
 Mackie, *With the Admiral*, 235; *Last Voyages*, 235.  
 McLaughlin, A. C., *Lewis Cass*, \*88.  
 Maclay, E. S., *History of the Navy*, \*56, 341.  
 Maclay, William, *Journal*, \*130, 330.  
 McLeod, D., *Wisconsin*, \*77.  
 McMahon, J. V. L., *Maryland*, \*62.  
 McMaster, J. B., *History*, 45, \*47, 146; *Benjamin Franklin*, \*90.  
 McMaster, J. B., and Stone, F. D., *Pennsylvania and the Constitution*, \*114.  
 McMullen, J., *History of Canada*, 243.  
 "Macon Bill No. 2," 351.  
 Macon, Nathaniel, biography, \*94.  
 MacPherson, *Annals of Commerce*, 285.



- McPherson, E., *History of the Rebellion*, \*133; *Index of Executive Documents*, \*39; *Index to Reports*, \*39.
- McPherson, J. H. T., *Liberia*, 362.
- McRee, G. J., *James Iredell*, \*92, 302.
- McCrie, *John Knox*, 265.
- Macvane, S. M., *American History* (bibliography), \*35.
- Macy, O., *Nantucket*, \*64.
- Madison, Dorothy, *Memoirs*, \*130.
- Madison, James, biographies, \*95; *Papers*, \*126; *Writings*, \*126; on Alien and Sedition Acts, 342; Virginia resolutions, 342, 355; president, 351; vetoes Bank bill, 356; vetoes Bonus bill, 356; on nullification, 370.
- Magruder, A. B., *John Marshall*, \*95.
- Mahan, A., *American War*, 416.
- Mahan, A. T., *David G. Farragut*, 416; *Gulf and Inland Waters*, 416.
- Mahon, Lord, *History of England*, \*47, 284.
- Maillard, N. D., *Texas*, \*75.
- Maine, histories, \*62; Gorges grant, 268; early settlements, 275; boundaries, 309; British invasion (1814), 353; Missouri Compromise, 361; in 1830, 366; boundaries, 366, 383.
- Maine Historical Society, publications, \*123.
- Maine, H. S., *Popular Government*, 324.
- Major, R. H., *Prince Henry*, 237; *Discoveries*, 237.
- Makower, F., *Church of England*, 265.
- Mallory, D., *Henry Clay*, \*89.
- Manchester (N. H.), history, \*66.
- Mandeville, *Flushing* (L. I.), 286.
- Mann, H., *Dedham* (Mass.), \*63.
- Mansfield, E. D., *Personal Memoirs*, \*130.
- Manufactures, in 1815 and 1816, 356.
- Manumission, 375. — See Slavery.
- Manuscript sources, 134.
- Maps, of the United States, government, 51, 52; of America, physical, 51; historical, 53, 228; as a class exercise, 209. facsimiles, 229; originals, 230. — See Annexations, Boundaries, Geography.
- Marblehead (Mass.), history of, 64.
- Marbois, F. B., *Louisiane*, \*61; *Complot d'Arnold*, 300.
- Marbury vs. Madison, 345, 359.
- Marbury, Horatio, and Crawford, W. H., *Digest of the Laws of Georgia*, \*116.
- Marcel, G., *Catalogue des Documents Géographiques*, 231; *Reproductions de Cartes*, 229.
- March, C. W., *Reminiscences of Congress*, \*130.
- Marcos, Fray, explorations, 239.
- Marky, P., *Mémoires*, 233, 243.
- Markham, Clements R., *Columbus*, \*89; *Hawkins's Voyages*, 247.
- Marquette, T., *Sir Francis Drake*, 247.
- Marquette, Père, discovers Mississippi, 246.
- Marryat, Capt. F., *Diary in America*, \*83.
- Marsden, J. B., *Early Puritans*, 265.
- Marsh, Mrs. C. C., *George Perkins Marsh*, \*95.
- Marsh, G. P., biography, \*95.
- Marsh, L. R., *Alvan Stewart*, 376.
- Marshall, C., *Diary*, \*130.
- Marshall County (Ia.), history, \*60.
- Marshall, J. A., *American Bastille*, 424.
- Marshall, John, biographies, \*95; *George Washington*, \*100; *Writings*, \*126.
- Marshall, O. H., *Writings*, 242.
- Marshall, S. E., *John Marshall*, \*95.
- Marsillac, J., *Guillaume Penn*, \*96.
- Martens, C. de, et Cussy, F. de, *Recueil de Traités*, \*54, 228.
- Martens, G. F. de, et al., *Recueil de Traités des Puissances et états de l'Europe*, \*54.
- Martin vs. Hunter's Lessees, 334, 359.
- Martin vs. Mott, 359.
- Martin, F. X., *Louisiana*, \*61; *North Carolina*, \*69; *Statutes of England in North Carolina*, \*108, 115; *Laws of North Carolina*, \*115; *North Carolina Decisions*, \*117.
- Martin, J., *Gazetteer of Virginia*, \*76.
- Martin, Luther, biography, \*95.
- Martineau, Harriet, *Retrospect of Western Travel*, \*83; *Society in America*, \*83.
- Martyr, Peter, *Decades*, 236.
- Maryland, histories, \*62; *Records*, \*114; settlement and government of, 253; religion in, 254; Quakers in, 277; condition of (1760), 287; delays Confederation, 304; ratifies Constitution, 325; adheres to Union, 410; abolition of slavery, 425.
- Maryland Historical Society, publications, \*123.
- Mason, E. C., *Veto Power*, 312.
- Mason, George, biography, \*95.
- Mason, Jeremiah, biography, \*95.
- Mason, John, grants to, 268.
- Mason and Dixon Line, 261.
- Mason, capture (1861), 421.
- Massachusetts, physical maps, 51; histories, \*62-64; *Records*, \*110-112, 271; *Archives*, 135; absorbs Plymouth, 267; grants of, 268; charter of, 269; settlement and government of, 268-270; banished Roger Williams, 272; Antinomian controversy, 272; Gorton controversy, 273; emigration from, to Connecticut, 274; relations with northern settlements, 275; relations with New England Confederation, 276; treatment of Quakers, 277; King Philip's War, 277; charter overthrown, 278; Andros in, 278; province charter, 279; witchcraft delusion, 279; in colonial wars, 281-283; condition of (1760), 286; opposition of, to English government (1760-1774), 288-295; beginning of Revolutionary War, 294; claims to western lands, 304; first state government, 306, 307; land cessions, 317; suggests Federal Convention, 322; emancipates slaves, 320; ratifies constitution, 325; calls Hartford Convention, 355; Sixth Regiment, 410.

- Massachusetts Bay. — See Massachusetts.
- Massachusetts Emigrant Aid Society, 396.
- Massachusetts Historical Society, publications, \*123; *Index to Proceedings*, \*37.
- Massachusetts Military Historical Society, *Papers*, 416.
- Massachusetts State Library, *Catalogue*, \*38.
- Massasoit, treaty with, 266.
- Massey, W. N., *History of England*, \*47, 284.
- Massie, J. W., *America*, 377.
- Masson, D., *John Milton*, 265.
- Mather, Cotton, biography, \*95; *Magnalia*, 277; *Wonders*, 280.
- Mather, Increase, biography, \*95; *Remarkable Providences*, 272; *Brief History*, 278.
- Matson, Henry, *References*, \*35.
- Maumee Valley, history of, 71.
- Mauzy, Ann, *Huguenot Family*, 253.
- Maverick, S., *Description of New England*, 270.
- Maximilian, Mexican emperor, 421.
- Maxwell, W. (ed.), *Virginia Historical Register*, \*103.
- May, Capt. John, *Journals and Letters*, \*83.
- May, Samuel, *Memoirs*, \*130; *Recollections*, \*130.
- May, Samuel (2d), *Catalogue*, 376.
- May, T. E., *Constitutional History*, 284.
- Mayflower Compact, 266.
- Mayhew, Jonathan, biography, \*93.
- Mayo, Robert, *Political Sketches*, \*130.
- Maysville Road, veto, 373.
- Mead, E. D. (ed.), *Old South Leaflets*, \*133.
- Meade, W., *Churches and Families of Virginia*, \*77, 252.
- Meigs, R. J., biography, \*95; *Journal*, 296.
- Meleyn, *Nederlandsche Provintien*, 259.
- Melish, John, *Travels*, \*83.
- Mellick, A. D., *Story of an old Farm*, \*66.
- Memminger, C. G., biography, 413.
- Memorials. — See Petitions, Slavery.
- Memorizing, value of, 156.
- Mendon (Mass.), history, \*64.
- Menendez, founds St. Augustine, 241.
- Merivale, *Colonization*, 281.
- Merriam, J. M., *Ordinance* [of 1787], 318.
- Merrill, J., *Amesbury and Merrimac* (Mass.), \*63.
- Merrimac, battle with Monitor, 415.
- Merriman, Habeas Corpus, case, 423.
- Merriman, T. M., *Pilgrims, Puritans, and Roger Williams*, 273.
- Merry Mount, 268.
- Metcalf, J. G., *Mendon* (Mass.), \*64.
- Methods of teaching, 19-29, 152-225; the place of method, 19; preparation of teachers, 21; school work, 23; college work, 24; investigation, 25; study without a teacher, 27; collateral subjects, 29; bibliography of, 30, 33; use of books, 143-154, 197; use of libraries, 147-151; class exercises, 152-178; recitations, 152; use of text-books, 153; reviews, 154; "quiz," 155; memorizing, 156-168; historical geography, 169; illustrative methods, 171; debates, 173; reports of pupils, 174; student lectures, 174; seminaries, 176; reading, 179-204; necessity of reading, 179; consecutive reading, 180; general reading, 180; list of general readings, 181-195; topical reading, 195; conference system, 195; talks by teachers, 198; formal lectures, 199; note-taking, 200-203; giving out references, 203; written work, 205-222; written reviews, 205; brief written recitations, 205; topical system, 207; subjects for topics, 208; "compositions," 210; "special reports," 211; "essays," 215; monographs, 220-222; tests, 223-225; class-room tests, 223; written tests, 223; oral examinations, 225.
- Mexico, discovery of, 236; Spanish conquest of, 238; Monroe Doctrine, 363; fugitives to, 379; connection with Oregon, 383; province of Texas, 385; boundary treaty of 1832, 385; protest against Texan independence, 385; claims, 387; war with United States, 387; treaty of 1848, 387; French invasion (1862), 421; Maximilian's empire, 421; attitude of the U. S., 421.
- Miami expedition of 1790, 339.
- Michaux, F. A., *Voyage à l'Ouest*, \*83; *Travels to the Westward*, \*83.
- Michie, P. S., *Emory Upton*, \*99.
- Michigan, histories, \*64.
- Michigan, Lake, discovery of, 243.
- Michigan, Pioneer Society of, *Reports*, \*123.
- Michigan, University of, publications, \*55.
- Middle Colonies, 258-263.
- Middle States, Revolutionary War in, 298.
- Milan Decree, 350.
- Militia, early statutes, 329; question as to, 354; Supreme Court Cases, 358; in Civil War, 402, 410, 415.
- Military histories, 291. — See Civil War, Indians, Mexican War, Militia, Revolution, War of 1812.
- Miller, J., *Description of New York*, 260.
- Miller, F. W., *Cincinnati's Beginnings*, \*71.
- Miller, S. F., *Reports*, \*122; *Lectures on the Constitution*, 316, 333.
- Milligan, military tribunal, 423.
- Mills, D., *Boundaries of Ontario*, 228.
- Mills, R., *South Carolina*, \*74, 288.
- Milwaukee (Wis.), history, \*77.
- Miner, C., *Wyoming*, \*72, 299.
- Minerals of North America, 227.
- Minnesota, histories, \*64; admitted, 402.
- Minnesota Historical Society, publications, \*123.
- Minot, G. R., *Massachusetts Bay*, \*63.
- Miranda project, 341.



Mississippi, histories, \*61; admitted, 360; secedes, 406.  
 Mississippi Bubble, The, 244.  
 Mississippi River, discovered, 236, 239, explored, 243; navigation of, 337; opened by Union forces, 415. — See Boundaries, Geography.  
 Missouri, histories, \*65; compromise controversy, 361; admitted, 361; enlarged, 394; interference in Kansas, 396; effect of compromise of 1850, 395; effect of Dred Scott decision, 399; adheres to the Union, 410, 415; emancipation in, 425.  
 Mitchell, A. F., *Westminster Assembly*, 265; *Westminster Confession*, 265.  
 Mitchell, S. W., *In War Times*, \*139; *Roland Blake*, \*139.  
 Mobile, capture by Farragut, 415.  
 Mombert, J. I., *Lancaster County* (Pa.), \*72.  
 Monette, J. W., *Valley of the Mississippi*, \*61.  
 Monitor, battle with Merrimac, 415.  
 Monmouth, battle of, 298.  
 Monographs, growth of, 2; preparation of, 26, 220; subjects for, 222.  
 Monongahela, history, \*73.  
 Monroe, James, biographies, \*95; *Calendar of the Correspondence of*, \*126; amendment to Confederation, 321; in France, 337; *Conduct of the Executive*, 339; *Louisiana Purchase*, 347; vetoes internal improvement bill, 356; president, 359; Missouri act, 359; message of 1823, 363.  
 Monroe Doctrine, annunciation, 362.—See Mexico, Panama Congress.  
 Montana, histories, 65, \*77.  
 Montcalm, General, *Journal*, 283.  
 Monterey, occupation of 1842, 385.  
 Montesquieu, *l'esprit des Loix*, 290.  
 Montgomery, Congress at, 412.  
 Montgomery, D. H., *American History*, \*43.  
 Montreal, discovery of, 240.  
 Moore, Francis, *Voyage to Georgia*, \*83.  
 Moore, Frank, *Furman's Long Island*, \*68; *Andrew Johnson*, \*93; war ballads, \*141; *Rebellion Record*, 407.  
 Moore, G. H., *Treason of Charles Lee*, 299; *Slavery in Massachusetts*, 315.  
 Moore, J. W., *North Carolina*, \*69; *American Congress*, 330.  
 Moorehead, W. R., *Primitive Man*, 231.  
 Moran, J. F., *Bi-Cameral System*, 313.  
 Morey, W. C., *Written Constitution*, 307; *First State Constitution*, 307; *American Federalism*, 313.  
 Morgan, Daniel, biography, \*95.  
 Morgan, E. V., *Slavery in New York*, 315.  
 Morgan, L. H., *Montezuma's Dinner*, 232; *Houses and House-Life*, 232; *League of the Iroquois*, 232.  
 Morey, J., *Edmund Burke*, 301.  
 Morris, Gouverneur, biographies, \*95; *Diary and Letters*, \*130.

Morris, Robert, biographies, \*95; superintendent of finance, 319.— See Bank, Finance.  
 Morse, Jedediah, *American Universal Geography*, \*51, 227, 237, 309.  
 Morse, J. T., Jr., *American Statesmen* (Series), 86, 145-147, *Benjamin Franklin*, \*90; *Alexander Hamilton*, \*91; *John Adams*, \*87; *John Quincy Adams*, \*87; *Thomas Jefferson*, \*93; *Abraham Lincoln*, \*94, 145.  
 Morton, N., *New England's Memorial*, 266.  
 Morton, T., at Merry Mount, 268; *New English Canaan*, 270.  
 Mosby, J. S., *War Reminiscences*, 418.  
 Moses, J., *Illinois*, \*60.  
 Motley, J. L., biography, \*95; *Correspondence*, \*126; *Merry-Mount*, \*139.  
 Motolinia, *Historia*, 238.  
 Mott, James and Lucretia, biography, \*96.  
 Moultrie, General, *Memoirs*, 296.  
 Mountfield, D., *Church and Puritans*, 265.  
 Mour, *Relation*, 266.  
 Muhlenberg, H. A., *General Peter Muhlenberg*, \*96.  
 Muhlenberg, Peter, biography, \*96.  
 Mulford, I. S., *New Jersey*, \*66.  
 Muller, F. & Co., *Remarkable Maps Reproduced*, 229.  
 Munro, W. H., *Bristol* (R. I.), \*74.  
 Munsell, Joel, *Annals of Albany*, \*133.  
 Murat, Achille, *America*, \*83, 366; *Etats-Unis*, \*83.  
 Murdoch, *Nova Scotia*, 242.  
 Murphy, H. C., *Verrazano*, 240.  
 Murray, N., *Elizabeth-Town* (N. J.), \*66, 266.  
 Muzzey, A. B., *Reminiscences and Memorials*, \*130.  
**N**ADAILLAC, Marquis de, *Prehistoric America*, 231.  
 Nantucket (Mass.), history, \*64; *Records*, \*112.  
 Napoleon I, sale of Louisiana, 347; continental system, 350.— See France, Louisiana.  
 Napoleon III, Mexican invasion, 421.— See France.  
 Narvaez, expedition, 239.  
 Nash, Wallace, *Two Years in Oregon*, \*130.  
 Nashville (Tenn.), history, \*75; battle of, 415.  
 Nason, E., *Life of Frankland*, 286.  
 National Conventions, first, 369.— See Parties.  
*National Cyclopaedia of American Biography*, \*40.  
 National Educational Association, *Report of the Committee of Ten*, \*31.  
*National Geographic Magazine*, 50, \*103.  
*National Geographic Monographs*, \*51.  
 Nationality, topics on, 14, 17.  
 Native Americans.— See Know Nothings.  
 Naturalization, act of 1798, 342.

- Navarrete, *Coleccion*, 235; *Biblioteca Maritima*, 236.
- Navigation Acts, revision of 1764, 288.
- Navy, in troubles with France, 340; in War of 1812, 352; in Civil War, 415. — See Blockade, Embargo, England, France, Military, Slave Trade, Wars.
- Neagle, case of (*in re* Neagle), 334.
- Neal, D., *Puritans*, 265.
- Nebraska, lack of organization, 394; Douglas's bills, 395; bills of 1854, 395; act for organization, 395.
- Nebraska University, historical publications, 55.
- "Necessary and proper." — See Bank, Constitution, Implied Powers.
- Needles, *Slavery in Pennsylvania*, 315.
- Negroes, *South Carolina under*, \*74; colonial slavery, 250, 314; race element, 310; as soldiers in Revolution, 320; characteristics, 375, 376; free, legal status, 375, 379; mobs against, 377; troops in Civil War, 423. — See Colonization, Fugitives, Slavery.
- Negro Plot (N. Y.), 259.
- Neill, E. D., *Minnesota*, \*64; *Virginia Company*, 251; *Virginia Vetusta*, 251; *Virginia Carolorum*, 252; *Terra Mariae*, 254; *Founders of Maryland*, 254; *Maryland not a Roman Catholic Colony*, 255.
- Neilson, C., *Burgoyne's Campaign*, 299.
- Nelson, Anson and Fanny, *Sarah Childress Polk*, \*97.
- Neolithic man, 231.
- Netherlands, king of, arbitration by, 383.
- Neutral trade, aggressions of British on (1794-1812), 337, 350-352. — See Blockade, Embargo, England, France, Navy.
- Neutrality, declared in 1793, 337.
- Nevada, histories, \*58, 65.
- Newark (N. J.), history, \*66.
- Newburg (N. Y.), history, \*68.
- "Newburg Addresses" (1783), 319.
- Newbury (Mass.), history, \*64.
- Newburyport (Mass.), history, \*64.
- Newell, R. H., *Orpheus C. Kerr Papers*, 425.
- New England, early explorations, 246, 249; colonies, 263-276; Quakers in, 277; commissioners in (1664), 278; Andros in, 278; witchcraft in, 279; in colonial wars, 281-283; condition of (1760), 284; objects to Louisiana purchase, 347; and the embargo, 351; Henry's mission to, 351; opposes War of 1812, 354; threatens secession, 404. — See Tariff, Slavery.
- New England Association of Colleges and Schools, on entrance requirements, 33.
- New England Confederation, formation, 276; records, 276; and the Quakers, 277.
- New England, Council for, its charter and grants, 266-269.
- New England Emigrant Aid Society, 396.
- New England Historic-Geographical Society, publications, \*123.
- Newfoundland, Gilbert's expedition to, 248.
- New France, 242. — See Canada, French.
- New Hampshire, physical maps, 51; histories, \*65; *Records*, 109, 110; Masonian grant, 268; early settlement, 275; condition of (1760), 286; first state government, 306, 307; emancipates slaves, 320; ratifies constitution, 325.
- New Haven, histories, \*58; *Records*, \*112; settlement of, 275; in New England Confederation, 276; joined to Connecticut, 275.
- New Haven Colony Historical Society, publications, \*122.
- New Jersey, physical maps, 51; histories, \*66; *Records*, \*113; settlement and government of, 260; condition of (1760), 287; first state government, 307; emancipates slaves, 320; land cessions, 317, 336; ratifies Constitution, 325.
- New Jersey Historical Society, publications, \*123.
- New Mexico, histories, \*67; discovery of, 239; conquered by the U. S., 387; ceded by Mexico, 387; territorial crisis, 391; organized as a territory, 391. — See Compromises, Mexico, Texas.
- New Netherland, settlement of, 258; conquered by English, 258. — See New York.
- New Orleans, histories, \*61; battle of (1815), 353, 367; capture (1862), 415. — See French, Louisiana.
- New Plymouth Colony, settlement and history of, 267. — See Massachusetts, New England, Plymouth.
- Newspapers, \*104-106.
- New Sweden, histories, \*59. — See Delaware.
- New York, histories, \*67-69; *Records*, \*112; boundaries, 258, 260; Andros in, 278; condition of (1760), 287; in the Revolutionary War, 298; claims to western lands, 304; first state government, 307; land cessions, 317; ratifies Constitution, 325; anti-rent agitation, 382, 388.
- New York Historical Society, *Catalogue*, \*38; publications, \*123.
- New York, University of, Regent's *Report on Boundaries*, 260.
- Niagara, in 1759, 282; in War of 1812, 352, 353.
- Nicaragua, discovery of, 236.
- Nichols, Thomas L., *Forty Years of American Life*, \*84.
- Nicolay, J. G., *Outbreak of Rebellion*, 411.
- Nicolay, J. G., and Hay, John, *Abraham Lincoln*, \*94.
- Nicoll, R., Governor of New York, 259.
- Niles, H., *Principles and Acts*, \*133, 295.
- Nixon, O. W., *How Marcus Whitman saved Oregon*, \*72.
- Non-Conformists, English, 264.
- Non-Importation, act of 1806, 350. — See Embargo, Neutral Trade.

Non-Intercourse, policy of, 351. — See Embargo, Neutral Trade.

Nootka Sound Convention (1790), 362.

Nordenskiöld, A. E., *Fac-Simile Atlas*, 230.

Norfolk (Va.), history of, \*76.

Norman, B. M., *New Orleans*, \*61.

Norris, W. H., and others, *Digest of Maryland Decisions*, \*117.

Norse explorers, 234.

North, Lord, plan of conciliation, 300.

North. S. N. D., *Newspaper Press*, \*104.

North America, physiography of, 227. — See Geography.

North Carolina, histories, \*69; *Records*, \*115; explored, 248; Roanoke colony, 248; settlement of, 255; condition of, (1760), 287; western land claims, 304; secedes, 410. — See Carolinas.

Northeastern boundary controversy, 383.

Northwest coast, history, \*70; boundaries, 383.

Northwest Ordinance, 317; slavery clause, 317-320; confirmed, 336.

Northwest Territory, history, \*70, \*71; state cessions, 317; divided, 336.

Northwestern boundary controversy, 383.

Northrop, Solomon, *Narrative*, 394.

Northrop, T., *Twelve Years a Slave*, 376.

Norton, A. B., *Knox County (O.)*, \*71.

Norumbega, story of, 240, 264.

Norwich (Conn.), history, \*58.

Notes, how to take, 20, 28, 198, 200-203, 221.

Nott, Samuel, *Slavery*, 376.

Nourse, H. S., *Records of Lancaster, (Mass.)*, \*111, 272.

Novels, lists of, 136, 137.

Nueva España, 238. — See Mexico.

Nullification, theory of, 327, 342. — See Constitution, Implied Powers, Interposition, Secession.

**O**BERLIN (O.), abolition center, 376; rescue of fugitives, 393.

O'Callaghan, E. B., *Documentary History*, 53, 106, \*113; *New Netherland*, \*67; *Documents relating to New York*, 106, \*113; *Laws of New Netherland*, \*112.

Ogden, J. C., *Bethlehem and Nazareth (Pa.)*, \*84.

Oglethorpe, J. E., biographies, \*96; founds Georgia, 267.

Ohio, histories, \*70; admitted, 336, 360. — See Northwest Ordinance and Territory.

Ohio River and Valley, history, \*70; the French in, 243; in colonial wars, 282; rival claims to, 282.

Ohio Historical and Archæological Society, publications, \*124.

*Old South Leaflets*, \*133, 145.

Oliver, P., *Puritan Commonwealth*, \*63, 273.

Olmsted, F. L., *Seaboard Slave States*, \*84; *Texas Journey*, \*84; *Back Country*, \*84; *Cotton Kingdom*, 376.

"Omnibus Bill" of 1850, 391.

O'Neil, C. A., *American Electoral System*, 330, 365.

*Opinions of the Attorneys-General*, \*122.

Oppenheim, Samuel, *Congressional Reporters*, 330.

Orange County (N. Y.), history, \*68.

"Orders in Council" on neutral trade, 350; withdrawn (1812), 352.

Ordinances, of 1787. — See Northwest Ordinance; of Nullification, 370; of Secession, 404, 406.

Ordronaux, J., *Constitutional Legislation*, 311, 333.

Ordway, Albert, *Indexes of the Journals of Congress*, \*39.

Oregon, histories, \*71, 72; annexation of, 309, 347; British in (1812), 347; under Monroe Doctrine, 363; boundaries, 366, 368; in 1830, 366; question in election of 1844, 385; settlement of boundaries, 383; admitted, 402. — See Boundaries, England, Russia, Spain.

O'Reilly, Don John, *Regulations*, \*116, 244.

O'Rell, Max, *Jonathan and His Continent*, \*84.

Orinoco, discovery of, 235.

Orleans, territory of, 347. — See Louisiana.

Ormsby, R. McK., *Whig Party*, 335.

Osborn vs. Bank of the United States, 334, 359.

Osgood, H. L., *England and Colonies*, 313; *Ideas of the Puritans*, 313.

Ostend Manifesto, 394.

Oswald, J., British commissioner (1782), 393.

Otis, James, biography, \*96, 292; *Vindication*, 289; *Rights of the Colonies*, 289.

Outline Maps, 52.

Oviedo, *Historia General*, 236.

**P**ACHECO, and Cardenas, *Documentos*, 236.

Pacific Coast, exploration of, 238, 239, 247.

Pacific Ocean, discovery of, 236.

Pacific States, history of, 57, 58, 71, 75, 77. — See California, Idaho, Montana, Nevada, Oregon, Utah, Washington, Wyoming.

Pacte de Famille, 245.

Page, T. N., *The Old South*, \*131; historical novels, \*139.

Paget, J., *Inquiry into the Evidence*, 262.

Paige, L. R., *Cambridge (Mass.)*, \*63; *Hardwick (Mass.)*, \*63.

Paine, Thomas, biography, \*96, 277; *Common Sense*, 297; *Public Good*, 318.

Pakenham, correspondence with Calhoun, 385.

Paleolithic Man, in America, 231.

Palfrey, J. G., *New England*, \*47, \*56; *Compendious History*, \*56.

Palmer, P. S., *Lake Champlain*, \*67, 242.

Palmer, T. H., *Historical Reporter*, 354.

- Palmer, W. P., *Calendar of Virginia State Papers*, 253.
- Panama Congress, 363, 364; effect on Cuba, 394. — See J. Q. Adams, Monroe.
- Panic, of 1819, 356; of 1837, 381; of 1839, 381.
- Paper Money, in the colonies, 280; under Confederation, 319; state bank notes, see State Banks; Civil War, see Legal Tenders.
- Paris, Peace of 1763, 245, 282; of 1783, 245, 303.
- Parish government, colonial, 312.
- Parker, A. A., *Trip to the West*, \*84.
- Parker, Joel, *Origin of New England Towns*, 271; *Constitutional Law*, 424; *Habeas Corpus*, 424; *Three Powers*, 424.
- Parker, Samuel, *Exploring Tour*, \*84.
- Parker, Theodore, biographies, \*96; *Historic Americans*, 293; *Speeches*, 396.
- Parkinson, Richard, *Tour in America*, \*84.
- Parkman, F., *France and England*, 45, 46, \*47; *Oregon Trail*, \*84; *Vassall Morton*, \*139; *Pioneers*, 241, 242; *La Salle*, 242; *Montcalm and Wolfe*, 281.
- Parliamentary History*, 289.
- Parson's Cause, The, 288, 289.
- Parsons, Theophilus, biography, \*96.
- Parsons, Theophilus, Jr., *Chief Justice Parsons*, \*96.
- Parties, organization of national, 334; Federal, 334-359; Jeffersonian Republicans, 334, 342-354; Era of Good Feeling, 356-362; Jacksonian Democracy, 366-374; Anti-Masonic, 368; Whig, 368, 382-397; Liberty, 377; Free Soil, 390; Know Nothing, 397; Republican, 397-401; War Democrats, 423; in Civil War, 423.
- Partisan Leader*, 412.
- Parton, James, *Aaron Burr*, \*88; *Benjamin Franklin*, \*90; *Andrew Jackson*, \*92; *Thomas Jefferson*, \*93.
- Patents, colonial. — See Charters.
- Patroons, in New Netherlands, 258. — See Dutch.
- Pattee, W. S., *Braintree and Quincy (Mass.)*, \*63.
- Patterson, C. S., *United States and States*, 333.
- Patton, J. H., *National Resources*, \*51.
- Paul, G. S., *Methods of Teaching History*, \*31.
- Paulding, J. K., historical novels, \*139.
- Payne, E. J., *Elizabeth Seamen*, 247.
- Peabody Library (Baltimore), *Catalogue*, 34, \*38.
- Peabody Museum (Cambridge), *Reports*, 231.
- Peabody, Oliver W. B., *Israel Putnam*, \*97; *John Sullivan*, 316.
- Peace. — See Treaties.
- Peace Conference, 1861, 408.
- Pearce, S., *Luzerne County (Pa.)*, \*73, 299.
- Pearson, J., *Schenectady Patent*, \*69.
- Peck, G., *Wyoming (Pa.)*, \*73, 299.
- Pedagogy, value of, 22. — See Methods.
- Pedder, H. C., *J. G. Garfield*, \*90.
- Pierce, D. K., and Hale, C., *Convention of Massachusetts*, 326.
- Pellew, George, *John Jay*, \*93.
- Pennsular Campaign, 1862, 415.
- Penn, William, biographies, \*96; connection with New Jersey, 260; founds Pennsylvania, 261; Macaulay's charges, 262; his later connection with Pennsylvania, 263; grants Charter of Privileges, 263. — See Pennsylvania.
- Penn — Logan correspondence, 263.
- Pennsylvania, histories, \*72; *Records*, \*114; public men of, 213; disputes with Maryland, 253; colony, 261-263; condition of in 1760, 287; first state government, 306, 307; emancipates slaves, 320; ratifies Constitution, 325; rechartered United States Bank, 372.
- Pennsylvania Hall Riot, 377.
- Pennsylvania Historical Society, publications, \*103, \*124.
- Pennsylvania, University of, history, 287.
- Pennypacker, S. W., *Hendrich Pennebecker*, 263.
- People of the United States, composition of the, 310; share in ratification of the constitution, 327.
- Pequod War, 274.
- Perceval, John, *Transactions of the Trustees of Georgia*, \*116.
- Periodicals, select list, \*101-104.
- Perkins, F. B., *Check List for Local History*, \*57.
- Perrot, N., *Mémoire sur les Mœurs*, 232.
- Perry, B. F., *Reminiscences*, \*131.
- Perry, Matthew G., biography, \*96.
- Perry, T. S., *Francis Lieber*, \*64.
- Perryville, battle, 415.
- Perry, W. S., *Historical Collection*, \*109, 278.
- Personal Liberty Acts, 393. — See Fugitive Slaves.
- Peters, Richards, *Admiralty Decisions*, \*117; *Condensed Supreme Court Reports*, \*121.
- Peters, Richards, Jr., *Reports*, \*121.
- Perth Amboy (N. J.), history of, 66.
- Peru, discovery of, 236; Spanish conquest of, 238.
- Peschel, O., *Theilung de Erde*, 235.
- Peterson, E., *Rhode Island*, \*74.
- "Petition and Advice," The, 290.
- Petitions, Abolition, 378. — See Slavery.
- Petrie, George, *Church and State in Maryland*, 255.
- Peyton, *American Crisis*, 414.
- Peyton, J. L., *Augusta County (Va.)*, \*77, 253, 287.
- Phelan, J., *Tennessee*, \*75.
- Philadelphia (Pa.), history of, 73.
- Phillips, Wendell, biographies, \*96; *Speeches*, \*126; an abolitionist leader, 376; *Conquest of Kansas*, 397.

- Phillips, *Paper Currency*, 306; *Continental Paper Money*, 306.
- Phinney, E., *Battle of Lexington*, 295.
- Phisterer, F., *Record of the Armies*, 403.
- Physical geography, 50.
- Physiography, of North America, 227; of the Civil War, 402. — See Geography.
- Pickard, K. E. R., kidnapped, 376.
- Pickering, Danby, *Statutes at Large* [English], \*108.
- Pickering, Judge, impeached, 345.
- Pickering, Octavius, *Timothy Pickering*, \*96.
- Pickering, Timothy, biography, \*96.
- Pickett, A. J., *Alabama, Georgia, and Mississippi*, \*65.
- Pictures, as illustrations, 172.
- Pierce, E. L., *Charles Sumner*, \*99.
- Pierce, Franklin, biography, \*96; elected president, 397; attitude on Nebraska bill, 395.
- Pierce, F. C., *Grafton* (Mass.), \*63.
- Pierce, Mary Francis, *Weston Records*, \*111.
- Pierson, H. W., *Thomas Jefferson*, \*93.
- Pike, J. S., *South Carolina*, \*74; *New Puritan*, 279; *First Blows of the Civil War*, 302.
- Pike, Z. M., *Expeditions to Sources of Mississippi*, \*84, 348.
- Pilgrims, The, in England and Holland, 265; in New Plymouth colony, 266, 267; on the Connecticut River, 274. — See Connecticut, Maine, New Haven, New Plymouth.
- Pilling, J. C., *Bibliographies*, 233.
- Pillsbury, Parker, *Anti-Slavery Apostles*, 377.
- Pineda, 236, 239.
- Pinckney, C. C. (of S. C.), 337, 340.
- Pinckney, W., biography, \*96.
- Pitkin, T., historical influence, 1; *Political History*, \*47.
- Pitt, William (Earl of Chatham), biography, \*96; *Secretary for War*, 282; *Correspondence*, 289; ministry of, 291. — See England.
- Pitt, William (the younger), biographies, \*97. — See England.
- Pittsburg Landing, battle, 415.
- Pittsfield (Mass.), history of, 64.
- Pizarro, conquest of Peru, 238.
- Plattsburgh, battle of, 353.
- Ploetz, Carl, *Epitome*, \*40.
- Plumer, William, biography, \*97.
- Plumer, Wm., Jr., *William Plumer*, \*97.
- Plymouth, colony of New, histories, \*64; *Records*, \*111; Bradford's *History*, \*125; colony founded, 266; later history, 267; grants from the Council for New England, 268; in New England Confederation, 276; Quakers in, 277; in King Philip's War, 277; united with Massachusetts, 278, 279.
- Plymouth Company (English) and its colonies, 268.
- Poems and ballads, select list, 141-142.
- Polk, James K., biographies of, \*97; elected president, 385; orders Taylor forward, 387; Oregon treaty, 383; forces Mexican War, 387; peace of 1848, 387; opposes internal improvements, 378, 388, attempts to organize territory, 390.
- Polk, Sarah, biographies, \*96.
- Pollard, E. A., *Lost Cause*, \*47; *Jefferson Davis*, \*90; *Southern History of the War*, 416.
- Pollock, F., *Science of Politics*, 290.
- Pomeroy, J. N., *Constitutional Law*, 323; *International Law*, 422.
- Ponce de Leon, discovers Florida, 239.
- Pond, Enoch, *Increase Mather*, \*95.
- Pontiac's Conspiracy, 288.
- Poole, W. F., *Index to Periodicals*, 34, \*37; *Anti-Slavery Opinions*, 315.
- Poor, H. V., *Internal Improvements*, 357.
- Poore, B. P., *Catalogue of Government Publications*, 34, \*39; *Charters and Constitutions*, 53, \*109, 134; *Perley's Reminiscences*, \*131.
- Pope, The, letter to Jefferson Davis, 412.
- Pope, John, *Tour through the United States*, \*84.
- Popham Colony, 264.
- Popular sovereignty, theory of, 390; early suggestions, 394; Douglas's notion, 395; application in Kansas, 396; abandoned in 1860, 400. — See Dred Scott, Kansas, Nebraska, Douglas, Lincoln.
- Population, statistics of, 52; by decades, 162; in 1760, 284; character in 1783, 310, 311; in 1830, 366; in 1860, 402.
- Porter, D. D., *David Porter*, 341; *Naval History*, 416; *Incidents*, 418.
- Porter, J. A., *City of Washington*, 332.
- Porter, L. H., on study of history, 32.
- Port Royal (Acadia), in intercolonial wars, 281.
- Port Royal (Carolina), Huguenot colony, 241.
- Portsmouth (N. H.), history, \*65; *Records*, \*141.
- Portsmouth (Va.), history, \*76.
- Post, Mrs. L. M., *Personal Recollections*, \*131.
- Post-Office, under Confederation, 319; organization of United States, 331; used by Abolitionists, 378.
- Potter, C. E., *Manchester* (N. H.), \*66.
- Potter, E. R., *Narragansett* (R. I.), \*74; *Considerations on Rhode Island*, 382.
- Potter and Ryder, *Paper Money of Rhode Island*, 280.
- Pouchot, M., *The Late War*, 282.
- Powell, J. W., *Survey*, 50; physical maps, 52; *Reports*, 231.
- Pownall, Gov., *Memorial to the Sovereigns*, 285.
- Pratt, D. J., *Report on Boundaries*, 260.
- Pratz, Le Page du, *Historie*, \*61, 244.
- Preble, W. F., *Decision of the King*, 384.
- Pre-Columbian discoveries, 234.
- Presbyterians, English, 265.
- Prescott, W. H., biography, \*97; *Conquest of Peru*, 238; *Conquest of Mexico*, 238.



- Presidents, status in 1789, 329; power under alien act, 342; list of, 160. — See Executive, presidents by name.
- Preston, H. W., *Documents*, \*134.
- Preston, Margaret, *Colonial Ballads*, \*141.
- Prigg vs. Pennsylvania, case of, 379, 394.
- Prime, N. S., *Long Island*, \*68.
- Prince, J. T., *Schools of Germany*, \*31.
- Prince Society, *Publications*, \*134.
- Princeton, battle of, 298.
- "Prior Documents," The, \*108.
- Privateers, in French War, 340; in War of, 112, 353; Confederate, 421.
- Proclamations. — See presidents by name.
- Protection, debate on (1789), 331; constitutionality of, 333; in 1816, 356. — See Tariff.
- Prothero, G. W., *Constitutional Documents*, 312.
- Proud, R., *Pennsylvania*, \*73.
- Providence Plantations (and Town), histories, \*74; *Records*, \*112; settlement, 272; the "Incorporation" of, 273. — See Rhode Island.
- Providence Public Library, *Bulletin*, 34.
- Prowse, D. W., *Newfoundland*, 234, 240.
- Ptolemy, *Geography*, 230.
- Public Documents, indexes, 38; lists, 119-121.
- Public libraries, use of, 148.
- Pulszky, Francis and Theresa, *White, Red, Black*, \*84.
- Pupils, reports by, 174.
- Purchas, *Pilgrimes*, 233.
- Puritans, the English, 264; control London Company, 250; in Maryland, 254; attitude toward dissentients, 272; relations with the Friends, 277; relations with the English Puritans (1640-1660), 278. — See Connecticut, England, Massachusetts, New England, New Hampshire, Pilgrims.
- Purry, I. P., *Description of South Carolina*, 256.
- Putnam, D., *Bunker Hill*, 296.
- Putnam, F. W., *Collections*, 231.
- Putnam, Israel, biography, \*97.
- Putnam, Rufus, biography, \*97.
- QUAKERS.** — See Friends.
- Quebec, founded, 242; captured by English (1629), 242; again captured (1759), 282.
- Quebec Act, The, 294.
- Quebec Historical Society, publications, \*124.
- Quincy (Mass.), history, \*63.
- Quincy, E., *Josiah Quincy*, \*97.
- Quincy, Josiah ("Jr."), biography, \*97; *Massachusetts Reports*, \*118, 289; secession speech, 404.
- Quincy, Josiah (3d), *Boston*, \*63; *John Quincy Adams*, \*87; biographies, \*97; *Josiah Quincy, Jr.*, \*97; *Figures of the Past*, 107, \*131, 145.
- Quitman, biography, \*101.
- "Quiz," a school exercise, 155.
- RACE** elements, 310, 314.
- Rafu, *Antiquitates*, 234.
- Railroads, beginnings of, 366; early building, 388. — See Commerce, Lands, Internal Improvements.
- Raleigh, Sir Walter, biographies, 247, 249; expeditions sent out by, 247, 248; charter to, 248.
- Ramsay, D., *South Carolina*, \*74; *American Revolution*, 302; *Revolution of South Carolina*, 302.
- Ramsay, J. G. M., *Tennessee*, \*75.
- Ranck, G. W., *Lexington* (Ky.), \*61.
- Randall, Henry S., *Thomas Jefferson*, \*93.
- Randolph, Edmund, biography, \*97; "Despatch No. 10," 337; *Vindication*, 339.
- Randolph, Edward, in New England, 278; *Report*, 278.
- Randolph, John, biographies, \*97; *Letters to a Relative*, \*131; in 1811-1815, 354.
- Randolph, Sarah N., *Thomas Jefferson*, \*93.
- Rantoul, Robert, Jr., biography, \*97.
- Ratification of the Constitution, 325; theories, 327. — See Constitution, Nullification, People, Secession, States.
- Ratzel, Friedrich, *Die Vereinigten Staaten*, \*51.
- Raum, J. O., *New Jersey*, \*66; *History of Trenton*, 298.
- Raumer, Frederick von, *American People*, \*84.
- Rawle, W., *View of the Constitution*, 313.
- Raymond, H. J., *Abraham Lincoln*, \*94.
- Rayon, I. L., *Archivo Mexicano*, 238.
- Read, George, biography, \*97.
- Read, J. M., *Henry Hudson*, 258.
- Read, W. T., *George Read*, \*97.
- Reading, in schools, 23; in colleges, 24; without a teacher, 27; necessity of, 179; consecutive, 180; general, 180; list of general, 181-195; topical, 195. — See Method.
- Rebellions, Bacon's (Va.), 252; Fendall's and Coode's, 254; Leisler's, 259; Negro Plot (N. Y.), 259; in New Jersey, 260; English Puritan, 278; of 1689, in New England, 278; Whiskey, 339; Dorr (1842), 382. — See also Civil War, Insurrections.
- Recitation, system of, 152, 223; written, 205. — See also Methods.
- Reclus, Elisée, *Earth and its Inhabitants*, 227.
- Reconstruction, topics on, 14, 18.
- Recopilacion de Leyes de las Indias*, \*116.
- Records, colonial, 108-118; United States, 118.
- Records of Salem Witchcraft*, 280.
- Recreations, in the Colonies, 314.
- Recueil des Traitez de Paix, de Trêve*, \*54.
- Redington, J., *Calendar of Home Office Papers*, \*108.

- Red Men. — See Indians.
- Redpath, James, *Capt. John Brown*, \*88; *Echoes of Harper's Ferry*, 400.
- Reed, H., *Lectures in English History*, \*31.
- Reed, Joseph, biography, \*97.
- Reed, Wm. B., *Joseph Reed*, \*97
- Reeder, Governor, 396.
- Reeves, A. M., *Finding of Wineland*, 234.
- References, general books, 40; giving out, 203.
- Reformation, in England, 264.
- Register of Debates*, \*114.
- Regicides, in New England, 278.
- Reid, Whitelaw, *Horace Greeley*, \*91.
- Relation of Maryland, 254.
- Relations des Jésuits*, 243.
- Religion, in Virginia, 253; in Plymouth, 267; in New England, 280; in the colonies, 314; in the United States in 1830, 366, in 1860, 402. — See Churches by name.
- Reminiscences, 127-132.
- Removals. — See Civil Service.
- "Reports," of pupils, 174; system of written, 211.
- Representation. — See Federal Convention.
- Representative government, in Virginia, 250; in Maryland, 254; in Massachusetts, 270, 280; English, 311.
- Republic of Texas. — See Texas.
- Republican party (Jeffersonian), formed in 1793, 334; Jefferson president, 345; divided on war of 1812, 354; absorbs Federals, 345, 349; broken up in 1820, 359. — See Democrats, Jefferson.
- Republican party, origin in 1854, 395, 397; majority in the House, 396; in Kansas struggle, 396; name, 397; election of 1856, 398; election of 1860, 400; attitude on compromise, 408; in Civil War, 423. — See Free-Soil Party.
- Restoration (1660), relations with Massachusetts, 278.
- "Resulting Powers." — See Implied Powers.
- Revenue. — See Finance.
- "Revenue Scheme," 319.
- Revere, Paul, biography, \*97.
- Reviews, of exercises, 154; written, 205.
- Revised Statutes of the United States*, \*120; index to, 118.
- Revolution, American (1775), topics on, 13, 16; memorable dates, 159; causes of, 284; passive resistance (1761-66), 288; active resistance (1767-74), 291; precipitated (1772-76), 294; political development, 296; military events, 298-303; finances, 304; parties, 334. — See Confederation, Declaration of Independence, Wars.
- Revolution (1689), in New England, 279.
- Reynolds, J., *Illinois*, \*60.
- Rhode Island, physical maps of, 51; histories of, \*73; records of, \*112; settlement of, 272; federation of towns, 272; franchise in, 273; relations with the New England Confederation, 276; Andros in, 278; condition of in 1760, 286; emancipates slaves, 320; ratifies constitution, 325; Dorr Rebellion, 382.
- Rhode Island Historical Society, publications, \*124.
- Rhode Island Historical Tracts, \*74.
- Rhodes, J. F., *History of the United States*, 34, 45, 46, \*47, 146.
- Ribault, Huguenot Colony, 241.
- Rice, A. T. (ed.), *Reminiscences of Lincoln*, \*94, \*131.
- Rice, F. P. (ed.), *Records of Worcester*, \*111.
- Richard, E., *Acadia*, 281.
- Richmond, captured by Grant, 415.
- Riddle, A. G., *Benjamin F. Wade*, \*99; *Recollections*, \*131; *Bart Ridgely*, \*139.
- Rider, S. S. (ed.), *Rhode Island Historical Tracts*, \*74, 273.
- Ridgely, D., *Annapolis* (Md.), \*62, 287.
- Ridpath, J. C., *Popular History*, \*47.
- Riedesel, Baroness, *Memoirs*, \*131, 298.
- Riedesel, General, *Memoirs*, \*131.
- Riker, J., *Harlem* (N. Y.), \*68.
- Rindge (N. H.), history, \*66.
- Ringwalt (and Brookings), *Briefs for Debate*, \*36.
- Riots, drafts, 423. — See Insurrections.
- Ripley and Dana, *American Cyclopaedia*, \*41.
- Ripley, R. S., *War with Mexico*, 386.
- Ripley, W. Z., *Financial History of Virginia*, 319.
- Rittenhouse, D., biography, \*97.
- Rives, W. C., Jr., *James Madison*, \*95.
- Roads, S., *Marblehead*, (Mass.), \*64.
- Roanoke colony, 248.
- Robbins, Jonathan, case of, 343.
- Roberts, A., *Never Caught*, 416.
- Roberts, E. H., *New York*, \*67; *Battle of Oriskany*, 299; *Government Revenue*, 357.
- Robertson, C. F., *Louisiana Purchase*, 348.
- Robertson, James, *A Few Months in America*, \*85.
- Robertson, Wyndham, *Oregon*, 384.
- Roberval, expedition of, 240.
- Robin, Abbé, *Travels*, \*84.
- Robinson, Conway, *Virginia Company*, 281.
- Robinson, J. H., *Features of the Constitution*, 324.
- Robinson, R. E., *Vermont*, \*76.
- Robinson, S. T. L., *Kansas*, 397.
- Rochambeau, Marquis de, at Newport, 301; *Memoirs*, 302.
- Rockingham, Marquis of, biography, \*97; *Papers*, 289; first ministry, 288; second ministry, 303.
- Roe, E. P., historical novels, \*140.
- Rogers, H. W., *Constitutional History*, 358.
- Rogers, J. E. T., *Protests of the Lords*, 289.



- Roman, A., *P. T. Beauregard*, 406.  
 Roman Catholics, in Maryland, 254; in England, 264. — See Religion.  
 Roosevelt, T., *Winning of the West*, \*56; *New York (City)*, \*68; *Thomas Hart Benton*, \*87; *Gouverneur Morris*, \*95; *Naval War of 1812*, 353.  
 Root, J., *Connecticut Reports*, \*118.  
 Ropes, J. C., *Civil War*, 46, \*147.  
 Rose, English minister, 351.  
 Rosebery, Lord, *Pitt*, \*97, 303.  
 Ross, narrative of, 250.  
 Ross, A., *Oregon or the Columbia River*, \*72.  
 Ross, Charles, *Cornwallis*, \*89, 299.  
 Rotundity of the earth, 234, 235.  
 Rochefoucauld, *Travels*, \*85.  
 Rous, John, *New England*, 277.  
 Rowan County (N. C.), history of, 69.  
 Rowland, K. M., *George Mason*, \*95, 307.  
 Roxbury (Mass), history, \*64.  
 Royall, W. L., *Jackson and the Bank*, 369.  
 Royce, Josiah, *California*, \*58.  
 Ruge, Sophus, *Entwicklung der Kartographie*, 230; *Geschichte des Zeitalters der Entdeckungen*, 236.  
 "Rule of 1756," in Napoleonic wars, 350. — See Neutral Trade.  
 Rumple, J., *Rowan County* (N. C.), \*69.  
 Runnels, M. T., *Sanbornton* (N. H.), \*66.  
 Rupp, I. D., *Lancaster County* (Pa.), \*73; *Western Pennsylvania*, \*73; *Religious Denominations*, 285.  
 Rush, Richard, *A Residence at London*, \*131, 363; *Washington in Domestic Life*, 300.  
 Russell, A. P., *Thomas Corwin*, \*80.  
 Russell, Lord John, *Charles James Fox*, \*90, 293; *Récollections*, \*131.  
 Russell, W. H., *Hesperothen*, \*85; *My Diary*, 418.  
 Russell, W. S., *Guide to Plymouth*, 267.  
 Russia, mediation, 353; Northwest claims, 362; Treaty of 1824, 363, 383. — See Monroe Doctrine, Northwest Coast, Oregon.  
 Rut, John, voyage, 248.  
 Ruttenber, E. M., *County of Orange* (N. Y.), \*68; *Newburgh* (N. Y.), \*68.  
 Ruysch, Map of 1508, 236.  
 Rye (N. Y.), history, \*69.  
 Ryerson, A. E., *Royalists*, 304.
- S**ABIN, Joseph, *Dictionary*, 33, \*37.  
 Sabine, L., *Adherents to the Crown*, 304; *American Loyalists*, 304.  
 Safford, W. H., *Harman Blennerhassett*, 349; *Blennerhassett Papers*, 349.  
 Sagadahoc Colony, *The*, 264. — See Maine.  
 Sagard, *Histoire du Canada*, 232; *Grand Voyage*, 232.  
 Sage, Bernard J. — See Centz, P. C.  
 Sahagun, F. B., *Historia general*, 232; *Conquista de México*, 238.
- Sainsbury, W. Noël (ed.), *Calendar of [British] State Papers, Colonial*, \*108.  
 Saint-Croix River, 383.  
 St. Augustine (Fla.), histories, \*59; settlement of, 241.  
 St. Brandon's Island, legend of, 234.  
 St. Clair, Gen. Arthur, *Papers*, \*126; in Burgoyne's Campaign, 298; defeated (1791), 339.  
 St. George's Parish (Va.), history, \*77.  
 St. Germain, treaty of, 242.  
 St. John, J. A., *Life of Raleigh*, 247.  
 St. Lawrence County (N. Y.), history, \*69.  
 St. Lawrence River, discovery of, 240.  
 St. Louis (Mo.), histories, \*65.  
 St. Mark's Parish (Va.), history of, \*77.  
 Saint-Martin, V., *Histoire de la Géographie*, 230.  
 St. Paul (Minn.), history, \*65.  
 Salem (Mass.), history, \*64; *Records*, \*111; settlement of, 269. — See Massachusetts.  
 Salmon, Lucy M., on elementary schools, 32; on academies and colleges, 32; *Appointing Power*, 330.  
 Sanborn, E. D., *New Hampshire*, \*66.  
 Sanborn, F. B., *John Brown*, \*88.  
 Sanbornton (N. H.), history, \*66.  
 Sanderson, J., *Signers of the Declaration*, 292.  
 Sanford, E. B., *Connecticut*, \*58.  
 Sanford, L. G., *Erie County* (Pa.), \*73.  
 San Francisco, histories, \*58.  
 Sanitary Commission, 423.  
 Sante Fé Expedition, history of, 75. — See New Mexico. •  
 Santarem, Viscount, *Atlas*, 230; *Researches*, 237.  
 Saratoga, Convention of, 298, 299.  
 Sargent, Epes, *Henry Clay*, \*89.  
 Sargent, Nathan, *Public Men and Events*, \*131, 147.  
 Sargent, Winthrop, *Major John André*, \*87, 300; *Loyalist Poetry*, \*141; *Fort Duquesne*, 282.  
 Sato, Shosuke, *Land Question*, 305.  
 Saunderson, H. H., *Charleston* (N. H.), \*66.  
 Savannah (Ga.), history, \*59; settlement of, 257; French at, 300; capture of (1778), 301.  
 Saybrook (Conn.), settlement of, 274.  
 Scaife, W. B., *Geographical History*, \*49.  
 Scharf, J. T., *Delaware*, \*59; *Maryland*, \*62; *Baltimore* (Md.), \*62; *St. Louis* (Mo.), \*65, 243; with Westcott, T., *Philadelphia*, \*73; *Confederate Navy*, 413.  
 Schenck, D., *North Carolina*, \*70.  
 Schenectady (N. Y.), history, \*69.  
 Schlaeger, E., *Stellung der Deutschen*, \*85.  
 Schmucker, S. M., *Henry Clay*, \*89; *Alexander Hamilton*, \*91.  
 Schoell, F., *Histoire Abrégée des Traités de Paix*, \*54.  
 Schools, American history in, 2; introduction to American history, 6; proper

- work in American history, 23; textbooks, 41-43, 153; use of public libraries, 148; recitation in, 152; "The Quiz," 155; rooms, attractive, 172; written recitations, 206. — See Methods.
- Schoonmaker, M., *Kingston* (N. Y.), \*68.
- Schouler, J., on historical grouping and research, 33; *History of the U. S.*, 45, 46, \*48, 146; *Thomas Jefferson*, \*93.
- Schuckers, Jacob W., *Salmon P. Chase*, \*88.
- Schulze, J. L., *Nachrichten von Pennsylvania*, \*73.
- Schurz, Carl, *Henry Clay*, \*89, 145; *Abraham Lincoln*, \*94.
- Schuyler, Eugene, *American Diplomacy*, 303.
- Schuyler, G. W., *Colonial New York*, \*67; *Philip Schuyler*, \*97.
- Schuyler, Philip, biographies, \*97.
- Scot, George, *Model of East New Jersey*, 261.
- Scotch, race element, 310.
- Scott, Dred, case of, 399.
- Scott, E. G., *Constitutional Liberty*, 312.
- Scott, E. H. (ed.), *The Federalist*, \*134.
- Scott, W. A., *Repudiation of State Debts*, 389.
- Scott, Winfield, biographies, \*98; *Memoirs*, \*131; Mexican campaign, 387; defeated for presidency, 397; "Views" in 1860, 407.
- Scribner's *Statistical Atlas*, \*53, 310; *Citizen's Atlas*, 310; *Campaigns of the Civil War* (Series), 416.
- Scudder, H. E., *School History*, 11, 33, \*43, 144; *American Commonwealths*, 57; *George Washington*, \*100; *Noah Webster*, \*100; *Stories and Romances*, \*140; *Men and Manners in America*, 284, 314.
- Seabury, Samuel, biography, \*98; *Slavery Justified*, 375.
- Secession, theory of the Constitution, 327; threats in 1850, 392, 404; the acts in 1860, 400; historical development, 404; enunciations, 404; status in 1860, 404; causes, 405; grievances, 405; of South Carolina, 406; of other cotton states, 406; of border states, 410; Confederacy formed, 406, 412. — See Compromise, Constitution, Nullification, Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions.
- Sedgwick, C. M., historical novels, \*140.
- Sedition Act, 342.
- Seeley, Sir J. R., *Expansion of England*, 284.
- Seelye, Mrs. E. E., *Washington*, \*100.
- Seminaries, in history, 176.
- Seminole Wars, 359, 367, 373.
- Semple, *Baptists in Virginia*, 287.
- Senate, of the United States, documents and records, \*119, \*121; controversy with Jackson, 372. — See Civil Service, Compromises, Congress, Impeachments, Treaties.
- Separatists, English, 264, 265. — See Pilgrims, Puritans.
- Sergeant, John, *Select Speeches*, \*126.
- Sergeant, T., *Constitutional Law*, 358.
- Sevier, John, biography, \*98.
- Sewall, Samuel, *Diary*, \*131; connection with witchcraft delusion, 279; *Revolution in New England*, 279; *Joseph sold by his Brethren*, 315.
- Seward, F. W., *Seward at Washington*, \*98.
- Seward, W. H., *John Quincy Adams*, \*87; biographies, \*98; *Works*, \*126; *Autobiography*, \*131; on compromise of 1850, 391; not nominated in 1860, 400; attitude on compromise, 408; desired foreign war, 410; Lincoln's influence, 410; foreign relations, 420; Mexico, 421.
- Sewel, W., *History of the Friends*, 226, 277.
- Seybert, A., *Statistical Annals*, 346.
- Seymour, E. S., *Minnesota*, \*65.
- Seymour, G. E., *Study of History*, \*31.
- Shadrach, fugitive-slave case, 393.
- Shaler, N. S., *Nature and Man in America*, \*51, 227, 311; *The United States*, 48, \*51, 55, 227, 310; *Kentucky*, \*61, 343; on physiography of North America, 227.
- Shannon, Henry, *Slavery*, 376.
- Sharp, Governor, *Correspondence*, 287.
- Shattuck, L., *History of Concord* (Mass.), 295.
- Shea, George, *Alexander Hamilton*, \*91.
- Shea, J. G., *Charlevoix*, 243; *Mississippi*, 243; *Early Voyages*, 243; *Hennepin's Louisiana*, 243; *Catholic Church*, 285.
- Sheahan, James W., *Stephen A. Douglas*, \*90.
- Shelburne, Earl of, biography, \*98; in second Rockingham Ministry, 303; Prime Minister, 303.
- Sheldon, Mrs. E. M., *Michigan*, \*64.
- Sheldon-Barnes, Mary, *General History*, 32; *Studies in American History*, 33, 42, \*43, 144, 145.
- Shenandoah, Confederate cruiser, 421.
- Shenandoah Valley, settlement of, 253; campaigns of Civil War, 415.
- Shepard, E. M., *Martin Van Buren*, \*99.
- Sheppard, John H., *Samuel Tucker*, \*99.
- Sherard, E. H., *St. Louis and Missouri*, \*65.
- Sherburne, Andrew, *Memoirs*, \*131.
- Sheridan, Philip H., biography, \*98; *Personal Memoirs*, \*131.
- Sherman, H., *Slavery*, 375.
- Sherman, John, *Selected Speeches*, \*126; *Recollections*, \*131.
- Sherman, John, and Sherman, W. T., *Letters*, \*131.
- Sherman, W. T., *Memoirs*, \*131; Georgia campaign, 415; march to the sea, 415; northward march, 415.
- Shindler, James, on history in public schools, 32.
- Shipp, Bernhard, *De Soto*, 239.
- Short, J. T., *Historical Reference Lists*, \*36; *North Americans*, 231.

- Shurtleff, N. B., *Records of Massachusetts*, \*110; *Records of New Plymouth*, \*111.
- Sidney, A., *Discourses on Government*, 290.
- Siebert, W. H., *Underground Railroad*, 393.
- Sigourney, L. H. *Pocahontas*, \*142.
- Simcoe, J. G., *Queen's Rangers*, 299.
- Sims, fugitive-slave case, 393.
- Simms, W. G., *South Carolina*, \*74; historical novels, \*140; *War Poetry of the South*, \*141; *Francis Marion*, 301.
- Sinclair, A., *The Alabama*, 418.
- Skrellings, The, 231.
- Slade, W., *Vermont State Papers*, 308.
- Slavery, as a sectional issue, 10; topics on, 14, 17; in the colonies, 314; under Confederation, 320, 336; compromise in Federal Convention, 323; after 1789, 336; condition of in 1830, 366, 375; insurrections, 375; arguments for and against, 376; in District of Columbia, 378, 390; under Tyler, 382; connection with annexation of Texas, 385; with Mexican War, 387; territorial crisis, 390; compromise of 1850, 391; fugitives, 393; connection with Cuba, 394; in Kansas, 396; splits Know Nothings, 397; Dred Scott decision, 399; John Brown, 399; election of 1860, 399; Davis resolution of 1860, 400; effects in 1860, 402; a cause of secession, 405; proposed amendments on, 408; recognized by Confederacy, 412; in Civil War, 421; "contrabands," 425; confiscation, 425; emancipation in D. C., 425; in territories, 425; negro troops, 425; emancipation proclamations, 425; state emancipations, 425; fugitives, 425; abolition by 13th Amendment, 426.— See Abolition, Fugitives, Insurrections, Memorials, Rebellions, Slave Trade.
- Slaveholders, 375.— See Slavery.
- Slave Trade, beginnings of, 247; under Confederation, 320; compromise in Federal Convention, 323; Acts of 1794, 336; prohibited (1807), 361; in 1830, 375; domestic, 378, 379; regulation of, 380; in treaty of 1842, 383; in District of Columbia, 390; act of 1850, 391; treaty with England, 425; domestic forbidden, 425.— See Navy, Slavery.
- Slafter, E. M., *The Northmen*, 234, 242.
- Slaughter, P., *Bristol Parish* (Va.), \*77, 252; *St. George's Parish* (Va.), \*77, 252; *St. Mark's Parish* (Va.), \*77, 252.
- Slephton, J., *Saga of Olaf*, 234.
- Slidell, Mexican mission, 387; captured (1861), 421.
- Sloane, W. M., *French War and Revolution*, \*44, 145.
- Small, A. W., *American Nationality*, 307.
- Smedes, Susan D., *Southern Planter*, 376.
- Smith, A., *Wealth of Nations*, 285.
- Smith, Buckingham, *Documentos para la Florida*, \*116; *Cabeza de Vaca*, 239; *De Soto Letter*, 239.
- Smith, Edward, *William Cobbett*, \*89.
- Smith, George, *Delaware County* (Pa.), \*73, 262, 299.
- Smith, Gerritt, biography, \*98.
- Smith, Goldwin, *United States*, 44, \*45, 145; *William Lloyd Garrison*, \*91.
- Smith, J. E. A., *Pittsfield* (Mass.), \*64.
- Smith, Capt. John, *True Relation*, 233, 251; in Virginia, 250; *General Historie*, 251; *Mix of Virginia*, 251; credibility of, 251; New England voyages, 264; *Description of New England*, 264; *New England's Trials*, 264.
- Smith, J. H., *Narrative*, 300.
- Smith, Lucian H., *Atlas*, \*53.
- Smith, M. L., *Brief Compend*, \*36.
- Smith, P. H., *Acadia*, 281.
- Smith, Richard, *Diary*, 297.
- Smith, Richmond M., *Emigration and Immigration*, \*56, 310.
- Smith, S., *New Jersey*, \*66.
- Smith, Seba, *Major Jack Downing*, \*140, 360.
- Smith, W., *Pennsylvania*, 263.
- Smith, William, *New York*, \*67.
- Smith, W. R., *Wisconsin*, \*78.
- Smithsonian Institution, *Reports and Contributions*, 231.
- Smyth, John F. D., *Tour in the U. S.*, \*85.
- Snow, C. H., *Boston*, \*63.
- Snow, Freeman, *American Diplomacy*, 303, 363; *Lectures*, 421.
- Social Institutions in Colonies, 4, 314.— See Colonies by name.
- Societies, Proceedings of Learned, 122-124.
- Soley, H., *Records of the Society of Jesus*, 255.
- Soley, J. R., *Blockade*, 416.
- Sonnenschein, W. S., *Best Books*, \*37.
- Soto, De, explorations, 230.
- Soule, C. C., *Lawyer's Reference Manual*, \*37.
- Sources, interest in, 2; instruction through, 19; set of, in schools and colleges, 26; manuscript, 134.
- South, The, Revolutionary War in, 301; emancipation under Confederation, 320; on Missouri Compromise, 361; on tariff, 364; on slavery, 378; in Texas, 385; in the crisis of 1850, 391; on the election of Lincoln, 400; status in 1860, 402; grievances, 405; separation, 405-415; defeat, 415-427.— See Secession, Slavery.
- Southampton (L. I.), history, \*69.
- South America, little contribution to history, 3; first voyages to, 235; exploration of, 236; called "New World," 237; under "Monroe Doctrine," 362.
- "South American," *Revolution*, 363.
- South Carolina, histories, \*74; *Records*, \*116; settlement of, 255; condition of (1760), 283; British in, 301; first state government, 306; land cessions, 317; ratifies constitution, 325; protests against

- tariff, 370; nullification, 370; secession spirit in 1832, 404; movement for secession, 400, 406; secession convention, 406; ordinance, 406; *Journal of the Convention*, 407; commission to Buchanan, 408; fires on Star of the West, 408; correspondence with Buchanan, 408; commission to Lincoln, 410; Fort Sumter taken, 410.—See Carolinas, Nullification, Secession.
- South Carolina Historical Society, publications, \*124.
- Southern Confederacy.—See Confederate States.
- Southold (L. I.), history, \*69; *Records*, \*113.
- Sovereignty of Congress, 333.
- Spain, feeble colonies, 4; relations with the United States, 29; claims to America, 228; treatment of Indians, 232; discoveries, 235; conquests of Peru and Mexico, 238; in present U. S., 239; acquires Louisiana, 244; colonial policy of, 287; during American Revolution, 303; and the confederation, 321; and the U. S., 337; West Florida and Louisiana, 347; Florida negotiations, 359; treaty of 1819, 360; European system, 362; Oregon claims extinguished, 383; claim to Texas, 385; Cuba, 394; Black Warrior episode, 394; relations with Mexico (1861), 421.
- Spanish Americans, little contribution to history, 4.
- Sparks, E. E., *Topical References*, 34, \*36.
- Sparks, Jared, historical services, 1; *American Biography*, 86; *Benedict Arnold*, \*87, 300; *Benjamin Franklin*, \*90; *Charles Lee*, \*94, 299; *Gouverneur Morris*, \*95; biographies, \*98; *George Washington*, \*100; *Correspondence of the Revolution*, \*127; *Diplomatic Correspondence*, \*134, 300; *Life of Ribault*, 241.
- Sparks, W. H., *Memories*, \*132.
- Speaker of the House, treatise on, 330.
- "Special Reports," system of written, 211.
- "Specie Circular," 372.
- Specie payments, stopped in Revolution, 298; under Confederation, 319; stopped in 1813, 356; resumed (1817), 356; stopped 1861, 419.
- Speeches, collections of, 132-134.
- Spelman, H., *Relation of Virginia*, 251; *True Declaration*, 251.
- Spence, James, *American Union*, 375.
- Spencer, C. P., *North Carolina*, \*70.
- Spencer, J. A., *History of the U. S.*, \*48.
- Spotswood, Governor of Virginia, 253; *Official Letters*, 253.
- Spring, L. W., *Kansas*, \*60.
- Sprott vs. United States, 405.
- "Squatter Sovereignty."—See Douglas, Popular Sovereignty.
- Squire and Davis, *Ancient Monuments*, 231.
- Staatsarchiv*, 414.
- Stamp Act, 288, 289; text of, 290.
- Stamp Act Congress, 288, 304; *Proceedings*, 289; *Resolves*, 290.
- Stanhope, Lord, *William Pitt*, \*97, 303.
- Stanton, E. M., biography, \*98; Secretary of War, 423.
- Stanton, H. B., *Random Recollections*, \*132.
- Stanwood, E., *Presidential Elections*, \*56, 145.
- Staples, W. R., *Providence (R. I.)*, \*74, 273; *Destruction of the Gaspee*, 293; *Rhode Island*, 328.
- Stapleton, A. G., *George Canning*, \*88.
- Star of the West, 408.
- Stark, Caleb, *General John Stark*, \*98.
- Stark, John, biography, \*98, 299.
- Staten Island, history, \*69.
- States, the, western founded, 10; histories of, \*57-78; constitutions of, 108, 306, 336; archives of, 135; admission of, 161, 361; claims to western lands, 228; first governments of, 296; under Confederation, 304-321; ratify Constitution, 325; status of non-ratifying, 327; sovereignty of, 327; precedents for national government, 329; assumption of debts, 331; protest against Alien and Sedition acts, 342; banks of, 356; receive deposits, 372; finances (1845-49), 388; internal improvements, 388; Personal Liberty bills, 393; admissions, 402; "war" upon, 408; status before 1789, 404; emancipation in, 425.—See the states by name, Constitution, Nullification, Secession, Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions.
- Statesmen, works of, \*124-127.
- Statistics, topics in, 209.
- Statutes at Large of the United States*, as sources, 48, \*49, 107, \*120; index to, \*118; of Great Britain, \*108, 229.
- Steamboats, 366.—See Commerce, Internal Improvements.
- Stearns, Charles, *Henry Box Brown*, 394.
- Stearns, E. S., *Rindge (N. H.)*, \*66.
- Stebbing, W., *Sir Walter Raleigh*, 247.
- Stedman, E. C., historical poems, \*142; with (Hutchinson, E. M.), *Library of American Literature*, 41, \*134, 141.
- Stedman, C., *American War*, 295.
- Steele, J. D. and E. B., ["Barnes"] *Brief History*, \*43.
- Steiner, B. C., *Slavery in Connecticut*, 315.
- Stephen, J., *War in Disguise*, 350.
- Stephen, J. L., *Central America*, 233; *Yucatan*, 233.
- Stephens, Alex. H., biography, \*98; Union speech, 406; correspondence with Lincoln, 410; "cornerstone" speech, 412; rivalry with Davis, 412.
- Stephens, H. B., *Cartier*, 240.
- Sterne, Simon, *Constitutional History*, 44, \*45, 146.
- Sterling, Earl of (W. Alexander), biography, \*98.

- Steuben, W. von, biographies, \*98.  
 Stevens, *Anthony Burns*, 394.  
 Stevens, B. F., *Clinton-Cornwallis Controversy*, 302.  
 Stevens, C. E., *Sources of the Constitution*, 290.  
 Stevens, E. T., *Flint Chips*, 231.  
 Stevens, H., *Franklin's Life and Writings*, \*125; *Historical and Geographical Notes*, 230.  
 Stevens, J. A., *Albert Gallatin*, \*90.  
 Stevens, Thaddeus, biography, \*98.  
 Stewart, Abram, biography, 376.  
 Stiles, H. R., *Windsor* (Conn.), \*59; *Brooklyn* (N. Y.), \*67.  
 Still, William, *Underground Railroad*, 393.  
 Stillé, Charles J., *John Dickinson*, \*90; *Anthony Wayne*, \*100; *Beaumont*, 300; *How a Free People*, 419.  
 Stine, J. H., *Army of Potomac*, 416.  
 Stith, W., *Virginia*, \*77.  
 Stoddard, A., *Louisiana*, \*62, 244.  
 Stoddard, W. O., *James A. Garfield*, \*90; *James Monroe*, \*95.  
 Stone, W. L., *New York City*, \*68; *Sir William Johnson*, 282; *Campaign of Burgoyne*, 298; *Life of Brant*, 299; *Wyoming* (Pa.), \*73, 299.  
 Stone River, battle, 415.  
 Storey, Moorfield, *Charles Sumner*, \*99. *Story of the States* (Series), 57.  
 Story, J., biography, \*98; *Writings*, \*126.  
 Story, W. W., *Joseph Story*, \*98.  
 Stoughton, John, *William Penn*, \*96.  
 Stovall, P. A., *Robert Toombs*, \*99.  
 Stowe, Harriet Beecher, historical novels, \*140.  
 Strabo, theories of, 234.  
 Strachey, W., *Travail into Virginia*, 249.  
 Straus, O. S., *Roger Williams*, \*100.  
 Strobel, P. A., *The Salzburger*, 288.  
 Strong, M. McL., *Wisconsin*, \*78.  
 Strype, J., *Life of Whitgift*, 265; *Life of Grindal*, 265.  
 Stuart, A., *Succinct Account*, 384.  
 Stuart, Isaac W., *Captain Nathan Hale*, \*91.  
 Stuart, James, *North America*, \*85, 376.  
 Studen, J. H., *Columbus* (O.), \*71.  
 Sturges vs. Crowninshield, 358, 359.  
 Sturgis, W., *Oregon Question*, 384.  
 Stuyvesant, Peter, biography, \*98; Governor of New Netherland, 258.  
 Suffolk County (Mass.), *Records*, \*111.  
 Suffrage, colonial, 312.  
 Sullivan, J., *Maine*, \*62; biography, \*99.  
 Sullivan, John, biography, \*99.  
 Sullivan, William, *Familial Letters*, \*132.  
 Summer Schools, value of, 22.  
 Sumner, Charles, biographies, \*99; *Works*, \*126; assault on, 398; foreign affairs, 420.  
 Sumner, Wm. Graham, *Alexander Hamilton*, \*92; *Andrew Jackson*, \*93; *Robert Morris*, \*95; *American Currency*, 319; *History of Banking*, 389.  
 Sumter, Fort, Buchanan's attitude, 408; Lincoln's attitude, 410; surrenders, 410; effect, 415.  
 Superintendent of Documents, *Monthly Catalogue*, \*38.  
 Supreme Court, *Reports*, \*121; as geographical sources, 54; organization, 329; great decisions, 358; and Jackson, 368; power over territorial slavery, 390; Dred Scott decision, 399; legal tender decisions, 410.—See cases by name, Courts, Implied Powers.  
 Surg, J. P. R. de, *Histoire... de la Pennsylvanie*, \*73.  
 Surplus, under Jefferson, 345; 1836, 373.  
 Surveys, of the West, 50.  
 Susquehanna, boundary controversy, 261, 263.  
 Sutcliff, R., *Travels*, \*85.  
 Sutton (Mass.), history, 64.  
 Swain, James B., *Henry Clay*, \*89.  
 Swan, J. G., *Northwest Coast*, \*77.  
 Swank, *History of the Manufacture of Iron*, 285.  
 Swedes, claims of to America, 228; relations with the Dutch, 261; settlement on the Delaware, 261.—See Delaware, New Sweden.  
 Swinton, W., *Decisive Battles*, 415; *Army of Potomac*, 416.  
 Symmes, Raphael, *Cruise of the Alabama*, 414.
- T**AILFER, P., *Narrative of Georgia*, 257.  
 Tallack, Wm., *Friendly Sketches*, \*85.  
 Tallmadge, B., *Memoirs*, 300.  
 Tallmadge, Missouri amendment, 361.  
 Taney, R. B., biography, \*99; removes deposits, 372; Chief Justice, 378.—See Dred Scott, Habeas Corpus.  
 Tappan, L., *Arthur Tappan*, 367.  
 Tarbox, I., *Sir Walter Raleigh*, 249.  
 Tariffs, Colonial, 313; propositions under Confederation, 319; state, 321; first national act (1789), 331; of 1812, 356; of 1816, 356; of 1824, 364, 370; of 1828, 364, 370; of 1832, 370; of 1833, 370, 382; connection with surplus, 373; of 1842, 382; of 1846, 388; of 1857, 400; protection forbidden in Confederate Constitution, 412; war tariff, 419.  
 Tarleton, B., *Campaigns*, 302.  
 Tassel, case of, 373.  
 Taswell-Langmead, T. P., *English Constitutional History*, 312.  
 Taussig, F. W., *Topics in Tariff History*, \*36; *Tariff History*, \*56; *State Papers on the Tariff*, \*134, 332.  
 Taxation, of slaves debated (1776), 320; Supreme Court cases, 358; in Civil War, 419.—See Finances.  
 Taylor, Hannis, *English Constitution*, 271.  
 Taylor, Zachary, biography, \*99; advance through Texas, 387; Mexican campaigns, 387; elected president, 390; against compromise, 391; death, 391; against filibusters, 394.



- Tea, English Act, 294; destruction (1773), 294.
- Teachers, preparation to teach history, 21; function of, 22; in recitations, 153; talks by, 189. — See Methods.
- Teaching of American history, development of, 2.
- Tennessee, histories, \*74; admitted, 336; secedes, 410.
- Territories, division into, 309; creation of, 317; slavery in, 320; organization after 1789, 336; compromise of 1820, 361; slavery crisis (1846-49), 390; theories of slavery in, 390; compromise of 1850, 391; popular sovereignty, 395; Dred Scott decision, 399; status in 1860, 402; slavery prohibited, 425. — See Geography, Slavery.
- Tests of pupils, 223, 224.
- Texas, histories, \*75; annexation of, 309; negotiations with Spain as to, 360; in 1830, 366; Jackson's policy as to, 368; independent, 373; Van Buren's policy as to, 381; territorial history, 385; independence, 385; annexation proposed, 385; annexation treaty, 385; annexation completed, 386; leads to war, 387; in treaty of 1848, 387; claims New Mexico, 390; territorial adjustment, 391; secedes, 406. — See France, Mexico, Spain.
- Texas vs. White, 405.
- Text-books, in schools, 23; without a teacher, 27; characteristics of, 41; for schools, 41; for colleges, 43, 44; use of, 153.
- Thacher, James, *Military Journal*, \*132, 295.
- Thackeray, W. M., *Virginians*, \*140.
- Thayer, Eli, *Kansas Crusade*, 397.
- Thayer, J. B., *Cases on Constitutional Law*, \*134, 307, 334.
- Theses, for colleges, 215, 220.
- Thvet, A., alleged voyage, 241; *Singularitez*, 241.
- Thomas, A. C., *History*, 33, 42, \*43, 53, 144.
- Thomas, E. S., *Reminiscences*, \*132.
- Thomas, F. W., *John Randolph*, \*97.
- Thomas, Gabriel, *Pennsylvania*, \*73, 263; *East Jersey*, 261; *History of Salem* (N. J.), 287.
- Thomas, George H., biography, \*99.
- Thomas, Isaiah, *History of Printing*, \*104, 285.
- Thompson, B. F., *Long Island*, \*68, 286.
- Thompson, D. P., *Green Mountain Boys*, \*140.
- Thompson, George, *Prison Life*, 377.
- Thompson, J. P., *American Independence*, 323.
- Thompson, M., *Louisiana*, \*62.
- Thompson, P. G., *Bibliography of Ohio*, \*70, 318.
- Thompson, R. W., *Recollections*, \*132.
- Thornton, J. Q., *Oregon and California*, \*72.
- Thorpe, F. N., *American History*, \*31; *Outline of a General Course*, \*36.
- Thruston, *Antiquities of Tennessee*, 233.
- Thwaites, R. G., *The Colonies*, \*45; *Wisconsin*, \*78.
- Ticknor, George, *William H. Prescott*, \*97.
- Ticonderoga, capture of by English, 282; seized by Americans, 294.
- Tiedeman, C. G., *Unwritten Constitution*, 404.
- Tilden, S. J., biography, \*99; *Writings*, \*126.
- Tiernan, Mary F. S., *Homosselle*, \*140.
- Tiffany, Francis, *Dorothea Lynde Dix*, \*90.
- Tiffany, J., *Treatise on Government*, 324.
- Tiffany, Wm. N. M., historical stories, \*140.
- Tocqueville, A. de, *Democracy in America*, 309.
- Todd, C. B., *City of New York*, \*68.
- Tompkins, H. B., *Bibliotheca Jeffersoniana*, \*93, \*126.
- Tonnage duties, early, 331.
- Toombs, R., biography, \*99.
- Topeka (Kansas, history), \*60; Convention of, 396.
- Topical outlines, 36; reading, 195; system, 207-210.
- Topics, lists of, 11-18; subjects for, 208.
- Torfaeus, *Vinlandiae*, 234.
- Toscanelli, theories of, 234.
- Tourgee, A. W., historical novels, \*140.
- Tower Collection, *Index*, \*37.
- Tower, C., Jr., *Lafayette*, \*93.
- Towns, histories of, \*57-78; records of, \*109-117; in Virginia, 253; in New England, 270, 271, 275; English prototypes, 311; in colonial times, 312.
- Townsend, A., *Non-Combatant*, 418.
- Townsend, S. D., *Anecdotes*, 418.
- Townshend, Charles, Acts, 291, 293.
- Trafalgar, battle of, 350.
- Training, through American history, 3, 19, 23.
- Travels, \*78-86.
- Treason, trials after whiskey rebellion, 339; after Burr's conspiracy, 349; in embargo times, 351; in Civil War, 423.
- Treaties, as sources, 48, 54; list of, affecting geography, 228, 229; boundaries with England, 383, 394; boundaries with Mexico, 385. — See Boundaries, Fisheries, Wars.
- Treaties and Conventions*, 54, \*120.
- Tremain, Mary, *Slavery in the D. C.*, 337, 378.
- Trenton, gravel of, Paleolithic implements in, 231.
- Trescott, W. H., *Diplomatic History*, 300, 338.
- Tripolitan War, 345.
- Trobriand, P. R. de, *Army of the Potomac*, 418.
- Trollope, Anthony, *North America*, \*85.
- Trollope, Mrs. Frances M., *Domestic Manners*, \*85, 387.
- Trott, N., *Laws of the British Planta-*

- ions, \*108; *Laws of South Carolina*, \*116.
- Troup, biography, \*101.
- Trumbull, B., *Connecticut*, \*59.
- Trumbull, John, *Autobiography*, \*132.
- Trumbull, J. H., *Hartford County (Conn.)*, \*59; (with Hoadly, C. J.), *Records of Connecticut*, \*112.
- Tryon County (N. Y.), history, \*69.
- Tucker, George, *History*, 45, \*48; *Thomas Jefferson*, \*93; *Progress of the United States*, 367.
- Tucker, G. F., *Monroe Doctrine*, 363.
- Tucker, St. George, *Hansford*, \*140; *Blackstone's Commentaries*, 328; on secession, 404.
- Tucker, Samuel, biography, \*99.
- Tuckerman, B., *Lafayette*, \*93; *Peter Stuyvesant*, \*98.
- Tuckerman, H. T., *America and her Commentators*, \*85.
- Tudor, Wm., *James Otis*, \*96.
- Turner, Nat., slave insurrection, 375.
- Turner, O., *Holland Purchase*, \*68; *Phelps and Gorham's Purchase*, \*69.
- Tuthill, F., *California*, \*58.
- Tuttle, C. R., *Wisconsin*, \*78.
- Twichell, J. H., *John Winthrop*, \*100.
- Twining, Thomas, *Travels in America*, \*85.
- Twiss, Travers, *Oregon Territory*, 384; *Law of Nations*, 422.
- "Two-Million Bill," 387.
- Tyler, John, elected vice-president, 382; becomes president, 382; breach with the Whigs, 382; ambition in 1844, 385; annexation of Texas, 386; opposes internal improvements, 388.
- Tyler, L. G., *The Tylers*, \*99; *Habeas Corpus*, 424.
- Tyler, M. C., *Patrick Henry*, \*92; *American Literature*, 285.
- Tyler, Samuel, *Roger B. Taney*, \*99.
- "UNDERGROUND Railroad," 379, 393. — See Fugitive Slaves.
- Underhill, J., *News from America*, 274.
- Union, the, foundation of, 10; early plans, 304, 305, 306; genesis of, 309-315; is it older than the states? 326; danger to in 1788, 321; in 1798, 342; in 1814, 354; in 1820, 361; in 1850, 392; in 1860, 400; in 1861, 410. — See Congresses, Confederation, Constitution.
- United Colonies, The, 296.
- United Colonies of New England, 276, 304.
- United Netherland Company, 258.
- United States, *Catalogue of Public Documents*, \*38; Geological Survey, 50; physical maps, 51; *Records*, \*118; *Digests*, \*118; *Statutes*, \*120; *Statistical Abstract*, 311; *War of the Rebellion*, 407; *Case before the Geneva Tribunal*, 422; *Opinions of Attorneys-General*, 424.
- United States vs. Fisher, 334.
- United States vs. Castner Hanway, 394.
- United States vs. Judge Peters, 359.
- Universities, American history in, 2.
- University extension, value of, 22.
- Upham, C. W., *Salem Witchcraft*, 279; *Timothy Pickering*, 351.
- Upham, W. P., *Town Records of Salem*, \*111.
- Upton, Emory, biography, \*99.
- Updike, W., *Episcopal Church in Narragansett*, \*74.
- Upland, *Records of the Court of*, 262.
- Upshur, A. P., *Brief Enquiry*, 405.
- Utah, histories, \*75; organization in 1850, 391. — See Pacific States.
- Utrecht, Treaty of, 228, 243, 281.
- VALENTINE, D. T., *City of New York*, \*69, 286.
- Vallandigham, C. L., biography, \*99; *Record on Abolition*, \*126; compromise, 408; trial by military court, 423.
- Vallandigham, James L., *Clement L. Vallandigham*, \*99.
- Van Buren, M., *Political Parties*, \*56, 332; biography, \*99; association with Jackson, 367; president, 381; defeat of 1840, 382; loses nomination in 1844, 385; nominated by the Free-Soilers in 1848, 390.
- Vanderbilt, G. L., *Flatbush (N. Y.)*, \*68.
- Van Der Donk, *Nieuw Nederland*, 259.
- Van Horne, Thomas B., *George H. Thomas*, \*99; *Army of Cumberland*, 416.
- Van Santvoord, George, *Chief Justices*, 330.
- Van Schaack, H. C., *Peter Van Schaack*, \*97.
- Van Schaack, P., biography, \*97.
- Vane, Sir Henry, biography, \*99; governor of Massachusetts, 272.
- Van Zandt, case, 379.
- Varney, G. J., *Maine*, \*62.
- Varnhagen, *Nouvelles Recherches*, 237.
- Varnum, J. V., *Case of Trevett vs. Weed-en*, 319.
- Veech, J., *Mason and Dixon's Line*, 262; *The Nonogahela of Old*, \*73.
- Vega, G. de la, *Commentarios*, 238.
- Venezuela, Monroe Doctrine, 363.
- Vergennes, Comte de, *Memoire historique*, 244.
- Vermont, histories, \*75; condition of (1760), 276; first state government, 308; emancipates slaves, 320; admitted, 336.
- Vermont Historical Society, publications, \*124.
- Vernon, Thomas, *Diary*, \*132.
- Verona, Congress of, 362.
- Verrazano, voyage, 240.
- Vesey Denmark, slave insurrection, 375.
- Vespucci, Amerigo, voyages, 237; *Letters*, 237.
- Veto, first, 329; Madison's bank, 356; bonus bill, 356; Monroe's (1822), 356; Jackson's bank, 369; Jackson's pocket, 373; internal improvements, 388. — See presidents by name.



- Vicksburg, battle, 415.  
 Victor, O. J., *Southern Rebellion*, 416.  
 Vigne, Godfrey T., *Six Months in America*, \*85.  
 Vincent, F., *Delaware*, \*59.  
 Vincent, J. M., *Bibliography*, \*36.  
 Vining, E. P., *Inglorious Columbus*, 234.  
 Vinland, 234.  
 Virginia, histories, \*76-77; *Records*, \*115; name, 248; charters, 250; Assembly of 1619, 251; ordinance of 1621, 251; government and history of, 248, 249, 252, 253; disputes with Maryland, 253, 255; Quakers in, 277; condition of (1760), 287; Resolves of 1765, 290; of 1769, 293; of 1773, 294; of 1776, 296; claims western lands, 304; first state government, 306, 307; cedes claims to western lands, 317; ratifies Constitution, 325; convention (1788), 326; resolutions (1798), 342, 404; secedes, 410; campaign of 1864, 415.  
 Virginia Historical Society, publications, \*124.  
 Von Borcke, H., *Confederate War*, 414.  
 Von Holst, H., *Constitutional History*, 43, 45, 46, \*48; *John C. Calhoun*, \*88.
- WADDELL**, J. A., *Augusta County* (Va.), \*77.  
 Wade, B. F., biography, \*99.  
 Waite, T. B., *State Papers*, \*120.  
 Wakarusa War, 396.  
 Wakeman, Henry O., *Charles James Fox*, \*90.  
 Waldseemüller, Martin, *Cosmographiæ*, 237.  
 Walker, C. M., *Athens County* (O.), \*71.  
 Walker, F. A., *Making of the Nation*, \*44, 145; *General Hancock*, \*92.  
 Walker, George L., *Thomas Hooker*, \*92, 271.  
 Walker, J. B., *New Hampshire Convention*, 325.  
 Walker, R. J., report on tariff, 388; governor of Kansas, 396.  
 Walker, T., *American Law*, 404.  
 Walker, W., *Congregationalism*, 265.  
 Wallace, J. W., *United States Reports*, \*121; *William Bradford*, 298.  
 Wallace, Lew, *Fair God*, \*140.  
 Walpole, Horace, *Letters*, 289; *Journals*, 301; *Memoirs*, 301.  
 Walter, E. P., *Records of Vermont*, 318.  
 Wansey, H., *Journal*, \*85.  
 Wars, Indian, 339; intercolonial, 281; French and Indian, 281; Revolution, 298-303; French (1799), 341; Barbary, 345, 356, 357; of 1812, 352, 354; Seminole, 359; Black Hawk, 373; Mexican, 387; Civil War, 402-424.  
*War of the Rebellion, Official Records*, 407.  
 Warburton, George, *Conquest of Canada*, 282.  
 Ward, Artemus. — See Browne, C. F.  
 Warfield, E. D., *Kentucky's Struggle*, 318; *Virginia and Kentucky Resolutions*, 342.  
 Ward, G. A., *Curwen's Journal*, 304.  
 Ward, N., *Simple Cobbler of Agawam*, 272.  
 Warden, D. B., *Statistical Account*, 284.  
 Warden, R. B., *Salmon P. Chase*, \*88; *Stephen A. Douglas*, \*90.  
 Warner, C. D., *South and West*, \*85; *Washington Irving*, \*92; *John Smith*, 251.  
 Warner (N. H.), history, \*66.  
 Warren, Edward, *John Warren*, \*99.  
 Warren, John, biography, \*99.  
 Warren, Joseph, biography, \*99.  
 Warville, J. P. B. de, *Travels*, \*79.  
 Washburn, E., *Judicial History*, 271.  
 Washburn, Israel, *Northern Boundary*, 384.  
 Washington, George, biographies, \*99, \*100; *Writings*, \*127; *Journal*, \*132, 282; manuscripts, 135; in French and Indian War, 282; in Revolutionary War, 294-300; president, 329-340; farewell address, 340.  
 Washington, city of, founded, 336; captured by British, 353. — See District of Columbia.  
*Washington-Irvine Correspondence*, \*127.  
 Washington, state of, histories, \*77.  
 Wassenaer, *New Netherland*, 259.  
 Waterhouse, B., *Oregon*, \*72.  
 Watertown (Mass.), *Records*, \*111, 273.  
 Watkins, R. and G., *Digest of the Laws of Georgia*, \*116.  
 Watson, Elkanah, *Memoirs*, \*85, 285.  
 Watson, J. F., *New York City and State*, \*69; *Philadelphia and Pennsylvania*, \*73, 287.  
 Watson, P. B., *Pre-Columbian Bibliography*, 231.  
 Watson, R. G., *South America*, 238.  
 Wayne, Anthony, biography, \*100; Indian campaign of, 339.  
 Webb, S. B., *Correspondence*, \*132.  
 Webster, Daniel, biographies, \*100; *Private Correspondence*, \*127; *Works*, \*127; and Jackson, 367; debate with Calhoun, 370; debate with Hayne, 370; relations with Tyler, 382; Ashburton treaty, 383; on compromise of 1850, 391.  
 Webster, Noah, biography, \*100; *Essays*, \*127; *American Policy*, 322.  
 Webster, P., *Political Union*, 322.  
 Weed, T., biography, \*100; *Autobiography*, \*132.  
 Weeden, W. B., *Economic History*, \*56, 271, 286; *Representation*, 271.  
 Weeks, S. B., *Historical Literature of North Carolina*, 256; *Religious Development*, 314; *Church and State*, 315.  
 Weems, M. L., demoralizing influence, 1.  
 Weise, A. J., *Discoveries of America*, 236.  
 Weiss, John, *Theodore Parker*, \*96, 377.  
 Welby, A., *Visit to North America*, \*85.  
 Weld, Isaac, Jr., *Travels*, \*85.  
 Welde, T., *Antinomians*, \*273.

- Wells, Gideon, *Lincoln and Seward*, 422.
- Welling, J. C., *Conflict over Public Lands*, 318.
- Wells, J. A., *Teaching of History*, \*31.
- Wells, W. V., *Samuel Adams*, \*87.
- Wendell, Barrett, *Cotton Mather*, \*95, 146, 279; *Witchcraft*, 279.
- Wentworth, J., *Reminiscences*, \*132.
- Welsh, legendary explorers, 234.
- Wessagusset, Weston's settlement at, 268.
- West, the, conflicting claims to, 304; settlement of, till 1782, 317; in 1816, 356.— See Lands, Territories, and states by name.
- West Florida, boundaries of, 244; disputes as to, 309; annexation of, 347, 350, 359.— See Florida, Louisiana, Spain.
- West India trade, under Confederation, 321; cut off, 355; after 1815, 356.
- West Jersey, colony of, 260.
- West Newbury (Mass.), history, \*64.
- Western Reserve, of Connecticut, 336.
- West Virginia, histories, \*77; Union sentiment, 410; abolishes slavery, 425.
- Weston (Mass.), *Records*, \*111.
- Weston, C. J., *South Carolina Documents*, \*116.
- Weston, G. M., *Slavery*, 403.
- Weymouth, George, in Maine, 249.
- Wharton, Francis, *Digest of International Law*, \*134, 300; *Revolutionary Diplomatic Correspondence*, \*134, 300; *Commentaries*, 327; *State Trials*, 335.
- Wheaton, Henry, *William Pinkney*, \*96; *Reports*, \*121; *International Law*, 421.
- Wheeler, E. P., *Supreme Court*, 330.
- Wheeler, H. G., *History of Congress*, \*132.
- Wheeler, J. H., *North Carolina*, \*70, 288.
- Wheeler's Survey, *Reports*, 50, 231.
- Whig Party, organization of, 368; in election of 1836, 381; campaign of 1840, 382; breach with Tyler, 382; financial policy, 382; breaking up, 397.
- Whiskey Rebellion, 339.
- Whitaker, E., *Southold* (L. I.), \*69.
- Whitcomb, S. L., *Chronological Outlines*, \*137.
- White vs. Hart, 405.
- White, Andrew D., on the study of history, 32; on European schools, 32.
- White, G. S., *Samuel Slater*, 332.
- White, Horace, *Money and Banking*, 419.
- White, John, *Planter's Plea*, 269.
- White, John, in Roanoke colony, 248.
- White, R. G., *Poetry of Civil War*, 418; *New Gospel of Peace*, 425.
- White, Joseph, *Land Laws of Great Britain, France, and Spain*, \*117.
- Whitefield, George, *Journal of a Voyage*, \*86.
- Whitehead, W. A., *Perth Amboy* (N. J.), \*66; *Archives of New Jersey*, \*113; *East Jersey*, 261; *Contributions*, 261.
- Whitelock, William, *John Jay*, \*93.
- Whiting, W., *War Powers*, 405.
- Whitmore, W. H., *Bibliographical Sketch*, \*110, 272; *Laws of Massachusetts*, \*111; *Boston Records*, \*111, 272.
- Whitney, E. L., *South Carolina*, 256, 313.
- Whitney, J. D., *The United States*, 48, \*51, 227, 310.
- Whitney, J. L., *Historical Fiction*, \*137.
- Whittlesey, C., *Cleveland* (O.), \*71.
- Whittier, J. G., biography, \*100; historical poems, \*142.
- Wickes, *Medicine in New Jersey*, 287.
- Wilcox, A., *Powers over Slavery*, 393.
- Wilder, D. W., *Kansas*, \*60.
- Wilderness, battle, 415.
- Wilhelm, L. W., *Maryland Local Institutions*, 313.
- Wilkeson, Frank, *Recollections*, 418.
- Wilkie, F. B., *Davenport* (Ia.), \*60.
- Wilkins, Mary E., historical stories, \*140.
- Wilkinson, James, *Memoirs*, \*132; connection with Burr, 348.
- Wilkinson, John, *Blockade Runner*, 418.
- Willamette, settlement, 383.
- William and Mary College, 253.
- Williams, extradition case, 379.
- Williams, A. M., *Sam Houston*, \*92.
- Williams, Edwin, *Statesman's Manual*, \*134.
- Williams, G. F., *Massachusetts Citations*, \*118.
- Williams, G. W., *Negro Race*, 315; *Negro Troops*, 403.
- Williams, J. F., *Minnesota*, \*65; *St. Paul* (Minn.), \*65.
- Williams, James, *South Vindicated*, 403; *Model Republic*, 403.
- Williams, J. L., *Florida*, \*59.
- Williams, O. H., *Narrative*, 302.
- Williams, Roger, biographies, \*100; in New England, 272.
- Williams, S., *Vermont*, \*76.
- Williamson, H., *North Carolina*, \*70.
- Williamson, Passmore, fugitive-slave case, 393.
- Williamson, W. D., *Maine*, \*62.
- Willis, *History of Portland* (Me.), 275.
- Williston, E. B., *Eloquence of the United States*, 326.
- Willoughby, W. W., *Supreme Court*, 330, 358.
- Wilmot Proviso, 390.— See Territories.
- Wilson, A., *Savannah*, \*59.
- Wilson, Daniel, *Lost Atlantis*, 231; *Pre-Historic Man*, 231.
- Wilson, H. W., *Iron-Clads in Action*, 416.
- Wilson, Henry, *Slave Power*, \*48; *Military Measures*, 424.
- Wilson, Henry, and Black, J. S., *Edwin M. Stanton*, \*98.
- Wilson, James, *Works*, \*127.
- Wilson, J. G., *City of New York*, 55, \*69; *Great Commanders* (Series), 416.
- Wilson, J. G., and Fiske, John, *Cyclopædia of American Biography*, \*41.
- Wilson, Woodrow, *Division and Reunion*, \*45.
- Windham County (Conn.), history, \*58.

- Windsor (Conn.), histories, \*59.  
 Wingfield, E. M., *Discourse of Virginia*, 251.  
 Winship, G. P., *Coronado's Journey*, 232, 240.  
 Winsor, Justin, *America*, 15, 34, 46, \*48, 49, 55, 106, 134; *Reader's Handbook of the Revolution*, \*36; *Cartier to Frontenac*, \*48, 240; *Columbus*, 48, \*89; *Mississippi Basin*, 48, 244; maps in his works, 53; *Boston*, 55, \*63; *Historical Fiction*, \*137; his library system, 150; *Kohl Collection of Early Maps*, 230; *Ptolemy's Geography*, 231; *New England Indians*, 233.  
 Winterbotham, W., *View of the United States*, 337.  
 Winterburn, Rose B., on high schools, 32.  
 Winthrop, John, biographies, \*100; *Life and Letters*, \*127; *History of New England*, \*127; governor of Massachusetts, 269.  
 Winthrop, Robert C., *John Winthrop*, \*100; *Addresses and Speeches*, \*127; elected speaker, 309.  
 Wirt, William, biography, \*100; *Patrick Henry*, \*92; *Two Principal Arguments*, 349.  
 Wisconsin, histories, \*77.  
 Wisconsin Historical Society, publications, \*124.  
 Wisconsin University, historical publications, 55.  
 Wise, Henry A., *Seven Decades*, \*132.  
 Witchcraft delusion, in New England, 279.  
 Withers, A. S., *North-western Virginia*, \*77.  
 Witherspoon, John, *Works*, \*127.  
 Wolcott, Oliver, biography, \*100.  
 Wollaston, at Merry Mount, 268.  
 Wood, C. J., *Reminiscences*, \*132.  
 Wood, S., *Long Island* (N. Y.), \*68, 268.  
 Wood, W., *New England's Prospect*, 270, 272.  
 Woodbury, Levi, *Writings*, \*127.  
 Woods, H. F., *Brookline* (Mass.), \*63.  
 Woods, John, *Two Years' Residence*, \*86.  
 Wooldridge, John, *Nashville* (Tenn.), \*75.  
 Woolman, John, *Journal*, \*86, 315.  
 Woolsey, Sarah C., *Philadelphia* (Pa.), \*73.  
 Woolsey, T., *International Law*, 422.  
 Worcester (Mass.), *Records*, \*111.  
 Worcester vs. Georgia, 358, 368, 373.  
 Worthington, T. K., *Finances of Pennsylvania*, 319.  
 Wortley, Lady E. S., *Travels in the U. S.*, \*86.  
 Wright, Frances, *Views of Society*, \*86.  
 Wright, G. F., *Ice Age*, 231.  
 Wright, J., *Speeches of Fox*, 303.  
 Wright, J. H., on original research, 33.  
 Wright, Marcus J., *General Scott*, \*98.  
 Wright, R., *General Oglethorpe*, \*96; *Life of Wolfe*, 282.  
 Wright, Silas, biography, \*100.  
 Writs of Assistance, 288, 289.  
 Written work, in schools, 23; in colleges, 25; description of, 205-222; formal tests, 223. — See *Methods*.  
 Wyatt, T., *Memoirs of the Generals*, 292.  
 Wynne, T. H., and Gilman, W. S., *Records of Virginia*, \*115.  
 Wyoming (Pa.), histories, \*72, \*73; massacre of, 299.  
 Wyoming Historical Society, publications, \*124.  
 Wyse, Francis, *America*, \*86.
- X.** Y. Z. Episode, 340.
- Y**ALE, Todd case, 359.  
 Yancey, W. L., biography, \*100, 101.  
 Yates, J. V. N., and Moulton, J. W., *New York*, \*67.  
 Yazoo, Georgia grants, 336; repealed, 339.  
 Yoakum, H., *Texas*, \*75.  
 Yonge, *Proceedings of South Carolina*, 256.  
 York, James, Duke of, "Duke of York's Laws," \*114; grants of New York to, 259.  
 York [Me.] *Deeds*, \*111.  
 Yorktown, campaign of 1781, 301.  
 Young, Alexander, *Chronicles of Massachusetts Bay*, \*134, 267; *Chronicles of the Pilgrims*, \*134, 270.  
 Young, A. W., *American Statesman*, 330.  
 Young, Brigham, biography, \*101.  
 Young, Edward, *Tariff Legislation*, 357; *Report on Customs*, 371, 389.  
 Yucatan, Córdoba's voyage, 238, 239.
- Z**AVALA, Lorenzo de, *Viage a los Estados-Unidos*, \*86.  
 Zeisberger, David, *Diary*, \*132.  
 Zenger, case, 259.  
 Zeni brothers, story of, 234.



## A General History.

*For High Schools and Colleges.*

By P. V. N. MYERS, Professor of History, University of Cincinnati. 12mo. Half leather. x+759 pages. mailing price, \$1.65; for introduction, \$1.50.

THIS history is believed to combine all the qualities that such a work should possess, — a philosophic eye for the great line of development of the life of the race, not diverted by mere incidents; candor in the treatment of all questions; a due sense of proportion; accuracy of scholarship; a style transparent though at the same time full of color; and the quality of teachableness.

One feature of the greatest interest and practical value is this, — the author not only brings out and keeps distinct the interrelations of things, but he notes and sets clearly before the reader what each nation has contributed to the life and advancement of the race, — and so to our present civilization. Among the methods which will specially recommend themselves to teachers is the plan of cross-references which bind the branches of the learner's acquisitions compactly and vitally.

**J. W. Stearns**, *Professor of Pedagogy, University of Wisconsin, Madison, Wis.*: Its selection of topics for treatment, its conception of the relations of parts to the whole, its grasp of what is most vital in the history of the civilized world, together with the vividness and vitality of the narrative, make it the best-text-book in universal history for beginners that we are acquainted with.

**A. H. Fetterolf**, *President Girard College, Philadelphia, Pa.*: I keep it on my desk, and whenever I have a few moments unoccupied I take it up, and I never turn to a page that does not have some things that interest me.

**Angie Clara Chapin**, *Professor of Greek, Wellesley College, Mass.*: It is a marvel of condensation, retaining, however, the breadth and interest of a fuller narrative.

**Shailer Mathews**, *Associate Professor of New Testament History, Chicago University*: The statements are singularly clear and vivid; the simplicity of its style and its picturesque character fit it especially for an elementary text-book.

**George C. Chase**, *President and Professor of Psychology and Logic, Bates College*: I find it unlike other works of its kind, thoroughly readable. The author has shown a sense of proportion seldom exhibited in books devoted to general history.

**Charles S. Walker**, *Professor of Mental and Political Science, Massachusetts Agricultural College, Amherst*: He presents the facts in their relation to the art, commerce, government, and civilization of mankind so as to attract attention in the very beginning and hold it to the end.

## A History of Greece.

For High Schools and Colleges. By P. V. N. MYERS, Professor of History and Political Economy in the University of Cincinnati. 12mo. Cloth. xiii + 577 pages. Illustrated. Mailing price, \$1.40; for introduction, \$1.25.

**T**HIS work, although written on lines drawn by the author in a previous work, is practically a new book. It is designed for use in colleges as well as with advanced classes in high schools and seminaries.

The aim of the author has been to bring into prominence the vital and permanent elements of Greek history. Special care has been exercised not to overload the book with too many details. The import for Greek history of the recent archaeological discoveries on Greek soil has been indicated, and the development of the Athenian Constitution traced in the new light afforded by the lately found Aristotelian treatise. There are special chapters devoted to art, literature, philosophy and the social life of the ancient Greeks.

Besides a full bibliography at the end of the book, each chapter is followed by references to parallel readings, while numerous foot-notes direct the student to the original authorities. The book is illustrated with numerous cuts.

**U. G. Weatherly**, *Professor of History, Indiana University, Bloomington, Ind.*: It possesses those qualities most to be desired in a text-book on the subject—clearness, orderly arrangement, and terseness, combined with vitality.

**J. L. Day**, *Lecturer in Classics, McGill University, Montreal*: It gives me great pleasure to adopt Myers's Greece this year with my freshman class. The maps, illustrations, scope of work, and execution are excellent.

**E. L. Sargent**, *Sub-Master of English High School, Cambridge, Mass.*: For use in high schools, it seems to me that it is perhaps the best and most satisfactory.

**H. C. Stancliff**, *Department of History, Northwestern University, Evanston, Ill.*: The work possesses the excellent qualities of Professor Myers's other histories together with some valuable new features.

**Geo. W. Harper**, *Principal of Woodward High School, Cincinnati, Ohio*: I am an enthusiastic admirer of Professor Myers's histories. His new History of Greece is, if possible, a little better than any of his previous works.

**Lincoln Hulley**, *Professor of History, Bucknell University, Lewisburg, Pa.*: The analysis and arrangement, the choice of materials, and the literary workmanship are fine.

## The Eastern Nations and Greece.

(Part I. of Myers's and of Myers and Allen's Ancient History.)

By P. V. N. MYERS, Professor of History, University of Cincinnati; author of *Mediæval and Modern History*, etc. 12mo. Cloth. ix + 369 pages. Mailing price, \$1.10; for introduction, \$1.00.

THIS work embraces the history of the Egyptians, Assyrio-Babylonians, Hebrews, Phœnicians, Lydians, Medes and Persians, and Greeks. About three-fifths of the space is given to Greece.

The chapters relating to the Eastern nations have been written in the light of the most recent revelations of the monuments of Egypt and Babylonia. The influence of Oriental civilization upon the later development of the Western peoples has been fully indicated. It is shown that before the East gave a religion to the West it had imparted many primary elements of art and general culture. This lends a sort of epic unity to series of events and historic developments too often regarded as fragmentary and unrelated, and invests the history of the old civilizations of the Orient with fresh interest and instruction.

In tracing the growth of Greek civilization, while the value of the germs of culture which the Greeks received from the older nations of the East is strongly insisted upon, still it is admitted that the determining factor in the wonderful Greek development was the peculiar genius of the Greek race itself.

The work is furnished with chronological summaries, colored maps, and numerous illustrations drawn from the most authentic sources. See also *Myers's* and *Myers and Allen's Ancient History*.

Arthur Latham Perry, *Emeritus Prof. of Political Economy, Williams College, Mass.*: I have read every word of Myers's Eastern Nations and Greece, and wish to express my sense of the great skill and elegance with which has been condensed into a single small volume all that is really most important to be known of the early nations, in such a way that the memory can easily hold it, and that the mind is satisfied at once with the

facts selected and the taste exhibited in handling them.

I. T. Beckwith, *Prof. of Greek, Trinity College, Hartford, Conn.*: The book seems to me remarkable in its comprehensiveness, and likewise in the clearness and life with which it presents the leading facts in each great movement. I think it far more interesting and useful than any other epitome of the kind which I have seen.



## *Outlines of Mediæval and Modern History.*

By P. V. N. MYERS, A.M., Prof. History, Univ. of Cincinnati, author of *Outlines of Ancient History*, and *Remains of Lost Empires*. 12mo. Half morocco. xii + 740 pages. With colored maps, reproduced, by permission, from Freeman's Historical Atlas. Mailing price, \$1.65; for introduction, \$1.50.

THIS work aims to blend in a single narrative accounts of the social, political, literary, intellectual, and religious development of the peoples of mediæval and modern times, — to give in simple outline the story of civilization since the meeting, in the fifth century of our era, of Latin and Teuton upon the soil of the Roman Empire in the West. The author's conception of History, based on the definitions of Ueberweg, that it is the unfolding of the essence of spirit, affords the key-note to the work. Its aim is to deal with the essential elements, not the accidental features, of the life of the race.

Unity and cohesion are secured by grouping facts according to the principles of historic development, and while the analysis is rigid and scientific, the narrative will be found clear, continuous, interesting, and *suggestive*.

**W. F. Allen**, *late Prof. of History, University of Wisconsin*: Mr. Myers's book seems to me to be a work of high excellence, and to give a remarkably clear and vivid picture of mediæval history.

**E. B. Andrews**, *Pres. Brown University, Providence, R.I.*: It seems certain to take its place as one of the most serviceable books of its kind before the school and college public.

**Geo. W. Knight**, *Prof. of History, Ohio State University*: The author seems to have gotten hold of the active principle, the leading motives and tendencies of each age; to have taken a comprehensive view of the development of man's ideas, of nations, and of governments. Then he has grouped the various events in

such a way as will bring clearly to view these different phases of the world-development without ignoring what may be called the collateral events.

**Frances M. Buss**, *Prin. N. London College for Girls, London, England*: A valuable work, not too detailed, but enumerating general principles. The maps are especially valuable, and the book is sufficiently interesting to be used as a school prize. It supplies a place in the ranks of our text-books until now empty.

**Brandt V. D. Dixon**, *President Woman's Department, Tulane University*: I am using it with the best results I have ever seen in the study of the period treated.

## Introduction to the Study of the Middle Ages.

From the Battle of Adrianople to the death of Charlemagne (A.D. 378-814). By EPHRAIM EMERTON, Professor of Ecclesiastical History in Harvard University. 12mo. Cloth. xviii + 268 pages. Mailing price, \$1.25; for introduction, \$1.12.

THIS work aims to give, in simple narrative form, an account of the settlement of the Germanic peoples on Roman soil, the gradual rise of the Frankish supremacy, the growth of the Christian Church and its expression in the monastic life and in the Roman Papacy, and finally the culmination of all in the Empire of Charlemagne.

George P. Fisher, *Professor of Ecclesiastical History, Yale College*: investigation; it is concise, but, at the same time, lucid and interesting. The work is the fruit of diligent in-

## Mediæval Europe (814-1300).

By EPHRAIM EMERTON, Professor of Ecclesiastical History in Harvard University. 12mo. Cloth. xxv + 607 pages. Illustrated. Mailing price, \$1.65; for introduction, \$1.50.

THIS work is a continuation of the author's *Introduction to the Study of the Middle Ages*. Its aim is to call the attention of students to the most important political, social, and religious institutions of Continental Europe during the Middle Ages proper.

Beginning with the Empire of Charlemagne, the first topic discussed is the formation of the European States, as they were to remain during the period. The two great institutions, the Holy Roman Empire and the Roman Papacy, are then traced during the period of the later Carolingian Emperors and the rise of a true German power under the Saxon kings. Next is shown the decline of the Papacy under the control of the local Roman nobility, and its restoration by the Saxon emperors. The parallel development of the Empire under the Franconian House and of the Papacy under the influence of the Cluny Reform movement is traced to the conflict of these two powers under Henry IV and Gregory VII.

Moses Coit Tyler, *Professor of American History, Cornell University*: It is in full use here as a text-book. It is a treat to look into so scholarly and satisfactory a book.

## The Leading Facts of English History.

By D. H. MONTGOMERY. New edition. Rewritten and enlarged, with Maps and Tables. 12mo. Cloth. viii + 445 pages. Mailing price, \$1.25; for introduction, \$1.12.

**I**N this work the important events of English History are treated with great fullness, and their relation to that of Europe and the world is carefully shown.

The text is in short paragraphs, each with a topical heading in bold type for the student's use. The headings may be made to serve the purpose of questions. By simply passing them over, the reader has a clear, continuous narrative.

The treatment of each reign is closed with a brief summary of its principal points. Likewise, at the end of each period there is a section showing the condition of the country, and its progress in Government, Religion, Military Affairs, Learning and Art, General Industry, Manners and Customs.

No pains have been spared to make the execution of the work equal to its plan. Vivid touches here and there betray the author's mastery of details. Thorough investigation has been made of all points where there was reason to doubt traditional statements.

The text is illustrated with fourteen maps, and supplemented with full genealogical and chronological tables.

**Hon. E. J. Phelps**, *recently United States Minister to Great Britain*: The author has done a much-needed work extremely well.

**Professor Goldwin Smith**: The book, besides being very attractive in appearance, seems to be very suitable for the purpose in view.

**Elisha B. Andrews**, *President of Brown University*: I do not remember to have seen any book before which sets forth the leading facts of English History so succinctly, and at the same time so interestingly and clearly.

**A. L. Perry**, *Emeritus Professor of Political Economy, Williams College*: I have never seen anything at

all equal to it for the niche it was intended to fill.

**Jas. F. Colby**, *Professor of Law and Political Science, Dartmouth College*: Its title is a true description of its contents. Its author shows sense of proportion, and wisely gives prominence to economic facts and the development of constitutional principles.

**F. B. Palmer**, *Principal of State Normal School, Fredonia, N. Y.*: I have not examined anything that seems to me equal to it for a class in English History.

**John Fiske**, *Professor of History, Washington University*: It seems to me excellent.

## The Leading Facts of French History.

By D. H. MONTGOMERY. 12mo. Cloth. vi + 321 pages, with fourteen black and colored maps, and full tables. Mailing price, \$1.25; for introduction, \$1.12.

THE object of this volume is to present, within a moderate compass, the most important events of the history of France, selected, arranged, and treated according to the soundest principles of historical study, and set forth in a clear and attractive narrative.

**G. W. Knight**, *Prof. of History, Ohio State University*: I do not know another book which, in any- thing like the same space, conveys for youthful students so good a notion of French events.

## The Leading Facts of American History.

By D. H. MONTGOMERY. 12mo. Half morocco. xii + 365 pages, besides colored maps and full-page illustrations, with an Appendix of 67 pages. Mailing price, \$1.15; for introduction, \$1.00.

FEW text-books have met with such immediate recognition as this. It seems to be regarded by the best judges as, on the whole, the best school history of the United States yet published. It was written and not simply compiled. The author did not take it for granted that a history of our country must be a perfunctory work made up from previous histories and merely iterating an old set of facts, ideas, and stories. The book is a panorama of the leading events of our history, with their causes and results clearly traced. Attention has been given to all the departments of American life and activity. It describes the development of the American people. The author's broad and liberal sympathies saved him from sectarian, sectional, or partisan views. The style is full of life, and the words can all be understood by the pupils for whom the book is designed.

**E. G. Bourne**, *Professor of History, Yale University*: The matter is well selected, and the style fresh and interesting. The first chapter on the discoveries deserves especial commendation for its clear explanations of the underlying causes of voyages of the period.

## The Beginner's American History.

By D. H. MONTGOMERY. 12mo. Cloth. 234 pages. Fully illustrated with new maps and pictures. Mailing price, 70 cents; for introduction, 60 cents. See page 199.

## A Short Constitutional History of England.

By H. ST. CLAIR FEILDEN, late of Corpus Christi College, Oxford, Eng. Revised and in part rewritten by W. GRAY ETHERIDGE, late scholar of Keble College. 12mo. Cloth. xx + 358 pages. Mailing price, \$1.35; for introduction, \$1.25.

**T**HIS is a concise, clearly written treatise which is believed to have no equal in its department. As a convenient manual of reference, teachers and students of English constitutional history will find it invaluable. It treats of the following subjects, citing Stubbs, Hallam, May and other recognized authorities: the origin, power, and limitations of the Crown, traced from the earliest period down to modern times; the rise and jurisdiction of the King's Councils, the Cabinet, and the Ministerial system; the origin and growth of Parliament, party government and legislation; the rise and decline of the Feudal system (land tenure); taxation and finance; the people; the press, and the growth of towns, the church, the army and navy. An appendix gives a summary of the more important charters and statutes and a digest of leading constitutional cases decided by the high courts and by Parliament.

**Benjamin S. Terry**, *Professor of Medieval and English History, University of Chicago, Chicago, Ill.*: I regard it as a thoroughly good book. It is compact, well arranged, and rational in treatment. Within my knowledge it is the best presentation of English Constitutional History in so small a compass, that we have.

## Reference History of the United States.

By HANNAH A. DAVIDSON, formerly Teacher of History, Belmont School, California. 12mo. Cloth. xii + 190 pages. By mail, 90 cents; for introduction, 80 cents.

**T**HIS book is an attempt to connect history teaching more closely in method and matter with the teaching and study of history in the college and the university.

## Historia do Brazil.

Resumo da Historia do Brazil, para uso das escolas primarias Brasileiras. Pela Professora MARIA G. L. DE ANDRADE. 12mo. Cloth. x + 277 pages. Illustrated. By mail, \$1.00; for introduction, 90 cents.

**T**HIS is a history of Brazil, from the earliest times to the year 1891, written in the Portuguese language.



RETURN TO the circulation desk of any  
University of California Library  
or to the

NORTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY  
Bldg. 400, Richmond Field Station  
University of California  
Richmond, CA 94804-4698

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS  
2-month loans may be renewed by calling  
(510) 642-6753  
1-year loans may be recharged by bringing books  
to NRLF  
Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days  
prior to due date

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

MAR 21 1995

RETURNED

JUN 02 1995

Santa Cruz Jitney

OCT 17 2002



YB 30358

961632

E178  
12  
C4  
Educ

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

